

# Alibaba Cloud Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes

## User Guide for Kubernetes Clusters

Issue: 20190916

## Legal disclaimer

---

Alibaba Cloud reminds you to carefully read and fully understand the terms and conditions of this legal disclaimer before you read or use this document. If you have read or used this document, it shall be deemed as your total acceptance of this legal disclaimer.

1. You shall download and obtain this document from the Alibaba Cloud website or other Alibaba Cloud-authorized channels, and use this document for your own legal business activities only. The content of this document is considered confidential information of Alibaba Cloud. You shall strictly abide by the confidentiality obligations. No part of this document shall be disclosed or provided to any third party for use without the prior written consent of Alibaba Cloud.
2. No part of this document shall be excerpted, translated, reproduced, transmitted, or disseminated by any organization, company, or individual in any form or by any means without the prior written consent of Alibaba Cloud.
3. The content of this document may be changed due to product version upgrades, adjustments, or other reasons. Alibaba Cloud reserves the right to modify the content of this document without notice and the updated versions of this document will be occasionally released through Alibaba Cloud-authorized channels. You shall pay attention to the version changes of this document as they occur and download and obtain the most up-to-date version of this document from Alibaba Cloud-authorized channels.
4. This document serves only as a reference guide for your use of Alibaba Cloud products and services. Alibaba Cloud provides the document in the context that Alibaba Cloud products and services are provided on an "as is", "with all faults" and "as available" basis. Alibaba Cloud makes every effort to provide relevant operational guidance based on existing technologies. However, Alibaba Cloud hereby makes a clear statement that it in no way guarantees the accuracy, integrity, applicability, and reliability of the content of this document, either explicitly or implicitly. Alibaba Cloud shall not bear any liability for any errors or financial losses incurred by any organizations, companies, or individuals arising from their download, use, or trust in this document. Alibaba Cloud shall not, under any circumstances, bear responsibility for any indirect, consequential, exemplary, incidental, special, or punitive damages, including lost profits arising from the use

or trust in this document, even if Alibaba Cloud has been notified of the possibility of such a loss.

5. By law, all the content of the Alibaba Cloud website, including but not limited to works, products, images, archives, information, materials, website architecture, website graphic layout, and webpage design, are intellectual property of Alibaba Cloud and/or its affiliates. This intellectual property includes, but is not limited to, trademark rights, patent rights, copyrights, and trade secrets. No part of the Alibaba Cloud website, product programs, or content shall be used, modified, reproduced, publicly transmitted, changed, disseminated, distributed, or published without the prior written consent of Alibaba Cloud and/or its affiliates. The names owned by Alibaba Cloud shall not be used, published, or reproduced for marketing, advertising, promotion, or other purposes without the prior written consent of Alibaba Cloud. The names owned by Alibaba Cloud include, but are not limited to, "Alibaba Cloud", "Aliyun", "HiChina", and other brands of Alibaba Cloud and/or its affiliates, which appear separately or in combination, as well as the auxiliary signs and patterns of the preceding brands, or anything similar to the company names, trade names, trademarks, product or service names, domain names, patterns, logos, marks, signs, or special descriptions that third parties identify as Alibaba Cloud and/or its affiliates).
6. Please contact Alibaba Cloud directly if you discover any errors in this document.



# Generic conventions

Table -1: Style conventions

Style	Description	Example
	This warning information indicates a situation that will cause major system changes, faults, physical injuries, and other adverse results.	 <b>Danger:</b> Resetting will result in the loss of user configuration data.
	This warning information indicates a situation that may cause major system changes, faults, physical injuries, and other adverse results.	 <b>Warning:</b> Restarting will cause business interruption. About 10 minutes are required to restore business.
	This indicates warning information, supplementary instructions, and other content that the user must understand.	 <b>Notice:</b> Take the necessary precautions to save exported data containing sensitive information.
	This indicates supplemental instructions, best practices, tips, and other content that is good to know for the user.	 <b>Note:</b> You can use Ctrl + A to select all files.
>	Multi-level menu cascade.	Settings > Network > Set network type
<b>Bold</b>	It is used for buttons, menus, page names, and other UI elements.	Click <b>OK</b> .
<code>Courier font</code>	It is used for commands.	Run the <code>cd / d C :/ windows</code> command to enter the Windows system folder.
<i>Italics</i>	It is used for parameters and variables.	<code>bae log list --instanceid Instance_ID</code>
[ ] or [a b]	It indicates that it is an optional value, and only one item can be selected.	<code>ipconfig [-all -t]</code>

---

Style	Description	Example
<code>{}</code> or <code>{a b}</code>	It indicates that it is a required value, and only one item can be selected.	<code>swich {stand   slave}</code>



# Contents

---

Legal disclaimer.....	I
Generic conventions.....	I
<b>1 Introduction.....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Overview.....	1
1.2 Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes vs. self-built Kubernetes.....	2
<b>2 Authorization management.....</b>	<b>6</b>
2.1 Role authorization.....	6
2.2 Use the Container Service console as a RAM user.....	10
2.3 Grant a RAM user the permissions to access a Kubernetes cluster.....	13
2.4 Create custom authorization policies.....	15
2.5 Grant RBAC permissions to a RAM user.....	18
<b>3 Node management.....</b>	<b>27</b>
3.1 Add an existing ECS instance to a Kubernetes cluster.....	27
3.2 View node list.....	31
3.3 Node monitoring.....	32
3.4 Manage node labels.....	33
3.5 Set node scheduling.....	34
3.6 Remove a node.....	36
3.7 View resource request and limit on nodes.....	39
3.8 Configure a Kubernetes GPU cluster to support GPU scheduling.....	40
3.9 Use Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes GPU node labels for scheduling.....	46
3.10 Mount a disk to the Docker data directory.....	52
3.11 Mount a disk to a Kubernetes cluster node.....	57
<b>4 Application management.....</b>	<b>63</b>
4.1 Create a deployment application by using an image.....	63
4.2 Create a StatefulSet application by using an image.....	84
4.3 Create a Job application by using an image.....	108
4.4 Create an application in Kubernetes dashboard.....	121
4.5 Create a Linux application by using an orchestration template.....	123
4.6 Create a Windows application by using an orchestration template.....	127
4.7 Manage applications by using commands.....	132
4.8 Simplify Kubernetes application deployment by using Helm.....	132
4.9 Use an application trigger to redeploy an application.....	141
4.10 Schedule a pod to a specific node.....	143
4.11 View the pods of a Kubernetes cluster.....	145
4.12 Change container configurations.....	147
4.13 Scale a service.....	147
4.14 Create a service.....	149
4.15 View a service.....	155

4.16 Update a service.....	157
4.17 Delete a service.....	162
4.18 View image list.....	163
4.19 Use an image Secret.....	163
4.20 Pull an image without a password.....	168
<b>5 Workflow.....</b>	<b>176</b>
5.1 Create a workflow.....	176
5.2 Sample workflow templates.....	179
5.3 Enable the workflow UI.....	197
5.4 Introduction to AGS CLI.....	199
<b>6 Network management.....</b>	<b>203</b>
6.1 ACK network overview.....	203
6.2 Access services by using SLB.....	207
6.3 Support for Ingress.....	241
6.4 Analyze logs of Ingress to monitor access to Ingress.....	247
6.5 Ingress configurations.....	257
6.6 Create an Ingress in the Container Service console.....	260
6.7 View Ingress details.....	271
6.8 Update an Ingress.....	272
6.9 Delete an Ingress.....	274
6.10 Terway network plugin.....	275
6.11 Associate an ENI with a pod.....	277
6.12 Use a network policy.....	279
<b>7 Config Map and Secret management.....</b>	<b>285</b>
7.1 Create a Config Map.....	285
7.2 Use a config map in a pod.....	289
7.3 View a ConfigMap.....	294
7.4 Modify a Config Map.....	295
7.5 Delete a Config Map.....	298
7.6 Create a Secret.....	300
7.7 Use a Secret in a pod.....	303
7.8 View a Secret.....	305
7.9 Edit a Secret.....	306
7.10 Delete a Secret.....	307
<b>8 Log management.....</b>	<b>309</b>
8.1 Application log management.....	309
8.2 View cluster logs.....	309
8.3 Use Log Service to collect Kubernetes cluster logs.....	310
8.4 Collect logs of a Kubernetes cluster by using Log-Pilot, Elasticsearch, and Kibana.....	324
8.5 Configure Log4jAppender for Kubernetes and Log Service.....	335
<b>9 Monitoring management.....</b>	<b>339</b>
9.1 Deploy the Prometheus monitoring system.....	339

<b>10 Security management.....</b>	<b>344</b>
10.1 Security.....	344
10.2 Kube-apiserver audit logs.....	345
10.3 Implement secure access through HTTPS in Kubernetes.....	360
10.4 Update the Kubernetes cluster certificates that are about to expire.....	371
10.5 Security bulletins.....	374
10.5.1 Vulnerability fix: <i>CVE - 2019 - 5736</i> in runc.....	375
10.5.2 Vulnerability fix: <i>CVE - 2018 - 18264</i> for Kubernetes dashboard.....	377
10.5.3 Vulnerability fix: <i>CVE - 2018 - 1002105</i> .....	378
10.5.4 Vulnerability fix: <i>CVE - 2019 - 11246</i> related to kubectl cp...	380
10.5.5 Vulnerability fix: <i>CVE - 2019 - 11249</i> related to kubectl cp...	381
10.6 Cluster certificate update FAQ.....	382
10.7 Kubernetes cluster network failures caused by security group settings...	385
<b>11 Release management.....</b>	<b>392</b>
11.1 Manage a Helm-based release.....	392
11.2 Use batch release on Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes...	396
<b>12 Namespace management.....</b>	<b>401</b>
12.1 Create a namespace.....	401
12.2 Set resource quotas and limits for a namespace.....	403
12.3 Edit a namespace.....	407
12.4 Delete a namespace.....	408
<b>13 Istio management.....</b>	<b>410</b>
13.1 Deploy Istio on Kubernetes clusters across multiple regions.....	410
13.2 Manage traffic.....	417
13.3 Istio FAQ.....	426
<b>14 Knative management.....</b>	<b>430</b>
14.1 Knative overview.....	430
14.2 Deploy Knative on a Kubernetes cluster.....	431
14.3 Deploy a Knative component.....	433
14.4 Use Knative to deploy a Hello World application.....	434
14.5 Uninstall a Knative component.....	436
14.6 Uninstall Knative.....	437
<b>15 Template management.....</b>	<b>439</b>
15.1 Create an orchestration template.....	439
15.2 Edit an orchestration template.....	442
15.3 Save an existing orchestration template as a new one.....	444
15.4 Download an orchestration template.....	445
15.5 Delete an orchestration template.....	446
<b>16 App catalog management.....</b>	<b>448</b>
16.1 App catalog overview.....	448
16.2 View app catalog list.....	449

<b>17 Service catalog management.....</b>	<b>451</b>
17.1 Overview.....	451
17.2 Enable service catalog function.....	451
<b>18 Auto Scaling.....</b>	<b>454</b>
18.1 Use an HPA auto scaling container.....	454
18.2 Autoscale the nodes of a Kubernetes cluster.....	458
18.3 Deploy a virtual node.....	469



# 1 Introduction

---

## 1.1 Overview

Kubernetes is a popular open-source container orchestration technology. To allow you to use Kubernetes to manage container applications in Alibaba Cloud, Alibaba Cloud Container Service provides support for Kubernetes clusters.

You can create a safe and high-availability Kubernetes cluster in the Container Service console. The Kubernetes cluster integrates with the virtualization, storage, network, and security capabilities of Alibaba Cloud to provide scalable, high-performance container application management, simplify cluster creation and expansion, and focus on the development and management of containerized applications.

Kubernetes supports the deployment, expansion, and management of containerized applications, and provides the following features:

- Elastic expansion and self-reparation.
- Service discovery and server load balancing.
- Service release and rollback.
- Secret and configuration management.

### Limits

- Currently, Kubernetes clusters only support Linux containers. The support for Kubernetes Windows containers is in the works.
- Currently, Kubernetes clusters only support Virtual Private Cloud (VPC). You can select to create a VPC or use an existing VPC when creating a Kubernetes cluster.

### Related open-source projects

- Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes Cloud Provider: <https://github.com/AliyunContainerService/kubernetes>.
- Alibaba Cloud VPC network driver for Flannel: <https://github.com/coreos/flannel/blob/master/Documentation/alibabacloud-vpc-backend.md>.

If you have any questions or suggestions regarding a specific project, you are welcome to raise an issue or pull a request in the community.

## 1.2 Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes vs. self-built Kubernetes

### Advantages of Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes

#### Easy to use

- Supports creating a Kubernetes cluster with one click in the Container Service console.
- Supports upgrading Kubernetes clusters with one click in the Container Service console.

You may have to deal with self-built Kubernetes clusters of different versions at the same time, including version 1.8.6, 1.9.4, and 1.10 in the future. Upgrading clusters each time brings you great adjustments and Operation & Maintenance (O&M) costs. Container Service upgrade solution performs rolling update by using images and uses the backup policy of complete metadata, which allows you to conveniently roll back to the previous version.

- Supports expanding or contracting Kubernetes clusters conveniently in the Container Service console.

Container Service Kubernetes clusters allow you to expand or contract the capacity vertically with one click to respond to the peak of the data analysis business quickly.

#### Powerful

Function	Description
Network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High-performance Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) network plug-in.</li> <li>• Supports network policy and flow control.</li> </ul> <p>Container Service provides you with continuous network integration and the best network optimization.</p>

Function	Description
<b>Server Load Balancer</b>	<p>Supports creating Internet or intranet Server Load Balancer instances.</p> <p>If your self-built Kubernetes clusters are implemented by using the self-built Ingress, releasing the business frequently may cause pressure on Ingress configuration and higher error probabilities. The Server Load Balancer solution of Container Service supports Alibaba Cloud native high-availability Server Load Balancer, and can automatically modify and update the network configurations. This solution has been used by a large number of users for a long time, which is more stable and reliable than self-built Kubernetes.</p>
<b>Storage</b>	<p>Container Service integrates with Alibaba Cloud cloud disk, Network Attached Storage (NAS), and block storage, and provides the standard FlexVolume drive.</p> <p>Self-built Kubernetes clusters cannot use the storage resources on the cloud . Alibaba Cloud Container Service provides the best seamless integration.</p>
<b>O&amp;M</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Integrates with Alibaba Cloud Log Service and CloudMonitor.</li><li>· Supports auto scaling.</li></ul>

Function	Description
Image repository	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· High availability. Supports high concurrency.</li> <li>· Supports speeding up the pull of images.</li> <li>· Supports P2P distribution.</li> </ul> <p>The self-built image repository may crash if you pull images from millions of clients at the same time. Enhance the reliability of the image repository by using the image repository of Container Service, which reduces the O&amp;M burden and upgrade pressure.</p>
Stability	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· The dedicated team guarantees the stability of the container.</li> <li>· Each Linux version and Kubernetes version are provided to you after strict tests.</li> </ul> <p>Container Service provides the Docker CE to reveal all the details and promotes the repair capabilities of Docker. If you have issues such as Docker Engine hang, network problems, and kernel compatibility, Container Service provides you with the best practices.</p>
High availability	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Supports multiple zones.</li> <li>· Supports backup and disaster recovery.</li> </ul>
Technical support	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Provides the Kubernetes upgrade capabilities. Supports upgrading a Kubernetes cluster to the latest version with one click.</li> <li>· Alibaba Cloud container team is responsible for solving problems about containers in your environment.</li> </ul>

### Costs and risks of self-built Kubernetes

- Building clusters is complicated

You must manually configure the components, configuration files, certificates, keys, plug-ins, and tools related to Kubernetes. It takes several days or weeks for professional personnel to build the cluster.

- For public cloud, it takes you significant costs to integrate with cloud products.

You must devote your own money to integrate with other products of Alibaba Cloud, such as Log Service, monitoring service, and storage management.

- The container is a systematic project, involving network, storage, operating system, orchestration, and other technologies, which requires the devotion of professional personnel.
- The container technology is continuously developing with fast version iteration, which requires continuous upgrade and test.

## 2 Authorization management

---

### 2.1 Role authorization

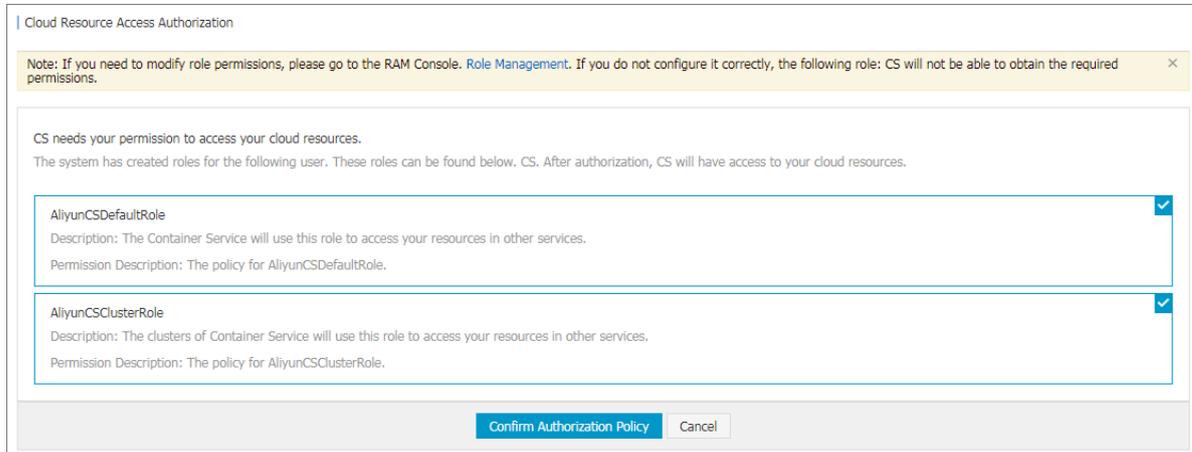
Grant the system default roles `AliyunCSDefaultRole` and `AliyunCSClusterRole` to the service account when you activate Container Service. Only after the roles are correctly granted, Container Service can normally call services such as Elastic Compute Service (ECS), Object Storage Service (OSS), Network Attached Storage (NAS), and Server Load Balancer (SLB), create clusters, and store logs.

#### Instructions

- If you have used Container Service before 15 January 2018, the system completes the role authorization by default. For the detailed granted permissions, see the following Default role permissions section. If you used Container Service with a Resource Access Management (RAM) user before, upgrade the authorization policy for the RAM user. For more information, see [#unique\\_8](#).
- On 15 January 2018, Container Service is fully accessed to the cross-service authorization. New users who use the primary account can use Container Service only after having the cross-service authorization completed. If new users need to authorize RAM users to use Container Service, go to the RAM console to authorize the RAM users. For more information, see [#unique\\_9](#).

## Procedure

1. If you have not granted the default roles to the service account correctly, the Cloud Resource Access Authorization page appears after you log on to the Container Service console. Click **Confirm Authorization Policy**.



### Note:

Container Service has configured the default role permissions. To modify the role permissions, go to the User Management page of the RAM console. Note that incorrect configurations might cause Container Service cannot obtain the required permissions.

2. After completing the authorization, refresh the Container Service console and then perform the operations.

To view the policy details of the roles `AliyunCSDefaultRole` and `AliyunCSClusterRole`, log on to the [RAM console](#).

## Default role permissions

For more information about permissions of each role, see the API documents of each product.

### AliyunCSDefaultRole permissions

The default role `AliyunCSDefaultRole` contains the following main permissions:

- ECS-related permissions

Action	Description
<code>ecs:RunInstances</code>	Query ECS instance information.
<code>ecs:RenewInstance</code>	Renew ECS instances.

Action	Description
ecs:Create*	Create ECS-related resources, such as instances and disks.
ecs:AllocatePublicIpAddress	Allocate public IP addresses.
ecs:AllocateEipAddress	Allocate Elastic IP (EIP) addresses.
ecs>Delete*	Delete ECS instances.
ecs:StartInstance	Start ECS-related resources.
ecs:StopInstance	Stop ECS instances.
ecs:RebootInstance	Restart ECS instances.
ecs:Describe*	Query ECS-related resources.
ecs:AuthorizeSecurityGroup	Configure inbound security group rules.
ecs:RevokeSecurityGroup	Revoke security group rules.
ecs:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress	Configure outbound security group rules.
ecs:AttachDisk	Add disks.
ecs:DetachDisk	Clean up disks.
ecs:AddTags	Add tags.
ecs:ReplaceSystemDisk	Change system disks of ECS instances.
ecs:ModifyInstanceAttribute	Modify ECS instance attributes.
ecs:JoinSecurityGroup	Add ECS instances to specified security groups.
ecs:LeaveSecurityGroup	Remove ECS instances from specified security groups.
ecs:UnassociateEipAddress	Unbind EIP addresses.
ecs:ReleaseEipAddress	Release EIP addresses.

· Virtual Private Cloud (VPC)-related permissions

Permission name (Action)	Permission description
vpc:Describe*	Query information of VPC-related resources.
vpc:DescribeVpcs	Query VPC information.
vpc:AllocateEipAddress	Allocate EIP addresses.
vpc:AssociateEipAddress	Associate with EIP addresses.

Permission name (Action)	Permission description
vpc:UnassociateEipAddress	Do not associate with EIP addresses.
vpc:ReleaseEipAddress	Release EIP addresses.
vpc:CreateRouteEntry	Create router interfaces.
vpc>DeleteRouteEntry	Delete router interfaces.

- SLB-related permissions

Action	Description
slb:Describe*	Query information related to Server Load Balancer.
slb:CreateLoadBalancer	Create Server Load Balancer instances.
slb>DeleteLoadBalancer	Delete Server Load Balancer instances.
slb:RemoveBackendServers	Unbind Server Load Balancer instances.
slb:StartLoadBalancerListener	Start specified listeners.
slb:StopLoadBalancerListener	Stop specified listeners.
slb:CreateLoadBalancerTCPListener	Create TCP-based listening rules for Server Load Balancer instances.
slb:AddBackendServers	Add backend servers.

### AliyunCSClusterRole permissions

The default role `AliyunCSClusterRole` contains the following main permissions:

- OSS-related permissions

Action	Description
oss: PutObject	Upload file or folder objects.
oss: GetObject	Get file or folder objects.
oss: ListObjects	Query file list information.

- NAS-related permissions

Action	Description
nas:Describe*	Return NAS-related information.
nas:CreateAccessRule	Create permission rules.

- SLB-related permissions

Action	Description
slb:Describe*	Query information related to Server Load Balancer.
slb:CreateLoadBalancer	Create Server Load Balancer instances.
slb>DeleteLoadBalancer	Delete Server Load Balancer instances.
slb:RemoveBackendServers	Unbind Server Load Balancer instances.
slb:StartLoadBalancerListener	Start specified listeners.
slb:StopLoadBalancerListener	Stop specified listeners.
slb:CreateLoadBalancerTCPLListener	Create TCP-based listening rules for Server Load Balancer instances.
slb:AddBackendServers	Add backend servers.
slb>DeleteLoadBalancerListener	Delete listening rules of Server Load Balancer instances.
slb:CreateVServerGroup	Create VServer groups and add backend servers.
slb:ModifyVServerGroupBackendServers	Change backend servers in VServer groups.
slb:CreateLoadBalancerHTTPListener	Create HTTP-based listeners for Server Load Balancer instances.
slb:SetBackendServers	Configure backend servers and set the weight for a group of ECS instances at the Server Load Balancer instance backend.
slb:AddTags	Add tags for Server Load Balancer instances.

## 2.2 Use the Container Service console as a RAM user

You can log on to and perform operations in the Container Service console as a RAM user.

Before you can log on to the Container Service console and perform operations as a RAM user, you must grant related permissions to the RAM user.

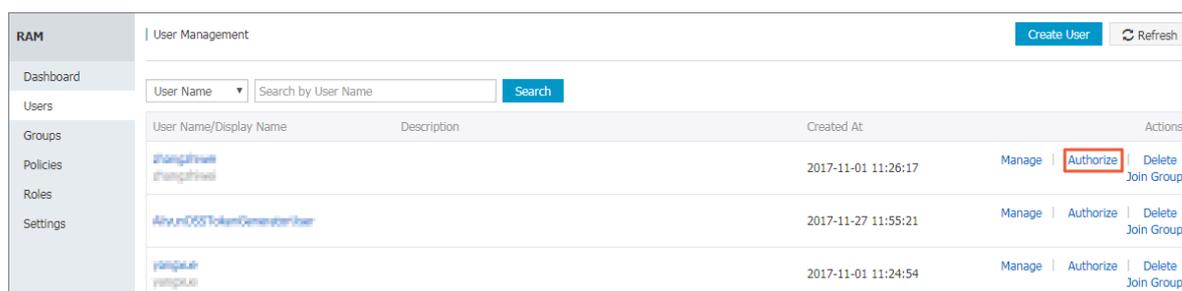
Step 1: Create a RAM user and enable console logon

1. Log on to the [RAM console](#).

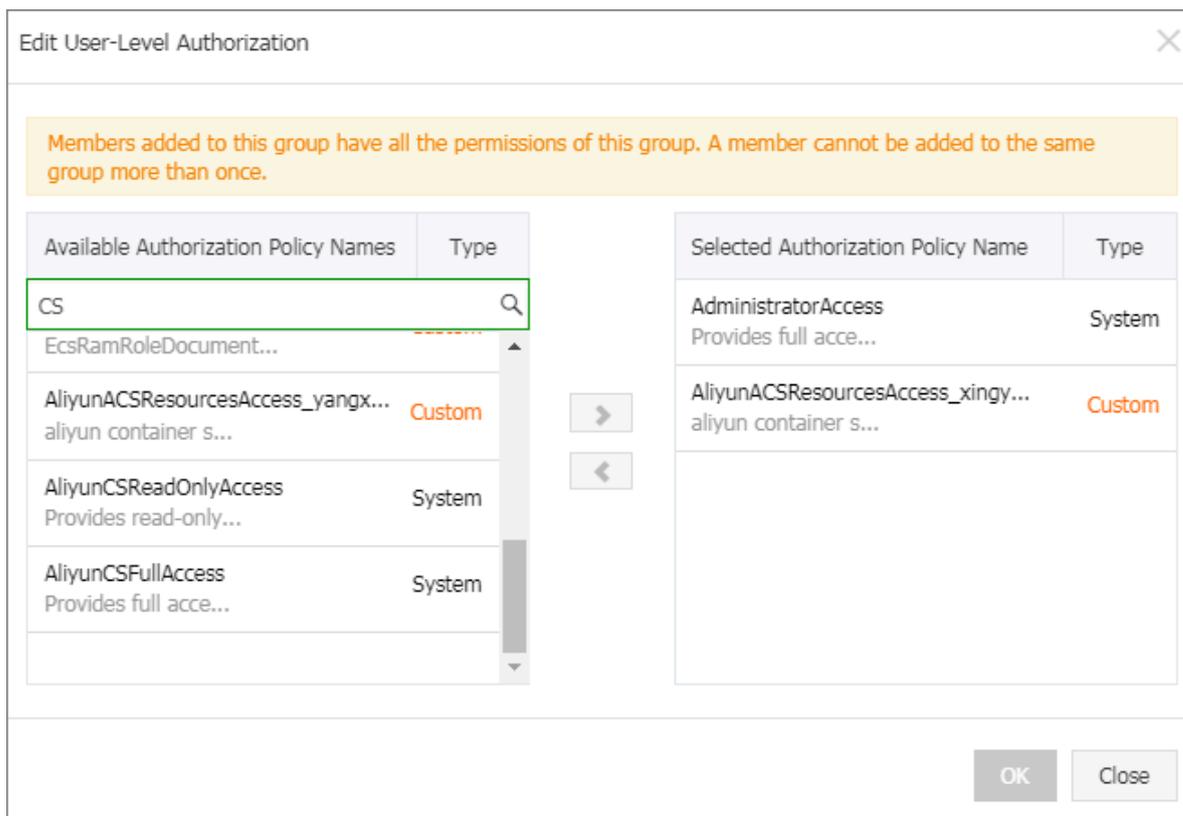
2. In the left-side navigation bar, click Users. Then, click Create User.
3. Enter a user name for the RAM user and then click OK.
4. On the Users page, select the created RAM user and click Manage.
5. In the Web Console Logon Management area, click Enable Console Logon.
6. Enter a logon password and click OK.

**Step 2: Grant the RAM user permissions to access Container Service**

1. On the Users page, select the created RAM user and click Authorize.



## 2. Select the required policies to attach them to the RAM user.



You can use the following system policies:

- **AliyunCSFullAccess:** Provides full access to Container Service.
- **AliyunCSReadOnlyAccess:** Provides read-only access to Container Service.

You can also create custom policies as you need and attach them to the RAM user.

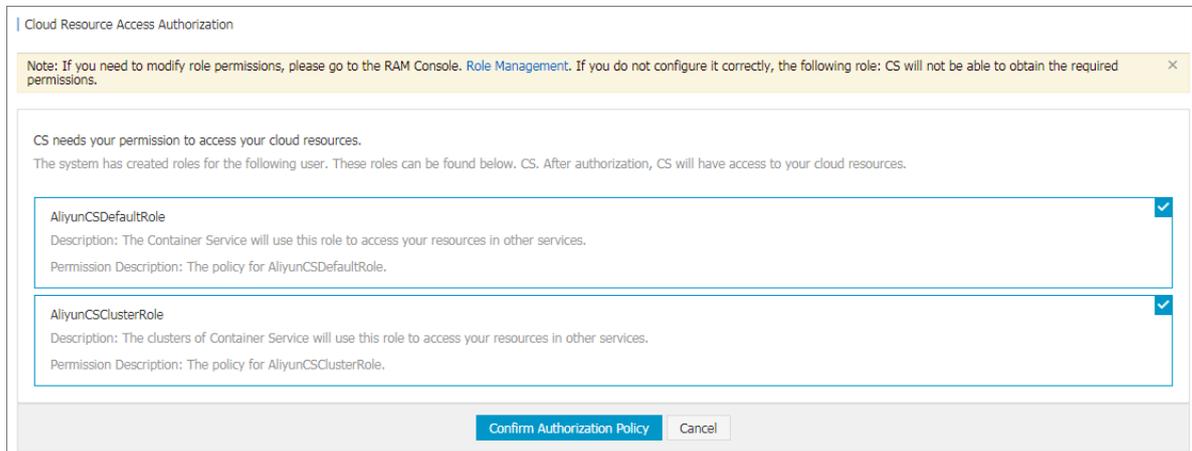
For more information, see [#unique\\_8](#).

**Step 3:** Log on to the Container Service console as a RAM user

- If you have granted the **AliyunCSDefaultRole** and **AliyunCSClusterRole** roles to the Alibaba Cloud account, you can log on to the Container Service console and perform operations as a RAM role directly.

Log on to the [Container Service console](#) as a RAM user.

- If you have not granted the `AliyunCSDefaultRole` and `AliyunCSClusterRole` roles to the Alibaba Cloud account, you must log on to the Container Service console using the account credentials and click **Confirm Authorization Policy** on the authorization page to grant the account the following permissions.



After you grant the preceding permissions to the account, you can log on to the Container Service and perform related operations as a RAM user.

## 2.3 Grant a RAM user the permissions to access a Kubernetes cluster

This topic describes the RAM and RBAC permissions required by a RAM user to access a Kubernetes cluster, and the general steps to grant the required permissions to a RAM user.

### RAM permissions

Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes (ACK) provides the RAM permissions required to control the access to the management interface of a Kubernetes cluster. If you want to use a RAM user to scale in or scale out a Kubernetes cluster, or add nodes to the cluster, you must grant the corresponding RAM permissions to the user account. For more information, see [#unique\\_8](#).

For information about the RAM permissions that can be granted to a RAM user, see [#unique\\_8/unique\\_8\\_Connect\\_42\\_table\\_kla\\_5hy\\_yys](#).

## RBAC permissions

ACK provides the RBAC permissions required by a RAM user to access the resources of a Kubernetes cluster by calling the API server of the cluster. For more information, see [Authorization overview](#).

The following table lists the RBAC permissions that can be granted to a RAM user to access a Kubernetes cluster.

Table 2-1: RBAC permissions

Role	Permission
Admin	The read and write permissions of resources in all namespaces, and those of nodes, volumes, namespaces, and quotas.
Operation	The read and write permissions of resources in all namespaces, and the ready permissions of nodes, volumes, namespaces, and quotas.
Developer	The read and write permissions of the resources in all namespaces or specified namespaces.
Restricted User	The read permissions of resources in all namespaces or specified namespaces.
Custom	The permissions of the RAM user depend on the cluster role you select. Confirm the permissions that your selected cluster role has on resources before authorization, to avoid inappropriate permissions granted to the RAM user.

## Grant a RAM user the permissions to access a Kubernetes cluster

1. Grant a RAM user the RAM permissions to access a Kubernetes cluster.

The following are the two types of required RAM permissions:

- **Read permissions:** Allow a RAM user to view basic cluster information, such as the cluster configuration and kubeconfig.
- **Write permissions:** Allow a RAM user to scale in or scale out a Kubernetes cluster, upgrade the cluster, delete a node from the cluster, add a node to the cluster, and perform other actions to manage cluster resources.

The following shows a RAM policy file that contains a read permission:

```
{
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": "cs : Get *",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": [
        "acs : cs :*:*: cluster /< yourclusterID >"
      ]
    }
  ],
  "Version": "1"
}
```

For information about the specific steps in the procedure, see [#unique\\_8](#).

2. Grant the RBAC permissions to a RAM user to access Kubernetes resources. For information about the specific steps, see [#unique\\_12](#).

## 2.4 Create custom authorization policies

The authorization granularity of the system authorization policies provided by Container Service is coarse. If these authorization policies with coarse granularity cannot satisfy your requirements, create the custom authorization policies. For example, to control the permissions to a specific cluster, you must use the custom authorization policy to meet the requirements with fine granularity.

### Create custom authorization policies

Get to know the basic structure and syntax of the authorization policy language before creating custom authorization policies. For more information, see [../SP\\_65/DNRAM11885314/EN-US\\_TP\\_23769.dita#concept\\_xg5\\_51g\\_xdb](#).

This document introduces how to grant Resource Access Management (RAM) users permissions to query, expand, and delete clusters.

## Procedure

1. Log on to the [RAM console](#) with the primary account.
2. Click Policies in the left-side navigation pane. Click Create Authorization Policy in the upper-right corner.
3. Select a template. Enter the authorization policy name and the policy content.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Custom Policy' interface in the RAM console. The left sidebar contains navigation options: Overview, Identities (Groups, Users, Settings, SSO), Permissions (Grants, Policies), RAM Roles, and OAuth Applications. The main content area is titled 'Create Custom Policy' and includes the following fields:

- Policy Name:** k8s-test
- Note:** (empty text area)
- Configuration Mode:** Script (selected), Visualized
- Policy Document:** A text editor showing a JSON policy document snippet.

The JSON snippet in the Policy Document field is as follows:

```
{
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "acs:ecs:*:*:cluster/*",
        "acs:ecs:*:*:scaleCluster/*",
        "acs:ecs:*:*:deleteCluster/*"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": [
        "acs:ecs:*:*:cluster/*"
      ]
    }
  ],
  "Version": "1"
}
```

where:

- **Action** : Enter the permission that you want to grant.



**Note:**

**All the Actions support wildcards.**

- **Resource** supports the following configuration methods.

- Grant permissions of a single cluster

```
" Resource ": [
  " acs : cs :*:*: cluster / cluster ID "
]
```

- Grant permissions of multiple clusters

```
" Resource ": [
  " acs : cs :*:*: cluster / cluster ID ",
  " acs : cs :*:*: cluster / cluster ID "
]
```

- Grant permissions of all your clusters

```
" Resource ": [
  "*"
]
```

You must replace `cluster ID` with your actual cluster ID.

4. Click Create Authorization Policy after completing the configurations.

Table 2-2: Container Service RAM action

Action	Description
CreateCluster	Create clusters.
AttachInstances	Add existing Elastic Compute Service (ECS) instances to clusters.
ScaleCluster	Expand clusters.
GetClusters	View cluster list.
GetClusterById	View cluster details.
ModifyClusterName	Modify cluster names.
DeleteCluster	Delete clusters.
UpgradeClusterAgent	Upgrade cluster Agent.
GetClusterLogs	View cluster operation logs.
GetClusterEndpoint	View cluster access point.
GetClusterCerts	Download cluster certificate.
RevokeClusterCerts	Revoke cluster certificate.

Action	Description
BindSLB	Bind Server Load Balancer instances to clusters.
UnBindSLB	Unbind Server Load Balancer instances from clusters.
ReBindSecurityGroup	Rebind security groups to clusters.
CheckSecurityGroup	Check existing security group rules of clusters.
FixSecurityGroup	Fix cluster security group rules.
ResetClusterNode	Reset cluster nodes.
DeleteClusterNode	Delete cluster nodes.
CreateAutoScale	Create node auto scaling rules.
UpdateAutoScale	Update node auto scaling rules.
DeleteAutoScale	Delete node auto scaling rules.
GetClusterProjects	View applications in clusters.
CreateTriggerHook	Create triggers for applications.
GetTriggerHook	View application trigger list.
RevokeTriggerHook	Delete application triggers.
CreateClusterToken	Create tokens.

## 2.5 Grant RBAC permissions to a RAM user

This topic describes how to grant a RAM user the RBAC permissions to access a Kubernetes cluster.

### Prerequisites

You can follow the steps in this guide if your existing RAM user account meets the following requirements:

- An Alibaba Cloud account is obtained, and one or more RAM users are created.
- The target RAM user is granted the read permissions to the target Kubernetes cluster with the RAM console.
- The target RAM user is granted the required RAM permissions. For more information, see [#unique\\_8](#).

- The target RAM user is granted the preset admin role or the custom cluster-admin role in a cluster or namespace. For more information, see [Procedure](#).

**Note:**

- If a RAM user wants to grant permissions to other RAM users in the same cluster or namespace, the RAM user must be granted the required RAM permissions. For more information, see [#unique\\_8](#).
- If RAM authorization is involved in configuring permissions through the Container Service console, you must manually perform authorization in the RAM console for the target RAM user according to the reference policy and operation instructions on the page due the security restrictions of RAM.

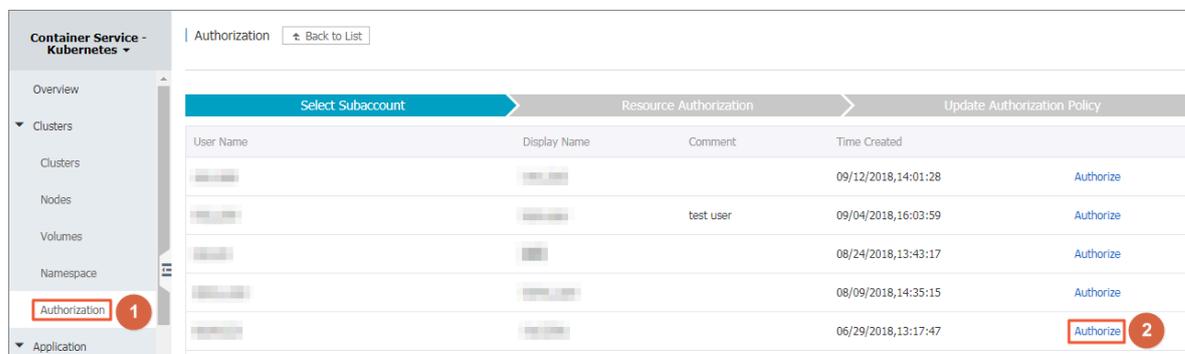
### Authorization policy upgrade notice

Container Service has upgraded the cluster authorization policy to enhance the security of Kubernetes clusters. Any RAM users in a Kubernetes cluster that are not granted the required permissions cannot access the cluster resources.

Therefore, we recommend that you grant required permissions to the RAM users in each of your Kubernetes clusters. After you complete this process, your managed RAM users will only have the specified permissions to access the their corresponding authorized cluster.

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service - Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Authorization.
3. On the right of the target RAM user, click Authorize.

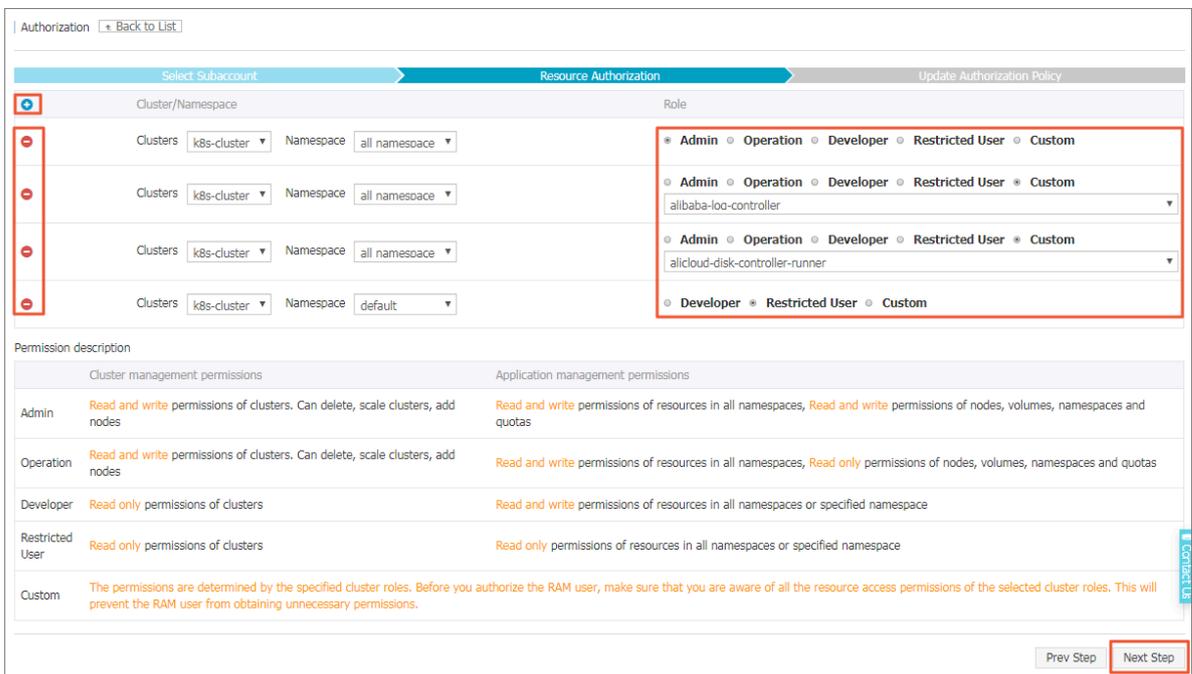


4. In the upper-left corner of the Resource Authorization tab page, click the plus sign, set the cluster and namespace where the permissions to be granted apply, set a role for the RAM user, and then click Next Step.



**Note:**

- You can grant one preset role and multiple custom roles to a RAM user in a cluster or a namespace.
- You can click the minus sign to remove a group of permission settings (that is, the settings of the cluster, the namespace, and the role).



The following table lists the RBAC permissions that can be granted to a RAM user to access a Kubernetes cluster.

Table 2-3: RBAC permissions

Role	Permissions
Admin	The read and write permissions of resources in all namespaces, and those of nodes, volumes, namespaces, and quotas.
Operation	The read and write permissions of resources in all namespaces, and the ready permissions of nodes, volumes, namespaces, and quotas.

Role	Permissions
Developer	The read and write permissions of the resources in all namespaces or specified namespaces.
Restricted User	The read permissions of resources in all namespaces or specified namespaces.
Custom	The permissions of the RAM user depend on the cluster role you select. Confirm the permissions that your selected cluster role has on resources before authorization, to avoid inappropriate permissions granted to the RAM user. For more information, see <a href="#">Custom permissions</a> .

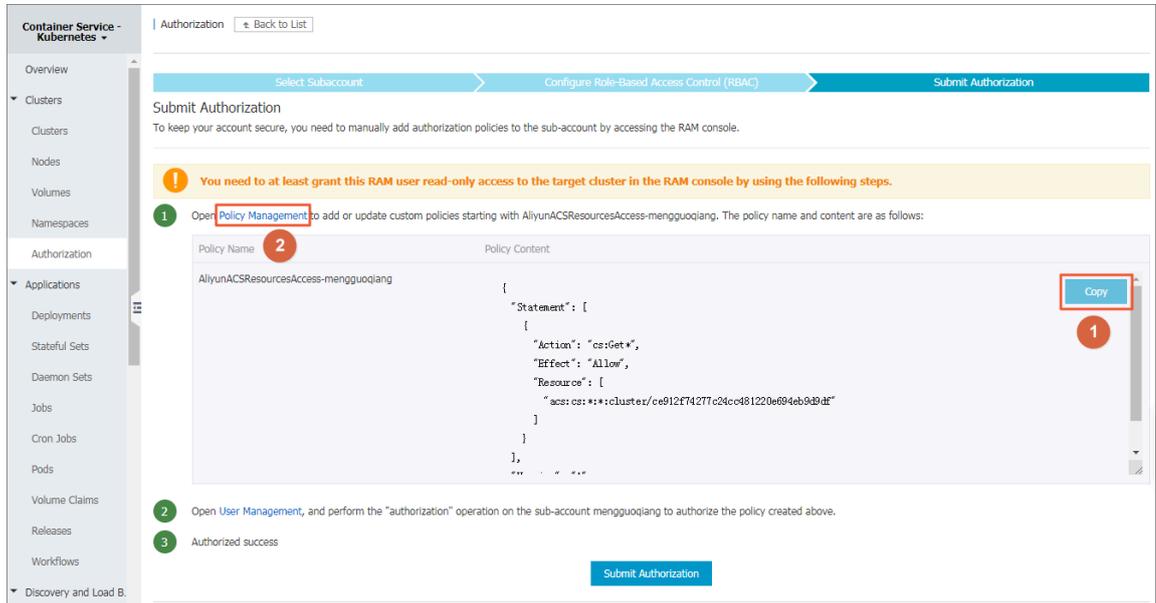
5. If Authorized success is displayed, this means that you have granted the target RAM user the permissions. If the Submit Authorization page is displayed, follow these steps to use the RAM console to grant the target RAM user the read permission to a specific cluster:



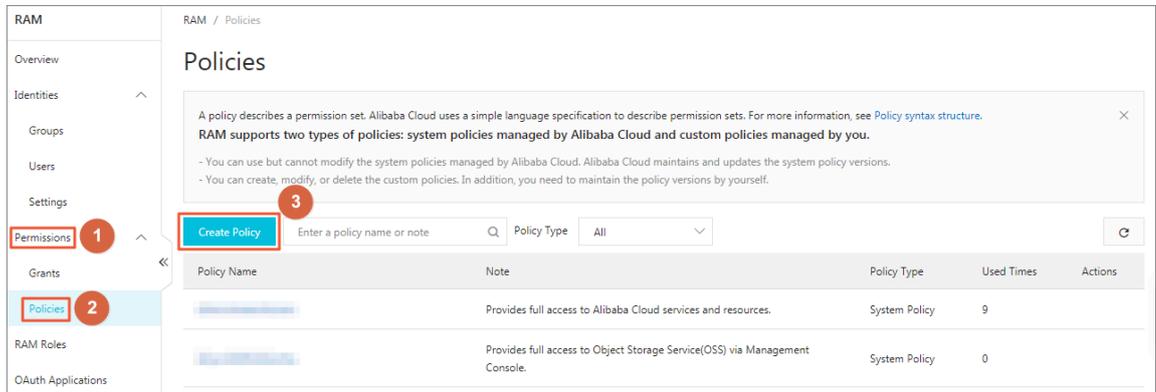
Note:

For information about more permissions, see [#unique\\_8/unique\\_8\\_Connect\\_42\\_table\\_kla\\_5hy\\_yys](#).

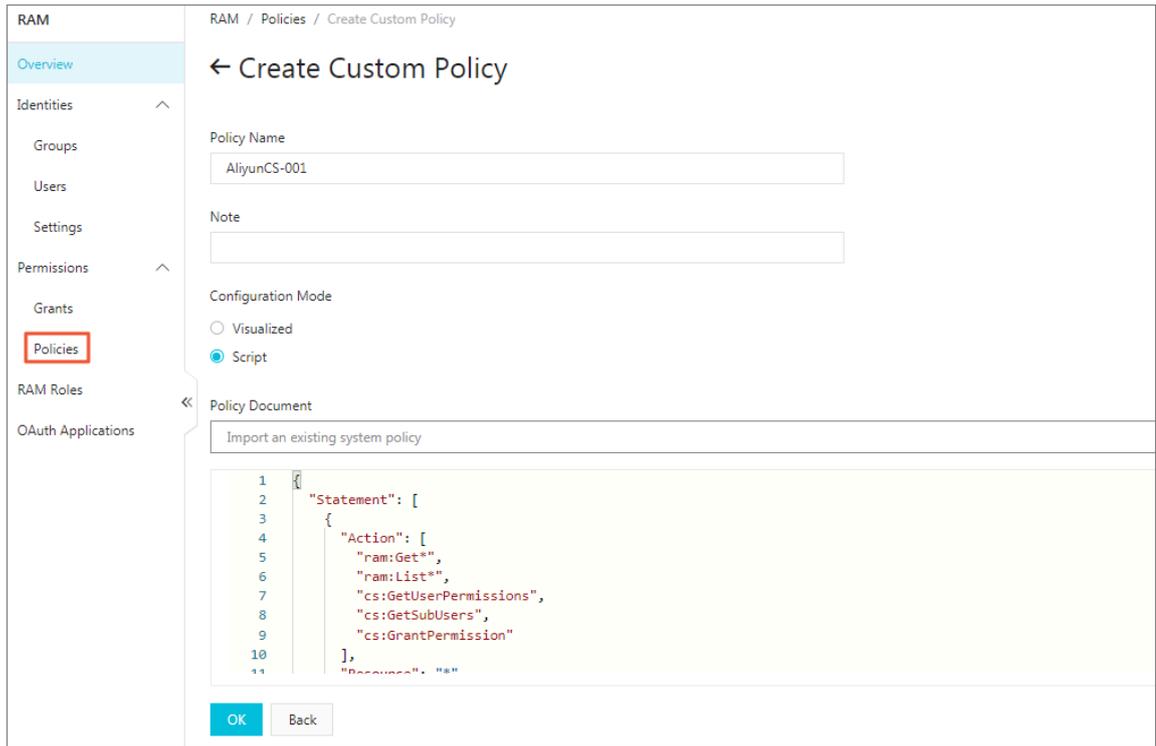
**a. Click Copy, and then click Policy Management.**



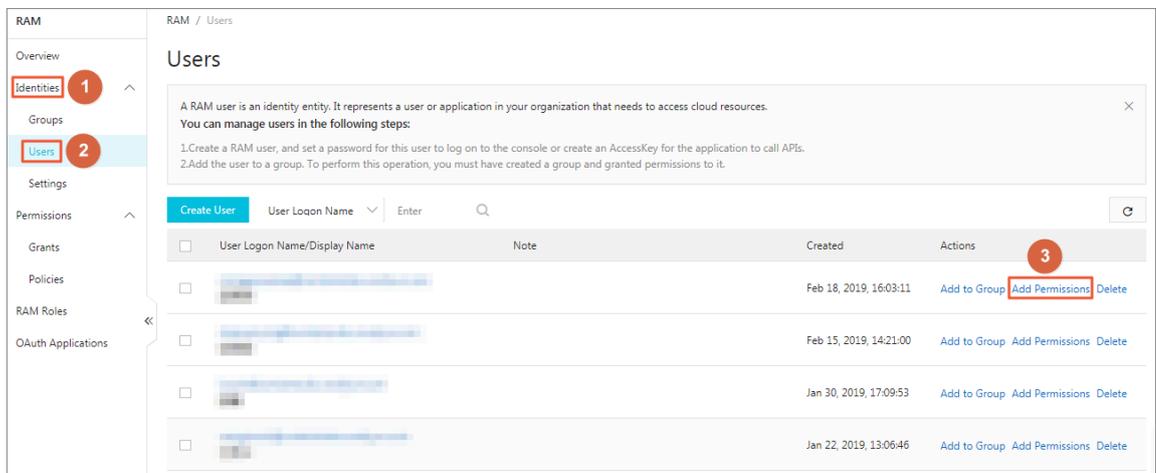
**b. Choose Permissions > Policies, and then click Create Policy.**



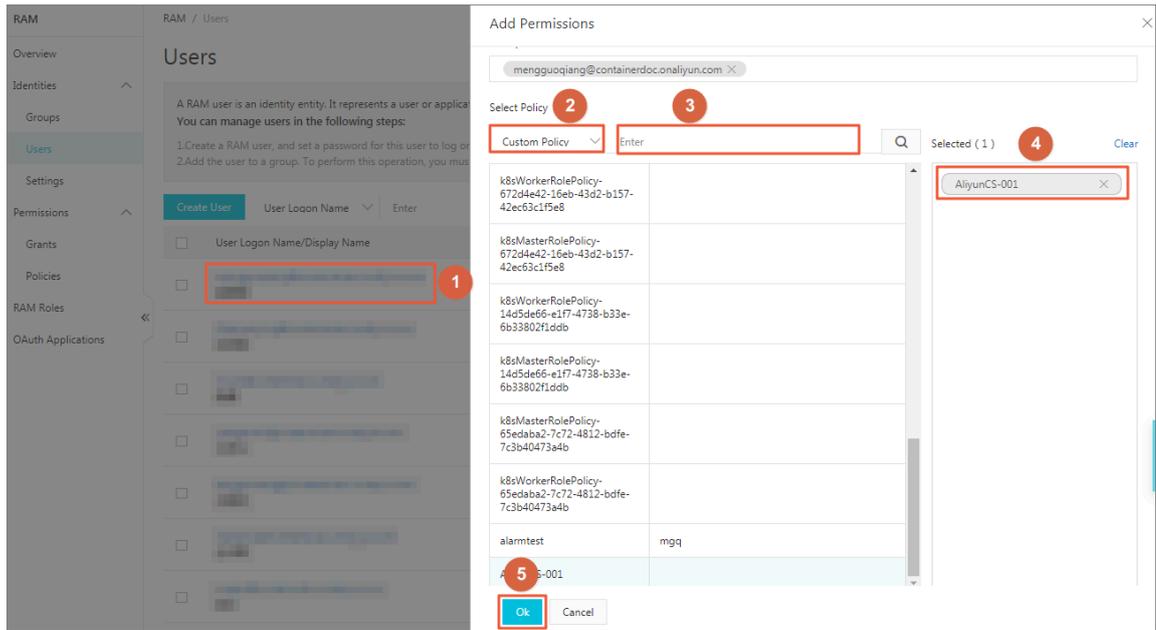
**c. Enter a Policy Name, select the Script configuration mode, use the hot key Ctrl +V to paste the content that was copied in step 6 in the Policy Document area, and then click OK. For more information, see [#unique\\_8](#).**



d. In the left-side navigation pane, choose Identities > Users. On the right of the target user, click Add Permissions.



e. Select Custom Policy, search for or manually look for the customized policy, click the policy name to add the policy to the Selected area on the right, and then click OK.



f. Return to the Submit Authorization page in the Container Service console, click Submit Authorization.

6. After you complete these steps, you can use the target RAM user to log on to the Container Service console and perform the operations allowed by the granted permissions.

### Custom permissions

Alibaba Cloud Container Service offers four types of permissions by pre-setting four types of roles: Admin, Operation, Developer, and Restricted User. These types of permissions can meet the needs of most users in the Container Service console. However, if you want to customize the access permissions to clusters, you can also use the custom permissions.



**Note:**

Alibaba Cloud Container Service provides several custom permission. Among them, the cluster-admin permission is a super administrator permission with the permissions to access and operate on all resources.

You can log on to the cluster Master node and run the following command to view the details of the custom permissions.

```
# kubectl get clusterrole
NAME
  AGE
admin
  13d
alibaba - log - controller
  13d
alicloud - disk - controller - runner
  13d
cluster - admin
  13d
cs : admin
  13d
edit
  13d
flannel
  13d
kube - state - metrics
  22h
node - exporter
  22h
prometheus - k8s
  22h
prometheus - operator
  22h
system : aggregate - to - admin
  13d
....
system : volume - scheduler
  13d
view
  13d
```

To view the permission details of the super administrator cluster-admin, run the following command.



**Note:**

After the RAM user is granted the cluster-admin role, the RAM user can be regarded as a super administrator that has the same privileges as the Alibaba Cloud account, and it can perform operations on any resources in the cluster. Execute caution when you grant the cluster-admin role.

```
# kubectl get clusterrole cluster-admin -o yaml
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRole
metadata:
  annotations:
    rbac.authorization.kubernetes.io/autoupdate: "true"
  creationTimestamp: 2018-10-12T08:31:15Z
  labels:
    kubernetes.io/bootstrapping: rbac-defaults
  name: cluster-admin
  resourceVersion: "57"
  selfLink: /apis/rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1/clusterroles/cluster-admin
  uid: 2f29f9c5-cdf9-11e8-84bf-00163e0b2f97
rules:
- apiGroups:
  - '*'
  resources:
  - '*'
  verbs:
  - '*'
- nonResourceURLs:
  - '*'
  verbs:
  - '*'
```

## 3 Node management

---

### 3.1 Add an existing ECS instance to a Kubernetes cluster

You can add existing Elastic Compute Service (ECS) instances to a Kubernetes cluster. Kubernetes clusters only support adding worker nodes.

#### Prerequisites

- If you have not created a cluster before, create a cluster first. For how to create a cluster, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- Add the ECS instance to the security group of the Kubernetes cluster.

#### Context

- By default, each cluster can contain up to 40 nodes. To add more nodes, open a ticket.
- The ECS instance to be added must be in the same Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) region as the cluster.
- When adding an existing instance, make sure that your instance has an Elastic IP (EIP) for the VPC network type, or the corresponding VPC is already configured with the NAT gateway. In short, make sure the corresponding node can access public network normally. Otherwise, the ECS instance fails to be added.
- The ECS instance to be added must be under the same account as the cluster.
- Only the ECS instance whose operating system is CentOS can be added.

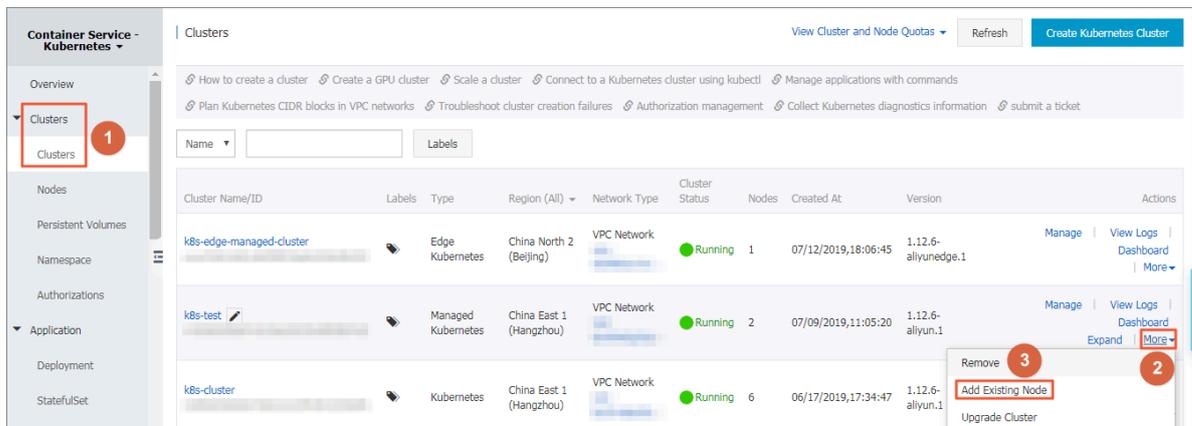
#### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Clusters.
3. Select the target cluster and click More > Add Existing Node.

The Add Existing ECS Instance page appears. All the available ECS instances under the current account are displayed on this page. Select to add existing ECS instances automatically or manually.

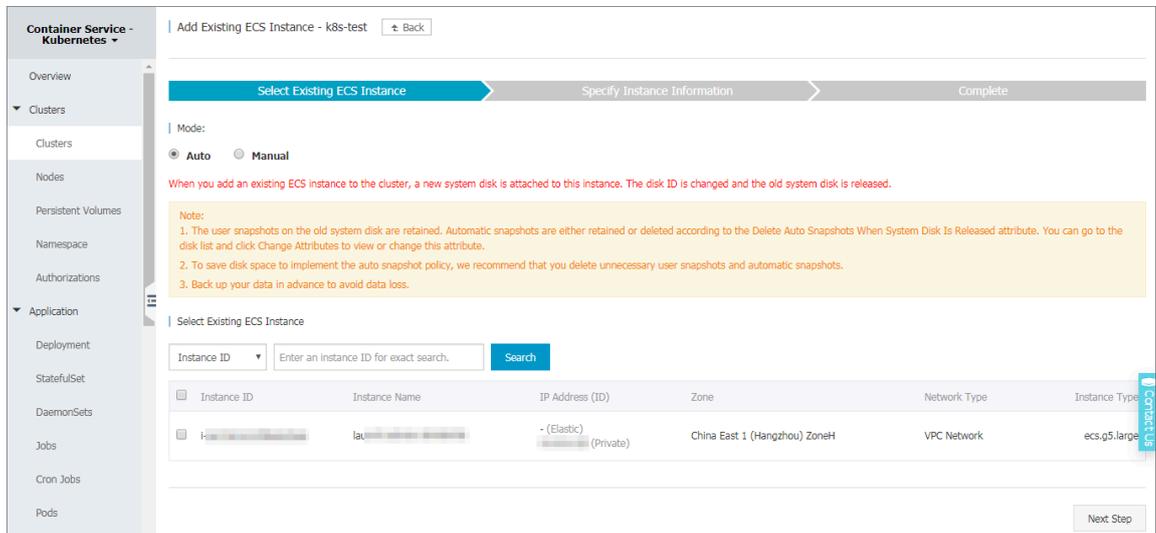
If Automatically Add is selected, select the ECS instances to add them to the cluster automatically. If Manually Add is selected, you must obtain the command and then

log on to the corresponding ECS instance to add the ECS instance to this cluster.  
You can only add one ECS instance at a time.

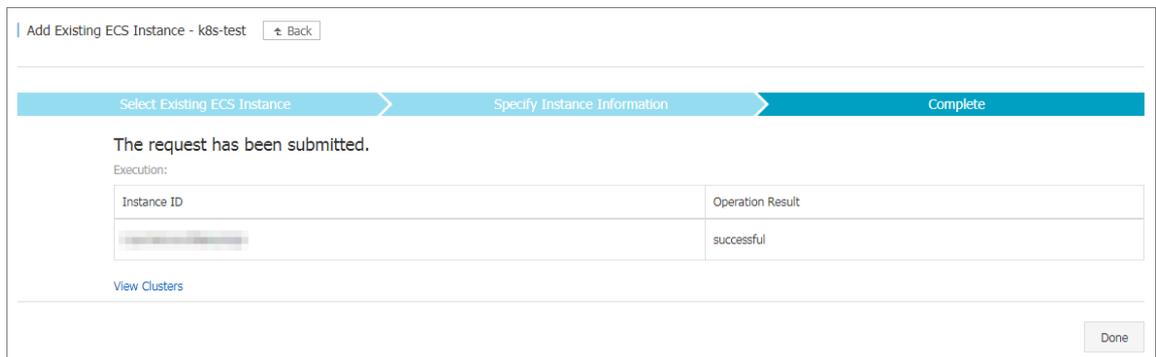


4. Select Auto to add multiple ECS instances at a time.

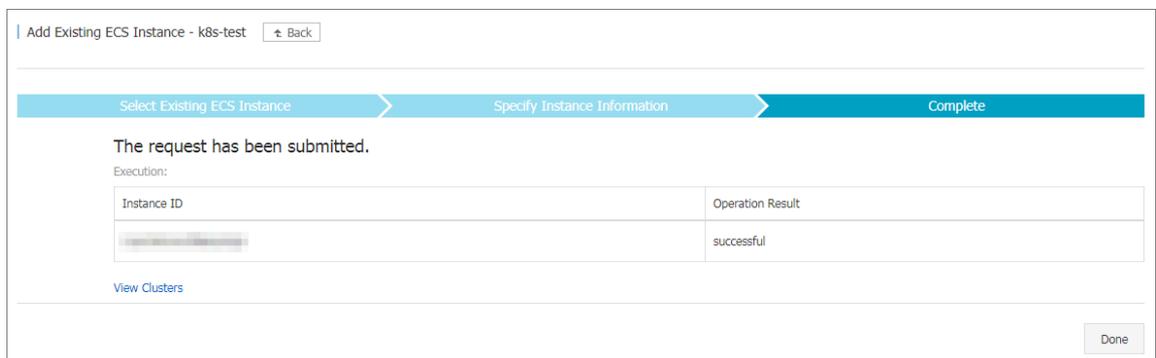
a) In the list of existing cloud servers, select the target ECS instance, and then click Next Step.



b) Set the password used to log on to the ECS instance, add tags to the ECS instance, and then click Next Step.

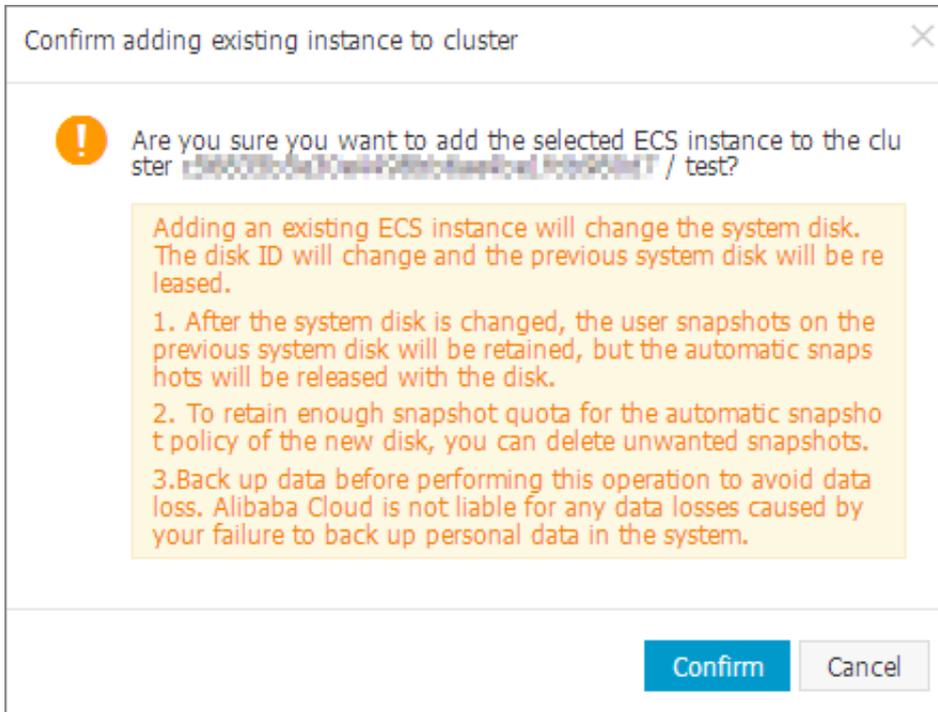


c) Click Confirm in the displayed dialog box. The selected ECS instances are automatically added to this cluster.

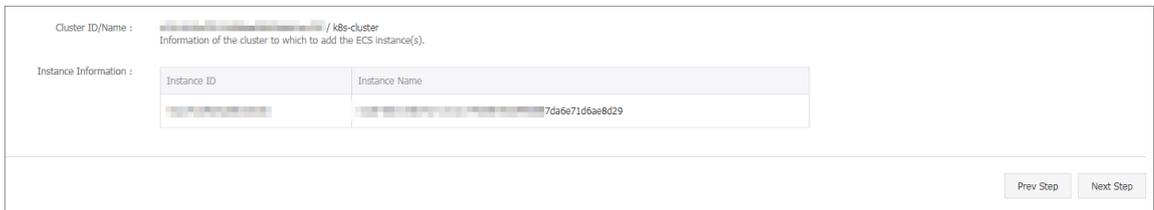


5. Optional: You can also select Manual to manually add an existing ECS instance to the cluster.

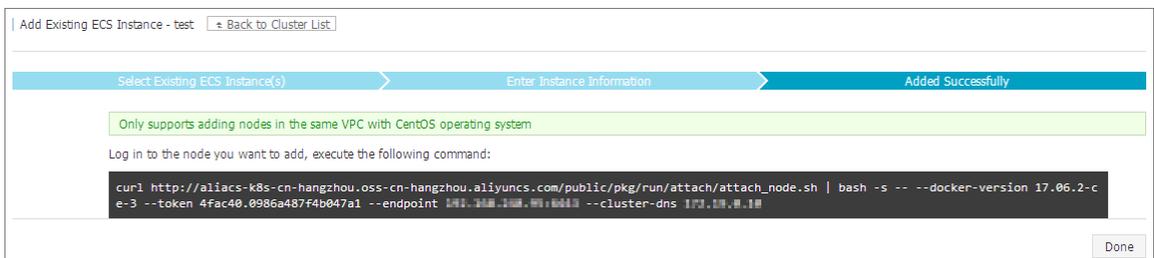
- a) Select the ECS instance to be added and then click Next Step. You can add only one ECS instance at a time.



- b) Confirm the information and then click Next Step.

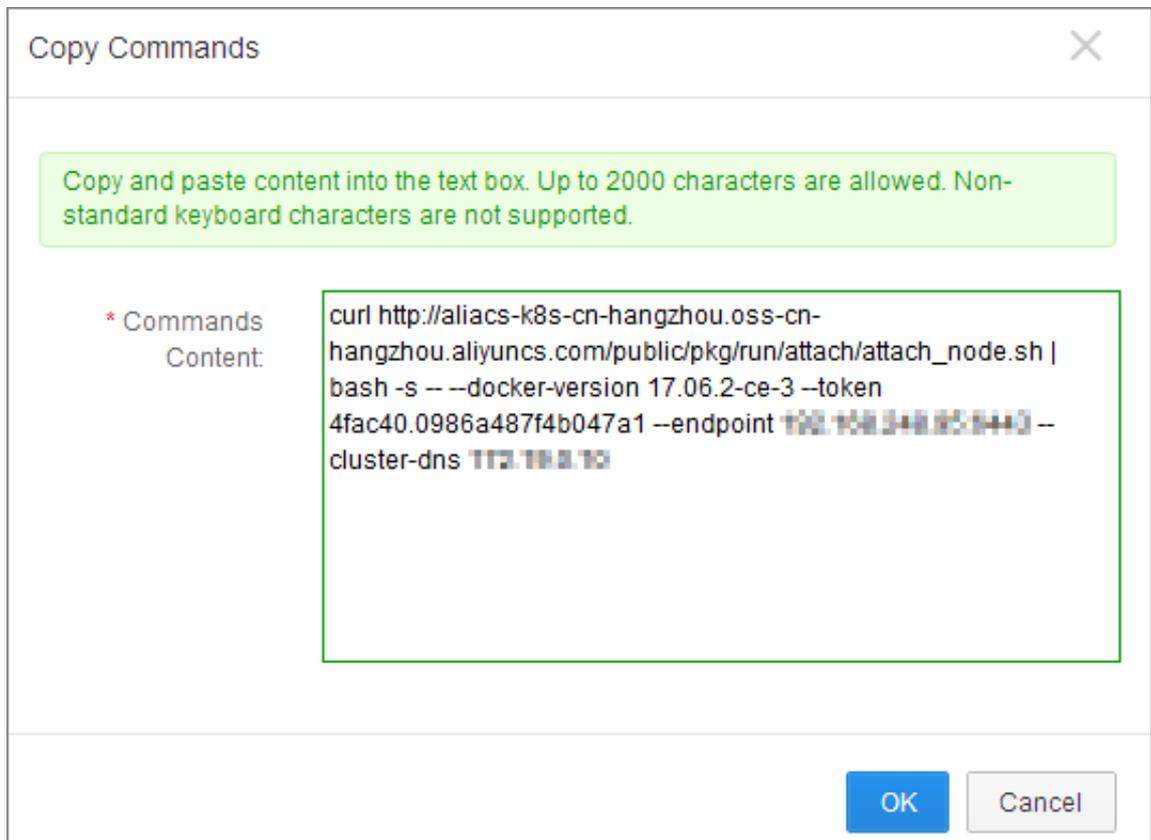


- c) Copy the command.



- d) Click Done.
- e) Log on to the [ECS console](#) and click Instances in the left-side navigation pane. Select the region in which the cluster resides and the ECS instance to be added.

- f) Click Connect at the right of the ECS instance to be added. The Enter VNC Password dialog box appears. Enter the VNC password and then click OK. Enter the copied command and then click OK to run the script.



- g) After the script is successfully run, the ECS instance is added to the cluster. You can click the cluster ID on the Cluster List page to view the node list of the cluster and check if the ECS instance is successfully added to the cluster.

## 3.2 View node list

You can view the node list of the Kubernetes cluster by using commands, in the Container Service console, or in the Kubernetes dashboard.

View node list by using commands



Note:

Before using commands to view the node list of the Kubernetes cluster, [#unique\\_19](#) first.

After connecting to the Kubernetes cluster by using `kubectl`, run the following command to view the nodes in the cluster:

```
kubectl get nodes
```

Sample output:

```
$ kubectl get nodes
NAME STATUS AGE VERSION
iz2ze2n6ep 53tch701yh 9zz Ready 19m v1.6.1-2+ed9e3d33a0-7093
iz2zeafr76 2wibijx39e 5az Ready 7m v1.6.1-2+ed9e3d33a0-7093
iz2zeafr76 2wibijx39e 5bz Ready 7m v1.6.1-2+ed9e3d33a0-7093
iz2zef4dnn 9nos8elyr3 2kz Ready 14m v1.6.1-2+ed9e3d33a0-7093
iz2zeitvvo 8enoreufst kmz Ready 11m v1.6.1-2+ed9e3d33a0-7093
```

View node list in Container Service console

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Click **Kubernetes > Clusters > > Nodes** in the left-side navigation pane.
3. Select the cluster from the Cluster drop-down list and then view the node list of this cluster.

View node list in Kubernetes dashboard

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Click **Kubernetes > Clusters** in the left-side navigation pane.
3. Click **Dashboard** at the right of the cluster to enter the Kubernetes dashboard.
4. In the Kubernetes dashboard, click **Nodes** in the left-side navigation pane to view the node list of this cluster.

### 3.3 Node monitoring

Kubernetes clusters integrate with the Alibaba Cloud monitoring service seamlessly. You can view the monitoring information of Kubernetes nodes and get to know the node monitoring metrics of the Elastic Compute Service (ECS) instances under Kubernetes clusters.

Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Clusters > Nodes to enter the Node List page.
3. Select the target cluster and node under the cluster.
4. Click Monitor at the right of the node to view the monitoring information of this node.
5. You are redirected to the CloudMonitor console. View the basic monitoring information of the corresponding ECS instance, including the CPU usage, network inbound bandwidth, network outbound bandwidth, disk BPS, and disk IOPS.

#### What's next

To view the monitoring metrics at the operating system level, install the CloudMonitor component. For more information, see [#unique\\_21](#).

## 3.4 Manage node labels

You can manage node labels in the Container Service console, including adding node labels in batches, filtering nodes by using a label, and deleting a node label quickly.

For how to use node labels to schedule pods to specified nodes, see [#unique\\_23](#).

#### Prerequisite

You have successfully created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

#### Add node labels in batches

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Click Kubernetes Clusters > Nodes in the left-side navigation pane.
3. Select the cluster from the Clusters drop-down list and then click Label Management in the upper-right corner.
4. Select one or more nodes by selecting the corresponding check boxes and then click Add Tag.

5. Enter the name and value of the label in the displayed dialog box and then click OK.

Nodes with the same label are displayed on the Label Management page.

#### Filter nodes by using a label

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Click Kubernetes Clusters > Nodes in the left-side navigation pane.
3. Select the cluster from the Clusters drop-down list and then click Label Management in the upper-right corner.
4. Click the label at the right of a node to filter nodes by using the label. In this example, click `group : worker`.

Nodes with the label `group : worker` are filtered.

#### Delete a node label

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Click Kubernetes Clusters > Nodes in the left-side navigation pane.
3. Select the cluster from the Clusters drop-down list and then click Label Management in the upper-right corner.
4. Click the delete (x) button of a node label, for example, `group : worker`.

Click Confirm in the displayed dialog box. The node label is deleted.

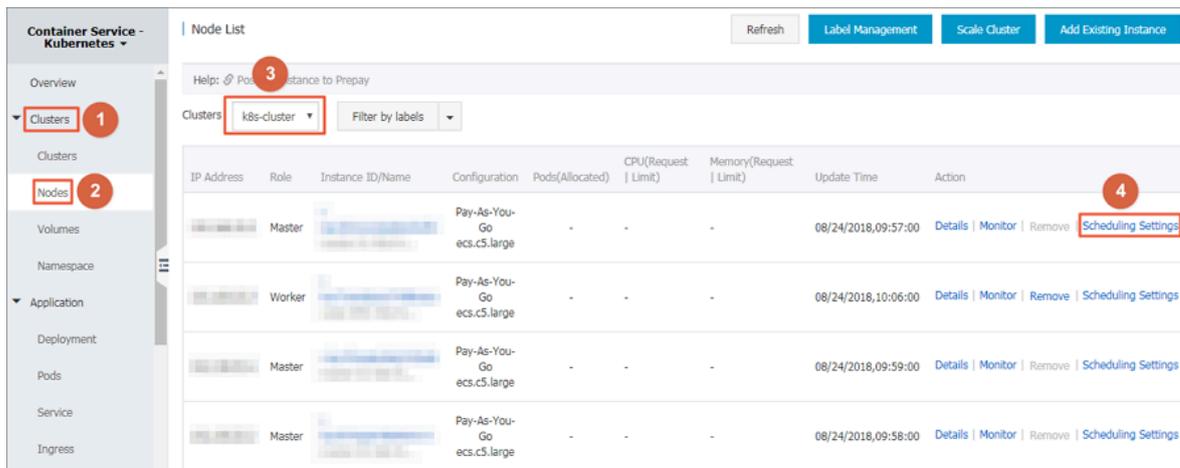
## 3.5 Set node scheduling

You can set node scheduling through the web interface so that you can allocate loads to each node properly.

#### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Clusters > Nodes to enter the Node List page.

3. Select a cluster, select a node under the cluster, and click Schedule Settings on the right.

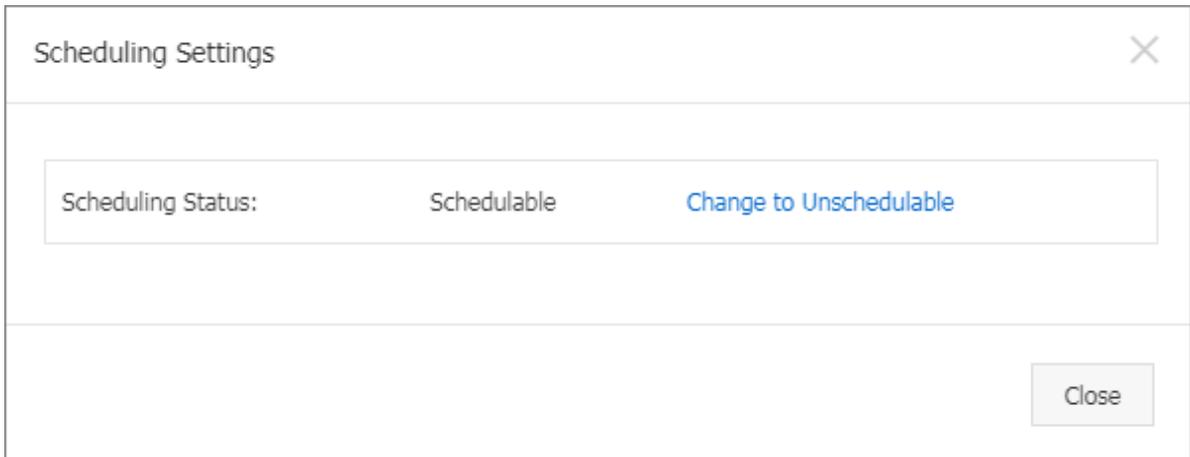


4. Set node scheduling in the displayed dialog box. In this example, click Change to Unschedulable to set the node to unschedulable.

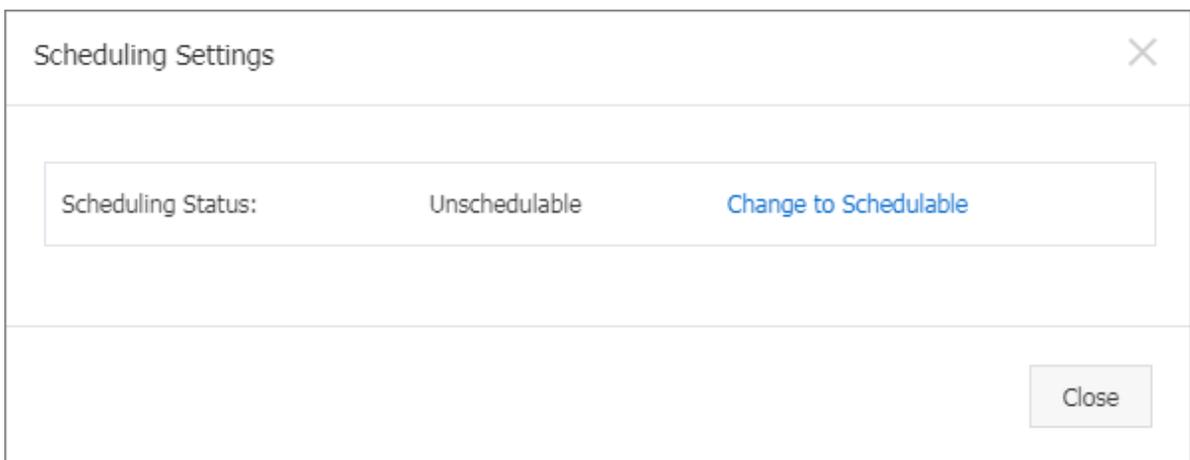


Note:

The scheduling status of the current node is displayed in the Scheduling Settings dialog box, which is schedulable by default. You can change the status.



After the status is set, the scheduling status of the node changes in the dialog box.



### What's next

When you deploy your application later, you can find that pods are not scheduled to the node.

## 3.6 Remove a node

Before you restart or release an ECS instance in a Kubernetes cluster, you need to remove the ECS node from the cluster. This topic describes how to remove a node from a Kubernetes cluster.

### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have connected to the Kubernetes cluster by using `kubectl`, see [#unique\\_26](#).

## Context

- Removing a node causes pod migration. This may affect the services provided by the pods running on the node. Therefore, we recommend that you remove a node only when fewer services are in demand.
- Removing a node may cause unintended risks. We recommend that you back up your data in advance and exercise caution when performing this action.
- When you start to remove a node, the node is automatically set to the unschedulable status.
- Only Worker nodes can be removed.

## Procedure

1. Run the following command to migrate the pods on the target node to other nodes:



### Note:

You must ensure that other nodes in the Kubernetes cluster have sufficient resources to run the pods that you want to migrate.

```
kubectll drain node-name
```



### Note:

The `node-name` parameter must be in the format of `your-region-name.node-id`.

- `your-region-name` indicates the name of the region where your cluster resides.
- `node-id` indicates the ID of the ECS instance in which the node to be removed resides. For example, `cn-hangzhou.i-xxx`.

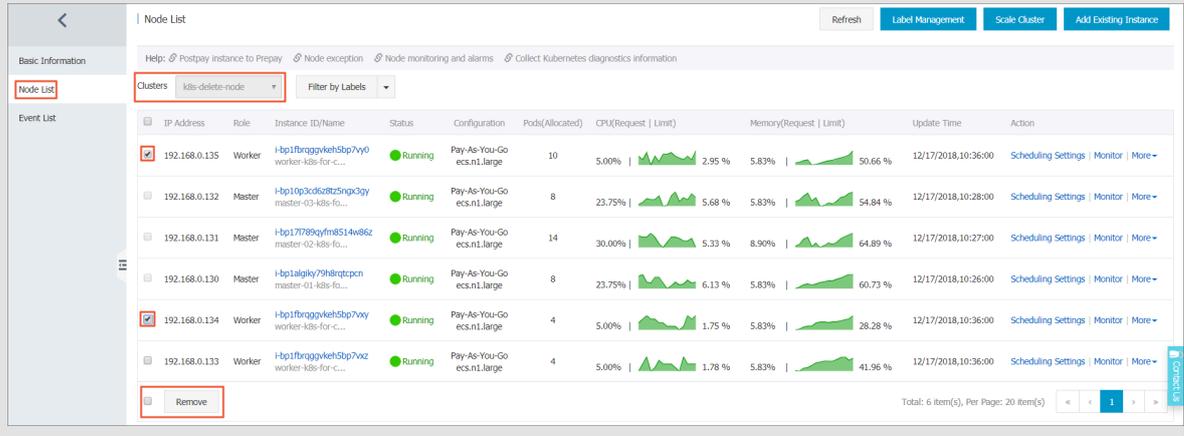
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Nodes.
3. Under the target cluster, select the target node, and choose More > Remove in the Action column.

IP Address	Role	Instance ID/Name	Status	Configuration	Pods(Allocated)	CPU(Request   Limit)	Memory(Request   Limit)	Update Time	Action
	Worker	worker-k8s-for-c...	Running	Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n1.large	10	5.00%   2.85 %	5.83%   50.52 %	12/17/2018,10:36:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   <b>More</b>
	Master	master-03-k8s-fo...	Running	Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n1.large	8	23.75%   5.75 %	5.83%   54.69 %	12/17/2018,10:28:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   <b>Remove</b>
	Master	master-02-k8s-fo...	Running	Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n1.large	14	30.00%   5.45 %	8.90%   64.63 %	12/17/2018,10:27:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More

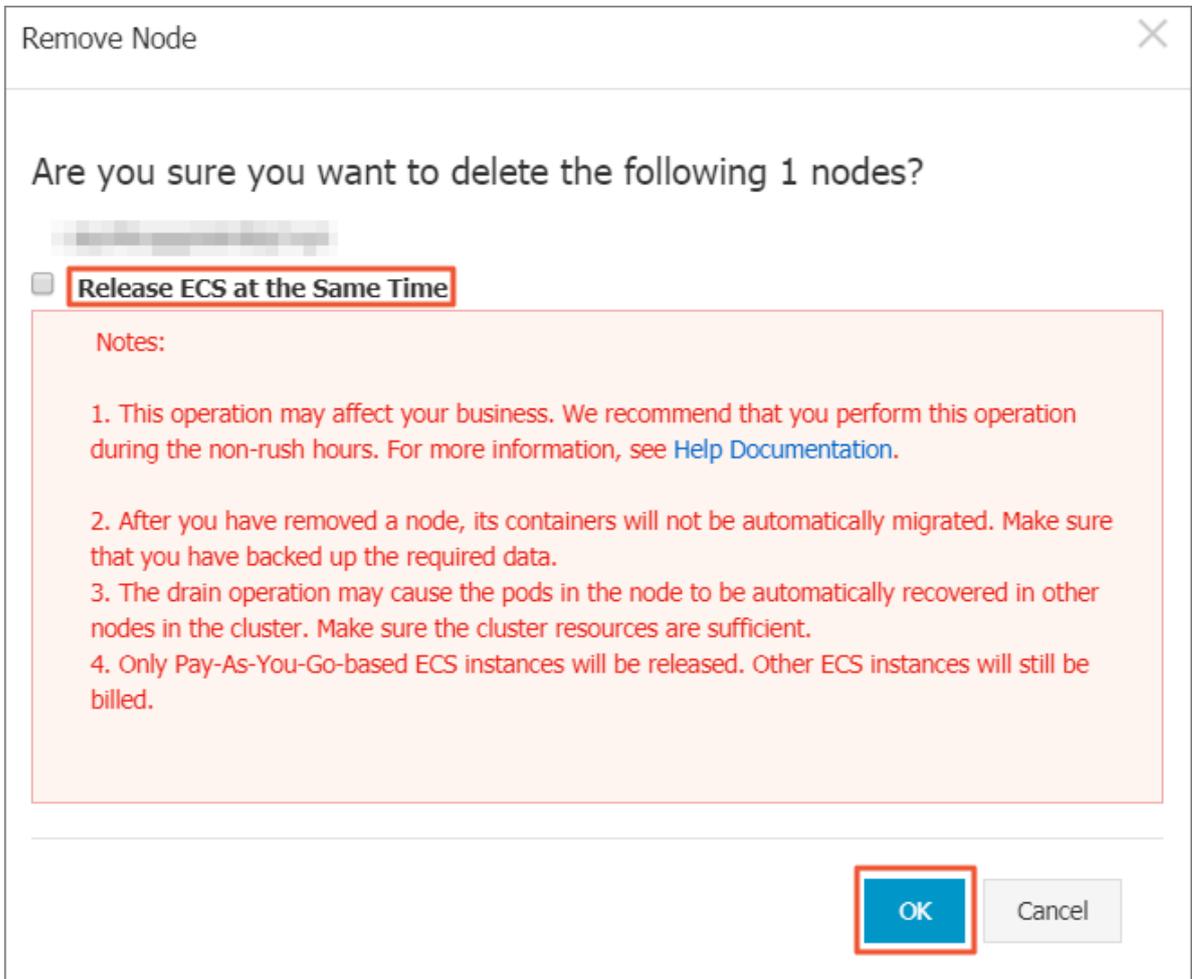


### Note:

If you want to remove multiple nodes at a time, you can select the target cluster on the Node List page, select all the nodes to be removed, and then click Remove.



4. Optional: Select the Release ECS at the Same Time check box to permanently release the ECS instance where the node resides.



Note:

- Only Pay-As-You-Go ECS instances can be released.

- A Subscription ECS instance will be released automatically when it expires.
- If you do not select the Release ECS at the Same Time check box, the ECS instance in which the node resides will continue to be charged.

5. Click OK.

## 3.7 View resource request and limit on nodes

The Container Service Console allows you to view resource usage of each node in a Kubernetes cluster.

### Prerequisites

You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Clusters > Nodes.

You can view the resource usage for the CPU and memory of each node, namely, the request and limit, which are calculated as follows:

- CPU request = sum (CPU request value from all pods on the current node) /total CPU of the current node.
- CPU limit= sum (actual CPU usage of all pods on the current node)/total CPU of the current node.
- Memory request = sum (memory request value from all pods on the current node) /total memory of the current node.
- Memory limit= sum (actual memory usage of all pods on the current node)/total memory of the current node.



Note:

- You can allocate loads to a node based on the resource usage on the node. For more information, see [#unique\\_23](#).

- When both the request and limit on a node is 100%, no new pod is scheduled to the node.

IP Address	Role	Instance ID/Name	Configuration	Pods(Allocated)	CPU(Request   Limit)	Memory(Request   Limit)	Update Time	Action
	Master		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n4.xlarge	12	26.25%   3.15 %	4.35%   53.87 %	09/18/2018,14:02:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More ▾
	Master		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n4.xlarge	7	21.25%   4.05 %	2.56%   53.01 %	09/18/2018,14:04:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More ▾
	Master		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n4.xlarge	7	21.25%   3.88 %	2.56%   54.15 %	09/18/2018,14:01:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More ▾
	Worker		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n4.xlarge	18	52.75%   2.13 %	2.81%   30.70 %	09/18/2018,14:13:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More ▾

### 3.8 Configure a Kubernetes GPU cluster to support GPU scheduling

From version 1.8, Kubernetes will support hardware acceleration devices such as NVIDIA GPU, InfiniBand, and FPGA, by using [device plugins](#). Furthermore, GPU solutions of Kubernetes open source communities will be deprecated in version 1.10, and removed from the master code in version 1.11.

We recommend that you use an Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes cluster combined with GPU to run highly dense computational tasks such as machine learning and image processing. With this method, you can implement one-click deployment, elastic scaling, and other functions, without needing to install NVIDIA drivers or Compute Unified Device Architecture (CUDA) beforehand.

#### Background information

During cluster creation, Container Service performs the following operations:

- Creates Elastic Compute Service (ECS) instances, sets the public key used for SSH logon from the management node to other nodes, and installs and configures the Kubernetes cluster by using CloudInit.
- Creates a security group to allow inbound access to all ICMP ports in a VPC.
- Creates a new VPC and VSwitch if you do not use the existing VPC, and also creates an SNAT entry for the VSwitch.
- Creates VPC routing rules.
- Creates a NAT gateway and Elastic IP (EIP).

- Creates a Resource Access Management (RAM) user and AccessKey (AK). This RAM user has the permissions to query, create, and delete ECS instances, add and delete cloud disks, and all relevant access permissions for Server Load Balancer (SLB) instances, CloudMonitor, VPC, Log Service, and Network Attached Storage (NAS) services. The Kubernetes cluster dynamically creates the SLB instances, cloud disks, and VPC routing rules according to your configurations.
- Creates an intranet SLB instance and exposes port 6443.
- Creates an Internet SLB instance and exposes ports 6443, 8443, and 22. (If you enable the SSH logon for Internet access when creating the cluster, port 22 is exposed. Otherwise, port 22 is not exposed.)

### Prerequisites

You have activated Container Service, Resource Orchestration Service (ROS), and RAM.

You have logged on to the [Container Service console](#), [ROS console](#), and [RAM console](#) to activate the corresponding services.



#### Note:

The deployment of Container Service Kubernetes clusters depends on the application deployment capabilities of Alibaba Cloud ROS. Therefore, you need to activate ROS before creating a Kubernetes cluster.

### Limits

- The SLB instance created with the Kubernetes cluster only supports the Pay-As-You-Go billing method.
- The Kubernetes cluster supports only Virtual Private Cloud (VPC).
- By default, each account has a specified quota of the number of cloud resources that it can create. If the number of cloud resources has reached the quota limit, the

account cannot create a cluster. Make sure you have sufficient resource quota to create a cluster. You can open a ticket to increase your quota.

- By default, each account can create up to 5 clusters across all regions and add up to 40 nodes to each cluster. You can open a ticket to create more clusters or nodes.
- By default, each account can create up to 100 security groups.
- By default, each account can create up to 60 Pay-As-You-Go SLB instances.
- By default, each account can create up to 20 EIPs.
- The limits for ECS instances are as follows:
  - Only the CentOS operating system is supported.
  - Only Pay-As-You-Go ECS instances can be created.

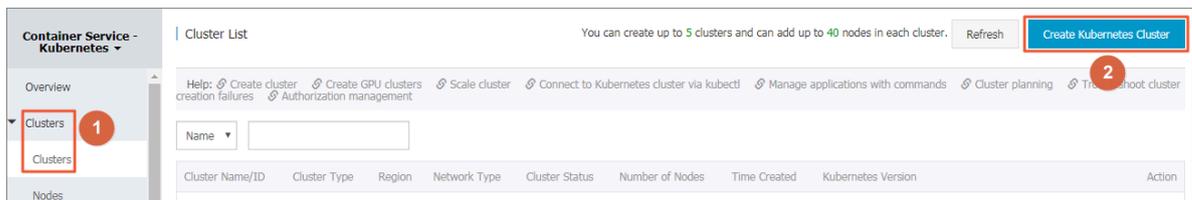


Note:

After creating an instance, you can [#unique\\_29](#) in the ECS console.

### Create a GN5 Kubernetes cluster

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, click Clusters.
3. Click Create Kubernetes Cluster in the upper-right corner.



By default, the Create Kubernetes Cluster page is displayed.



Note:

Worker nodes are set to use GPU ECS instances to create a GPU cluster. For information about other parameter settings, see [#unique\\_17](#).

4. Set the Worker nodes. In this example, the gn5 GPU instance type is selected to set Worker nodes as GPU working nodes.

a. If you choose to create Worker instances, you must select the instance type and the number of Worker nodes. In this example, two GPU nodes are created.

b. If you choose to add existing instances, you need to have already created GPU cloud servers in the same region where the cluster is to be created.

5. After you have completed all required settings, click Create to start cluster deployment.

6. After the cluster is created, choose Clusters > Nodes in the left-side navigation pane.

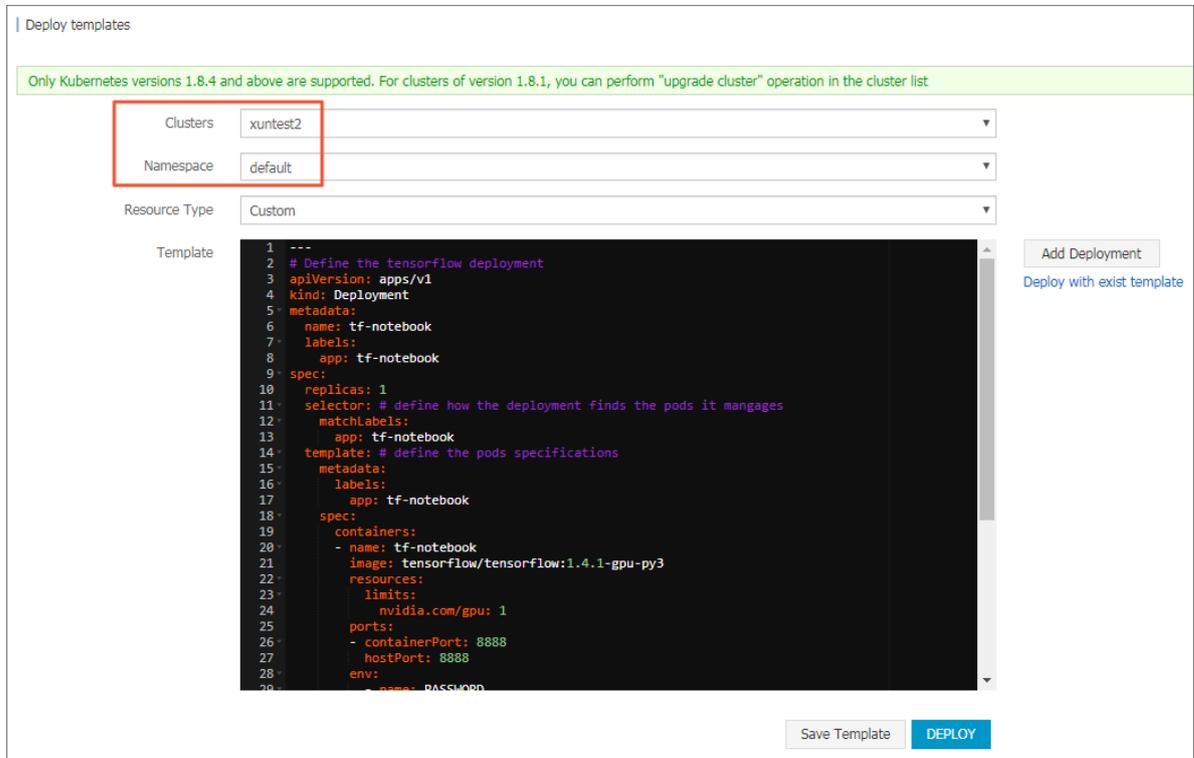
7. To view the GPU devices mounted to either of the created nodes, select the created cluster from the clusters drop-down list, select one of the created Worker nodes, and choose More > Details in the action column.

#### Create a GPU experimental environment to run TensorFlow

Jupyter is a popular tool used by data scientists for the experimental environment TensorFlow. This topic describes an example of how to deploy a Jupyter application.

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose Applications > Deployments.

3. Click Create by Template in the upper-right corner.
4. Select the target cluster and namespace and then select a sample template or the custom template from the resource type drop-down list. After you orchestrate your template, click DEPLOY.



In this example, a Jupyter application template is orchestrated. The template includes a deployment and a service.

```

---
# Define the tensorflow deployment
apiVersion : apps / v1
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : tf - notebook
  labels :
    app : tf - notebook
spec :
  replicas : 1
  selector : # define how the deployment finds the
pods it manages
  matchLabels :
    app : tf - notebook
  template : # define the pods specifications
  metadata :
    labels :
      app : tf - notebook
  spec :
    containers :
      - name : tf - notebook
        image : tensorflow / tensorflow : 1 . 4 . 1 - gpu - py3
        resources :
          limits :

```

```

    nvidia . com / gpu : 1 # specify
the number of NVIDIA GPUs that are called by
the application
  ports :
    - containerPort : 8888
      hostPort : 8888
    env :
      - name : PASSWORD # specify
the password used to access the Jupyter service .
You can modify the password as needed .
      value : mypassw0rd

# Define the tensorflow service
---
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  name : tf - notebook
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 80
      targetPort : 8888
      name : jupyter
  selector :
    app : tf - notebook
  type : LoadBalancer # set Alibaba
Cloud SLB service for the application so that
its services are accessible from the Internet .

```

If you use a GPU deployment solution of Kubernetes earlier than 1.9.3, you must define the following volumes in which the NVIDIA drivers reside:

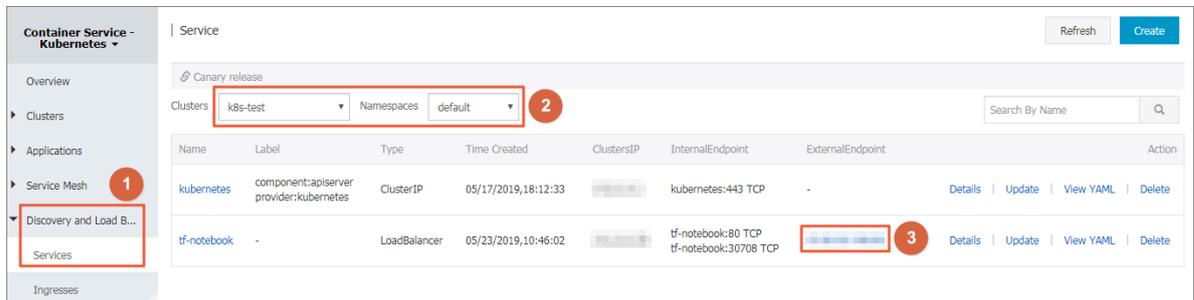
```

volumes :
  - hostPath :
      path : / usr / lib / nvidia - 375 / bin
      name : bin
  - hostPath :
      path : / usr / lib / nvidia - 375
      name : lib

```

When you orchestrate your deployment template in a cluster by using the GPU deployment solution of Kubernetes earlier than 1.9.3, your template must be highly dependent on the cluster. As a result, portability of the template is not achievable. However, in Kubernetes version 1.9.3 and later, you do not need to specify these hostPaths because the NIVEA plugins automatically discover the library links and execution files required by the drivers.

5. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Services**. Then, select the target cluster and namespace, and then view the external endpoint of the tf-notebook service.



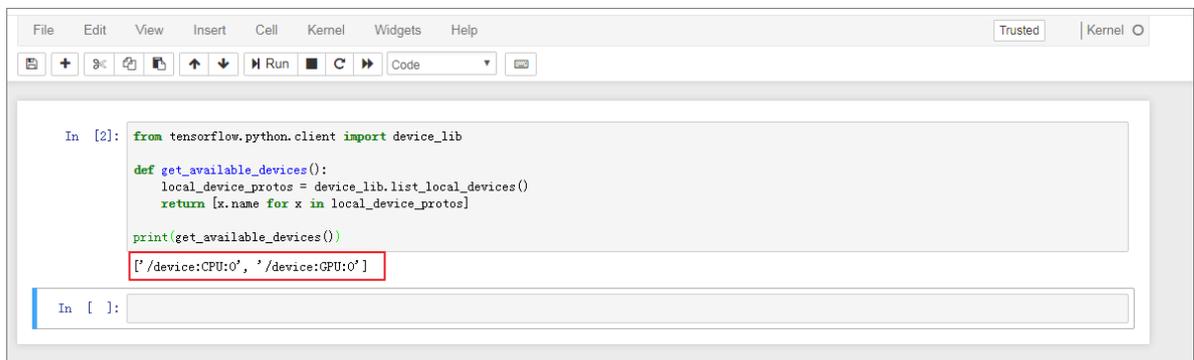
6. Access the Jupyter application in a browser. The access address is `http://EXTERNAL_IP`. You need to enter the password set in the template.
7. By running the following program, you can verify that this Jupyter application can use GPU, and the program is able to list all devices that can be used by Tensorflow:

```

from tensorflow.python.client import device_lib

def get_available_devices():
    local_device_protos = device_lib.list_local_devices()
    return [x.name for x in local_device_protos]

print(get_available_devices())
    
```



### 3.9 Use Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes GPU node labels for scheduling

When you implement GPU computing through a Kubernetes cluster, you can schedule an application to the node installed with GPU devices as needed by using GPU node labels.

#### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster that has GPU nodes. For more information, see [#unique\\_31](#).

- You have connected to the Master node, which makes it easier to view node labels and other information. For more information, see [#unique\\_26](#).

## Context

When deploying NVIDIA GPU nodes, Kubernetes that runs on Alibaba Cloud discovers the GPU attribute and exposes it as the node label information. Node labels provide the following benefits:

1. Node labels help you filter GPU nodes.
2. Node labels can be used as the scheduling conditions for application deployment.

## Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Nodes.



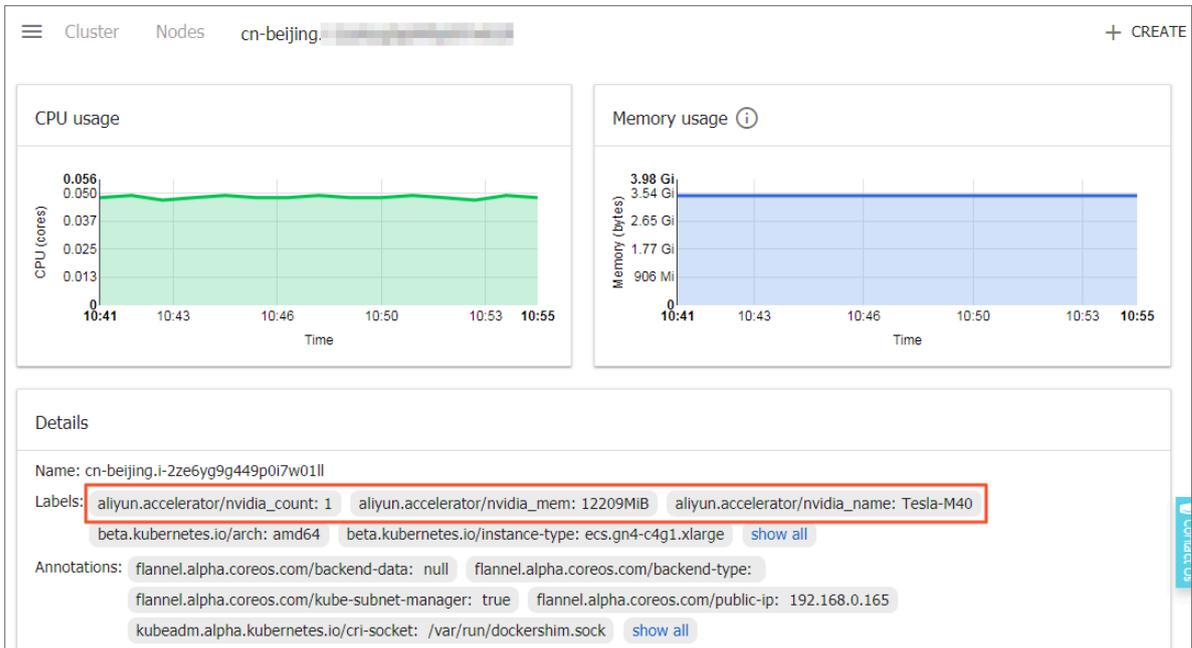
### Note:

In this example, the cluster has three Worker nodes of which two Worker nodes are mounted with GPU devices. You need to view the node IP addresses for verification.

The screenshot shows the 'Node List' page in the Container Service console. The cluster is 'k8s-test'. The table below lists the nodes:

IP Address	Role	Instance ID/Name	Configuration	Pods(Allocated)	CPU(Request   Limit)	Memory(Request   Limit)	Update Time	Action
165	Worker		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.gn4-c4g1.xlarge	5	30.00%   1.23 %	2.52%   11.20 %	12/05/2018,13:40:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More-
166	Worker		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.gn4-c4g1.xlarge	11	30.00%   1.88 %	2.52%   16.33 %	12/05/2018,13:40:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More-
164	Master		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n1.large	8	23.75%   4.68 %	5.83%   38.71 %	12/05/2018,13:30:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More-
163	Master		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n1.large	8	23.75%   4.30 %	5.83%   39.02 %	12/05/2018,13:29:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More-
162	Master		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n1.large	14	30.00%   6.25 %	8.90%   47.82 %	12/05/2018,13:28:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More-
167	Worker		Pay-As-You-Go ecs.n4.large	4	10.00%   1.90 %	12.03%   52.84 %	12/05/2018,13:55:00	Scheduling Settings   Monitor   More-

3. Select a GPU node, and choose More > Details in the action column. Then, you can view the GPU node label on the Kubernetes dashboard.



You can also log on to a Master node and run the following command to view the GPU node label:

```
# kubectl get nodes
NAME                                STATUS    ROLES    AGE
cn-beijing.i-2ze2dy2h9w-97v65uuaf  Ready    master   2d
cn-beijing.i-2ze8o1a45q-dv5q8a7luz  Ready    < none > 2d
cn-beijing.i-2ze8o1a45q-dv5q8a7lv0  Ready    < none > 2d
cn-beijing.i-2ze9xylyn1-1vop7g5bwe  Ready    master   2d
cn-beijing.i-2zed5sw8sn-jniq6mf5e5  Ready    master   2d
cn-beijing.i-2zej9s0zij-ykp9pwf7lu  Ready    < none > 2d
```

# Compare this node with the node displayed in the console to determine the GPU node.

Select a GPU node and run the following command to view the GPU node label:

```
# kubectl describe node cn-beijing.i-2ze8o1a45q-dv5q8a7luz
Name: cn-beijing.i-2ze8o1a45q-dv5q8a7luz
Roles: < none >
Labels: aliyun.accelerator/nvidia_count=1
        # This field is important.
        aliyun.accelerator/nvidia_mem=12209MiB
        aliyun.accelerator/nvidia_name=Tesla-M40
        beta.kubernetes.io/arch=amd64
```

```

beta . kubernetes . io / instance - type = ecs
. gn4 - c4g1 . xlarge
beta . kubernetes . io / os = linux
failure - domain . beta . kubernetes . io /
region = cn - beijing
failure - domain . beta . kubernetes . io /
zone = cn - beijing - a
kubernetes . io / hostname = cn - beijing . i -
2ze8o1a45q dv5q8a7luz
.....
    
```

In this example, the GPU node contains the following three node labels:

Key	Value
aliyun . accelerato r / nvidia_cou nt	Number of GPU cores
aliyun . accelerato r / nvidia_mem	GPU memory in MiB
aliyun . accelerato r / nvidia_nam e	Name of the GPU computing card of the NVIDIA device

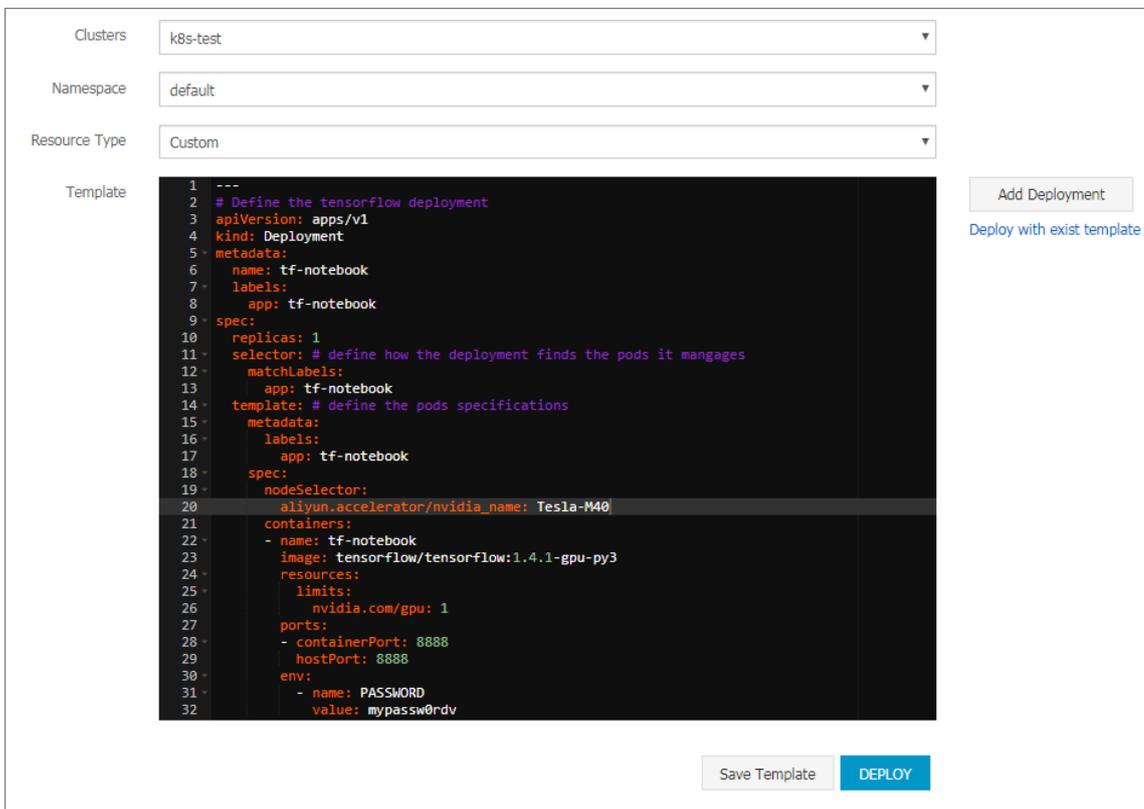
The GPU cloud servers of the same type share the same GPU computing card name . Therefore, you can use this label to filter nodes.

```

# kubectl get no - l aliyun . accelerato r / nvidia_nam e
= Tesla - M40
NAME                               STATUS    ROLES    AGE
VERSION
cn - beijing . i - 2ze8o1a45q dv5q8a7luz    Ready    < none >
2d                               v1 . 11 . 2
cn - beijing . i - 2ze8o1a45q dv5q8a7lv0    Ready    < none >
2d                               v1 . 11 . 2
    
```

4. Return to the Container Service console home page. Then, in the left-side navigation pane, choose Applications > Deployments, and click Create by Template in the upper-right corner.

a) Create a TensorFlow application and schedule this application to the GPU node.



In this example, the YAML template is orchestrated as follows:

```

---
# Define the tensorflow deployment
apiVersion: apps / v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: tf - notebook
  labels:
    app: tf - notebook
spec:
  replicas: 1
  selector: # define how the deployment finds the
pods it manages
    matchLabels:
      app: tf - notebook
  template: # Define the pod specificat ions .
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: tf - notebook
    spec:
      nodeSelector:
        # This field is important .
        aliyun . accelerato r / nvidia_nam e : Tesla - M40
      containers:
    
```

```

- name : tf - notebook
  image : tensorflow / tensorflow : 1 . 4 . 1 - gpu - py3
  resources :
    limits :
      nvidia . com / gpu : 1
      # This field is important .
  ports :
- containerPort : 8888
  hostPort : 8888
  env :
- name : PASSWORD
  value : mypassw0rd v

```

b) You can also avoid deploying an application to a GPU node. The following deploys an Nginx pod and schedules it by using the node affinity feature. For more information about node affinity, see [#unique\\_32](#).

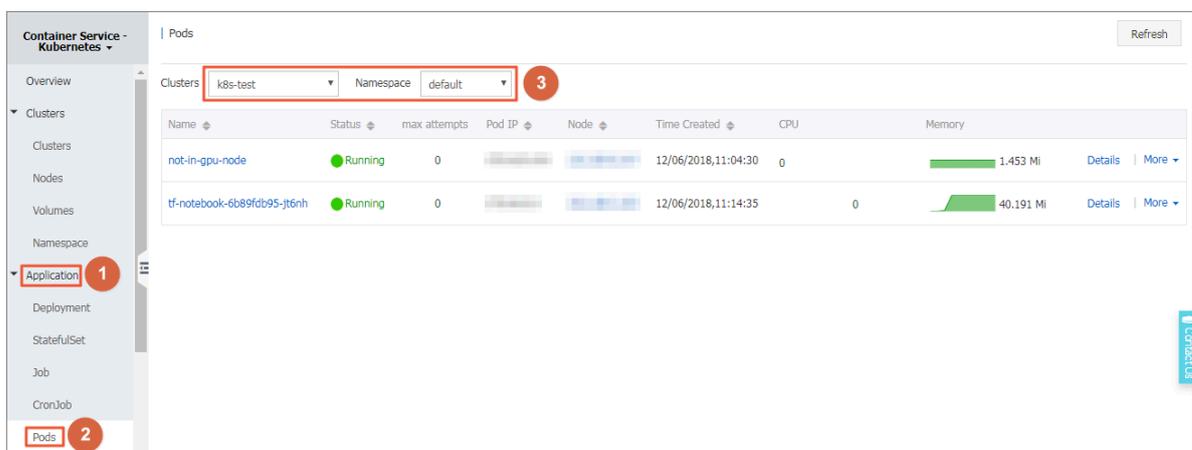
The example YAML template is orchestrated as follows:

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  name : not - in - gpu - node
spec :
  affinity :
    nodeAffinity :
      requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution :
        nodeSelectorTerms :
- matchExpressions :
- key : aliyun . accelerator / nvidia_name
  operator : DoesNotExist
  containers :
- name : not - in - gpu - node
  image : nginx

```

5. In the left-side navigation pane, choose **Applications > Pods**, and select the target cluster and namespace.



## Result

In the pod list, you can see that the two example pods have been scheduled to the target nodes, indicating you have implemented flexible scheduling by using GPU node labels.

## 3.10 Mount a disk to the Docker data directory

This topic describes how to mount a disk to the Docker data directory. If the number of containers or images that run on an ECS instance increases constantly, the ECS instance disk capacity may be insufficient. In this case, you can expand the Docker data directory by mounting a disk to the ECS instance.

### Docker data directory

Docker data is stored in disks through a union file system (UnionFS). The default container data and image data of Docker is stored in the `/var/lib/docker` directory. You can run the `du` command to view the disk space size occupied by this directory.

```
# du -h --max-depth=0 /var/lib/docker
7.9G /var/lib/docker
```

### Scenarios

Generally, a Docker image occupies a large amount of disk space. If you want to use multiple Docker images or a large number of containers, you must mount a disk to the Docker data directory to ensure sufficient disk capacity is available.

### Mount a disk

To mount a disk to the Docker data directory, follow these steps:

1. Create a disk and mount it to the target ECS instance for which you want to expand the disk capacity.
  - a. Log on to the [ECS console](#) to create a disk.
  - b. In the left-side navigation pane, click Instances.
  - c. Click the target ECS instance ID.
  - d. In the left-side navigation pane, click Disks.
  - e. In the upper-right corner, click Mount.
  - f. In the displayed dialog box, select the created disk from the target disk drop-down list, and then click OK.
  - g. Click Mount to mount the new disk to the target ECS instance, and record the new disk mounting point which is in the format of `/ dev / xvda * or / dev / vda *`.

**2. Log on to the target ECS instance to format the new disk.**

- a. Run the `ls -l /dev/xvd*` or `ls -l /dev/vd*` command to verify whether a disk that has the recorded mounting point has been mounted to the ECS instance.
- b. Run the `fdisk` command to partition the new disk, and then run the `mkfs .ext4` command to format the new disk.

```

root@c836831d69e4040e797eff4d3c4dcd983-node2:~# ll /dev/xvd*
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 202,  0 May 26 15:44 /dev/xvda
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 202,  1 May 26 15:44 /dev/xvda1
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 202, 16 May 27 13:03 /dev/xvdb
root@c836831d69e4040e797eff4d3c4dcd983-node2:~# fdisk -S 56 /dev/xvdb
Device contains neither a valid DOS partition table, nor Sun, SGI or OSF disklabel
Building a new DOS disklabel with disk identifier 0x446953ae.
Changes will remain in memory only, until you decide to write them.
After that, of course, the previous content won't be recoverable.

Warning: invalid flag 0x0000 of partition table 4 will be corrected by w(rite)

Command (m for help): n
Partition type:
   p   primary (0 primary, 0 extended, 4 free)
   e   extended
Select (default p): p
Partition number (1-4, default 1): 1
First sector (2048-62914559, default 2048):
Using default value 2048
Last sector, +sectors or +size[K,M,G] (2048-62914559, default 62914559):
Using default value 62914559

Command (m for help): wq
The partition table has been altered!

Calling ioctl() to re-read partition table.
Syncing disks.
root@c836831d69e4040e797eff4d3c4dcd983-node2:~# ll /dev/xvd*
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 202,  0 May 26 15:44 /dev/xvda
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 202,  1 May 26 15:44 /dev/xvda1
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 202, 16 May 27 13:08 /dev/xvdb
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 202, 17 May 27 13:08 /dev/xvdb1
root@c836831d69e4040e797eff4d3c4dcd983-node2:~# mkfs.ext4 /dev/xvdb1
mke2fs 1.42.9 (4-Feb-2014)
Filesystem label=
OS type: Linux
Block size=4096 (log=2)
Fragment size=4096 (log=2)
Stride=0 blocks, Stripe width=0 blocks
1966080 inodes, 7864064 blocks
393203 blocks (5.00%) reserved for the super user
First data block=0
Maximum filesystem blocks=4294967296
240 block groups
32768 blocks per group, 32768 fragments per group
8192 inodes per group
Superblock backups stored on blocks:
    32768, 98304, 163840, 229376, 294912, 819200, 884736, 1605632, 2654208,
    4096000

Allocating group tables: done
Writing inode tables: done
Creating journal (32768 blocks): done
Writing superblocks and filesystem accounting information: done

```

### 3. Migrate the Docker data to the new disk.

If you do not want to suspend the applications that run on the target ECS instance, you must migrate the applications. For how to migrate applications on a Swarm cluster, see [Schedule an application to specified nodes](#). For how to migrate applications on a Kubernetes cluster, see [Safely drain a node while respecting application SLOs](#).

- a. To ensure that data can be migrated, run the `service docker stop` command to stop Docker daemon, and run the `service kubelet stop` command to stop kubelet.
- b. Migrate the Docker directory data to a backup directory. For example, `mv /var/lib/docker /var/lib/docker_data`.
- c. Mount the new disk to the `/var/lib/docker` and `/var/lib/kubelet` directories. For example,

```
echo "/dev/xvdb1 /var/lib/container/ ext4
defaults 0 0" >> /etc/fstab
echo "/var/lib/container/kubelet /var/lib/kubelet
none defaults,bind 0 0" >> /etc/fstab
echo "/var/lib/container/docker /var/lib/docker
none defaults,bind 0 0" >> /etc/fstab

mkdir /var/lib/docker
mount -a
```

- d. Migrate the backed up Docker data to the new disk. For example, `mv /var/lib/docker_data/* /var/lib/docker/`.

4. Start the Docker daemon and kubelet, and check the data location.
  - a. Run the `service docker start` command to start the Docker daemon, and run the `service kubelet start` command to start kubelet.
  - b. Run the `df` command to verify whether `/var/lib/docker` has been mounted to the new disk. If you need to start the Kubernetes cluster, skip this step.

```
root@c836831d69e4040e797eff4d3c4dcd983-node2:/var/lib# df
Filesystem      1K-blocks    Used Available Use% Mounted on
udev            497280         4   497276   1% /dev
tmpfs           101628         712   100916   1% /run
/dev/xvda1      41151808 1928420 37109960   5% /
none              4             0         4   0% /sys/fs/cgroup
none            5120           0        5120   0% /run/lock
none           508136         288   507848   1% /run/shm
none           102400          0   102400   0% /run/user
/dev/xvdb1      30831612 667168 28575248   3% /var/lib/docker
```

- c. Run the `docker ps` command to check whether containers are lost. Restart containers as needed. For example, you can restart a container that has not been set the `restart : always` label.

```
root@c836831d69e4040e797eff4d3c4dcd983-node2:/var/lib# docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE                                     COMMAND                  CREATED            STATUS
4f564091bffa       registry.aliyuncs.com/acs/logspout:0.1-41e0e21  "/bin/logspout"        21 hours ago      Up 3 minutes
gspout_2
a5aba5fbedae       registry.aliyuncs.com/acs/ilogtail:0.9.9        "/bin/sh -c 'sh /usr/"  21 hours ago      Up 3 minutes
gtail_2
5e3d8fe154bb       registry.aliyuncs.com/acs/monitoring-agent:0.7-1cf85e6  "acs-mon-run.sh --hel"  21 hours ago      Up 3 minutes
_acs-monitoring-agent_1
fb72c2388b0e       registry.aliyuncs.com/acs/volume-driver:0.7-252cb09  "acs-agent volume_exe"  21 hours ago      Up 3 minutes
er_volumedriver_2
604fcb4ad720       registry.aliyuncs.com/acs/routing:0.7-c8c15f0       "/opt/run.sh"           21 hours ago      Up 3 minutes
uting_1
8fe1d6ed15b5       registry.aliyuncs.com/acs/agent:0.7-6967e86        "acs-agent join --nod"  21 hours ago      Up 3 minutes
999da3883264       registry.aliyuncs.com/acs/tunnel-agent:0.21        "/acs/agent -config=c"  21 hours ago      Up 3 minutes
```

5. If a container has been migrated to other nodes, you can schedule it back to the target node to which you mounted the new disk.

For more information, see [Container Service](#).

### 3.11 Mount a disk to a Kubernetes cluster node

This topic describes how to mount a disk to a Kubernetes cluster node. Mounting a disk allows you to expand the Docker data directory and maintain a sufficient disk capacity when the number of containers or images that run on a node increases.

#### Prerequisites

Your Kubernetes cluster version must be v1.10.4 or later.

You can mount a disk to an existing Kubernetes cluster node by using either of the following methods:

- If no disk is mounted to the existing node, see [Mount a disk to the Docker data directory](#).
- If you have created a disk for the existing node, but you have failed to mount the disk to the node, you can follow these steps.



#### Note:

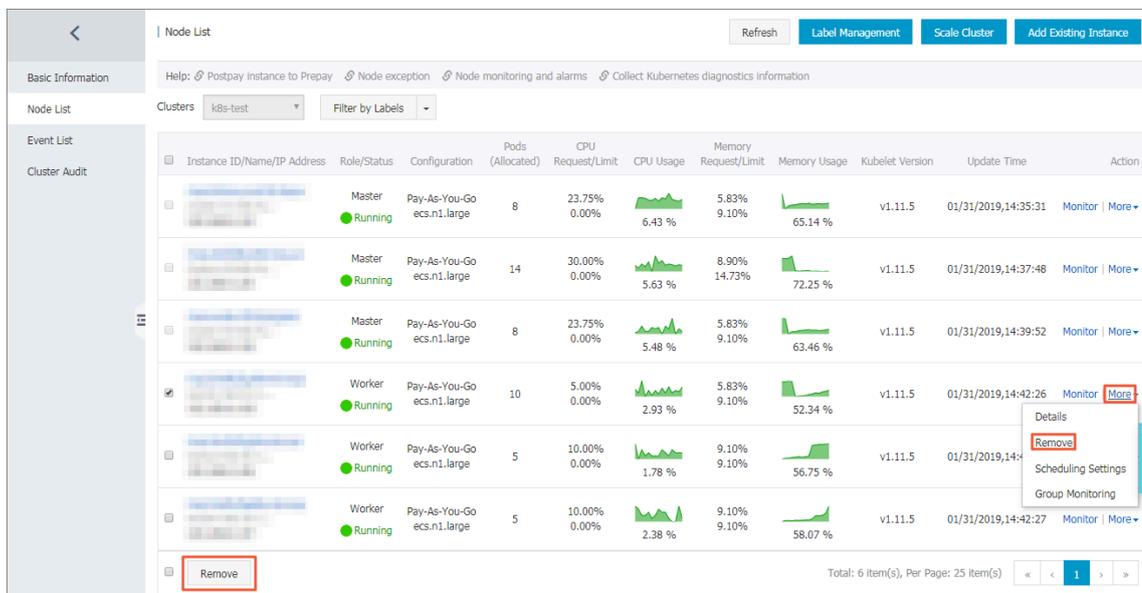
- We recommend that you create a snapshot of the target node or back up node data to avoid data loss.
- Additionally, you must ensure that you can schedule your cluster applications to other nodes.
- We recommend that you perform this operation during off-peak service hours to avoid disruptions to your business.
- Draining a node reschedules pods on the node to other nodes. Therefore, you must ensure that your Kubernetes cluster contains sufficient nodes. We recommend that you add cluster nodes in advance as needed.

Before performing the operation, you need to determine whether a disk is already mounted to the target cluster node. To do so, run the `df` command on the target Worker node, and then check whether `/var/lib/docker` has been mounted to `/dev/vdb1`. If the disk mounting operation failed, you can mount the disk by following these steps.

```
[root@xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx ~]# df
Filesystem      1K-blocks    Used Available Use% Mounted on
/dev/vda1       41151808 2273772 36764604   6% /
devtmpfs        3995592     0 3995592   0% /dev
tmpfs           4005096     0 4005096   0% /dev/shm
tmpfs           4005096     508 4004588   1% /run
tmpfs           4005096     0 4005096   0% /sys/fs/cgroup
/dev/vdb1       101441464 61668 96120584   1% /var/lib/docker
tmpfs           801020     0 801020   0% /run/user/0
```

1. Set the target node as unschedulable. For more information, see [Mark node as unschedulable](#).
2. Drain the target node. For more information, see [Safely drain a node](#).

- 3. Remove the target node. This topic uses the Container Service console as an example.
  - a. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
  - b. In the left-side navigation pane, click Node.
  - c. Select the target node, and click Remove or choose More > Remove.



- d. In the displayed Remove Node dialog box, click OK.

Remove Node ✕

---

Are you sure you want to delete the following 1 nodes?

[Redacted Node Name]

**Release ECS at the Same Time**

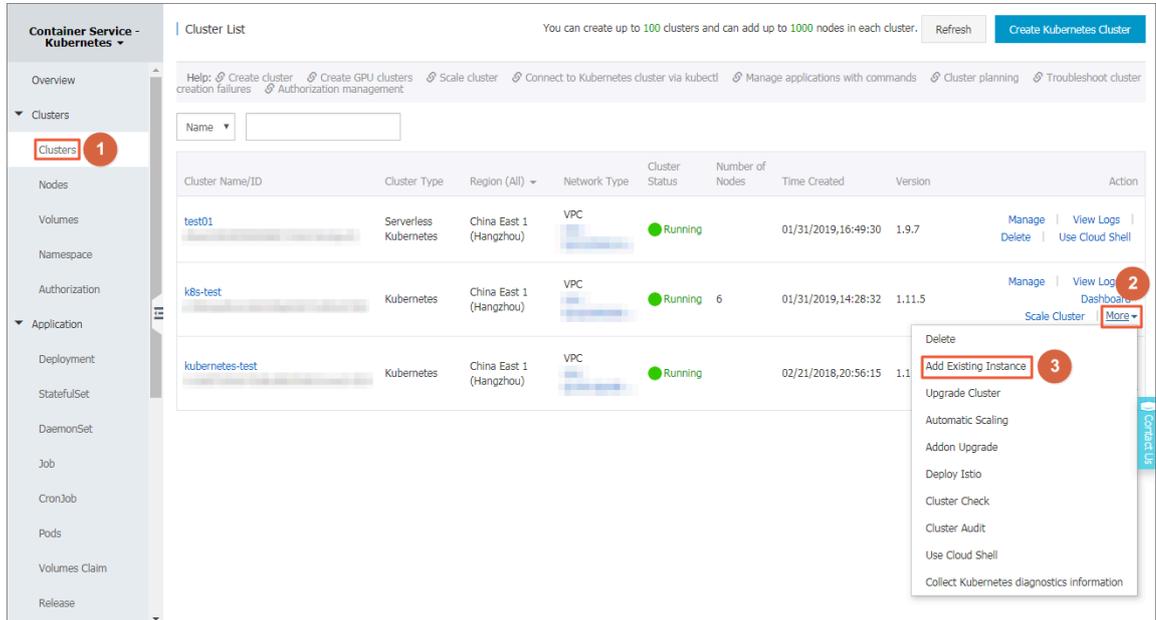
**Notes:**

1. This operation may affect your business. We recommend that you perform this operation during the non-rush hours. For more information, see [Help Documentation](#).
2. After you have removed a node, its containers will not be automatically migrated. Make sure that you have backed up the required data.
3. The drain operation may cause the pods in the node to be automatically recovered in other nodes in the cluster. Make sure the cluster resources are sufficient.
4. Only Pay-As-You-Go-based ECS instances will be released. Other ECS instances will still be billed.

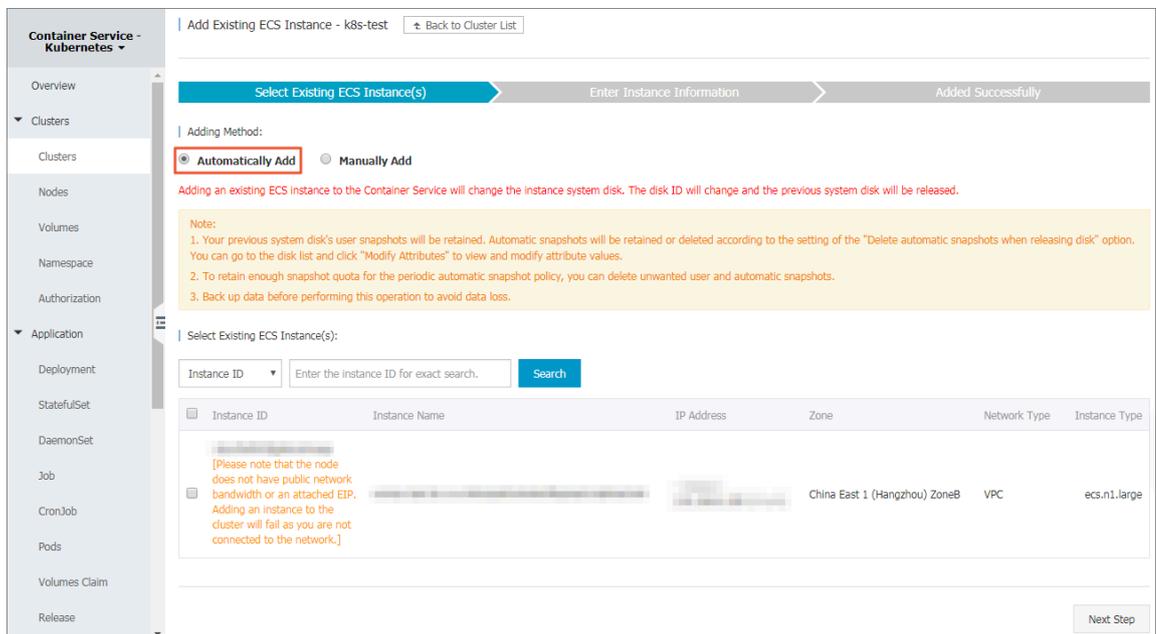
---

 **Note:**  
We recommend that you do not select the Release ECS at the same time check box. Otherwise, the ECS instance used by the target node will be released.

4. Add the removed node to the cluster.
  - a. In the left-side navigation pane, click Clusters.
  - b. On the right of the target cluster, choose More > Add Existing Instance.



- c. Select Automatically Add or Manually Add. In this example, the instance is added automatically.



- d. Select the existing instance and then click Next Step.
- e. Turn on the Format Data Disk switch.

Select Existing ECS Instance(s)
Enter Instance Information

Cluster ID/Name :

Information of the cluster to which to add the ECS instance(s).

Format Data Disk :

If an ECS instance already has data disks attached, the first data disk will be automatically formatted and mounted to /var/lib/docker.  
The original data in the data disk will be lost after formatting. Make sure that you have backed up all important data.  
If the ECS instance does not have any data disks attached, no new data disk will be mounted.

Login :  Password

**f. Complete other required settings.**

After the node has been added to the cluster, you can log on to the node to run the `df` command to check whether a disk has been mounted to the target node.

The following figure shows the disk has been amounted to the target node.

```
[root@115.159.101.101 ~]# df
Filesystem      1K-blocks    Used Available Use% Mounted on
/dev/vda1       41151808 2273772  36764604   6% /
devtmpfs        3995592     0    3995592   0% /dev
tmpfs           4005096     0    4005096   0% /dev/shm
tmpfs           4005096     508    4004588   1% /run
tmpfs           4005096     0    4005096   0% /sys/fs/cgroup
/dev/vdb1       101441464  61668  96120584   1% /var/lib/docker
tmpfs           801020     0     801020   0% /run/user/0
```

## 4 Application management

### 4.1 Create a deployment application by using an image

This topic describes how to use an image to create a deployment application. In this topic, an Nginx application that is accessible to the Internet is created.

#### Prerequisites

A Kubernetes cluster is created with ACK. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

#### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose Application > Deployment, and then click Create by Image in the upper-right corner.
3. Set Name, Cluster, Namespace, Replicas, Type, Tag, and Annotation. The replicas parameter indicates the number of pods contained in the application. Then click Next.



#### Note:

In this example, you need to select the Deployment type.

If you do not set Namespace, the system automatically uses the default namespace.

Create Application

Basic Information | Container | Advanced | Done

Name:   
The name should be 1-64 characters long, and can contain numbers, lower case English letters and hyphens, but cannot start with a hyphen.

Clusters:

Namespaces:

Replicas:

Type:

Tag: [+ Add](#)

Annotation: [+ Add](#)

[Back](#) [Next](#)

#### 4. Configure a container.



Note:

You can configure multiple containers for the pod of the application.

##### a) Set general container parameters.

- **Image Name:** Click **Select image** to select the image in the displayed dialog box and then click **OK**. In this example, select the **Nginx** image.

You can also enter a private registry in the format of `domainname / namespace / imagename : tag` to specify an image.

- **Image Version:** Click **Select image version** to select a version. If you do not select an image version, the system uses the latest version by default.
- **Always pull image:** Container Service caches the image to improve deployment efficiency. During deployment, if the tag of the newly specified image is the same as that of the cached image, Container Service reuses the cached image, instead of re-pulling the same image. Therefore, if you do not modify the image tag when changing your code and image, the early image in the local cache is used in the application deployment. If you select this check box, Container Service ignores the cached image and re-pulls an image when deploying the application to make sure the latest image and code are always used.
- **Image pull secret:** Create a Secret for the image. A secret is required to pull a image from a private image repository. For more information, see [#unique\\_39](#).
- **Resource Limit:** Specify the upper limit for the resources (CPU and memory) that can be used by this application to avoid occupying excessive resources. CPU is measured in the number of cores. Memory is measured in bytes, which can be MiB.
- **Resource Request:** Specify how many resources (CPU and memory) are reserved for the application. These resources can be set to be exclusive to the container by using this parameter. If you do not set this parameter, other

services or processes will compete for resources. Then the application may become unavailable due to resource shortage.

- **Init Container:** Select this check box to create an Init Container that contains useful tools. For more information, see [Init containers](#).

The screenshot displays the 'Container' configuration tab in a management console. It features three main sections: 'Basic Information', 'Container', and 'Advanced'. The 'Container' section is active and contains a 'General' sidebar on the left. The main configuration area includes the following fields:

- Image Name:** A text input field containing 'nginx' and a 'Select image' button.
- Image Version:** A text input field containing 'latest' and a 'Select image version' button.
- Always pull image:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked, with a link to 'Image pull secret'.
- Resource Limit:** Fields for CPU (input: 'eg : 500m'), Core, and Memory (input: 'eg : 128Mi', unit: 'MiB').
- Resource Request:** Fields for CPU (input: '500m'), Core, and Memory (input: 'eg : 128Mi', unit: 'MiB').
- Init Container:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.

**b) Optional: Set environment variables.**

You can use key-value pairs to set environment variables for the pods. Environment variables are used to add environment labels or pass configurations for the pods. For more information, see [Pod variable](#).

**c) Optional: Set health checks.**

You can set liveness probes and readiness probes. Liveness probes are used to detect when to restart the container. Readiness probes determine if the

container is ready to receive traffic. For more information about health checks, see [Configure liveness and readiness probes](#).

Health Check

**Liveness**  Enable

HTTP TCP Command ▾

Protocol HTTP ▾

path

Port

Http Header

name

value

Initial Delay

Period

Timeout

Success Threshold

Failure Threshold

**Readiness**  Enable

HTTP TCP Command ▾

Protocol HTTP ▾

path

Port

Http Header

name

value

Initial Delay

Period

Timeout

Request method	Description
HTTP request	<p>With this health check method, you can send an HTTP GET request to the container. The following parameters are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Protocol:</b> HTTP/HTTPS.</li> <li>• <b>Path:</b> the path to access the HTTP server.</li> <li>• <b>Port:</b> the number or name of the access port exposed by the container. The port number must be in the range of 1 to 65535.</li> <li>• <b>HTTP Header:</b> custom headers in the HTTP request. HTTP allows repeated headers. You can use a key-value pair to set an HTTP Header.</li> <li>• <b>Initial Delay (in seconds):</b> the initialDelaySeconds parameter, indicating the number of seconds for which the first probe must wait after the container is started. The default value is 3.</li> <li>• <b>Period (in seconds):</b> the periodseconds parameter, indicating the interval at which probes are performed. The default value is 10. The minimum value is 1.</li> <li>• <b>Timeout (in seconds):</b> the timeoutSeconds parameter, indicating the number of time that the probe has timed out. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1.</li> <li>• <b>Success Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive successful probes needed for determining a probe success after a failed probe . The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1. It must be set to 1 for a liveness probe.</li> <li>• <b>Failure Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive failed probes needed for determining a probe failure after a successful probe. The default value is 3. The minimum value is 1.</li> </ul>

Request method	Description
TCP connection	<p>If you use this health check method, a TCP socket is sent to the container. The kubelet then attempts to open the socket of the container on a specified port. If a connection can be established, the container is considered healthy. If not, it is considered unhealthy. The following parameters are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· <b>Port:</b> the number or name of the access port exposed by the container. The port number must be in the range of 1 to 65535.</li> <li>· <b>Initial Delay (in seconds):</b> the initialDelaySeconds parameter, indicating the seconds for the first liveness or readiness probe must wait for after the container is started. The default value is 15.</li> <li>· <b>Period (in seconds):</b> the periodseconds parameter, indicating the interval at which probes are performed. The default value is 10. The minimum value is 1.</li> <li>· <b>Timeout (in seconds):</b> the timeoutSeconds parameter, indicating the number of time that the probe has timed out. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1.</li> <li>· <b>Success Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive successful probes needed for determining a probe success after a failed probe . The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1. It must be set to 1 for a liveness probe.</li> <li>· <b>Failure Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive failed probes needed for determining a probe failure after a successful probe. The default value is 3. The <b>minimum value is 1.</b></li> </ul>

Request method	Description
Command line	<p>With this health check method, you can detect the container health by executing a probe detection command in the container. The following parameters are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Command:</b> a probe command used to detect the container health.</li> <li>• <b>Initial Delay (in seconds):</b> the <code>initialDelaySeconds</code> parameter, indicating the number of seconds for which the first liveness or readiness probe must wait after the container is started. The default value is 5.</li> <li>• <b>Period (in seconds):</b> the <code>periodSeconds</code> parameter, indicating the interval at which probes are performed. The default value is 10. The minimum value 1.</li> <li>• <b>Timeout (in seconds):</b> the <code>timeoutSeconds</code> parameter, indicating the number of time that the probe has timed out. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1.</li> <li>• <b>Success Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive successful probes needed for determining a probe success after a failed probe . The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1. It must be set to 1 for a liveness probe.</li> <li>• <b>Failure Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive failed probes needed for determining a probe failure after a successful probe. The default value is 3. The minimum value is 1.</li> </ul>

## d) Set life cycle rules.

You can set the following parameters for the container life cycle: start, post start, and pre-stop. For more information, see [Attach handlers to container lifecycle events](#).

- **Start:** Set a pre-start command and parameter for the container.
- **Post Start:** Set a post-start command for the container.
- **Pre Stop:** Set a pre-stop command for the container.

Life cycle	Start:	Command	<code>["/bin/sh","-c","echo Hello &gt; /user/share/message"]</code>
		Parameter	<input type="text"/>
	Post Start:	Command	<input type="text"/>
	Pre Stop:	Command	<code>["/user/sbin/nginx","-s","quit"]</code>

e) Optional: Set volumes.

You can configure local storage and cloud storage.

- **local storage:** Supported storage types include HostPath, ConfigMap, Secret, and EmptyDir. By setting a type of local storage, you can mount its mount source to the container path. For more information, see [Volumes](#).
- **cloud storage:** Supported types of cloud storage include disks, Network Attached Storage (NAS), and Object Storage Service (OSS).

This example sets a disk as the volume and mounts the disk to the `/tmp` container path. Then container data generated in this path is stored to the disk.

Data Volume:			
+ Add local storage			
Storage type	Mount source	Container Path	
+ Add cloud storage			
Storage type	Mount source	Container Path	
Disk	pvc-disk	/tmp	-

f) Optional: Set Log Service. You can set collection parameters and customize tags.

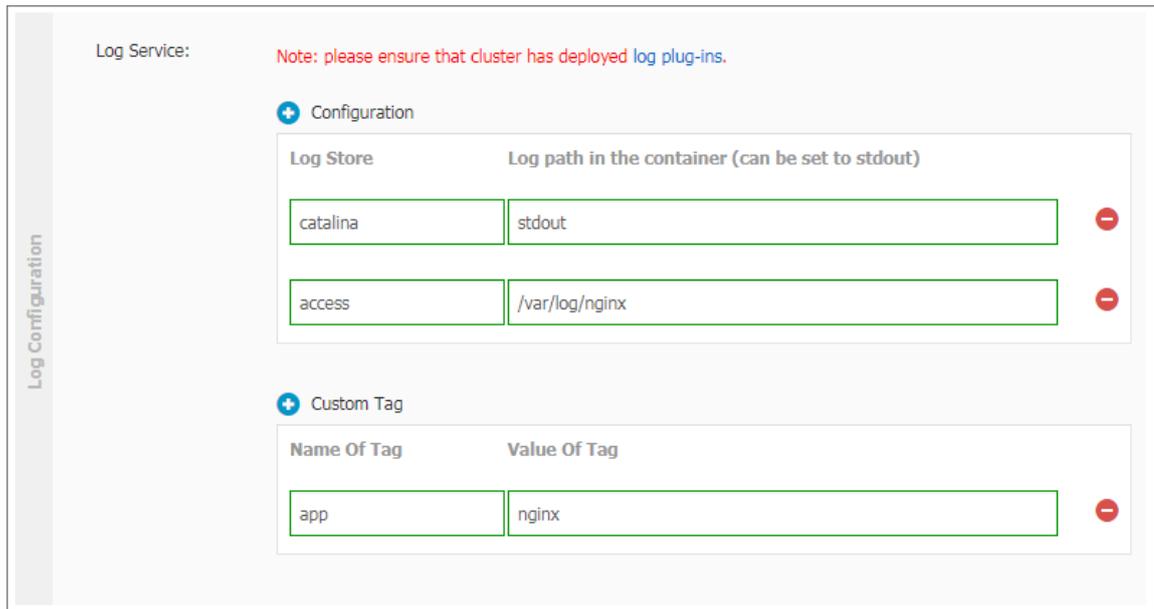
 **Note:**

**Make sure that you have deployed a Kubernetes cluster and installed the log plugin on the cluster.**

Set the following log collection parameters:

- **Log Store:** Set a Logstore. After you specify the Logstore name, the Logstore is generated in Log Service to store collected logs.
- **Log path in the container:** Set this parameter to stdout or set a log path.
  - **stdout:** If you set the log path parameter to stdout, you can collect the standard output logs of the container.
  - **text log:** If you specify a container log path, you can collect the text logs of the path. Wildcards can be used in setting the log file name for a log path. In this example, text logs in the path of /var/log/nginx are collected.

You can also customize log tags. The customized log tags can be collected together with container output logs and can benefit log analysis actions such as collecting log statistics and filtering specific logs.



5. Click Next.

## 6. Configure advanced settings.

### a) Set Access Control.

You can set the methods to expose the application pod and then click **Create**. In this example, a cluster IP service and an Ingress are set to create an Nginx application that is accessible for the Internet.

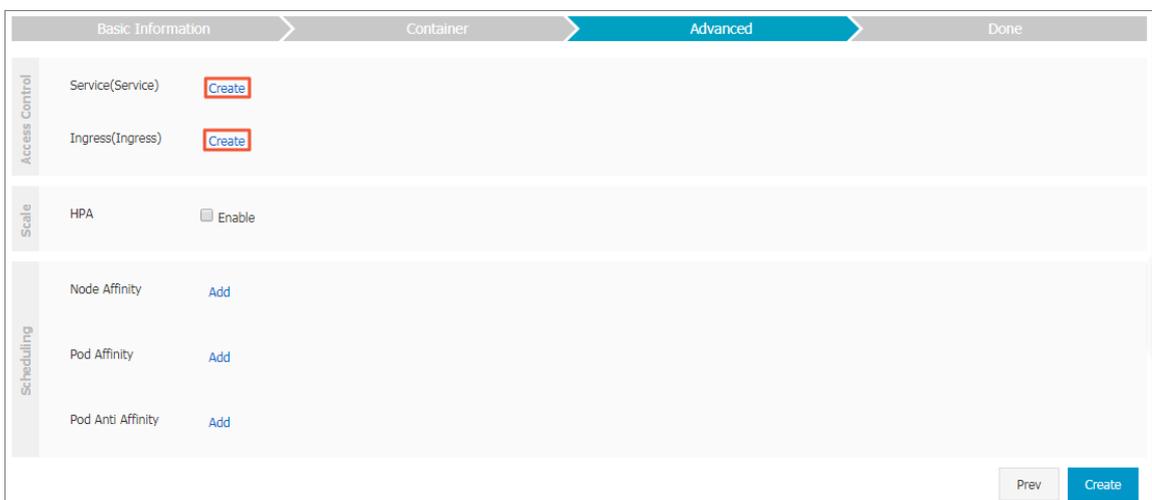


#### Note:

You can set access methods according to the communication requirements of your application.

- **Internal application** : an application that works only inside the cluster. You can create a cluster IP service or a node port service as needed for communication within the cluster.

- External application : an application that needs to be exposed to the Internet. You can set how the application is accessed by using either of the following two methods:
  - Create a Server Load Balancer service. This method uses Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer (SLB) to provide Internet accessibility for the application.
  - Create a cluster IP service or a node port service, and create an Ingress. This method provides Internet accessibility through the Ingress. For more information, see [Ingress](#).



A. Click Create on the right of Service. Configure a service in the displayed dialog box, and then click Create.

Create Service
✕

Name:

Type: Server Load Balancer ▼ public ▼

Port Mapping: + Add

Name	service port	Container Port	Protocol	
nginx-svc	80	80	TCP ▼	-

Annotation: + Add [Annotations for load balancer](#)

Tag: + Add

Create
Cancel

- **Name:** Enter the service name. The default is `applicationname - svc`.
- **Type:** Select one service type.
  - **Cluster IP:** Exposes the service by using the internal IP address of your cluster. If you select this service type, the service is accessible only within the cluster.
  - **Node port:** Exposes the service by using the IP address and the static port (NodePort) of each node. A node port service routes to a cluster IP service that is automatically created. You can access the node port service from outside the cluster by requesting `< NodeIP > : < NodePort >`.
  - **Server Load Balancer:** Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer service. With this type of service, you can set an Internet or intranet access method

for your application. SLB can route to a node port service and a cluster IP service.

- **Port Mapping:** Add a service port and a container port, and select the TCP or UDP protocol. If you select the node port Type, you must add a node port to avoid port conflict.
- **annotation:** Add an annotation to the service. You can set SLB parameters. For more information, see [#unique\\_40](#).
- **Tag:** Add a tag to the service to identify the service.

B. Click Create on the right of Ingress. In the displayed dialog box, configure an Ingress rule for the application pod, and then click Create. For more information, see [#unique\\_41](#).



**Note:**

When you create an application by using an image, you can create an Ingress rule for only one service. In this example, a virtual host name is used as the

test domain name. You need to add a record to the host. You must use a filing domain name when you create your application.

```
101 . 37 . 224 . 146    foo . bar . com    # This is the
IP address of the Ingress .
```

The screenshot shows a 'Create' dialog box with the following fields and options:

- Name:** nginx-ingress
- Rule:** + Add
- Domain:** foo.bar.com
- Select \*:** [blurred]ainer.com or Custom
- path:** e.g./
- Services:** + Add
  - Name:** nginx-svc
  - Port:** 80
- EnableTLS:**
- Service weight:**  Enable
- Grayscale release:** + Add *After the gray rule is set, the request meeting the rule will be routed to the new service. If you set a weight other than 100, the request to satisfy the gamma rule will continue to be routed to the new and old version services according to the weights.*
- Annotation:** + Add *rewrite annotation*
- Tag:** + Add

Buttons: **Create** (blue), **Cancel** (gray)

C. In the access control area, the created service and Ingress are displayed. You can perform further configurations by clicking Update or Delete.

Create Application

Basic Information
Container
Advanced
Done

Access Control

Services(Service) Update Delete

service port	Container Port	Protocol
80	80	TCP

Ingresses(Ingress) Update Delete

Domain	path	Name	service port
foo.bar.com		nginx-svc	80

Scale

HPA  Enable

Scheduling

Update Method  Enable

RollingUpdate  OnDelete

Max Unavailable:  %

Max Surge:  %

Node Affinity: [Add](#)

Pod Affinity: [Add](#)

Pod Anti Affinity: [Add](#)

**b) Optional: Set Horizontal Pod Autoscaling (HPA).**

You enable HPA by selecting the Enable check box. Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes provides pod auto scaling to deal with different application workloads. That is, you can change the number of pods according to the container CPU and memory usage.

Scale

HPA  Enable

Metric:

Condition: Usage  %

Maximum Replicas:  Range : 2-100

Minimum Replicas:  Range : 1-100

**Note:**

To use this function, you must set required resources for the pod. Otherwise, pod auto scaling cannot take effect. For more information, see general container settings.

- **Metric:** resource type. CPU or memory is available. This parameter must be specified with a resource type that is the same as the required resource type.
- **Condition:** the percentage value of resource usage. The number of containers increases when the resource usage exceeds this value.
- **Maximum Replicas:** the maximum number of the containers that the deployment can include.
- **Minimum Replicas:** the minimum number of the containers that the deployment can include.

c) Optional: Set Scheduling.

You can set an update method, node affinity, pod affinity, and pod anti affinity. For more information, see [Affinity and anti-affinity](#).



**Note:**

Affinity scheduling depends on node tags and pod tags. You can use built-in or customized tags to schedule nodes or pods.

**A. Set Update Method.**

You can select the `RollingUpdate` or `Recreate` (OnDelete) method to replace old pods with new ones. For more information, see [Deployments](#).

**B. Set Node Affinity by using node tags.**

The screenshot shows a 'Create' dialog box with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It is divided into two main sections: 'Required' and 'Preferred'.

**Required Section:** Contains an 'Add Rule' button. Below it is a 'Selector' configuration box with an 'Add' button and a close button (X). This box contains a table with three columns: 'Tag Name', 'Operator', and 'Tag Value'. Two rows are visible, both with 'kubernetes.io/hostname' in the 'Tag Name' column and 'In' in the 'Operator' column. The 'Tag Value' column contains a redacted value. A red minus sign is next to each row.

**Preferred Section:** Contains an 'Add Rule' button. Below it is a 'Weight' input field with the value '100'. Underneath is a 'Selector' configuration box with an 'Add' button and a close button (X). This box contains a table with three columns: 'Tag Name', 'Operator', and 'Tag Value'. One row is visible with 'kubernetes.io/hostname' in the 'Tag Name' column and 'NotIn' in the 'Operator' column. The 'Tag Value' column contains a redacted value. A red minus sign is next to the row.

At the bottom right of the dialog box are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Required rules and preferred rules are supported, and available operators include `In`, `NotIn`, `Exists`, `DoesNotExist`, `Gt`, and `Lt`.

- Required rules must be satisfied and correspond to `requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution`. The required rules

have the same effect as `NodeSelect` or `.`. In this example, the pod can be scheduled to only a node with the specified tags.

You can add multiple required rules, but only one required rule needs to be satisfied for pod scheduling.

- Preferred rules can be unnecessarily satisfied and correspond to `preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution`. With the scheduling setting in this example, the system tries not to schedule the pod to the nodes with the specified tag.

You can also set `Weight` for each preferred rule. If multiple nodes satisfies the preferred rules, the system schedules the pod to a node with the highest weight.

You can add multiple preferred rules, and all the rules must be satisfied for pod scheduling.

- C. Set Pod Affinity to deploy the application pod in a topology domain together with other pods. For example, to reduce network latency between the services

that communicate with each other, you can deploy their pods to a topology domain (for example, a host).

The screenshot shows a 'Create' dialog box with two main sections: 'Required' and 'Preferred'.  
**Required Section:**  
 - 'Add Rule' button.  
 - 'Namespace' dropdown menu: 'default' (highlighted with a red box and callout 1).  
 - 'Topology Key' text input: 'kubernetes.io/hostname'.  
 - 'Selector' button (highlighted with a red box and callout 2).  
 - Table with columns: Tag Name, Operator, Tag Value.  
 - Row 1: 'app', 'In', 'nginx' (highlighted with a red box and callout 3).  
**Preferred Section:**  
 - 'Add Rule' button.  
 - 'Weight' text input: '100'.  
 - 'Namespace' dropdown menu: 'default'.  
 - 'Topology Key' text input: 'kubernetes.io/hostname'.  
 - 'Selector' button.  
 - Table with columns: Tag Name, Operator, Tag Value.  
 - Row 1: 'app', 'NotIn', 'wordpress'.  
 At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

You can schedule pods according to tags of pods running on nodes. Required rules and preferred rules are supported, and available operators include `In`, `NotIn`, `Exists`, `DoesNotExist`.

- Required rules must be satisfied and correspond to `requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution`. All specified conditions of required rules must be met for pod affinity scheduling.
- Namespace: Set a namespace. This parameter is required because the scheduling policy is based on pod tags.

- **Topology Key:** Set a topology domain to which pods are scheduled. This parameter takes effect through node tags. For example, if you set `kubernetes.io/hostname` as the topology key, a node is used to identify a topology. If you set `beta.kubernetes.io/os` as the topology key, a node operating system is used to identify a topology.
- **Selector:** Click this button to add a required rule.
- **View Application List:** Click View Application List, a dialog box is displayed. In the dialog box, you can view applications in each namespace and export application tags to the dialog box in which you set pod affinity.
- **Required rule tag:** Set a tag name, its operator, and the tag value for existing applications. This example schedules the application to be created to a host on which applications tagged with `app:nginx` run.
- Preferred rules can be unnecessarily satisfied and correspond to `preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution`. Specified conditions of required rules will be met as many as possible for pod affinity scheduling.

You can set Weight for each preferred rule. The weight value range is 1 to 100. If multiple nodes satisfies the preferred rules, the system schedules the pod to a node with the highest weight. Other parameters are the same with the required rule setting.

D. Set Pod Anti Affinity to deploy the application pods in a topology domain that excludes other pods. Scenarios that use pod anti affinity scheduling include:

- Distribute the pods of a service to different topology domains (for example , different hosts) to improve the service stability.
- Grant a pod the exclusive access to a node so as to guarantee that no other pods use the resources of the node.
- Distribute pods of the services that may affect each other to different hosts.

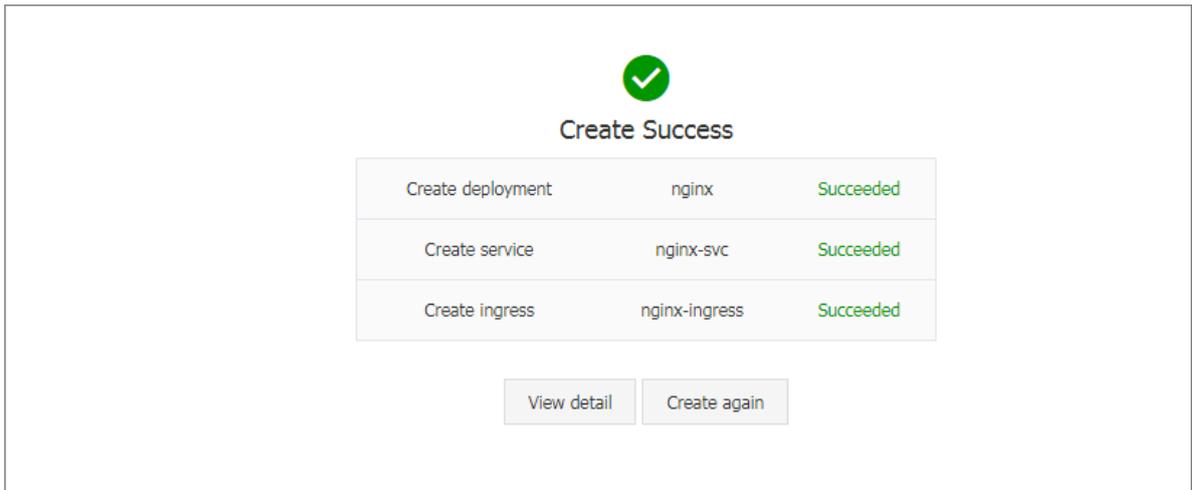


**Note:**

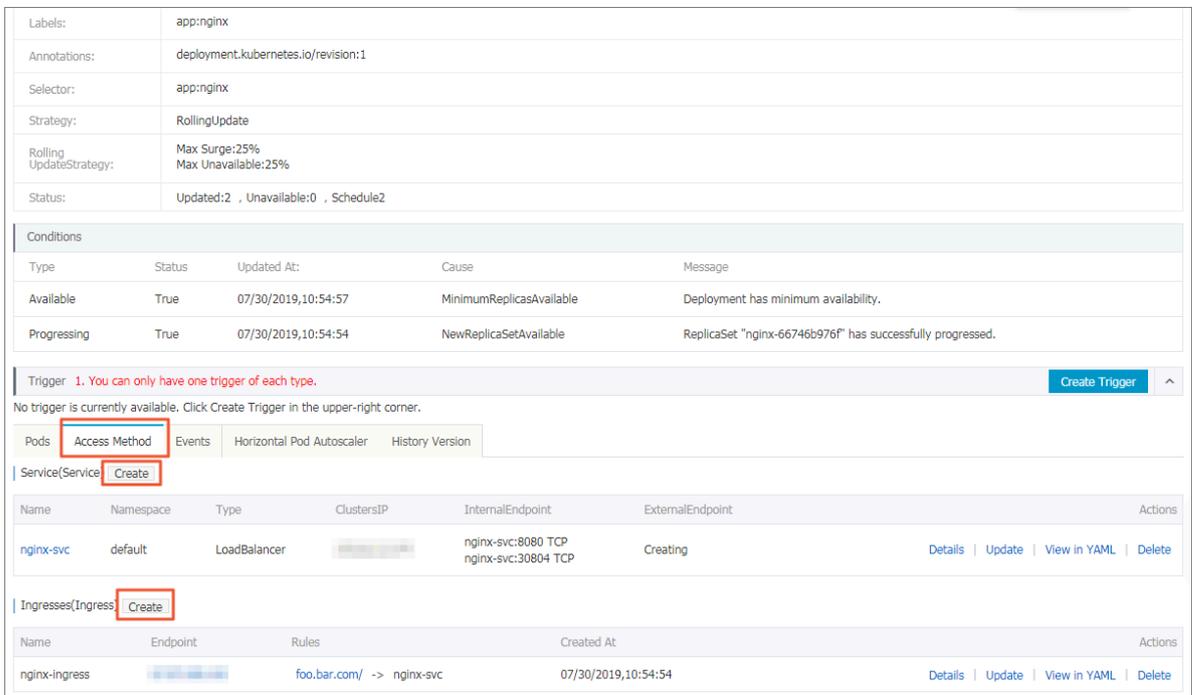
You can set pod anti affinity scheduling by using the same method as setting pod affinity scheduling. But the same scheduling rules have different

meanings for these two types of scheduling. You need to select appropriate scheduling rules as needed.

7. Click Create.
8. After you create the application, a new page is displayed by default to prompt that you have created the application and lists objects included in the application. You can click View detail to view the deployment details.



The nginx-deployment page is displayed by default.



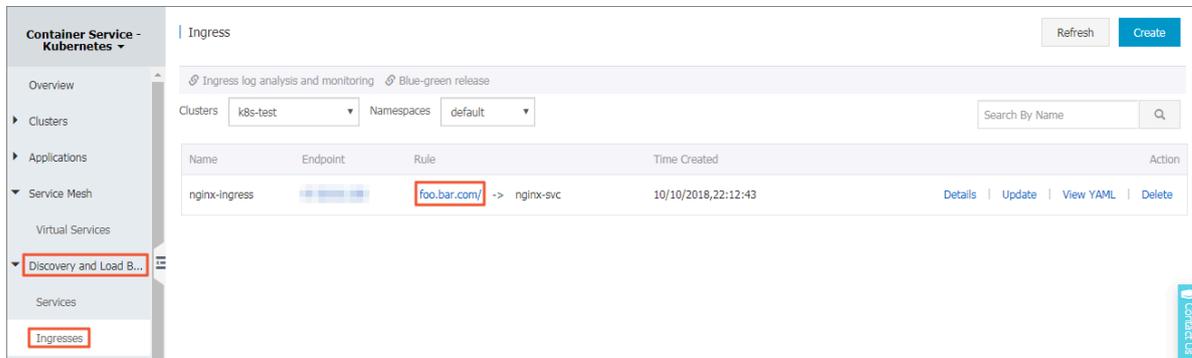
**Note:**

On the Access Method page, you can also create an Ingress and service as follows:

- On the right of Service, click Create. For more information, see step 6.a.i.

- On the right of Ingress, click Create. For more information, see step 6.a.ii.

## 9. Choose Discovery and Load Balancing > Ingress to verify that a rule is displayed in the Ingress list.



## 10. Access the test domain name in your browser to verify that you can visit the Nginx welcome page.



## 4.2 Create a StatefulSet application by using an image

Kubernetes clusters of Alibaba Cloud Container Service allows you to quickly create applications of the StatefulSet type through the web interface. In this example, create a StatefulSet Nginx application and show features of a StatefulSet application.

### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have successfully created a cloud disk storage volume claim. For more information, see [#unique\\_43](#).
- You have successfully connected to the master node of the Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_26](#).

### Context

StatefulSet features are as follows:

Scenarios	Description
Pod consistency	Contains order (such as startup and stop order) and network consistency. This consistency is related to pods and has nothing to do with the node to which the pods are to be scheduled.
Stable persistent storage	Create a PV for each pod through VolumeClaimTemplate. Deleting or reducing replicas does not delete relevant volumes.
Stable network marker	The hostname mode for a pod is: ( statefulset name )-( sequence number ).
Stable order	For StatefulSet of N replicas, each pod is assigned a unique order number within the range of 0 to N.

## Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Application > StatefulSet**. Then, click **Create from Image** in the upper-right corner.
3. Configure the basic parameters and then click **Next**.
  - **Name:** Enter the application name.
  - **Cluster:** Select a cluster to which the application is deployed.
  - **Namespace:** Select a namespace in which the application deployment is located. By default, the default namespace is used.
  - **Replicas:** Set the number of pods included in the application.
  - **Type:** Deployment type and StatefulSet type are available.



**Note:**

**In this example, select the StatefulSet type.**

- **Label:** Add a label to the application.
- **Annotations:** Add a annotation to the application.

The screenshot shows a configuration form for a StatefulSet. The 'Basic Information' tab is active. The form contains the following fields and options:

- Name:** A text input field containing 'nginx'. Below it, a note states: 'The name must be 1 to 64 characters in length and can contain numbers, lower case letters, and hyphens (-). The name cannot start with a hyphen (-).'.
- Clusters:** A dropdown menu with 'k8s-test' selected.
- Namespace:** A dropdown menu with 'default' selected.
- Replicas:** A text input field containing '2'.
- Type:** A dropdown menu with 'StatefulSet' selected.
- Label:** A button with a plus icon and the text 'Add'.
- Annotations:** A button with a plus icon and the text 'Add'.
- Synchronize Timezone:** A checkbox labeled 'Synchronize the Timezone from the Node to the Container', which is currently unchecked.

At the bottom right of the form, there are 'Back' and 'Next' buttons. A vertical 'Contact Us' button is visible on the right edge of the form area.

#### 4. Configure containers.



**Note:**

You can configure multiple containers for the pod of the application.

##### a) Configure the general settings for the application.

- **Image Name:** Click Select image to select the image in the displayed dialog box and then click OK. In this example, select the nginx image.

You can also enter the private registry in the format of `domainname / namespace / imagename : tag` to specify an image.

- **Image Version:** Click Select image version to select a version. If the image version is not specified, the system uses the latest version by default.
- **Always pull image:** Container Service caches the image to improve deployment efficiency. During deployment, if the image tag is found consistent with that on the local cache, the image on the local cache is reused and is not pulled again. Therefore, if you do not modify the image tag when changing your codes and image for convenience of upper-layer business, the early image on the local cache is used in the application deployment. With this check box selected, Container Service ignores the cached image and re-

pulls the image from the repository when deploying the application to make sure the latest image and codes are always used.

- **Resource Limit:** Specify the upper limit for the resources (CPU and memory) that can be used by this application to avoid occupying excessive resources. CPU is measured in millicores, that is, one thousandth of one core. Memory is measured in bytes, which can be Gi, Mi, or Ki.
- **Resource Request:** Specify how many resources (CPU and memory) are reserved for the application, that is, these resources are exclusive to the container. Other services or processes will compete for resources when the resources are insufficient. By specifying the Resource Request, the application will not become unavailable because of insufficient resources.
- **Init Container:** Selecting this check box creates an Init Container which contains useful tools. For more information, see <https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/workloads/pods/init-containers/>.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a container. At the top, there are three tabs: 'Basic Information', 'Container' (which is active and highlighted in blue), and 'Advanced'. Below the tabs, there is a section for 'Container1' with a '+ Add Container' button. The main configuration area is titled 'General' and contains the following fields:

- Image Name:** A text input field containing 'nginx' and a 'Select image' link.
- Image Version:** A text input field containing 'latest' and a 'Select image version' link.
- Always pull image:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked, with a link to 'Image pull secret'.
- Resource Limit:** Two input fields: 'CPU' with 'eg : 500m' and 'Memory' with 'eg : 128Mi'. The units 'Core' and 'MiB' are shown to the right of the respective fields.
- Resource Request:** Two input fields: 'CPU' with 'eg : 500m' and 'Memory' with 'eg : 128Mi'. The units 'Core' and 'MiB' are shown to the right of the respective fields.
- Init Container:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.

#### b) Optional: Configure Environment .

You can configure environment variables for the pod by using key-value pairs. Environment variables are used to add environment labels or pass configurations for the pod. For more information, see [Pod variable](#).

#### c) Optional: Configure Health Check.

The health check function includes liveness probes and readiness probes. Liveness probes are used to detect when to restart the container. Readiness

**probes determine if the container is ready for receiving traffic. For more**

information about health check, see <https://kubernetes.io/docs/tasks/configure-pod-container/configure-liveness-readiness-probes>.

Health Check

Liveness  Enable

HTTP TCP Command ▾

Protocol HTTP ▾

path

Port

Http Header

name

value

Initial Delay 3

Period 10

Timeout 1

Success Threshold 1

Failure Threshold 3

Readiness  Enable

HTTP TCP Command ▾

Protocol HTTP ▾

path

Port

Http Header

name

value

Initial Delay 3

Period 10

Timeout 1

Request method	Description
HTTP request	<p>An HTTP GET request is sent to the container. The following are supported parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Protocol:</b> HTTP/HTTPS</li> <li>• <b>Path:</b> Path to access the HTTP server</li> <li>• <b>Port:</b> Number or name of the port exposed by the container. The port number must be in the range of 1 to 65535.</li> <li>• <b>HTTP Header:</b> Custom headers in the HTTP request. HTTP allows repeated headers. Supports the correct configuration of key values.</li> <li>• <b>Initial Delay (in seconds):</b> Namely, the <code>initialDelaySeconds</code>. Seconds for the first probe has to wait after the container is started. The default is 3.</li> <li>• <b>Period (in seconds):</b> Namely, the <code>periodSeconds</code>. Intervals at which the probe is performed. The default value is 10. The minimum value is 1.</li> <li>• <b>Timeout (in seconds):</b> Namely, the <code>timeoutSeconds</code>. The time of probe timeout. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1.</li> <li>• <b>Success Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive successful probes that are considered as successful after a failed probe. The default is 1 and the minimum is 1. It must be 1 for a liveness probe.</li> <li>• <b>Failure Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive failed probes that are considered as failed after a successful probe. The default value is 3. The minimum value is 1.</li> </ul>

Request method	Description
TCP connection	<p>A TCP socket is send to the container. The kubelet attempts to open a socket to your container on the specified port. If a connection can be established, the container is considered healthy. If not, it is considered as a failure. The following are supported parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Port:</b> Number or name of the port exposed by the container. The port number must be in the range of 1 to 65535.</li><li>• <b>Initial Delay (in seconds):</b> Namely, the <code>initialDelaySeconds</code>. Seconds for the first liveness or readiness probe has to wait after the container is started. The default is 15.</li><li>• <b>Period (in seconds):</b> Namely, the <code>periodseconds</code>. Intervals at which the probe is performed. The default value is 10. The minimum value is 1.</li><li>• <b>Timeout (in seconds):</b> Namely, the <code>timeoutSeconds</code>. The time of probe timeout. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1.</li><li>• <b>Success Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive successful probes that are considered as successful after a failed probe. The default is 1 and the minimum is 1. It must be 1 for a liveness probe.</li><li>• <b>Failure Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive failed probes that are considered as failed after a successful probe. The default value is 3. The minimum value is 1.</li></ul>

Request method	Description
Command line	<p>Detect the health of the container by executing probe detection commands in the container. The following are supported parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· <b>Command:</b> A probe command used to detect the health of the container</li> <li>· <b>Initial Delay (in seconds):</b> Namely, the <code>initialDelaySeconds</code>. Seconds for the first liveness or readiness probe has to wait after the container is started. The default is 5.</li> <li>· <b>Period (in seconds):</b> Namely, the <code>periodSeconds</code>. Intervals at which the probe is performed. The default value is 10. The minimum value 1.</li> <li>· <b>Timeout (in seconds):</b> Namely, the <code>timeoutSeconds</code>. The time of probe timeout. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1.</li> <li>· <b>Success Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive successful probes that are considered as successful after a failed probe. The default is 1 and the minimum is 1. It must be 1 for a liveness probe.</li> <li>· <b>Failure Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive failed probes that are considered as failed after a successful probe. The default value is 3. The minimum value is 1.</li> </ul>

d) Optional: Configure the lifecycle rule.

You can configure the following parameters for the container lifecycle: start, post start, and pre-stop. For more information, see <https://kubernetes.io/docs/tasks/configure-pod-container/attach-handler-lifecycle-event/>.

- **Start:** Configure a pre-start command and parameter for the container.
- **Post Start:** Configure a post-start command for the container.

- **Pre Stop: Configure a pre-end command for the container.**

Life cycle	Start:	Command	<input style="border: 1px solid green;" type="text" value='["/bin/sh", "-c", "echo Hello &gt; /user/share/message"]'/>
		Parameter	<input type="text"/>
	Post Start:	Command	<input type="text"/>
	Pre Stop:	Command	<input style="border: 1px solid green;" type="text" value='["/user/sbin/nginx", "-s", "quit"]'/>

**e) Configure data volumes.**

Local storage and cloud storage can be configured.

- **Local storage:** Supports hostPath, configmap, secret, and temporary directory. The local data volumes mount the corresponding mount source to the container path. For more information, see [Volumes](#).
- **Cloud storage:** Supports three types of cloud storage: cloud disks, Network Attached Storage (NAS), and Object Storage Service (OSS).

In this example, configure a data volume claim named disk-ssd of cloud disk type and mount it to the `/ data` path.

Data Volume:

+ Add local storage

Storage type	Mount source	Container Path

+ Add cloud storage

Storage type	Mount source	Container Path
Disk ▼	disk-ssd ▼	<input style="border: 1px solid green;" type="text" value="/data"/>
		<span style="color: #cc0000; font-weight: bold;">-</span>

**f) Optional: Configure Log Service. You can configure collection methods and customize tags for this service.**

**Note:**

Make sure that a Kubernetes cluster is deployed and that the log plug-in is installed on the cluster.

Configure log collection methods as follows:

- **Log Store:** Configure a Logstore generated in Log Service which is used to store collected logs.
- **Log path in the container:** Supports stdout and text logs.
  - **stdout:** Collects standard output logs of containers.
  - **text log:** Collects logs in the specified path in the container. In this example, collect text logs in the path of `/var/log/nginx`. Wildcards are also supported.

You can also set custom tags. The customized tags are collected to the container output logs. A custom tag can help you tag container logs, providing convenience to log analysis such as log statistics and filter.

The screenshot shows the 'Log Configuration' interface in the Log Service console. At the top, it says 'Log Service:' followed by a note: 'Note: please ensure that cluster has deployed log plug-ins.' Below this, there are two main sections: 'Configuration' and 'Custom Tag'.

**Configuration Section:**

Log Store	Log path in the container (can be set to stdout)
catalina	stdout
access	/var/log/nginx

**Custom Tag Section:**

Name Of Tag	Value Of Tag
app	nginx

5. Click Next after completing the configurations.

6. Configure advanced settings. In this example, configure only access settings.

a) Set Access Control.

You can set the methods to expose the application pod and then click Create. In this example, a cluster IP service and an Ingress are set to create an Nginx application that is accessible for the Internet.

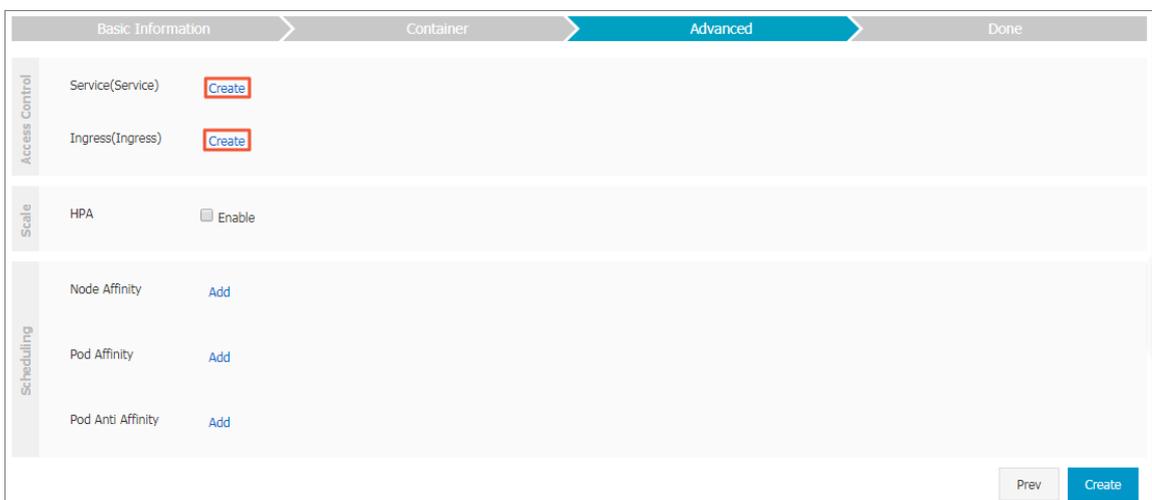


Note:

**You can set access methods according to the communication requirements of your application.**

- **Internal application**: an application that works only inside the cluster. You can create a cluster IP service or a node port service as needed for communication within the cluster.

- External application : an application that needs to be exposed to the Internet. You can set how the application is accessed by using either of the following two methods:
  - Create a Server Load Balancer service. This method uses Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer (SLB) to provide Internet accessibility for the application.
  - Create a cluster IP service or a node port service, and create an Ingress. This method provides Internet accessibility through the Ingress. For more information, see [Ingress](#).



A. Click **Create** on the right of **Service**. Configure a service in the displayed dialog box, and then click **Create**.

Create Service
✕

Name:

Type: Server Load Balancer ▼ public ▼

Port Mapping: + Add

Name	service port	Container Port	Protocol	
nginx-svc	80	80	TCP ▼	-

Annotation: + Add Annotations for load balancer

Tag: + Add

Create
Cancel

- **Name:** Enter the service name. The default is `application name - svc`.
- **Type:** Select one service type.
  - **Cluster IP:** Exposes the service by using the internal IP address of your cluster. If you select this service type, the service is accessible only within the cluster.
  - **Node port:** Exposes the service by using the IP address and the static port (NodePort) of each node. A node port service routes to a cluster IP service that is automatically created. You can access the node port service from outside the cluster by requesting `< NodeIP > : < NodePort >`.
  - **Server Load Balancer:** Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer service. With this type of service, you can set an Internet or intranet access method

for your application. SLB can route to a node port service and a cluster IP service.

- **Port Mapping:** Add a service port and a container port, and select the TCP or UDP protocol. If you select the node port Type, you must add a node port to avoid port conflict.
- **annotation:** Add an annotation to the service. You can set SLB parameters. For more information, see [#unique\\_40](#).
- **Tag:** Add a tag to the service to identify the service.

B. Click Create on the right of Ingress. In the displayed dialog box, configure an Ingress rule for the application pod, and then click Create. For more information, see [#unique\\_41](#).



**Note:**

When you create an application by using an image, you can create an Ingress rule for only one service. In this example, a virtual host name is used as the

test domain name. You need to add a record to the host. You must use a filing domain name when you create your application.

```
101 . 37 . 224 . 146    foo . bar . com    # This is the
IP address of the Ingress .
```

The screenshot shows a 'Create' dialog box for an Ingress resource. The 'Name' field is filled with 'nginx-ingress'. Under 'Rule', there is an 'Add' button. A modal window for adding a rule is open, showing 'Domain' as 'foo.bar.com', 'path' as 'e.g./', and 'Services' as 'Add'. The 'Services' section shows a dropdown for 'Name' with 'nginx-svc' selected and a dropdown for 'Port' with '80' selected. There is also an 'EnableTLS' checkbox. Below the modal, there are options for 'Service weight' (Enable), 'Grayscale release' (Add), 'Annotation' (Add rewrite annotation), and 'Tag' (Add). At the bottom right, there are 'Create' and 'Cancel' buttons.

C. In the access control area, the created service and Ingress are displayed. You can perform further configurations by clicking Update or Delete.

The screenshot shows the 'Advanced' step of the 'Create Application' wizard. It is divided into three main sections: 'Access Control', 'Scale', and 'Scheduling'.

- Access Control:**
  - Services(Service):** Includes 'Update' and 'Delete' buttons. A table below shows:
 

service port	Container Port	Protocol
80	80	TCP
  - Ingresses(Ingress):** Includes 'Update' and 'Delete' buttons. A table below shows:
 

Domain	path	Name	service port
foo.bar.com		nginx-svc	80
- Scale:**
  - HPA:**  Enable
- Scheduling:**
  - Update Method:**  Enable
    - Method:  RollingUpdate  OnDelete
    - Max Unavailable: 25 %
    - Max Surge: 25 %
  - Node Affinity:** Add
  - Pod Affinity:** Add
  - Pod Anti Affinity:** Add

**b) Optional: Set Horizontal Pod Autoscaling (HPA).**

You enable HPA by selecting the Enable check box. Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes provides pod auto scaling to deal with different application workloads. That is, you can change the number of pods according to the container CPU and memory usage.

The screenshot shows the 'Scale' section of the configuration interface. It includes the following settings:

- HPA:**  Enable
- Metric:** CPU Usage
- Condition:** Usage 70 %
- Maximum Replicas:** 10 (Range : 2-100)
- Minimum Replicas:** 1 (Range : 1-100)

 **Note:**

To use this function, you must set required resources for the pod. Otherwise, pod auto scaling cannot take effect. For more information, see general container settings.

- **Metric:** resource type. CPU or memory is available. This parameter must be specified with a resource type that is the same as the required resource type.
- **Condition:** the percentage value of resource usage. The number of containers increases when the resource usage exceeds this value.
- **Maximum Replicas:** the maximum number of the containers that the StatefulSet application can contain.
- **Minimum Replicas:** the minimum number of the containers that the StatefulSet application can contain.

c) Optional: Set Scheduling.

You can set an update method, node affinity, pod affinity, and pod anti affinity. For more information, see [Affinity and anti-affinity](#).



Note:

Affinity scheduling depends on node tags and pod tags. You can use built-in or customized tags to schedule nodes or pods.

**A. Set Update Method.**

You can select the `RollingUpdate` or `Recreate` (OnDelete) method to replace old pods with new ones. For more information, see [Deployments](#).

**B. Set Node Affinity by using node tags.**

The screenshot shows a 'Create' dialog box with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It is divided into two main sections: 'Required' and 'Preferred'.

**Required Section:** Contains an 'Add Rule' button. Below it is a 'Selector' box with an 'Add' button. This box contains a table with three columns: 'Tag Name', 'Operator', and 'Tag Value'. There are two rows in the table, both with 'kubernetes.io/hostname' in the 'Tag Name' column and 'In' in the 'Operator' column. The 'Tag Value' column contains a blurred value. A red 'X' icon is in the top right of the selector box.

**Preferred Section:** Contains an 'Add Rule' button. Below it is a 'Weight' input field with the value '100'. Underneath is a 'Selector' box with an 'Add' button, containing a table with 'Tag Name', 'Operator', and 'Tag Value' columns. The 'Tag Name' is 'kubernetes.io/hostname' and the 'Operator' is 'NotIn'. The 'Tag Value' is blurred. A red 'X' icon is in the top right of the selector box.

At the bottom right of the dialog are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Required rules and preferred rules are supported, and available operators include `In`, `NotIn`, `Exists`, `DoesNotExist`, `Gt`, and `Lt`.

- Required rules must be satisfied and correspond to `requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution`. The required rules

have the same effect as `NodeSelect` or `.`. In this example, the pod can be scheduled to only a node with the specified tags.

You can add multiple required rules, but only one required rule needs to be satisfied for pod scheduling.

- Preferred rules can be unnecessarily satisfied and correspond to `preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution`. With the scheduling setting in this example, the system tries not to schedule the pod to the nodes with the specified tag.

You can also set `Weight` for each preferred rule. If multiple nodes satisfies the preferred rules, the system schedules the pod to a node with the highest weight.

You can add multiple preferred rules, and all the rules must be satisfied for pod scheduling.

- C. Set Pod Affinity to deploy the application pod in a topology domain together with other pods. For example, to reduce network latency between the services

that communicate with each other, you can deploy their pods to a topology domain (for example, a host).

The screenshot shows a 'Create' dialog box with two main sections: 'Required' and 'Preferred'.  
**Required Section:**  
 - 'Add Rule' button.  
 - 'Namespace' dropdown menu: 'default' (highlighted with a red box and callout 1).  
 - 'Topology Key' text input: 'kubernetes.io/hostname'.  
 - 'Selector' button (highlighted with a red box and callout 2).  
 - Table with columns: Tag Name, Operator, Tag Value.  
 - Row 1: 'app', 'In', 'nginx' (highlighted with a red box and callout 3).  
**Preferred Section:**  
 - 'Add Rule' button.  
 - 'Weight' text input: '100'.  
 - 'Namespace' dropdown menu: 'default'.  
 - 'Topology Key' text input: 'kubernetes.io/hostname'.  
 - 'Selector' button.  
 - Table with columns: Tag Name, Operator, Tag Value.  
 - Row 1: 'app', 'NotIn', 'wordpress'.  
 At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

You can schedule pods according to tags of pods running on nodes. Required rules and preferred rules are supported, and available operators include In , NotIn , Exists , DoesNotExist .

- Required rules must be satisfied and correspond to requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoreDuringExecution . All specified conditions of required rules must be met for pod affinity scheduling.
- Namespace: Set a namespace. This parameter is required because the scheduling policy is based on pod tags.

- **Topology Key:** Set a topology domain to which pods are scheduled. This parameter takes effect through node tags. For example, if you set `kubernetes.io/hostname` as the topology key, a node is used to identify a topology. If you set `beta.kubernetes.io/os` as the topology key, a node operating system is used to identify a topology.
- **Selector:** Click this button to add a required rule.
- **View Application List:** Click View Application List, a dialog box is displayed. In the dialog box, you can view applications in each namespace and export application tags to the dialog box in which you set pod affinity.
- **Required rule tag:** Set a tag name, its operator, and the tag value for existing applications. This example schedules the application to be created to a host on which applications tagged with `app : nginx` run.
- Preferred rules can be unnecessarily satisfied and correspond to `preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution`. Specified conditions of required rules will be met as many as possible for pod affinity scheduling.

You can set Weight for each preferred rule. The weight value range is 1 to 100. If multiple nodes satisfies the preferred rules, the system schedules the pod to a node with the highest weight. Other parameters are the same with the required rule setting.

D. Set Pod Anti Affinity to deploy the application pods in a topology domain that excludes other pods. Scenarios that use pod anti affinity scheduling include:

- Distribute the pods of a service to different topology domains (for example , different hosts) to improve the service stability.
- Grant a pod the exclusive access to a node so as to guarantee that no other pods use the resources of the node.
- Distribute pods of the services that may affect each other to different hosts.

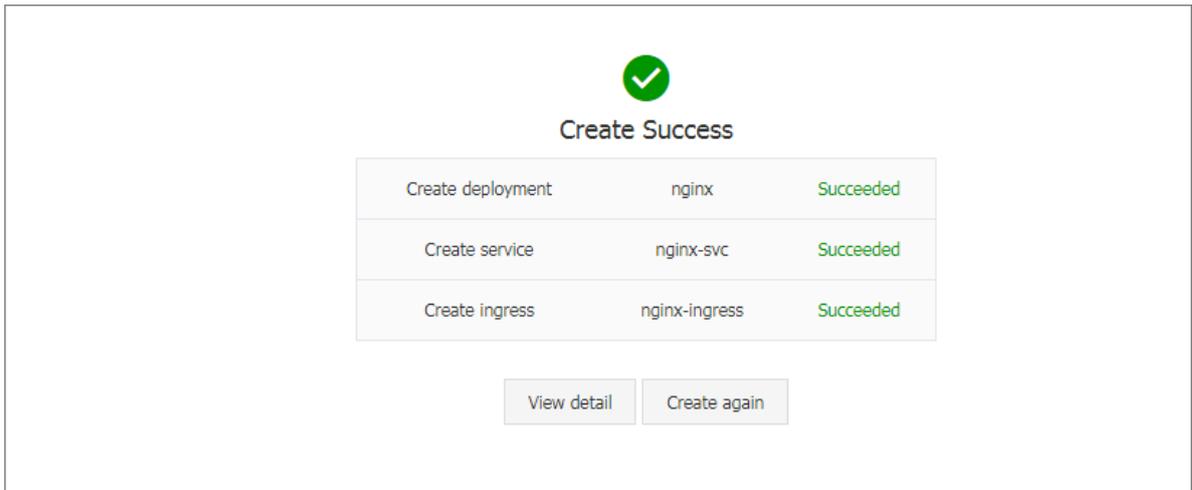


**Note:**

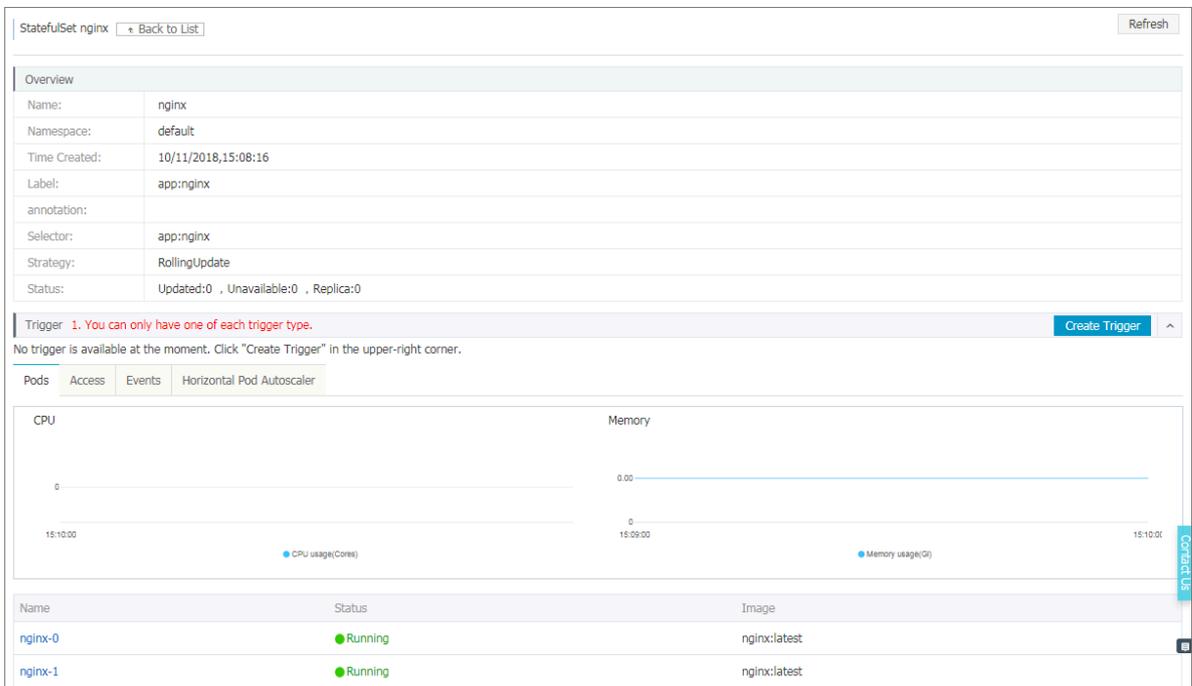
You can set pod anti affinity scheduling by using the same method as setting pod affinity scheduling. But the same scheduling rules have different

meanings for these two types of scheduling. You need to select appropriate scheduling rules as needed.

7. Click Create.
8. After you create the application, the create success page is displayed by default and objects contained in the application are listed. You can click View detail to view the deployment details.



The StatefulSet page is displayed by default.



9. Then click **Back to list** in the upper-left corner to view the created StatefulSet application in the StatefulSet list page.

Name	Tag	PodsQuantity	Image	Time Created	Action
nginx		2/2	nginx	10/11/2018,15:55:57	Details   Edit   Scale   More

10. Optional: To verify service scalability, click **Scale** at the right of a target nginx application.

- a) In the displayed dialog box, set the number of pod to 3. You can see that when you expand pods, the pods are in the increment order; when you contract pods, the pods are in the descending order. This shows the order stability of pods in StatefulSet.

Name	Status	Image
nginx-0	Running	nginx:latest
nginx-1	Running	nginx:latest
nginx-2	Running	nginx:latest

- b) Click **Application > Volumes Claim** in the left-side navigation pane, you can see that as the application expands, new cloud disk volumes are created with pods; if the application contracts, created PV/PVC will not be deleted.

Name	Capacity	Access Mode	Status	Storage Class Name	Relate Volume	Time Created	Action
disk-ssd-nginx-0	20Gi	ReadWriteOnce	Bound	alicloud-disk-ssd	d-bp1cy8o56jfgodpst28f	10/11/2018,15:55:57	Delete
disk-ssd-nginx-1	20Gi	ReadWriteOnce	Bound	alicloud-disk-ssd	d-bp1gdkenf5ki7pt5pct9	10/11/2018,15:56:09	Delete
disk-ssd-nginx-2	20Gi	ReadWriteOnce	Bound	alicloud-disk-ssd	d-bp1f2xopk3sz02ug12ls	10/11/2018,15:57:02	Delete

## What's next

Connect to the master node and run following commands to verify the persistent storage feature.

Create a temporary file on a cloud disk:

```
# kubectl exec nginx - 1 ls / tmp # list files
under this directory
lost + found

# kubectl exec nginx - 1 touch / tmp / statefulse t
# add a tempoty file named statefulse t
```

```
# kubectl exec nginx - 1 ls / tmp
lost + found
statefulse t
```

Remove the pod to verify the data persistence:

```
# kubectl delete pod nginx - 1
pod "nginx - 1 " deleted

# kubectl exec nginx - 1 ls / tmp #
data persistenc e storage
lost + found
statefulse t
```

In addition, you can also find that after you delete a pod, the pod automatically restarts after a period of time, which indicates the high availability of the StatefulSet application.

## 4.3 Create a Job application by using an image

By running a Kubernetes cluster with Alibaba Cloud Container Service, you can create a Job application through the Web interface. This example creates a Job application named busybox to describe features of the Job application features.

### Prerequisites

You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

### Context

A Job processes short-lived one-off tasks in batches to guarantee that one or multiple pods in the batch tasks successfully terminate.

Kubernetes supports the following types of Jobs:

- **Non-parallel Job:** A Job of this type creates only one pod. The Job is completed when the pod terminates successfully.
- **Job with a fixed completion count:** A Job of this type has `.spec.completion s` set to create multiple pods. The Job is completed when the number of these pods reaches the `.spec.completion s` value.
- **Parallel Job with a work queue:** A Job of this type has `.spec.Parallelis m` set but has `.spec.completion s` not set. The Job is completed when at least one pod has terminated with success, and all pods are terminated.

- **Parallel Job with a fixed completion count:** A Job of this type has both `.spec.completion_s` and `.spec.Parallelis_m` set. Multiple pods of the Job process the work queue at the same time.

According to the `.spec.completion_s` and `.spec.Parallelis_m` settings, Jobs can be classified into the following patterns.



Note:

The Job created in this example is a parallel Job with a fixed completion count.

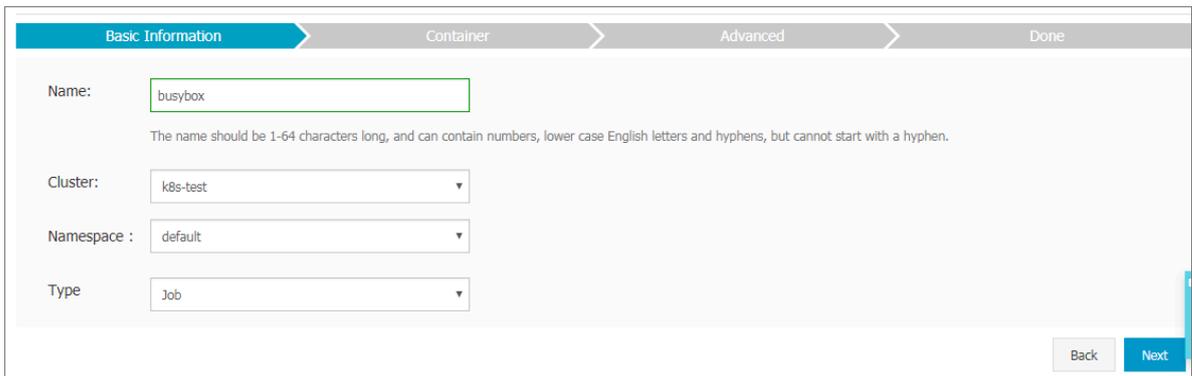
Job pattern	Usage example	Action	Completion	Parallelism
One-off Job	Database migration	A Job creates a pod and the Job is completed when the pod terminates successfully.	1	1
Job with a fixed completion count	Pod that processes the work queue	A Job creates pods one by one. When the pods terminate successfully and the number of the terminated pods reaches the completion_s value, the Job is completed.	2+	1
Parallel Job with a fixed completion count	Multiple pods process work queues at the same time	A Job creates pods one by one. When the number of pods reaches the completion_s value, the Job is completed.	2+	2+

Job pattern	Usage example	Action	Completion	Parallelism
Parallel Job	Multiple pods process work queues at the same time	A Job creates one or multiple pods. When at least one pod terminates successfully, the Job is completed.	1	2+

**Procedure**

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose Application > Job, and then click Create by Image in the upper-right corner.
3. Set the basic parameters and then click Next.
  - Name: Enter a name for the application.
  - Cluster: Select a cluster to which the application is deployed.
  - Namespace: Select a namespace in which the application deployment is located. You can also choose to use the default namespace.
  - Type: Select the Job type.

 **Note:**  
In this example, select the Job type.



The screenshot shows a configuration interface with a progress bar at the top containing 'Basic Information', 'Container', 'Advanced', and 'Done'. The 'Basic Information' section is active and contains the following fields:

- Name:** A text input field containing 'busybox'. Below it is a note: 'The name should be 1-64 characters long, and can contain numbers, lower case English letters and hyphens, but cannot start with a hyphen.'
- Cluster:** A dropdown menu with 'k8s-test' selected.
- Namespace:** A dropdown menu with 'default' selected.
- Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Job' selected.

At the bottom right of the form, there are 'Back' and 'Next' buttons.

**4. Configure containers.**

 **Note:**

You can configure multiple containers for the pods of the application.

a) Set the container parameters.

- **Image Name:** Click **Select image** to select an image in the displayed dialog box and then click **OK**. In this example, select the **busybox** image.

You can also enter a private registry in the format of `domainname / namespace / imagename : tag` to specify an image.

- **Image Version:** Click **Select image version** to select a version. If you do not specify any image version, the system uses the latest version by default.
- **Always pull image:** Container Service caches the image to improve deployment efficiency. During deployment, if the tag of the newly specified image is the same as that of the cached image, Container Service reuses the cached image rather than pulls the same image again. Therefore, if you do not modify the image tag during scenarios where you are changing your code and image, the earlier image in the local cache is used in the application deployment. If you select this check box, Container Service ignores the cached image and re-pulls the image when deploying the application to make sure the latest image and code are always used.
- **Image pull secret:** If you use a private image, we recommend that you use a secret to guarantee the security of your image. For more information, see [#unique\\_39](#).
- **Resource Limit:** Specify the upper limit for the resources (CPU and memory) that can be used by this application to avoid occupying excessive resources. CPU is measured in millicores, that is, one thousandth of one core. Memory is measured in bytes, which can be Gi, Mi, or Ki.
- **Resource Request:** Specify how many resources (CPU and memory) are reserved for the application (that is, these resources become exclusive to the container). If you do not set this parameter, other services or processes will

compete for resources, which means the application may become unavailable due to resource shortage.

- **Init Container:** Select this check box to create an Init Container that contains useful tools. For more information, see <https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/workloads/pods/init-containers/>.

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for a container in the Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes console. The interface is titled 'Container1' and includes an 'Add Container' button. The configuration is organized into a 'General' section. The 'Image Name' field is set to 'busybox' with a 'Select image' link. The 'Image Version' field is set to 'latest' with a 'Select image version' link. Below these fields, there is a checkbox for 'Always pull image' and a link for 'Image pull secret'. The 'Resource Limit' section includes input fields for CPU (eg: 500m), Core, and Memory (eg: 128Mi MiB). The 'Resource Request' section includes input fields for CPU (eg: 500m), Core, and Memory (eg: 128Mi MiB). At the bottom, there is an 'Init Container' checkbox which is currently unchecked.

#### b) Optional: Set Environment .

You can use key-value pairs to set environment variables for the pods. Environment variables are used to add environment labels or pass configurations for the pods. For more information, see [Pod variable](#).

#### c) Optional: Set Health Check.

You can set liveness probes and readiness probes. Liveness probes are used to detect when to restart the container. Readiness probes determine if the container is ready to receive traffic. For more information about health check,

see <https://kubernetes.io/docs/tasks/configure-pod-container/configure-liveness-readiness-probes>.

Health Check

**Liveness**  Enable

HTTP TCP Command ▾

Protocol HTTP ▾

path

Port

Http Header

name

value

Initial Delay

Period

Timeout

Success Threshold

Failure Threshold

**Readiness**  Enable

HTTP TCP Command ▾

Protocol HTTP ▾

path

Port

Http Header

name

value

Initial Delay

Period

Timeout

Request method	Description
HTTP request	<p>With this health check method, you can send an HTTP GET request to the container. The following parameters are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Protocol:</b> HTTP/HTTPS.</li> <li>• <b>Path:</b> path to access the HTTP server.</li> <li>• <b>Port:</b> number or name of the access port exposed by the container. The port number must be in the range of 1 to 65535.</li> <li>• <b>HTTP Header:</b> custom headers in the HTTP request. HTTP allows repeated headers. You can use a key-value pair to set an HTTP Header.</li> <li>• <b>Initial Delay (in seconds):</b> namely, the <code>initialDelaySeconds</code>, indicating the number of seconds for which the first probe must wait after the container is started. The default value is 3.</li> <li>• <b>Period (in seconds):</b> namely, the <code>periodSeconds</code>, indicating the interval at which probes are performed. The default value is 10. The minimum value is 1.</li> <li>• <b>Timeout (in seconds):</b> namely, the <code>timeoutSeconds</code>, indicating the number of time that the probe has timed out. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1.</li> <li>• <b>Success Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive successful probes needed for determining a probe success after a failed probe. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1. It must be set to 1 for a liveness probe.</li> <li>• <b>Failure Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive failed probes needed for determining a probe failure after a successful probe. The default value is 3. The minimum value is 1.</li> </ul>

Request method	Description
TCP connection	<p>If you use this health check method, a TCP socket is sent to the container. The kubelet then attempts to open the socket of the container on a specified port. If a connection can be established, the container is considered healthy. If not, it is considered unhealthy. The following parameters are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Port:</b> number or name of the access port exposed by the container. The port number must be in the range of 1 to 65535.</li><li>• <b>Initial Delay (in seconds):</b> namely, the <code>initialDelaySeconds</code>, indicating the seconds for the first liveness or readiness probe must wait for after the container is started. The default is 15.</li><li>• <b>Period (in seconds):</b> namely, the <code>periodSeconds</code>, indicating the interval at which probes are performed. The default value is 10. The minimum value is 1.</li><li>• <b>Timeout (in seconds):</b> namely, the <code>timeoutSeconds</code>, indicating the number of time that the probe has timed out. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1.</li><li>• <b>Success Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive successful probes needed for determining a probe success after a failed probe. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1. It must be set to 1 for a liveness probe.</li><li>• <b>Failure Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive failed probes needed for determining a probe failure after a successful probe. The default value is 3. The minimum value is 1.</li></ul>

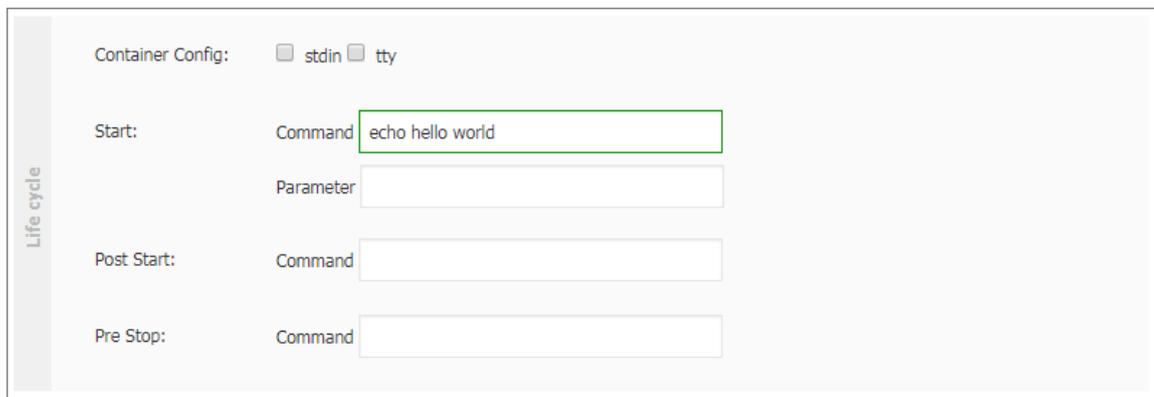
Request method	Description
Command line	<p>With this health check method, you can detect the container health by executing a probe detection command in the container. The following parameters are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· <b>Command:</b> a probe command used to detect the health of the container</li> <li>· <b>Initial Delay (in seconds):</b> namely, the <code>initialDelaySeconds</code>, indicating the number of seconds for which the first liveness or readiness probe must wait after the container is started. The default value is 5.</li> <li>· <b>Period (in seconds):</b> namely, the <code>periodSeconds</code>, indicating the interval at which probes are performed. The default value is 10. The minimum value 1.</li> <li>· <b>Timeout (in seconds):</b> namely, the <code>timeoutSeconds</code>, indicating the number of time that the probe has timed out. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1.</li> <li>· <b>Success Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive successful probes needed for determining a probe success after a failed probe. The default value is 1 and the minimum value is 1. It must be set to 1 for a liveness probe.</li> <li>· <b>Failure Threshold:</b> The minimum number of consecutive failed probes needed for determining a probe failure after a successful probe. The default value is 3. The minimum value is 1.</li> </ul>

d) Optional: Set the life cycle.

You can set the following parameters for the container life cycle: `container config`, `start`, `post start`, and `pre-stop`. For more information, see <https://>

[kubernetes.io/docs/tasks/configure-pod-container/attach-handler-lifecycle-event/](https://kubernetes.io/docs/tasks/configure-pod-container/attach-handler-lifecycle-event/).

- **Container Config:** You can select the `stdin` check box to enable standard input for the container, or select the `tty` check box to assign a virtual terminal to the container to send signals to the container. You can also select the two options at the same time. That is, you can bind the terminal (`tty`) to the container standard input (`stdin`). For example, an interactive program can obtain standard input from you and then display the obtained standard input in the terminal.
- **Start:** Set a pre-start command and parameter for the container.
- **Post Start:** Set a post-start command for the container.
- **Pre Stop:** Set a pre-stop command for the container.



The screenshot shows a configuration interface for container lifecycle events. On the left, a vertical label reads "Life cycle". The main area is divided into four sections:

- Container Config:** Includes two checkboxes, "stdin" and "tty", both of which are currently unchecked.
- Start:** Contains a "Command" input field with the text "echo hello world" and a "Parameter" input field which is empty.
- Post Start:** Contains a "Command" input field which is empty.
- Pre Stop:** Contains a "Command" input field which is empty.

e) **Optional: Set data volumes.**

You can configure local storage and cloud storage.

- **Local storage:** Supported storage types include `HostPath`, `ConfigMap`, `Secret`, and `EmptyDir`. By setting a type of local storage, you can mount its mount source to the container path. For more information, see [Volumes](#).
- **Cloud storage:** Supported types of cloud storage include cloud disks, `Network Attached Storage (NAS)`, and `Object Storage Service (OSS)`.

f) **Optional: Set Log Service.** You can set collection parameters and customize tags.



**Note:**

Make sure that you have deployed a Kubernetes cluster and installed the log plugin on the cluster.

Set the following log collection parameters:

- **Log Store:** Set a Logstore. After you specify the Logstore name, the Logstore is generated in Log Service to store collected logs.
- **Log path in the container:** You can set this parameter to stdout or set a log path.
  - **stdout:** If you set a log path to stdout, you can collect the standard output logs of the container.
  - **text log:** If you set a container log path, you can collect the text logs of the path. Wildcards can be used in setting the log file name for a log path.

You can also set custom tags. The custom tags are collected to the container output logs. A custom tag can help you tag container logs, making it easy to collect log statistics, filter logs, and analyze logs by using other methods.

5. After you complete the container configuration, click Next.
6. Configure advanced settings.

You can configure Job Settings.

Parameter	Description
Completions	Number of pods that must be run successfully by the configured Job. The default value is 1.
Parallelism	Number of pods that must be run in parallel by the configured Job at any time. The default value is 1.
ActiveDeadlineSeconds	Operating time limit of the configured Job. If the Job is not completed within the time limit, the system tries to terminate the Job.

Parameter	Description
<b>BackoffLimit</b>	Number of retries performed by the configured Job to create pods after a failure. The default is 6. Each time the Job fails, the failed pods associated with the Job are recreated with time delay . The time delay grows exponentially each time. The upper limit of the time delay is six minutes.
<b>Restart</b>	Only Never and OnFailure restart policies are supported.

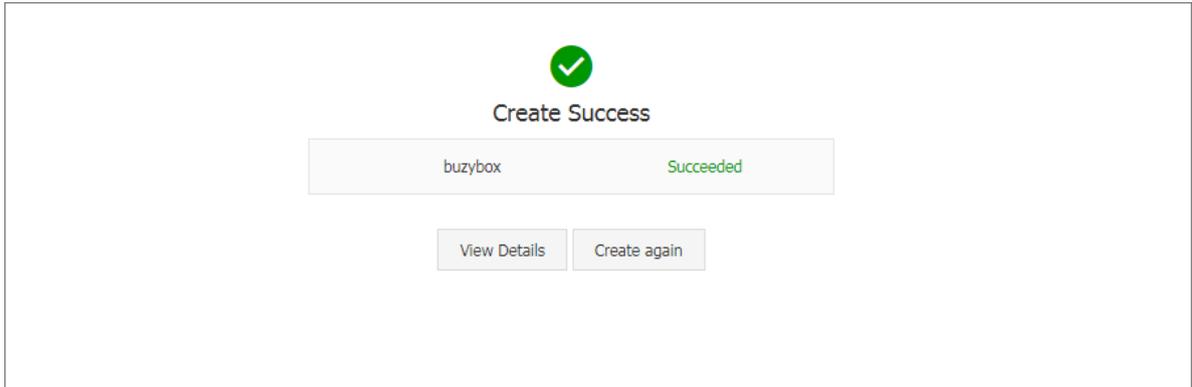
The screenshot shows a configuration interface with four tabs: 'Basic Information', 'Container', 'Advanced', and 'Done'. The 'Advanced' tab is active. On the left, a vertical label reads 'Job Settings'. The main area contains five configuration items:

- Completions:
- Parallelism:
- ActiveDeadlineSeconds:
- BackoffLimit:
- Restart:

At the bottom right, there are 'Prev' and 'Create' buttons. A vertical 'CONTINUE' button is also present on the right edge of the form area.

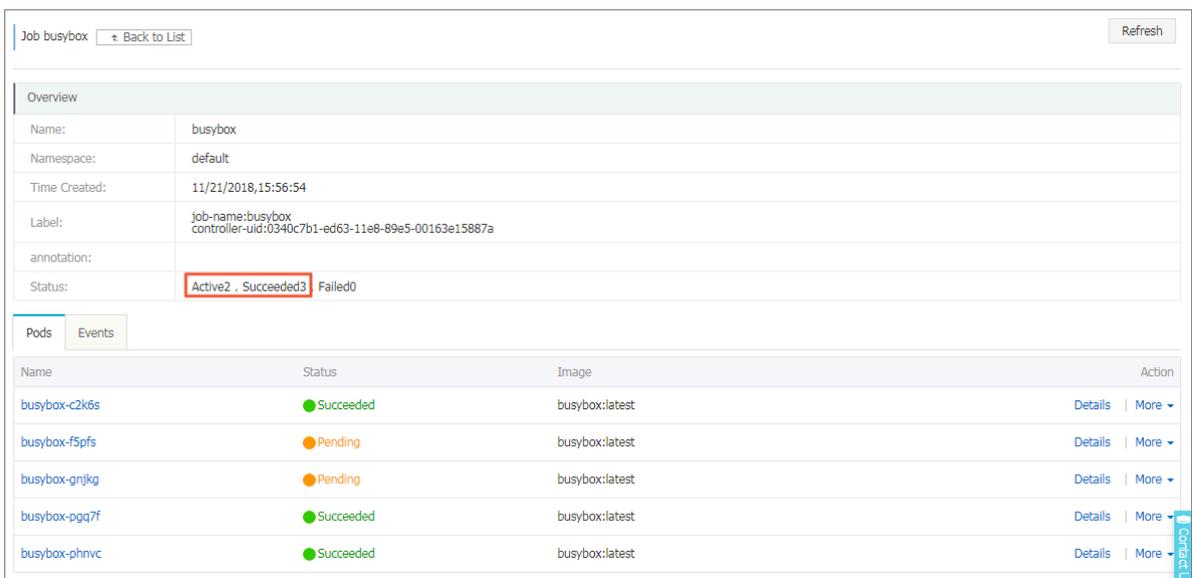
7. Click Create.

8. After you create the Job application, a new page is displayed by default to prompt that you have created the application with the objects included.



You can click View Details to view the Job details.

During the creation process, you can view the creation status of the pods in the Status column. In this example, two pods are created in parallel according to the Job definition.



Wait until all pods are created.

Job busybox [← Back to List](#) Refresh

---

**Overview**

Name:	busybox
Namespace:	default
Time Created:	11/21/2018,15:56:54
Label:	job-name:busybox controller-uid:0340c7b1-ed63-11e8-89e5-00163e15887a
annotation:	
Status:	Active0, Succeeded6, Failed0

**Pods** Events

Name	Status	Image	Action
busybox-c2k6s	<span style="color: green;">●</span> Succeeded	busybox:latest	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">More</a> ▾
busybox-f5pfs	<span style="color: green;">●</span> Succeeded	busybox:latest	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">More</a> ▾
busybox-gnjkg	<span style="color: green;">●</span> Succeeded	busybox:latest	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">More</a> ▾
busybox-pgq7f	<span style="color: green;">●</span> Succeeded	busybox:latest	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">More</a> ▾
busybox-phnvc	<span style="color: green;">●</span> Succeeded	busybox:latest	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">More</a> ▾
busybox-wdrfj	<span style="color: green;">●</span> Succeeded	busybox:latest	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">More</a> ▾

9. In the upper-left corner, click Back to List. On the Jog page, the Job completion time is displayed.



**Note:**

If the Job has not created all the pods, the page does not display the Job completion time.

Job Refresh [Create by Image](#) [Create by Template](#)

---

Help: [How to use private images](#) [Create applications](#) [Schedule a pod to the specified node](#) [Create a Layer-4 Ingress](#) [Create a Layer-7 Ingress](#) [Configure pod auto scaling](#) [Container monitoring](#) [Blue-green release](#)

Clusters: [Cluster Name] Namespace: default

Name	Tag	Status	Pod Status	Image	Time Created	Completion Time	Action
busybox	job-name:busybox controller-uid:0340c7b1-ed63-11e8-89e5-00163e15887a	Succeeded	Active0 Succeeded6 Failed0	busybox:latest	11/21/2018,15:56:54	11/21/2018,15:57:15	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">More</a> ▾

## 4.4 Create an application in Kubernetes dashboard

You can create an application in the Kubernetes dashboard.

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Clusters in the left-side navigation pane.

3. Click **Dashboard** at the right of the cluster to enter the Kubernetes dashboard.
4. In the Kubernetes dashboard, click **CREATE** in the upper-right corner to create an application.
5. The Resource creation page appears. Configure the application information.

Create an application in any of the following three ways:

- **CREATE FROM TEXT INPUT:** Directly enter the orchestration codes in the YAML or JSON format to create an application. You must know the corresponding orchestration format.
- **CREATE AN APP:** Complete the following configurations to create an application.
  - **App name:** Enter the name of the application you are about to create. In this example, enter `nginx - test`.
  - **Container image:** Enter the URL of the image to be used. In this example, use Docker [Nginx](#).
  - **Number of pods:** Configure the number of pods for this application.
  - **Service:** Select **External** or **Internal**. **External** indicates to create a service that can be accessed from outside the cluster. **Internal** indicates to create a service that can be accessed from within the cluster.
  - **Advanced options:** To configure the information such as labels and environment variables, click **SHOW ADVANCED OPTIONS**. This configuration distributes the traffic load evenly to three pods.
- **CREATE FROM FILE:** Upload an existing YAML or JSON configuration file to create an application.

6. Click **UPLOAD** or **DEPLOY** to deploy the containers and services.

You can also click **SHOW ADVANCED OPTIONS** to configure more parameters.

### What's next

After clicking **UPLOAD** or **DEPLOY**, you can view the services and containers of the application.

Click Pods in the left-side navigation pane. You can check the status of each Kubernetes object according to the icon on the left. indicates the object is still being deployed. indicates the object has completed the deployment.

## 4.5 Create a Linux application by using an orchestration template

In a Container Service Kubernetes orchestration template, you must define resource objects required for running an application, and combine the resource objects into a complete application by using label selector.

### Prerequisites

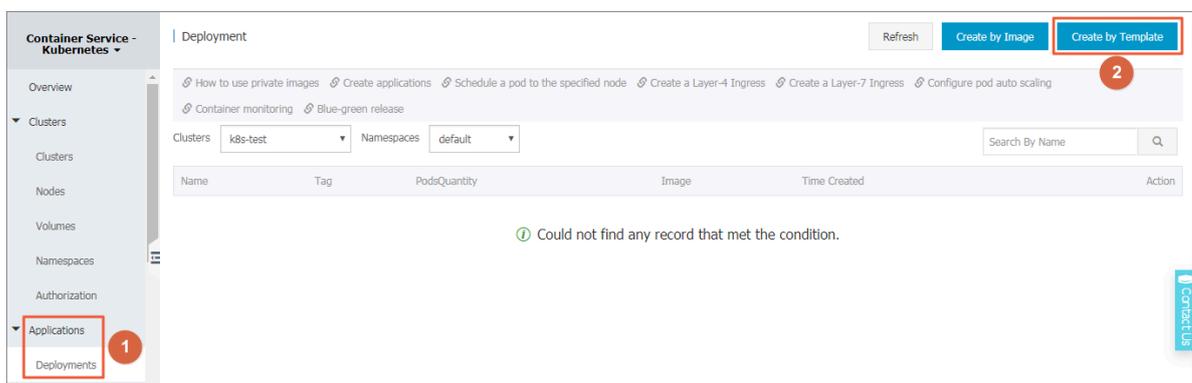
A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

### Context

Create an Nginx application in this example. Firstly, create a backend pod resource object by creating the deployment. Then, deploy the service to bind it to the backend pod, forming a complete Nginx application.

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Applications > Deployments.
3. In the upper-right corner, click Create by Template.



#### 4. Configure the template and then click DEPLOY.

- **Clusters:** Select the cluster in which the resource object is to be deployed.
- **Namespace:** Select a namespace to which resource object belongs. The default namespace is default. Except for the underlying computing resources such as nodes and persistent storage volumes, most of the resource objects must act on a namespace.
- **Resource Type:** Alibaba Cloud Container Service provides Kubernetes YAML sample templates of many resource types for you to deploy resource objects quickly. You can write your own template based on the format requirements of Kubernetes YAML orchestration to describe the resource type you want to define.
- **Add Deployment:** You can quickly define a YAML template with this feature.
- **Deploy with exist template:** You can import an existing template into the template configuration page.

Clusters: k8s-test

Namespace: default

Resource Type: Custom

```
1 apiVersion: apps/v1beta2 # for versions before 1.8.0 use apps/v1beta1
2 kind: Deployment
3 metadata:
4   name: nginx-deployment
5   labels:
6     app: nginx
7 spec:
8   replicas: 2
9   selector:
10    matchLabels:
11      app: nginx
12   template:
13     metadata:
14       labels:
15         app: nginx
16     spec:
17       containers:
18         - name: nginx
19           image: nginx:1.7.9 # replace it with your exactly <image_name>:tags>
20           ports:
21             - containerPort: 80
22 ---
23
24
25 apiVersion: v1 # for versions before 1.8.0 use apps/v1beta1
26 kind: Service
27 metadata:
28   name: my-service1 #TODO: to specify your service name
29   labels:
30     app: nginx
31 spec:
32   selector:
```

Deployed successfully. Go to Dashboard to see the deployment progress: [Kubernetes Dashboard](#)

Save Template DEPLOY

The following is a sample orchestration for an Nginx application. The orchestration is based on an orchestration template built in Container Service. By

using this orchestration template, you can create a deployment that belongs to an Nginx application quickly.



**Note:**

Container Service supports Kubernetes YAML orchestration in which you can use the `---` symbol to separate resource objects so as to create multiple resource objects through a single template.

```

apiVersion : apps / v1beta2 # for versions before 1 . 8 .
0 use apps / v1beta1
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : nginx - deployment
  labels :
    app : nginx
spec :
  replicas : 2
  selector :
    matchLabel s :
      app : nginx
  template :
    metadata :
      labels :
        app : nginx
    spec :
      containers :
        - name : nginx
          image : nginx : 1 . 7 . 9 # replace it with your
          exactly < image_name : tags >
          ports :
            - containerP ort : 80

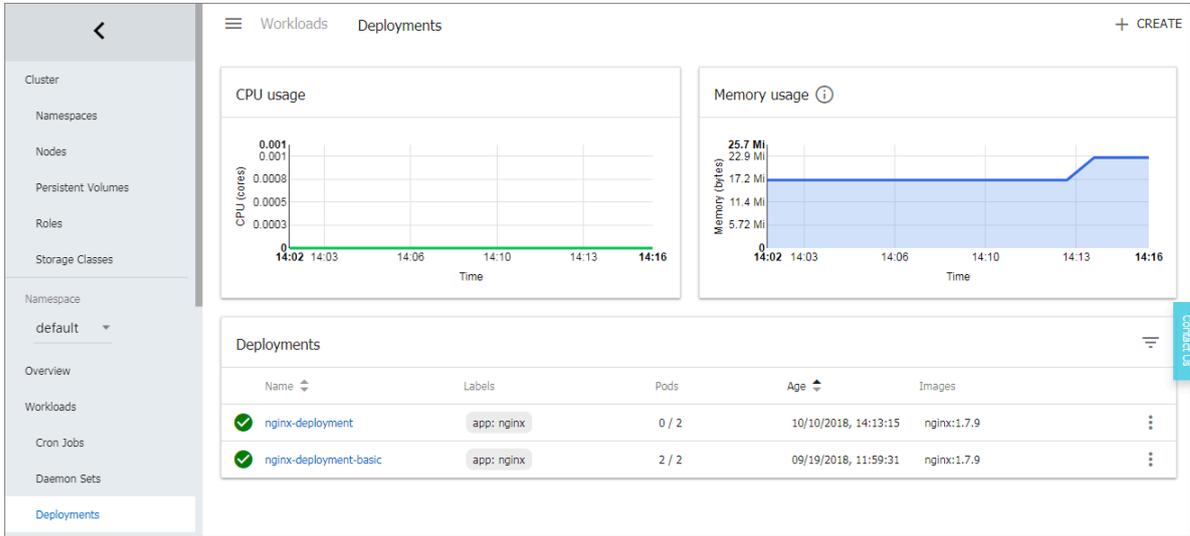
---

apiVersion : v1 # for versions before 1 . 8 . 0 use
  apps / v1beta1
kind : Service
metadata :
  name : my - service1 # TODO : to specify your
service name
  labels :
    app : nginx
spec :
  selector :
    app : nginx # TODO : change label selector
to match your backend pod
  ports :
    - protocol : TCP
      name : http
      port : 30080 # TODO : choose an unique
port on each node to avoid port conflict
      targetPort : 80

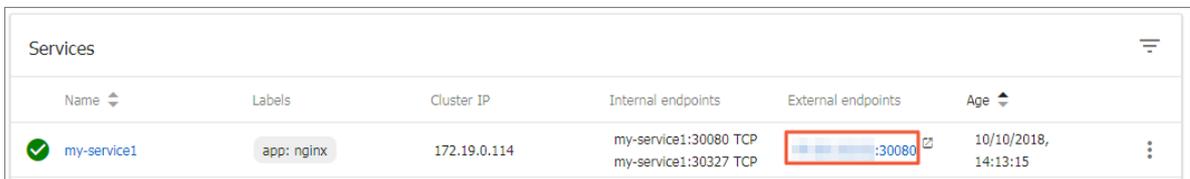
```

```
type : LoadBalancer ## In this example , change the type from NodePort to LoadBalancer .
```

- After you click DEPLOY, a message indicating the deployment status is displayed. After the deployment succeeds, click Kubernetes Dashboard in the message to go to the dashboard and check the deployment progress.



- In the Kubernetes dashboard, you can see that the service named my-service1 is successfully deployed and its external endpoint is exposed. Click the access address under External endpoints.



- You can access the Nginx service welcome page in the browser.



**What's next**

You can also go back to the home page of Container Services. Then, in the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Discovery and Load Balancing > Services to view the Nginx service.

## 4.6 Create a Windows application by using an orchestration template

This topic describes how to create a Windows application by using an orchestration template. Such a template is used to customize the resources required by a Windows application to operate.

### Prerequisites

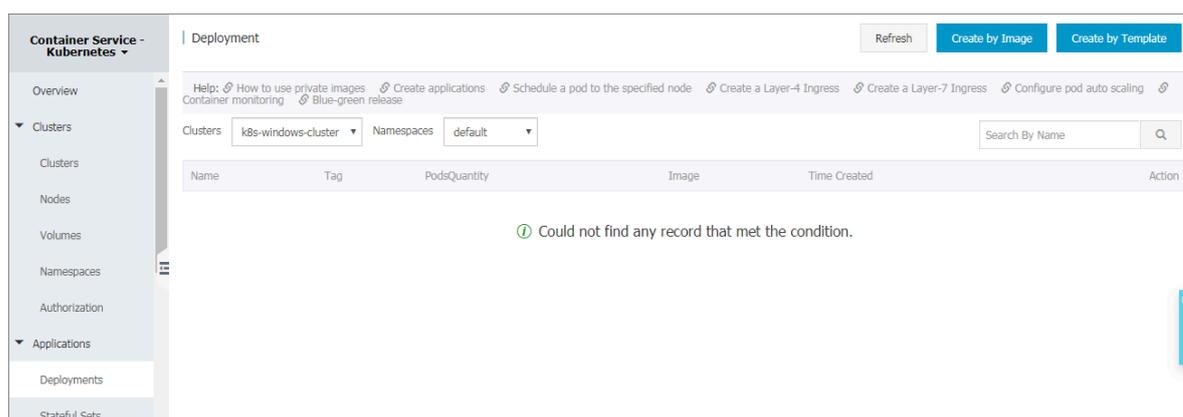
A Kubernetes cluster that supports Windows is created. For more information, see [Create a Windows application by using an orchestration template](#).

### Context

In this topic, an application named `aspnet` is created by using an orchestration template. This application contains a deployment and a service. On the backend, the deployment creates pods according to settings. Then, the service is associated with the pods.

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Application > Deployment**.
3. In the upper-right corner, click **Create by Template**.



**4. To set the orchestration template, set the following:**

- **Clusters:** Select the target cluster. The resources required by the application are deployed in a cluster.
- **Namespace:** Select the target namespace. The default namespace is preset. Except for nodes, persistent volumes, and other underlying resource types, most resources required by the application are deployed in a namespace.
- **Sample Template:** Select the target sample template. Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes provides many built-in YAML orchestration templates for

different types of resources. You can customize an orchestration template to set a type of resource according to the YAML orchestration requirements.

- **Add Deployment:** Edit a YAML template quickly by using this function.
- **Using Existing Template:** Import an existing template to the template setting area.

Then, click **DEPLOY**.

The screenshot shows the 'Template' editor in the console. The 'Namespaces' dropdown is set to 'default' and the 'Sample Template' dropdown is set to 'Custom'. The template content is as follows:

```

1  apiVersion: v1
2  kind: Service
3  metadata:
4    name: aspnet-svc
5  spec:
6    ports:
7      - port: 80
8      protocol: TCP
9      targetPort: 80
10   selector:
11     app: aspnet
12   type: LoadBalancer
13 ---
14 apiVersion: apps/v1beta2
15 kind: Deployment
16 metadata:
17   name: aspnet
18 spec:
19   selector:
20     matchLabels:
21       app: aspnet
22   template:
23     metadata:
24       labels:
25         app: aspnet
26     spec:
27       containers:
28         - image: 'microsoft/dotnet-samples:aspnetapp'
29           name: aspnet

```

At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Save Template' and 'DEPLOY'. The 'DEPLOY' button is highlighted with a red box and a red circle containing the number '1'. Below the template editor, a green notification bar displays the message: 'Deployed successfully. Go to Dashboard to see the deployment progress: [Kubernetes Dashboard](#)' with a red circle containing the number '2'.

The following is an orchestration template for the Windows application named `aspnet`. With such an orchestration template, you can quickly create a deployment and a service for the application.



**Note:**

If you want to create multiple resources in a template, you can use `---` to separate different resources.

```

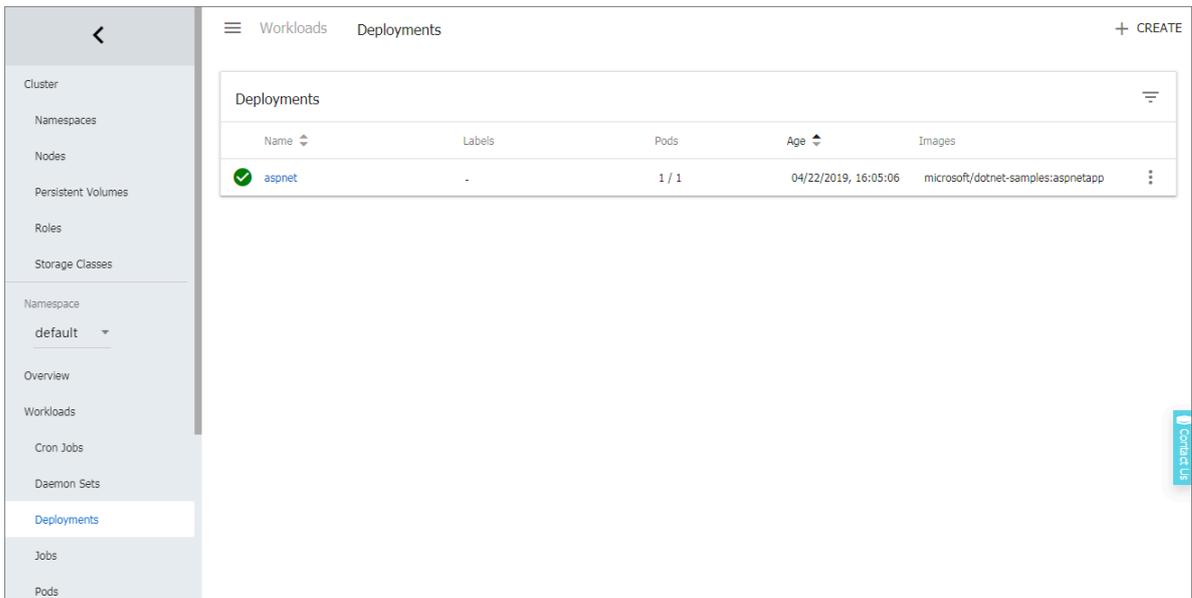
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  name : aspnet - svc
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 80

```

```

        protocol : TCP
        targetPort : 80
    selector :
      app : aspnet
    type : LoadBalancer
---
apiVersion : apps / v1beta2
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : aspnet
spec :
  selector :
    matchLabels :
      app : aspnet
  template :
    metadata :
      labels :
        app : aspnet
    spec :
      containers :
        - image : 'microsoft / dotnet - samples : aspnetapp '
          name : aspnet
    
```

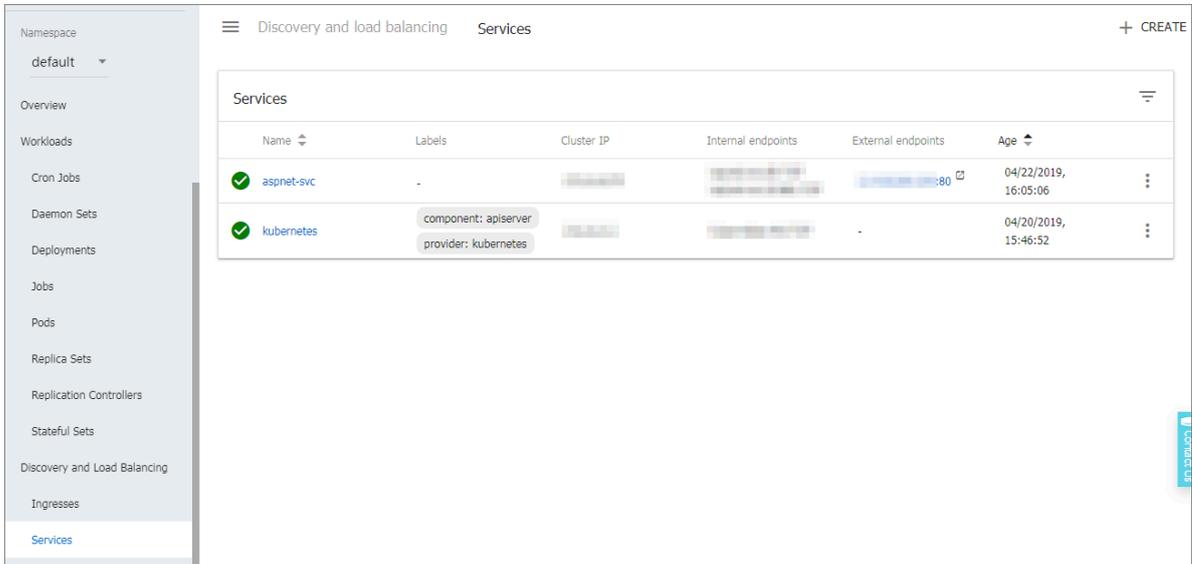
5. A message is displayed on the bottom of the Template area to show the result. If a success message is displayed (shown in the preceding figure), click **Kubernetes Dashboard** at the end of the message to view the progress.



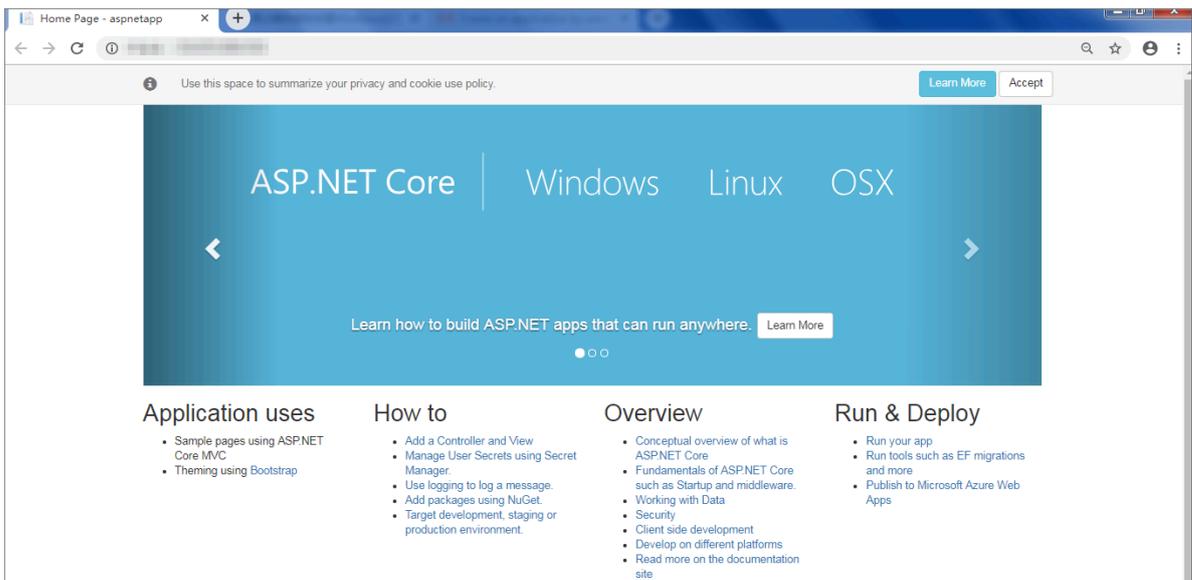
6. In the left-side navigation pane, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Service**. Then, in the **External endpoints** column, click the IP address of the created service named `aspnet - svc` to visit the home page of the `aspnet` application in your browser.

 **Note:**

In the Kubernetes dashboard, you can view that a service named `aspnet - svc` and its external endpoint are created.



The following figure shows the home page of the `aspnet` application.



### What's next

You can also return to the home page of Container Service-Kubernetes, and then choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Service** in the left-side navigation pane to view the service of the `aspnet` application.

## 4.7 Manage applications by using commands

You can create applications or view containers in applications by using commands.

### Prerequisites

Before using commands to manage applications, [#unique\\_26](#).

### Create an application by using commands

Run the following statements to run a simple container (a Nginx Web server in this example).

```
root @ master # kubectl run -it nginx -- image = registry .
aliyuncs . com / spacexnice / netdia : latest
```

This command creates a service portal for this container. Specify `-- type = LoadBalancer` and an Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer route will be created to the Nginx container.

```
root @ master # kubectl expose deployment nginx -- port = 80
-- target - port = 80 -- type = LoadBalancer
```

### View containers by using commands

Run the following command to list all the running containers in the default namespaces.

```
root @ master # kubectl get pods
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
nginx - 2721357637 - dvwq3    1 / 1     Running    1      9h
```

## 4.8 Simplify Kubernetes application deployment by using Helm

In Kubernetes, app management is the most challenging and in demand field.

The Helm project provides a uniform software packaging method which supports version control and greatly simplifies Kubernetes app distribution and deployment complexity.

Alibaba Cloud Container Service integrates the app catalog management function with the Helm tool, extends the functions, and supports official repository, allowing you to deploy the application quickly. You can deploy the application in the Container Service console or by using command lines.

This document introduces the basic concepts and usage of Helm and demonstrates how to use Helm to deploy the sample applications WordPress and Spark on an Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes cluster.

### Basic concepts of Helm

Helm is an open-source tool initiated by Deis and helps to simplify the deployment and management of Kubernetes applications.

You can understand Helm as a Kubernetes package management tool that facilitates discovery, sharing and use of apps built for Kubernetes. It involves several basic concepts.

- **Chart:** A Helm package containing the images, dependencies, and resource definitions required for running an application. It may also contain service definitions in a Kubernetes cluster, similar to the formula of Homebrew, the dpkg of APT, or the rpm file of Yum.
- **Release:** A chart running on a Kubernetes cluster. A chart can be installed multiple times on the same cluster. A new release will be created every time a chart is installed. For example, to run two databases on the server, you can install the MySQL chart twice. Each installation will generate its own release with its own release name.
- **Repository:** The repository for publishing and storing charts.

### Helm components

Helm adopts a client/server architecture composed of the following components:

- **Helm CLI** is the Helm client and can be run locally or on the master nodes of the Kubernetes cluster.
- **Tiller** is the server component and runs on the Kubernetes cluster. It manages the lifecycles of Kubernetes applications.
- **Repository** is the chart repository. The Helm client accesses the chart index files and packages in the repository by means of the HTTP protocol.

### Use Helm to deploy applications

#### Prerequisites

- Before using Helm to deploy an application, create a Kubernetes cluster in Alibaba Cloud Container Service. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

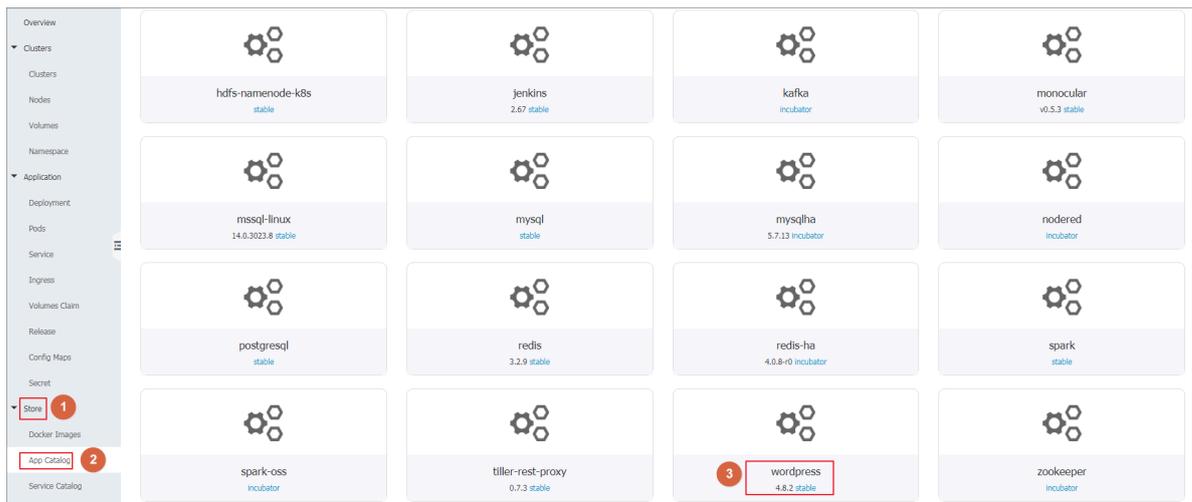
Tiller is automatically deployed to the cluster when the Kubernetes cluster is created. Helm CLI is automatically installed on all the master nodes and the configuration points to the Alibaba Cloud chart repository.

- Check the Kubernetes version of your cluster.

Only clusters whose Kubernetes version is 1.8.4 or later are supported. For clusters whose Kubernetes version is 1.8.1, upgrade the cluster on the Cluster List page.

### Deploy applications in Container Service console

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Store > App Catalog in the left-side navigation pane.
3. On the App Catalog page, click a chart (WordPress in this example) to enter the chart details page.



4. Enter the basic information for the deployment on the right.

- **Clusters:** Select the cluster in which the application is to be deployed.
- **Namespace:** Select the namespace. default is selected by default.
- **Release Name:** Enter the release name for the application. Enter test in this example.

5. Click the Values tab to modify the configurations.

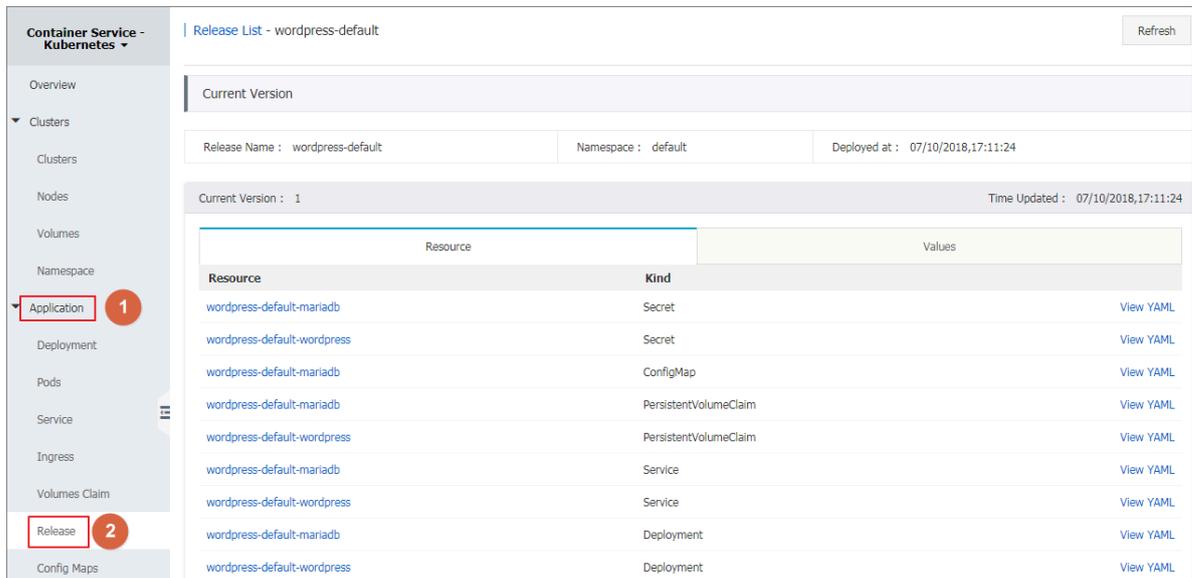
In this example, bind dynamic data volumes of the cloud disk to a persistent storage volume claim (PVC). For more information, see .



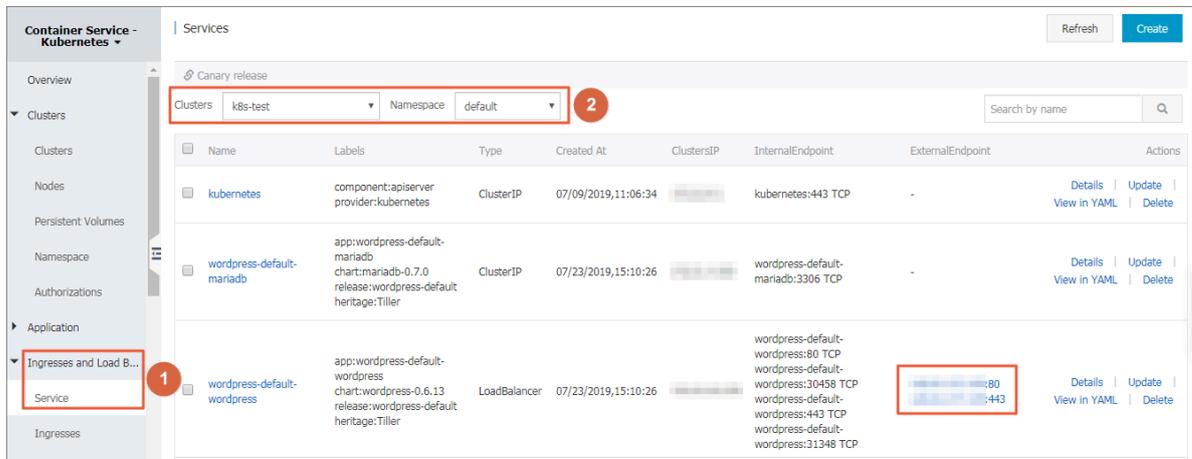
Note:

You need to create a persistent storage volume (PV) of cloud disk in advance. The capacity of the PV cannot be less than the value defined by the PVC.

6. Click **DEPLOY** after completing the configurations. After the successful deployment, you are redirected to the release page of this application.



7. Click **Ingresses and Load Balancing > Service** in the left-hand navigation pane. Select the target cluster and namespace and find the corresponding service. You can obtain the HTTP/HTTPS external endpoint address.



8. Click the preceding access address to enter the WordPress blog publishing page.

## Deploy applications by using command lines

You can use SSH to log on to the master node of the Kubernetes cluster when deploying applications by using command lines (Helm CLI is automatically installed and has configured the repository). For more information, see [#unique\\_50](#). You can also install and configure the kubectl and Helm CLI locally.

In this example, install and configure the kubectl and Helm CLI locally and deploy the applications WordPress and Spark.

## Install and configure kubectl and Helm CLI

### 1. Install and configure kubectl on a local computer.

For more information, see [#unique\\_26](#).

To view information of the target Kubernetes cluster, enter the command `kubectl cluster - info`.

### 2. Install Helm on a local computer.

For the installation method, see [Install Helm](#).

### 3. Configure the Helm repository. Here the charts repository provided by Alibaba Cloud Container Service is used.

```
helm init --client-only --stable-repo-url https://aliacs-app-catalog.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/charts/
helm repo add incubator https://aliacs-app-catalog.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/charts-incubator/
helm repo update
```

## Basic operations of Helm

- To view the list of charts installed on the cluster, enter the following command:

```
helm list
```

Or you can use the abbreviated version:

```
helm ls
```

- To view the repository configurations, enter the following command:

```
helm repo list
```

- To view or search for the Helm charts in the repository, enter one of the following commands:

```
helm search
helm search repository name # For example, stable or incubator.
helm search chart name # For example, wordpress or spark.
```

- To update the chart list to get the latest version, enter the following command:

```
helm repo update
```

For more information about how to use Helm, see [Helm document](#).

## Deploy WordPress by using Helm

Use Helm to deploy a WordPress blog website.

Enter the following command.

```
helm install --name wordpress --test stable/wordpress
```



### Note:

The Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes service provides the support for dynamic storage volumes of block storage (cloud disk). You need to create a storage volume of cloud disk in advance.

The result is as follows:

```
NAME : wordpress --test
LAST DEPLOYED : Mon Nov 20 19 : 01 : 55 2017
NAMESPACE : default
STATUS : DEPLOYED
...
```

Use the following command to view the release and service of WordPress.

```
helm list
kubectl get svc
```

Use the following command to view the WordPress related pods and wait until the status changes to Running.

```
kubectl get pod
```

Use the following command to obtain the WordPress access address:

```
echo http://$(kubectl get svc wordpress --test -o jsonpath='{.status.loadBalancer.ingress[0].ip}')
```

Access the preceding URL in the browser, and you can see the familiar WordPress website.

You can also follow the chart instructions and use the following command to obtain the administrator account and password of the WordPress website:

```
echo Username : user
```

```
echo Password : $( kubectl get secret -- namespace default
wordpress - test - wordpress - o jsonpath="{. data . wordpress -
password }" | base64 -- decode )
```

To completely delete the WordPress application, enter the following command:

```
helm delete -- purge wordpress - test
```

## Deploy Spark by using Helm

Use Helm to deploy Spark for processing big data.

Enter the following command:

```
helm install -- name myspark stable / spark
```

The result is as follows:

```
NAME : myspark
LAST DEPLOYED : Mon Nov 20 19 : 24 : 22 2017
NAMESPACE : default
STATUS : DEPLOYED
...
```

Use the following commands to view the release and service of Spark.

```
helm list
kubectl get svc
```

Use the following command to view the Spark related pods and wait until the status changes to Running. Pulling images takes some time because the Spark related images are large.

```
kubectl get pod
```

Use the following command to obtain the Spark Web UI access address:

```
echo http ://$( kubectl get svc myspark - webui - o
jsonpath='{. status . loadBalanc er . ingress [ 0 ]. ip }'): 8080
```

Access the preceding URL in the browser, and you can see the Spark Web UI, on which indicating currently three worker instances exist.

Then, use the following command to use Helm to upgrade the Spark application and change the number of worker instances from three to four. The parameter name is case sensitive.

```
helm upgrade myspark --set "Worker.Replicas=4" stable/spark
```

The result is as follows:

```
Release "myspark" has been upgraded. Happy Helming!  
LAST DEPLOYED: Mon Nov 20 19:27:29 2017  
NAMESPACE: default  
STATUS: DEPLOYED  
...
```

Use the following command to view the newly added pods of Spark and wait until the status changes to Running.

```
kubectl get pod
```

Refresh the Spark Web UI in the browser. The number of worker instances changes to four.

To completely delete the Spark application, enter the following command:

```
helm delete --purge myspark
```

### Use third-party chart repository

Besides the preset Alibaba Cloud chart repository, you can also use the third-party chart repository (make sure the network is accessible). Add the third-party chart repository in the following command format:

```
helm repo add repository name repository URL  
helm repo update
```

For more information about the Helm related commands, see [Helm document](#).

### References

Helm boosts the growth of communities. More and more software providers, such as Bitnami, have begun to provide high-quality charts. You can search for and discover existing charts at <https://k8seapps.com/>.

## 4.9 Use an application trigger to redeploy an application

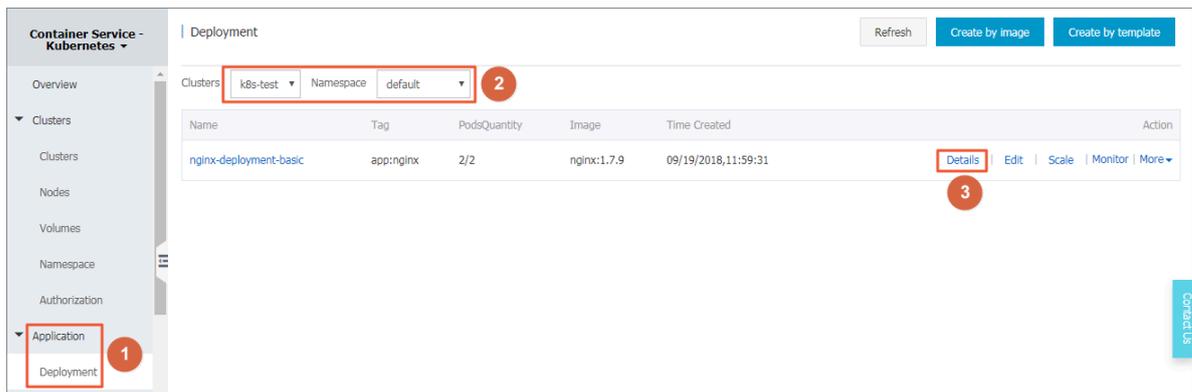
Alibaba Cloud Container Service Kubernetes supports the application trigger function. You can use an application trigger in many ways.

### Prerequisites

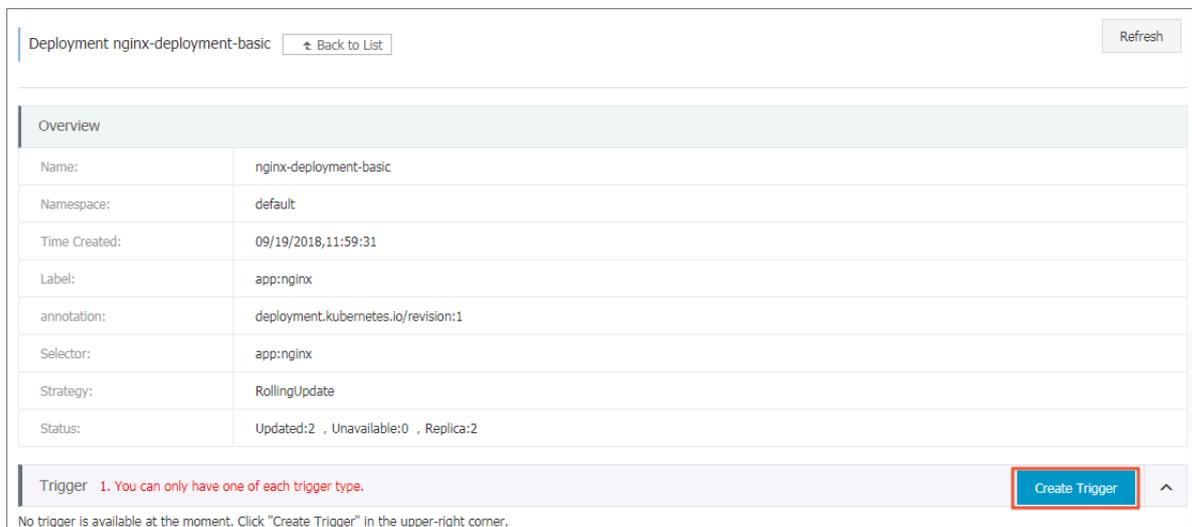
- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have created an application that is used to create an application trigger and test the trigger. In this example, create an nginx application.

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Click Application > Deployment and select a cluster and namespace. Click Details at the right of the target nginx application.



3. On the nginx application details page, click Create Trigger on the right side of the trigger bar.



4. In the pop-up dialog box, click Redeploy and click Confirm.



Note:

Currently, only the redeploy action is supported.

After the trigger is created, a trigger link is displayed in the trigger bar on the nginx application detail page.

Trigger Link (move mouse over to copy)	Type	Action
https://cs.console.aliyun.com/hook/trigger?token=eyJhbGciOiJSUzI1NiIsInR5cCI6IkpXVCJ9.eyJjbHVzdGViSWQiOiJNjlkN2NlZTYyODQ0NDMyMWFjYTNlZjkyYjQ3OGQx...	Redeploy	Delete Trigger

5. Copy the trigger link and visit it in the browser. A message is returned on the web page, containing information such as the request ID.

6. Back to the nginx application detail page, you can see that a new pod appears.

Name	Status	Image
nginx-deployment-basic-6898cc69fb-9726v	Running	nginx:1.7.9
nginx-deployment-basic-6898cc69fb-9nlms	Running	nginx:1.7.9

After a period of time, the nginx application removes the old pod and keeps only the new pod.

What's next

You can call a trigger by using GET or POST in a third-party system. For example, you can run the `curl` command to call a trigger.

Call the redeploy trigger as follows:

```
curl https://cs.console.aliyun.com/hook/trigger?token=XXXXXXXX
```

## 4.10 Schedule a pod to a specific node

This topic describes how to schedule a pod to a specific node in the Container Service console.

You can add a node label and then configure the `nodeSelector` or `nodeAffinity` to schedule a pod to a specified node. For more information about the implementation principle of `nodeSelector`, see [nodeselector](#).

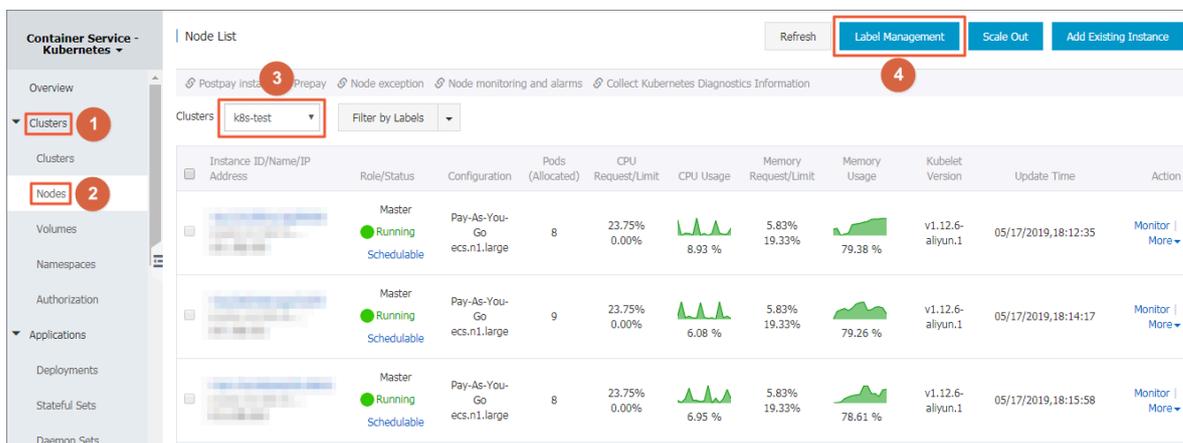
For business scenario needs, to deploy a service used for management and control to a master node, or deploy services to a machine with an SSD disk, you can use this method to schedule pods to specified nodes.

### Prerequisites

A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

### Step 1: Add a node label

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Nodes.
3. Select the cluster from the Cluster drop-down list and then click Label Management in the upper-right corner.



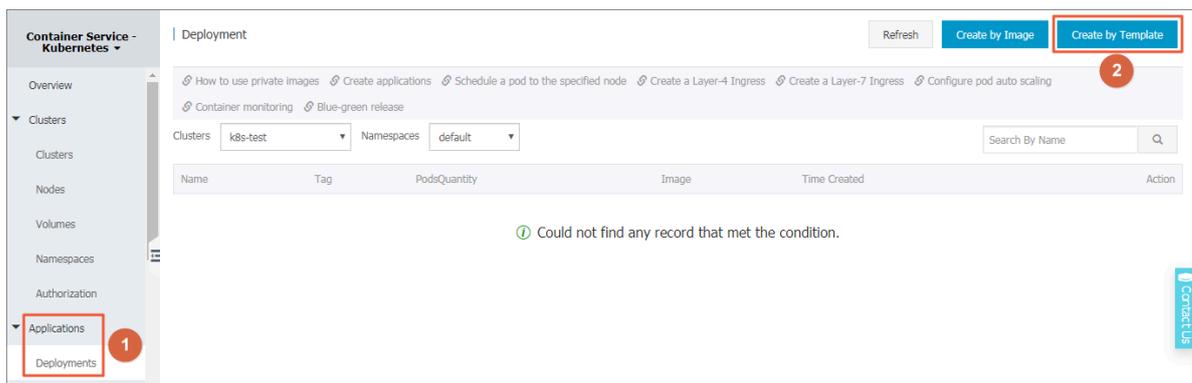
4. Select one or more nodes by selecting the corresponding check boxes and then click Add Tag. In this example, select a worker node.
5. Enter the name and value of the label in the displayed dialog box and then click OK.

The node label `group : worker` is displayed on the Label Management page.

You can also add a node label by running the command `kubectl label nodes < node - name > < label - key >=< label - value >`.

### Step 2: Deploy a pod to a specified node

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Applications > Deployments.
3. In the upper-right corner, click Create by Template.



4. Configure the template to deploy a pod. After completing the configurations, click DEPLOY.
  - Clusters: Select a cluster.
  - Namespace: Select the namespace to which the resource object belongs. In this example, use default as the namespace.
  - Resource Type: Select Custom in this example.

The orchestration template in this example is as follows:

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  labels :
```

```
name : hello - pod
name : hello - pod
spec :
  containers :
  - image : nginx
    imagePullPolicy : IfNotPresent
    name : hello - pod
    ports :
    - containerPort : 8080
      protocol : TCP
    resources : {}
    securityContext :
      capabilities : {}
      privileged : false
      terminationMessagePath : /dev/termination-log
    dnsPolicy : ClusterFirst
    restartPolicy : Always
    nodeSelector :
      group : worker ## The same as the node label
      configured in the preceding step .
    status : {}
```

5. A message indicating the deployment status is displayed after you click **DEPLOY**. After the successful deployment, click **Kubernetes Dashboard** in the message to go to the dashboard and check the deployment status.

6. Click the pod name to view the pod details.

You can view the information such as the pod label and node ID, which indicates the pod is successfully deployed to a node with the label `group : worker`.

## 4.11 View the pods of a Kubernetes cluster

This topic describes how to view the pods of a Kubernetes cluster on the `undefinedPod` page or `undefinedDashboard` page.

### Procedure

To view a pod on the `Pod` page or `Dashboard` page, follow these steps:

View pods of a Kubernetes cluster on the `Pod` page

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Applications > Pods**.

3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and find the target pod. Then, on the right of the target pod, click Details.

Then, you can view the pod details.

#### View pods of a Kubernetes cluster on the Dashboard page

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Clusters.
3. Find the target cluster. Then, in the Action column, click Dashboard.
4. In the left-side navigation pane, click Pods to view pods of the target cluster.



#### Note:

You can also click Services in the left-side navigation pane, and then click a service name to view the pods in this service.



#### Note:

In the Pods area, the icon on the left of each pod shows the pod status.

- indicates the pod is still being deployed.
- indicates the pod is deployed.

5. Click the name of a pod to view the details, CPU usage, and memory usage of the pod.
6. In the upper-right corner, click LOGS to view the pod logs.
7. You can also click the icon on the right of the pod, and then select Delete to delete the pod.

## 4.12 Change container configurations

You can change the container configurations in the Container Service console.

### Procedure

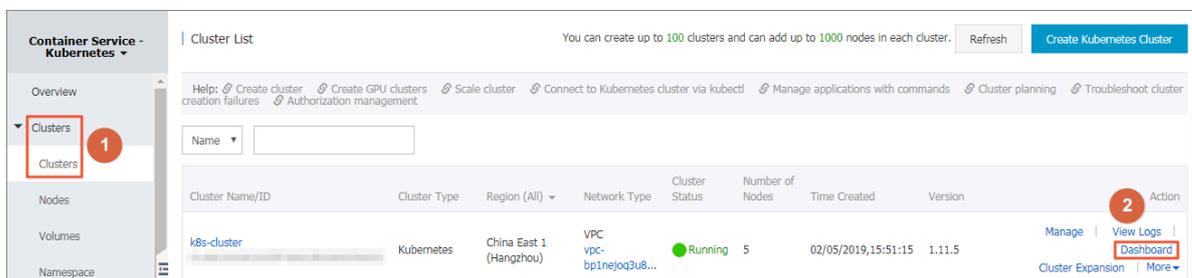
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Click **Kubernetes > Clusters** in the left-side navigation pane.
3. Click **Dashboard** at the right of the cluster to enter the Kubernetes dashboard.
4. In the Kubernetes dashboard, click **Pods** in the left-side navigation pane.
5. Click the icon at the right of the pod and then select **View/edit YAML**.
6. The **Edit a Pod** dialog box appears. Change the container configurations and then click **UPDATE**.

## 4.13 Scale a service

This topic describes how to scale out or scale in an application service as needed after an application is created.

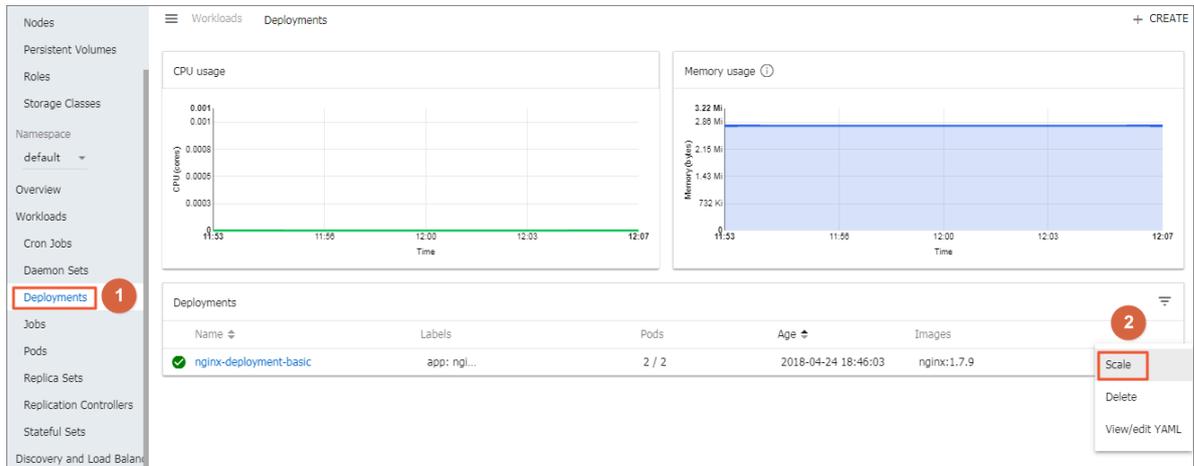
### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under **Kubernetes**, choose **Clusters > Clusters**.
3. On the right of the target cluster, click **Dashboard**.



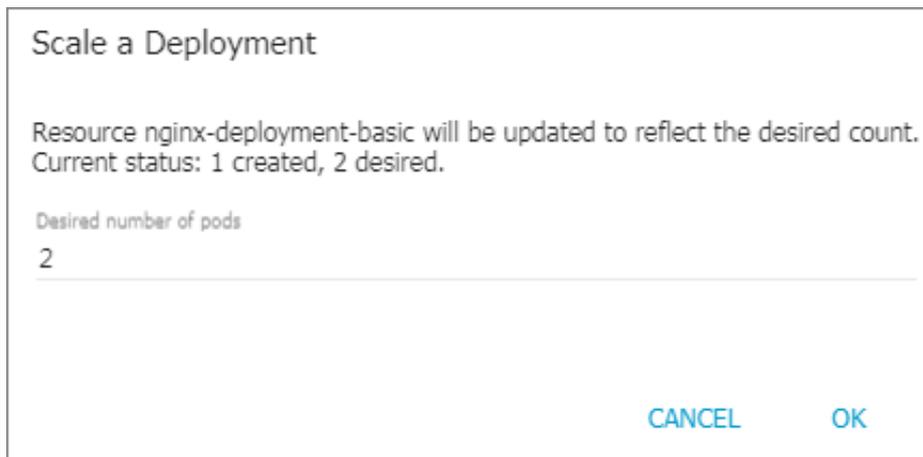
4. In the left-side navigation pane, click **Deployments**.

5. Click the  icon on the right of the target deployment, and then click Scale.



6. In the displayed dialog box, change the value of Desired number of pods to the number you require. Here, the example number of desired pods is 2. Then, click OK.

This action adds a new pod. The number of replicas becomes 2.



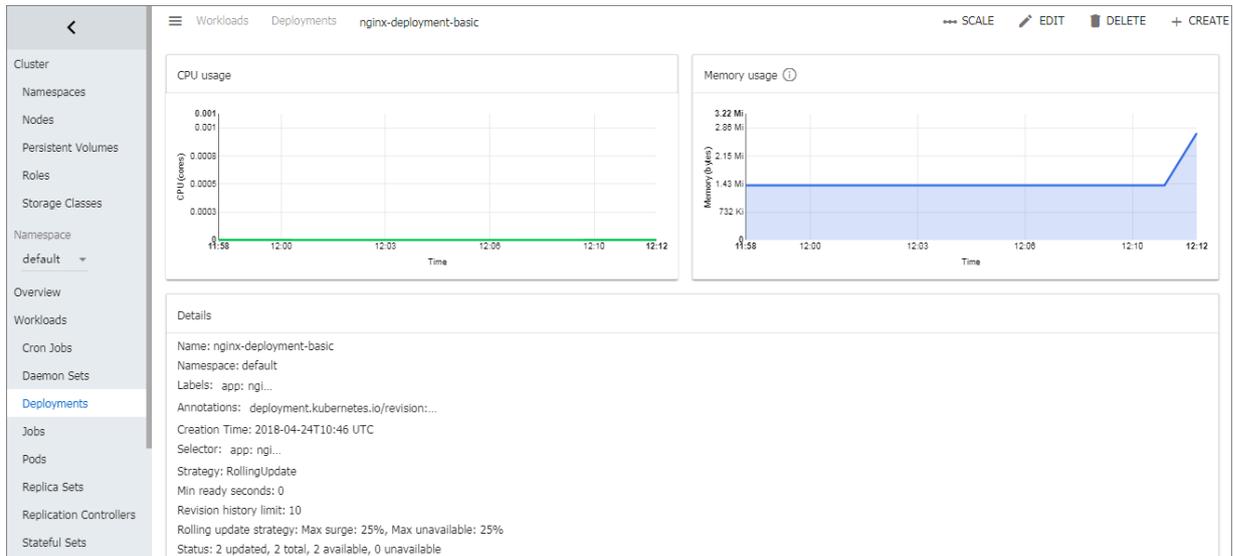
**What's next**

You can check the status of each Kubernetes object according to the icon on the left of the deployment list.  indicates the object is being deployed.  indicates the object has been deployed.

Additionally, you can click a deployment name to view the details of the running Web service. Specifically, you can view the replica sets included in the deployment, and the CPU usage and memory usage of these replica sets.

 **Note:**

If no resources are displayed, we recommend that you wait a few minutes and then refresh the page.



## 4.14 Create a service

This topic describes how to create a Kubernetes service with Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes (ACK).

### Background information

A Kubernetes service, known as a service in this and related topics of Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes, is an abstract object that defines a logical set of pods and a policy through which to access the pods. Usually, a label selector determines which set of pods are targeted by a service.

In a Kubernetes cluster, each pod has its own IP address, and the pods of a deployment can be removed at any time. However, this action changes the IP addresses of the pods. As a result, directly using IP addresses of pods is ineffective as the scenario does not provide high availability. By comparison, a Kubernetes service decouples the relationship between the frontend and the backend. Specifically, a Kubernetes service is a loose coupling service solution where the operations of the backend do not impact the frontend.

For more information, see [Kubernetes service](#).

## Limits

To create a service of the Server Load Balancer type, you can select an existing SLB instance for the service. Multiple services can reuse the same SLB instance. For reused SLB instances, the following limits apply:

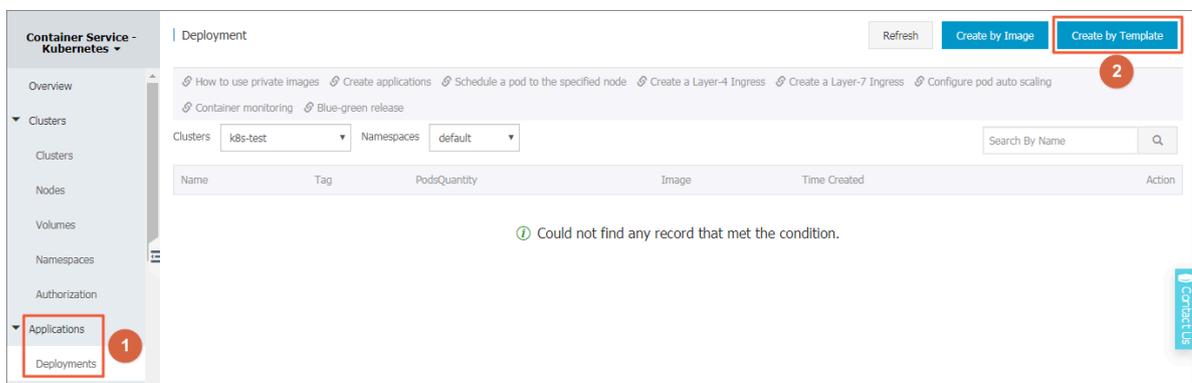
- If an existing SLB instance is reused, a new listener is created for the SLB instance and the original listener of the SLB instance is overridden.
- Only the SLB instances that you manually create by using the console or API can be reused. If an SLB instance is automatically created by the system for a service, it cannot be reused by any other service. Otherwise, the reused SLB instance may be removed incidentally.
- The multiple services that reuse the same SLB instance cannot have the same frontend listening port. Otherwise, port conflicts will occur.
- The name of the listener and virtual server group of a reused SLB instance cannot be modified.
- An SLB instance cannot be reused by services across Kubernetes clusters.

## Prerequisites

A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [Create a Kubernetes cluster](#).

### Step 1: Create a deployment

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose Applications > Deployments. Then click Create by Template in the upper-right corner.



3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and select a custom template or a sample template from the Resource Type drop-down list. Then, click DEPLOY.

Clusters

Namespace

Resource Type

[Deploy with exist template](#)

Template

```

1  apiVersion: apps/v1beta2 # for versions before 1.8.0 use apps/v1beta1
2  kind: Deployment
3  metadata:
4    name: nginx-deployment-basic
5    labels:
6      app: nginx
7  spec:
8    replicas: 2
9    selector:
10     matchLabels:
11       app: nginx
12   template:
13     metadata:
14       labels:
15         app: nginx
16     spec:
17       containers:
18         - name: nginx
19           image: nginx:1.7.9 # replace it with your exactly <image_name
20   :tags>
21     ports:
22       - containerPort: 80 ##You must expose
this port in the service.

```

Deployed successfully. Go to Dashboard to see the deployment progress: [Kubernetes Dashboard](#)

In this example, the sample template specifies an Nginx deployment.

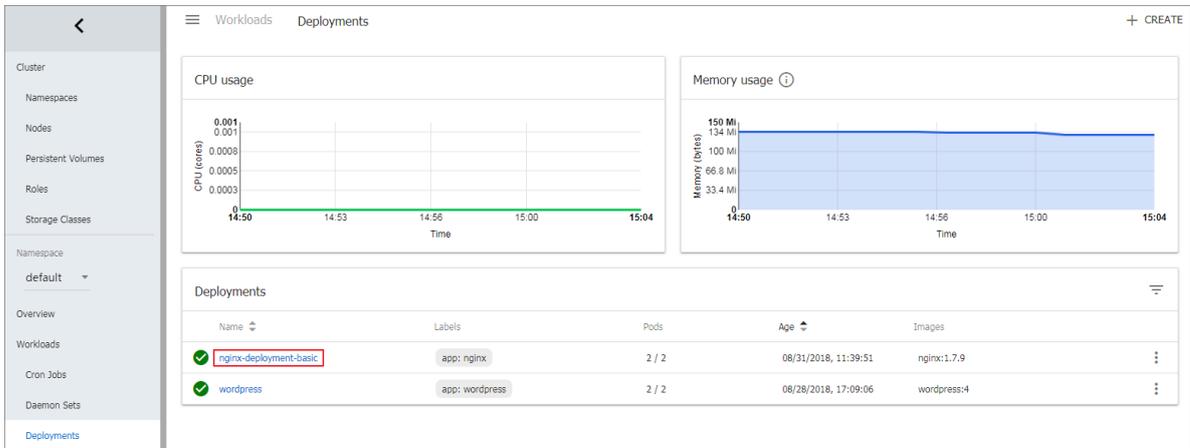
```

apiVersion : apps / v1beta2 # for versions before 1 . 8 .
0 use apps / v1beta1
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : nginx - deployment - basic
  labels :
    app : nginx
spec :
  replicas : 2
  selector :
    matchLabels :
      app : nginx
  template :
    metadata :
      labels :
        app : nginx
    spec :
      containers :
        - name : nginx
          image : nginx : 1 . 7 . 9 # replace it
with your exactly < image_name : tags >
          ports :

```

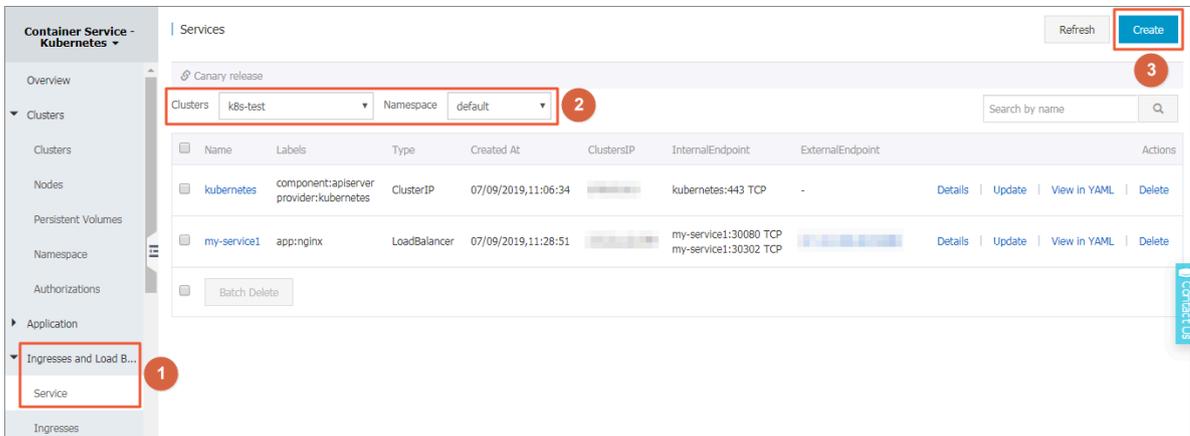
```
- containerPort : 80
## This port must be exposed in a service .
```

4. Click Kubernetes Dashboard to view the running status of this deployment.



Step 2: Create a service

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Ingresses and Load Balancing > Service.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace. Then, click Create in the upper-right corner.



#### 4. In the displayed dialog box, set service parameters.

Create Service ✕

Name:

Type:

Related:

Port Mapping: ➕ Add

service port	Container Port	Protocol	
<input type="text" value="80"/>	<input type="text" value="80"/>	<input type="text" value="TCP"/>	<span>⊖</span>

annotation: ➕ Add Annotations for load balancer

Name	Value	
<input type="text" value="service.beta.kubernetes.io"/>	<input type="text" value="20"/>	<span>⊖</span>

Tag: ➕ Add

Name	Value	
<input type="text" value="app"/>	<input type="text" value="nginx"/>	<span>⊖</span>

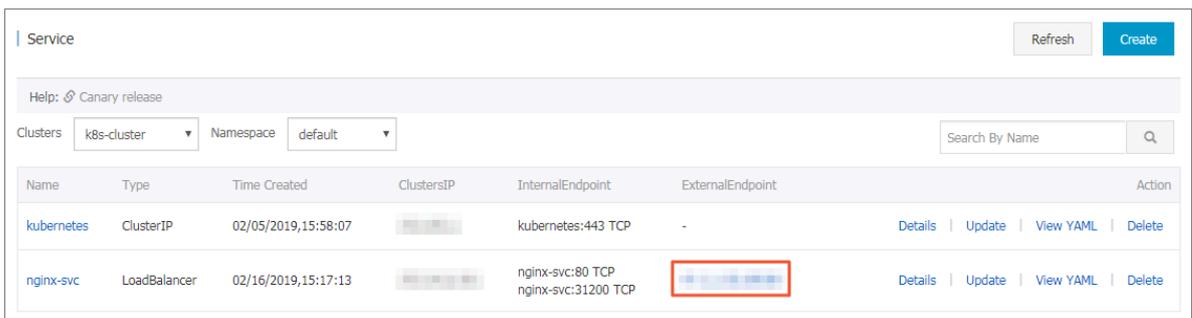
- **Name:** Enter the service name. In this example, the service name is set to `nginx-svc`.
- **Type:** Select the service type, namely, the service access method.
  - **Cluster IP:** Exposes the service by using the internal IP address of your cluster. If you select this service type, the service is accessible only within the cluster. This is the default service type.

- **Node port:** Exposes the service by using the IP address and the static port (NodePort) of each node. A node port service routes to a cluster IP service that is automatically created. You can access the node port service from outside the cluster by requesting `< NodeIP >:< NodePort >`.
- **Server Load Balancer:** Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer (SLB) service. To create a service of this type, you can select an existing SLB instance for the service, or set the system to automatically create an SLB instance for the service.

With this type of service, you can set an Internet or intranet access method for your application. An SLB instance can route to a node port service and a cluster IP service.

- **Related:** Select the backend object to associate with the service. In this example, the `nginx-deployment-basic` deployment created in the preceding step is associated with the service. If you do not associate the service with any objects, the system does not create any corresponding endpoint objects. In this case, you can manually associate the service with your own specific endpoints. For more information, see [Services without selectors](#).
- **Port Mapping:** Add a service port number and a container port number. The container port number that you set must be the same as the port number of the container exposed by the pod.
- **annotation:** Add an annotation to the service. You can set SLB parameters. For example, to control the service traffic, you can set the peak bandwidth of the service to 20 Mbit/s by setting this parameter as `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-bandwidth: 20`. For more information, see [#unique\\_40](#).
- **Tag:** Add a tag to the service to identify the service.

##### 5. Click Create. The `nginx-svc` service is then displayed in the service list.



Name	Type	Time Created	ClustersIP	InternalEndpoint	ExternalEndpoint	Action
kubernetes	ClusterIP	02/05/2019,15:58:07		kubernetes:443 TCP	-	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Update</a>   <a href="#">View YAML</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
nginx-svc	LoadBalancer	02/16/2019,15:17:13		nginx-svc:80 TCP nginx-svc:31200 TCP		<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Update</a>   <a href="#">View YAML</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>

6. Enter the external endpoint of the nginx-svc service in your browser to access the service.



## 4.15 View a service

This topic describes how to view a Kubernetes service in Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes.

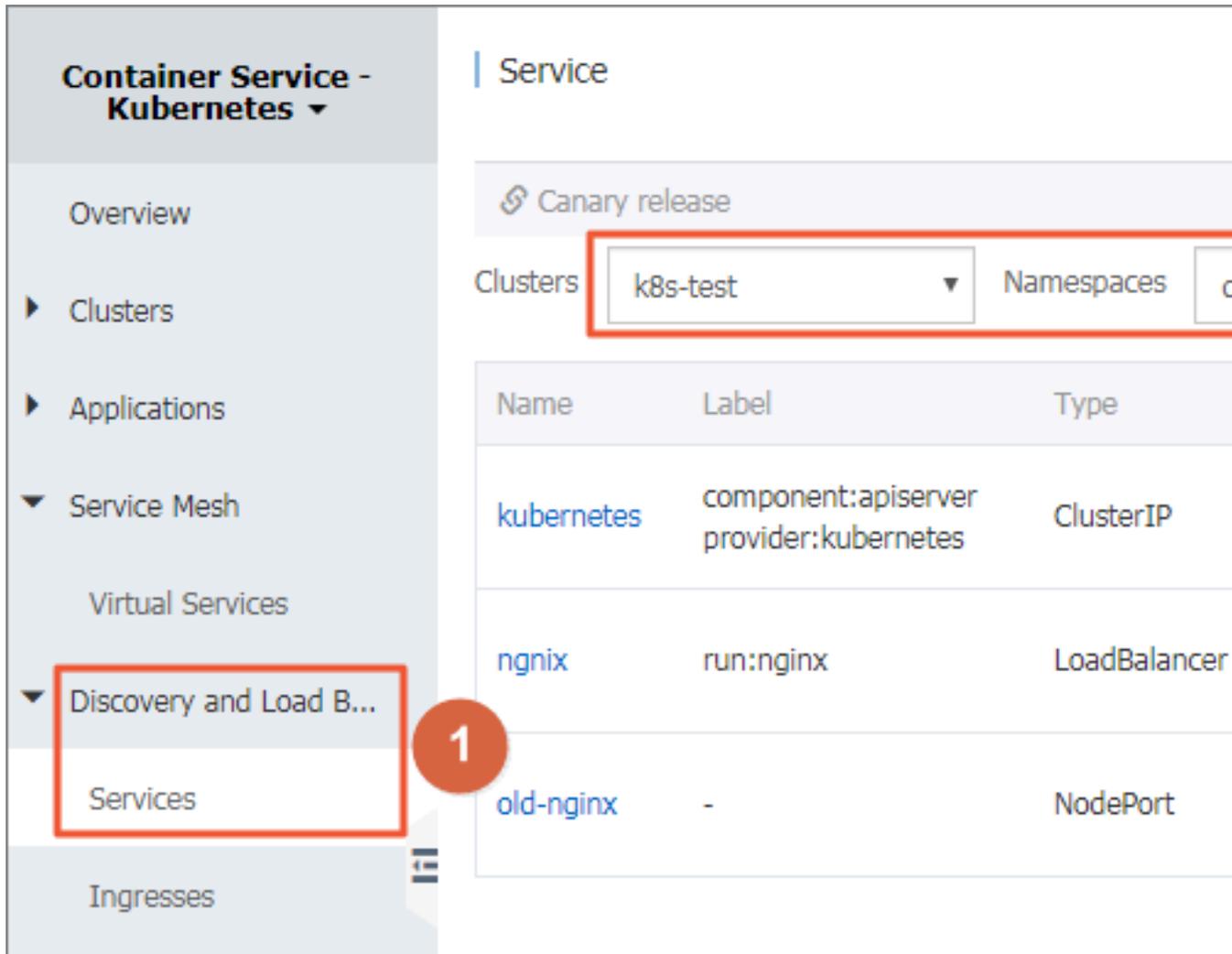
### Context

If you set an external service when you create an application, the Kubernetes dashboard creates the external service, in addition to running containers. The service is used to pre-set a Server Load Balancer to distribute traffic to the containers.

### Procedure

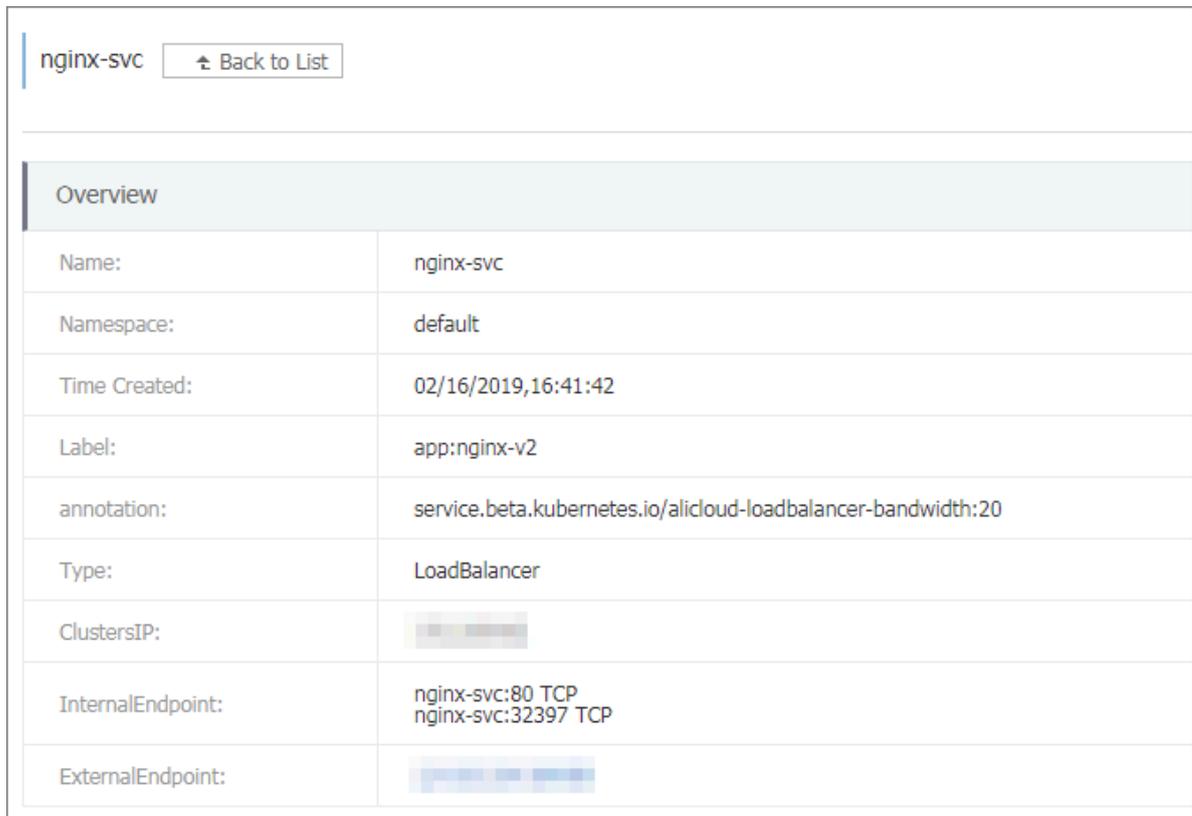
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Services**.

3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and then click Details on the right of the target service.



You can view the service name, service type, service creation time, cluster IP address, external endpoint, and other information. In this example, the external

endpoint (IP address) assigned to the service is displayed. To access the Nginx application, click this IP address.



Overview	
Name:	nginx-svc
Namespace:	default
Time Created:	02/16/2019,16:41:42
Label:	app:nginx-v2
annotation:	service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-bandwidth:20
Type:	LoadBalancer
ClustersIP:	[REDACTED]
InternalEndpoint:	nginx-svc:80 TCP nginx-svc:32397 TCP
ExternalEndpoint:	[REDACTED]

You can also open the Kubernetes dashboard of the target cluster and click **Services** in the left-side navigation pane to view all services of the cluster.

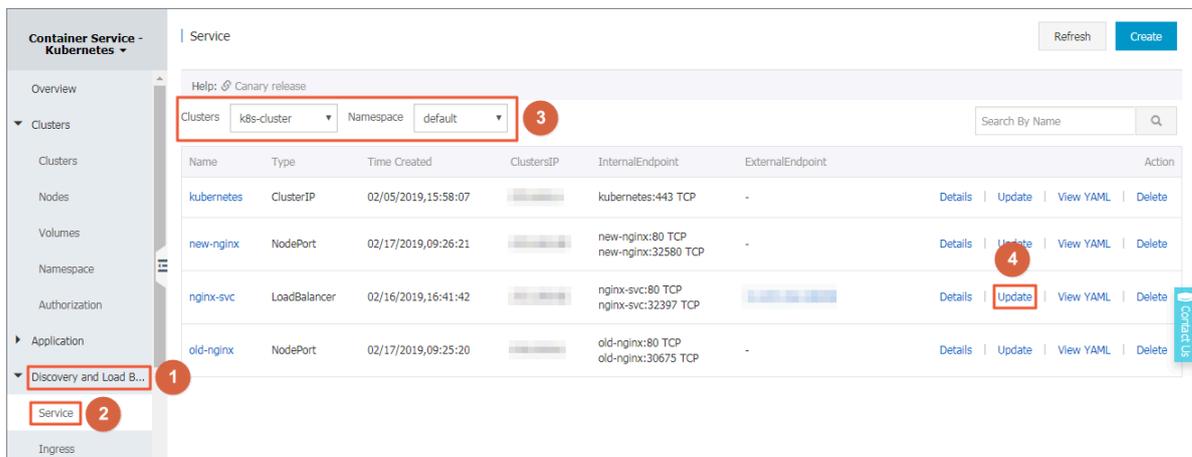
## 4.16 Update a service

This topic describes how to update a Kubernetes service in the Container Service console or the Kubernetes dashboard.

Update a service in the Container Service console

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Service**.

3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and then click Update on the right of the target service. In this example, the target service is named nginx-svc.



- In the displayed dialog box, update the service parameters. Then, click Update. In this example, the service tag is updated from app:nginx-v1 to app:nginx-v2.

Update Service
✕

---

Name:

Type: Server Load Balancer ▼ public ▼

Port Mapping: + Add

service port	Container Port	Protocol	
<input type="text" value="80"/>	<input type="text" value="80"/>	TCP ▼	-

annotation: + Add [Annotations for load balancer](#)

Name	Value	
<input type="text" value="service.beta.kubernetes.io"/>	<input type="text" value="20"/>	-

Tag: + Add

Name	Value	
<input type="text" value="app"/>	<input type="text" value="nginx-v1"/>	-

Update
Cancel

- In the service list, click **Details** on the right of the target service to view the service updates. In this example, the updated service tag `app:nginx-v2` is displayed.

Overview	
Name:	nginx-svc
Namespace:	default
Time Created:	02/16/2019,16:41:42
Label:	app:nginx-v2
annotation:	service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-loadbalancer-bandwidth:20
Type:	LoadBalancer
ClustersIP:	[REDACTED]
InternalEndpoint:	nginx-svc:80 TCP nginx-svc:32397 TCP
ExternalEndpoint:	[REDACTED]:80

### Update a service in the Kubernetes dashboard

- Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
- In the left-side navigation pane under **Kubernetes**, click **Clusters**.
- Click **Dashboard** on the right of the target cluster.

Cluster Name/ID	Cluster Type	Region (All)	Network Type	Cluster Status	Number of Nodes	Time Created	Version	Action
k8s-cluster	Kubernetes	China East 1 (Hangzhou)	VPC vpc-bp1nejq3u8...	Running	5	02/05/2019,15:51:15	1.11.5	<a href="#">Manage</a>   <a href="#">View Logs</a>   <a href="#">Dashboard</a> <a href="#">Cluster Expansion</a>   <a href="#">More</a>

- In the Kubernetes dashboard, select the target namespace and then click **Services** in the left-side navigation pane.

5. Click the icon on the right of the target service and then click View/edit YAML.

Name	Labels	Cluster IP	Internal endpoints	External endpoints	Age	
new-nginx	-		new-nginx:80 TCP new-nginx:32580 TCP	-	02/17/2019, 09:26:21	⋮
old-nginx	-		old-nginx:80 TCP old-nginx:30675 TCP	-	02/17/2019, 09:25:20	⋮
nginx-svc	app: nginx-v2		nginx-svc:80 TCP nginx-svc:32397 TCP		02/16/2019, 16:41:42	Delete
kubernetes	component: apiserver provider: kubernetes		kubernetes:443 TCP	-	02/05/2019, 15:58:07	View/edit YAML

6. In the displayed dialog box, modify the service settings. Then, click UPDATE. In this example, the nodePort is changed to 31000.

```

1. {
2.   "kind": "Service",
3.   "apiVersion": "v1",
4.   "metadata": {
5.     "name": "nginx-svc",
6.     "namespace": "default",
7.     "selfLink": "/api/v1/namespaces/default/services/nginx-svc",
8.     "uid": "75c42037-4461-11e8-b6c3-00163e082abf",
9.     "resourceVersion": "51224",
10.    "creationTimestamp": "2018-04-20T06:10:01Z"
11.  },
12.  "spec": {
13.    "ports": [
14.      {
15.        "protocol": "TCP",
16.        "port": 8080,
17.        "targetPort": 80,
18.        "nodePort": 31000
19.      }
20.    ],
21.    "selector": {
22.      "app": "nginx"
23.    },
24.    "clusterIP": "172.19.3.195",
25.    "type": "LoadBalancer",

```

CANCEL COPY UPDATE

## 4.17 Delete a service

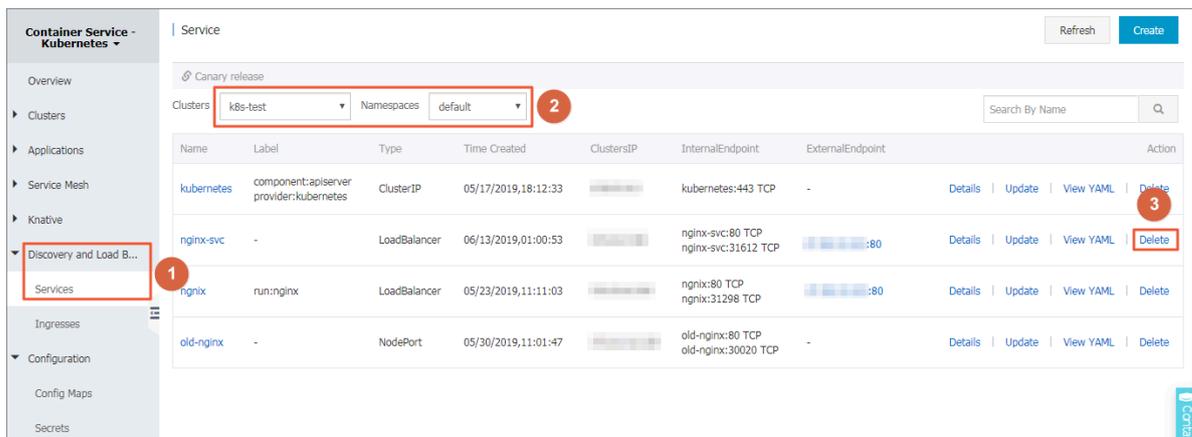
This topic describes how to delete a Kubernetes service in the Container Service console.

### Prerequisites

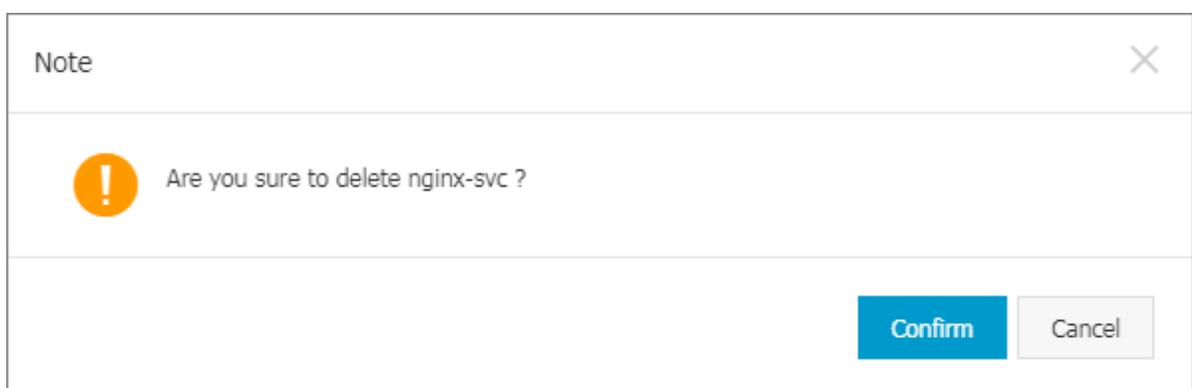
- A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [Create a Kubernetes cluster](#).
- A service is created. For more information, see [Create a service](#).

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Services**.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and then click **Delete** on the right of the target service. In this example, the target service is named `nginx-svc`.



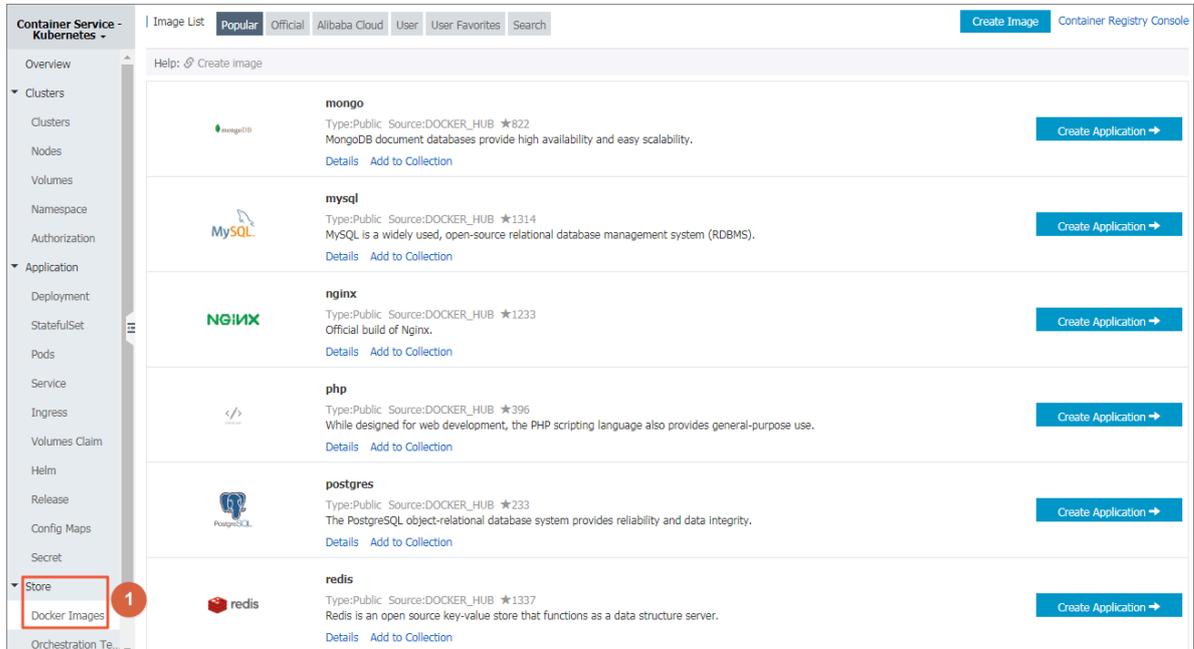
4. In the displayed dialog box, click **Confirm**.



## 4.18 View image list

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click **Store** > **Docker Images** in the left-side navigation pane.



You can view the image category.

- **Popular:** Some common images recommended by Container Service.
- **Official:** Official images provided by Docker Hub.

## 4.19 Use an image Secret

Container Service Kubernetes clusters support using image secrets through the web interface. You can create an image secret and use an existing image secret.

### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have built a private image repository and uploaded your image to the repository. In this example, use Alibaba Cloud Container Registry. For more information, see [#unique\\_63](#).

### Context

When you use a private image to create an application, you have to configure a secret for the image to secure the image. In the Container Service console, you can deliver

the identity authentication information of the private image repository to Kubernetes through a secret of the docker-registry type.

## Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Applications > Deployments. Then, click Create by Image in the upper-right corner.
3. Configure Name, Cluster, Namespace, Replicas, and Type. The configured value of the replicas parameter specifies the number of pods contained in the application. Click Next.



Note:

In this example, select the Deployment type.

If you do not configure Namespace, the system uses the default namespace by default.

Basic Information | Container | Advanced | Done

Name:   
The name should be 1-64 characters long, and can contain numbers, lower case English letters and hyphens, but cannot start with a hyphen.

Cluster:

Namespace :

Replicas:

Type:

Back Next

4. Configure containers.



Note:

This example describes only the configuration of the container image secret. For more information about container configuration, see [#unique\\_32](#).

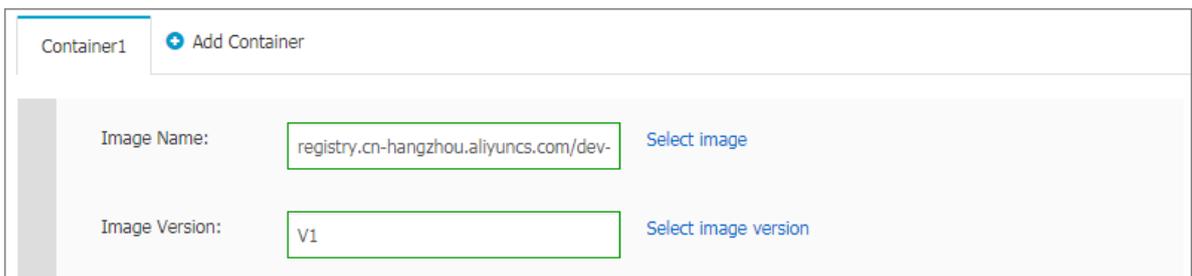
5. On the container configuration page, configure the image name first. Enter the private image address in the Image Name box. The format is `domainname / namespace / imagename`.



Note:

Public images do not require image secrets.

6. In the image version box, enter the private image address version.



The screenshot shows a configuration interface for a container. At the top left, there is a tab labeled 'Container1' and a button with a plus sign and the text 'Add Container'. Below this, there are two input fields. The first is labeled 'Image Name:' and contains the text 'registry.cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/dev-'. To its right is a blue link that says 'Select image'. The second is labeled 'Image Version:' and contains the text 'V1'. To its right is a blue link that says 'Select image version'.

## 7. Click Image pull secret.

- Select Create secret.
  - **Name:** Specifies the secret name. You can define it by yourself.
  - **Repository Domain Name:** Specified the Docker repository address. If you enter the Alibaba Cloud Container Service image repository in the image name box, the system automatically adds the repository address by default.
  - **Username:** Specifies the user name of the Docker repository. If you use Alibaba Cloud Container Registry, the username is your Alibaba Cloud account name.
  - **Password:** Specifies the logon password of the Docker repository. If you use Alibaba Cloud Container Registry, the password is the independent logon password for Container Registry.
  - **Email:** Specifies an email address. This is optional.

Image pull secret

Create secret  Exist secret

Name\* tomcat-secret

Repository Domain Name\* registry.cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com

Username\*

Password\*

Email

OK Cancel

Click OK. The created secret is displayed on the page.

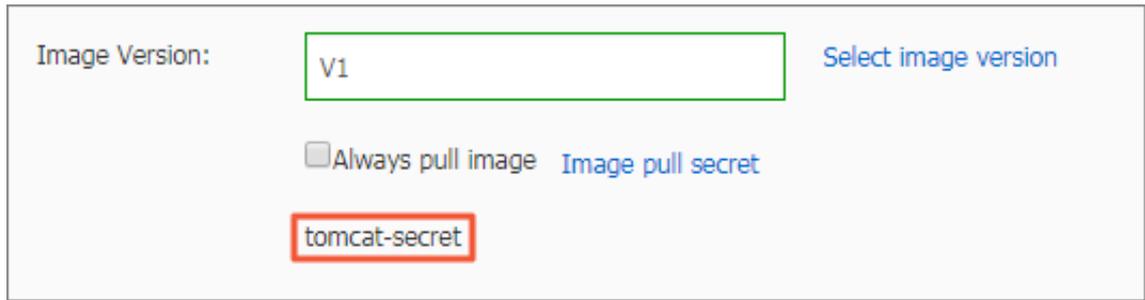


Image Version:  [Select image version](#)

Always pull image [Image pull secret](#)

- You can also click **Exist secret**. You can pre-create a container image secret by using command lines or a YAML file. For information, see [#unique\\_64](#) and [#unique\\_63](#).

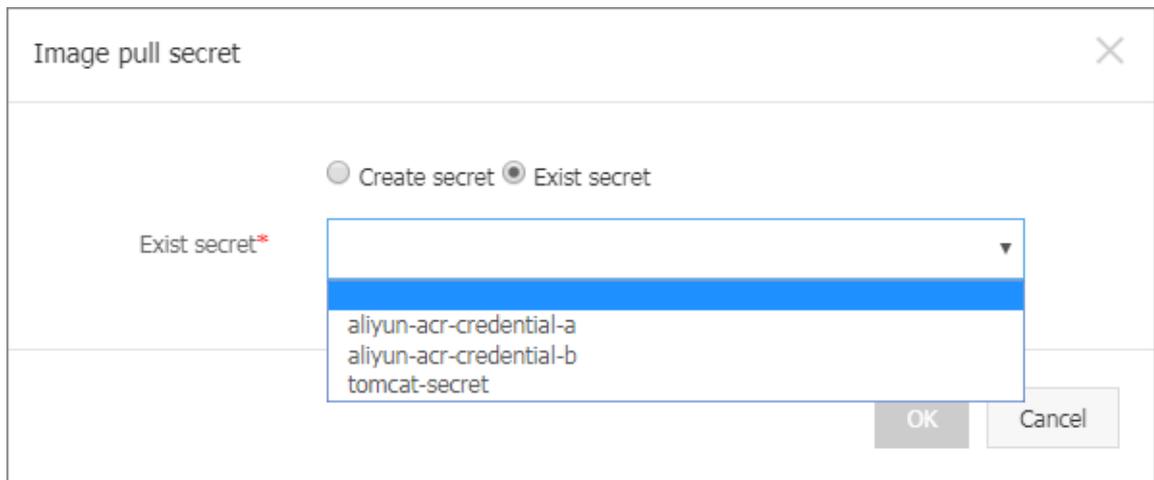


Image pull secret ✕

Create secret  Exist secret

Exist secret\*

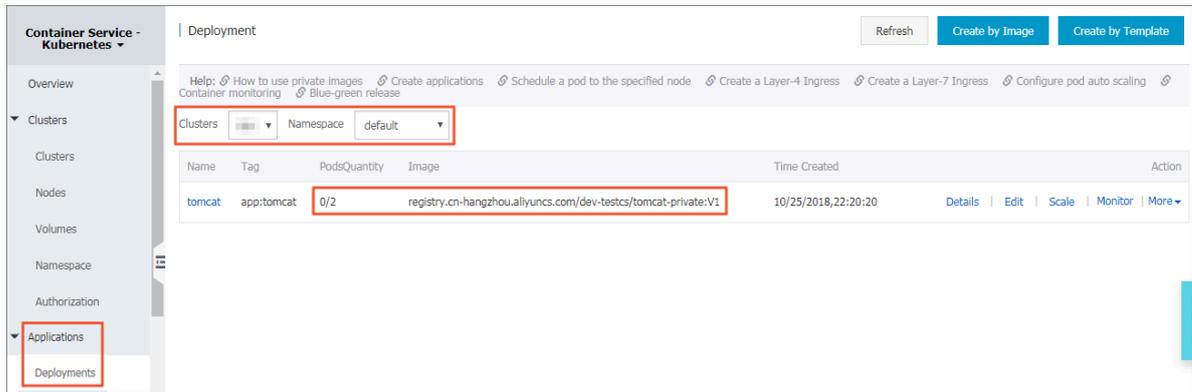
- aliyun-acr-credential-a
- aliyun-acr-credential-b
- tomcat-secret

8. After you complete the container configuration, click **Next**.
9. Follow the page guide to complete other configurations, and then click **Create**.
10. Click **Applications > Deployments** in the left-side navigation pane, and select the cluster and namespace in which the application is created to view the status of the tomcat application.



Note:

The system shows that the tomcat application runs properly, which indicates that you have used the tomcat private image through the secret.



## 4.20 Pull an image without a password

This topic describes how to pull a private image without a password from the Alibaba Cloud container image repository.

### Prerequisites

You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

### Context

- You can only pull a private image from an Alibaba Cloud container image repository that belongs to your account.
- You can pull a private image from a cross-region Alibaba Cloud container image repository.
- You can only perform this operation in multiple namespaces.
- You can pull a private image from an image repository of the Enterprise Edition of Alibaba Cloud Container Registry.
- Kubernetes clusters that support this function include:
  - Dedicated Kubernetes clusters
  - Managed Kubernetes clusters
  - Serverless Kubernetes clusters

- The following are Kubernetes cluster versions that support this function:
  - Dedicated Kubernetes cluster versions that are not earlier than v1.11.2 support this function by default. If the dedicated Kubernetes cluster version is earlier than v1.11.2, follow the procedures described in this topic.
  - All versions of managed Kubernetes clusters support this function.
  - All versions of serverless Kubernetes clusters support this function.

**Procedure**

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, click Clusters.
3. Click the target cluster name to view the cluster details.
4. In the Cluster Resources area, click Worker RAM Role.

Cluster Resource	
ROS	[Redacted]
Internet SLB	[Redacted]
VPC	[Redacted]
NAT Gateway	[Redacted]
Master RAM Role	[Redacted]
Worker RAM Role	[Redacted]



**Note:**

This topic uses the latest version of the RAM console.

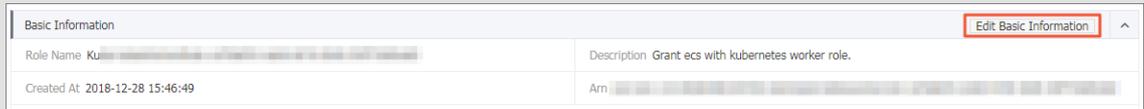
If you use an earlier version of the RAM console, you can modify the target policy document by using either of the following two methods:

**Method 1**

- a. In the left-side navigation pane, click Roles, and then enter the Worker RAM Role name in the Role Name box. Click the target Role Name.

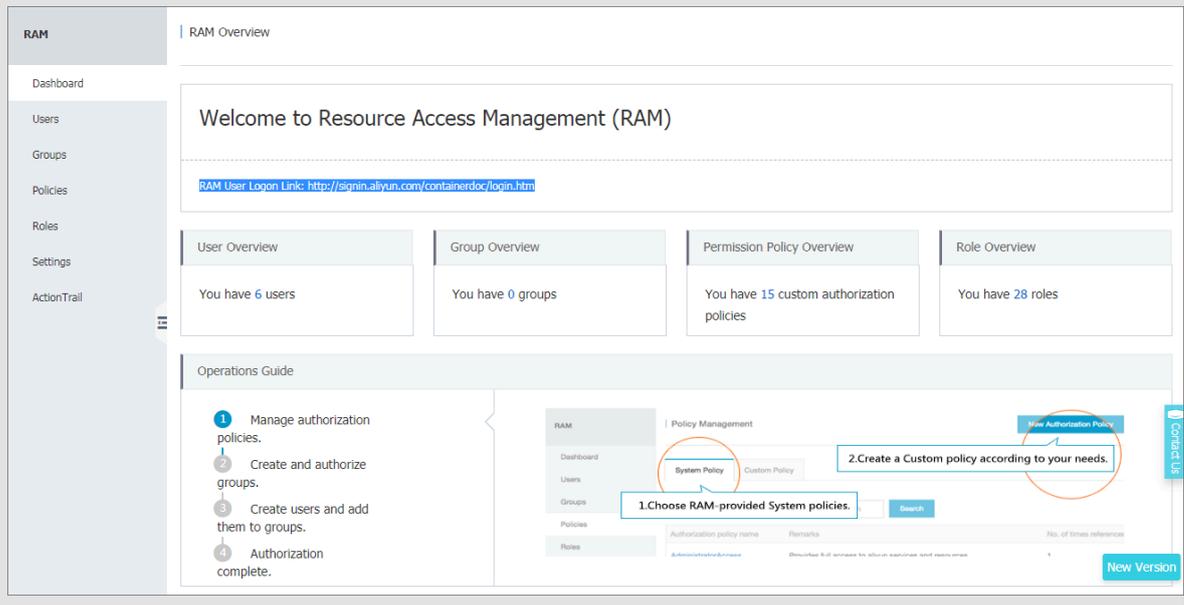
Role Management			Create Role	Refresh
Role Name	<input type="text" value="Kubernetes worker role"/>	Search		
Role Name	Created At	Actions		
[Redacted]	2018-12-28 15:46:49	Manage	Authorize	Delete

**b. In the Basic Information area, click Edit Basic Information in the upper-right corner.**



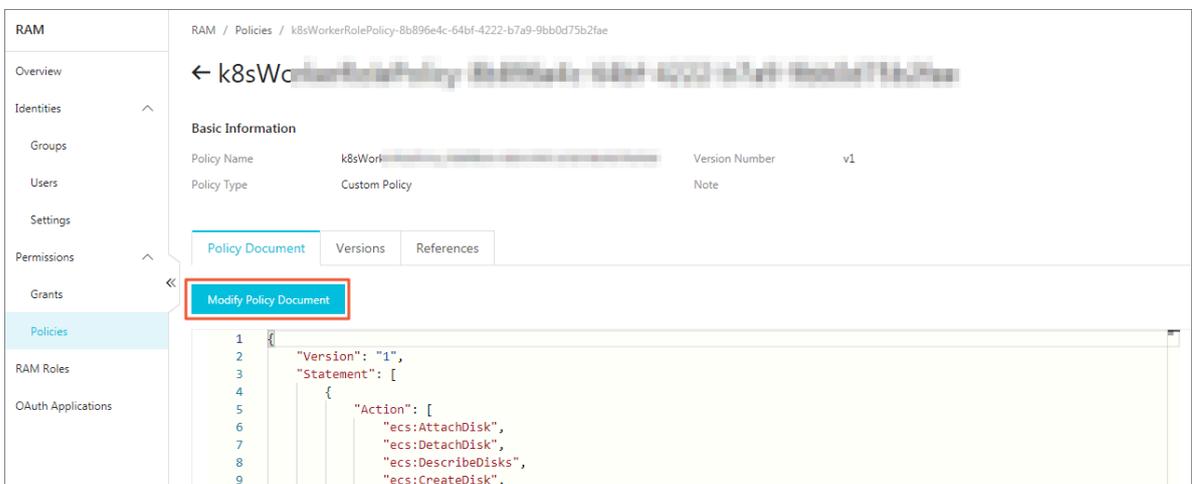
**Method 2**

**In the lower-right corner of the RAM dashboard page, click New Version to switch to the latest version of the RAM console. In the Container Service console, click Worker RAM Role to log on to the RAM console.**



**5. On the RAM Roles page, click the policy name in the Permission area to view the policy details.**

**6. On the Policies page, click Modify Policy Document in the Policy Document area.**



7. In the Policy Document area, add the following fields and then click OK.

```
{  
  " Action ": [  
    " cr : Get *",  
    " cr : List *",  
    " cr : PullReposi tory "  
  ],  
  " Resource ": "*",  
  " Effect ": " Allow "  
}
```

### Modify Policy Document

Policy Name  
k8sWork[blurred]

Policy Document

96	"Resource": [
97	
98	"*"
99	
100	],
101	"Effect": "Allow"
102	],
103	{
104	"Action": [
105	
106	"cr:Get*",
107	"cr:List*",
108	"cr:PullRepository"
109	
110	],
111	"Resource": "*",
	"Effect": "Allow"
	}
	}
	]
	}

OK Close

## 8. Create the `aliyun - acr - credential - helper` service to refresh a temporary token of Container Registry.

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : ConfigMap
metadata :
  name : acr - configurat ion
  namespace : kube - system
data :
  # For informatio n about configurat ion descriptio n
  , see the following table .
  acr - api - version : " 2018 - 12 - 01 "
  # acr - registry : " xxx - registry .*. cr . aliyuncs . com ,
xxx - registry - vpc .*. cr . aliyuncs . com "
  # watch - namespace : " all "
  # expiring - threshold : " 15m "
---
apiVersion : v1
kind : ServiceAcc ount
metadata :
  name : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
  namespace : kube - system
---
apiVersion : rbac . authorizat ion . k8s . io / v1beta1
kind : ClusterRol e
metadata :
  name : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
rules :
- apiGroups :
  - ""
  resources :
  - namespaces
  - configmaps
  verbs :
  - get
  - list
  - watch
- apiGroups :
  - ""
  resources :
  - serviceacc ounts
  - secrets
  verbs :
  - create
  - update
  - patch
  - get
  - list
  - watch
---
apiVersion : rbac . authorizat ion . k8s . io / v1beta1
kind : ClusterRol eBinding
metadata :
  name : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
roleRef :
  apiGroup : rbac . authorizat ion . k8s . io
  kind : ClusterRol e
  name : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
subjects :
- kind : ServiceAcc ount
  name : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
  namespace : kube - system

```

```

---
apiVersion : apps / v1beta2
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
  namespace : kube - system
  annotation s :
    component . version : " v19 . 01 . 28 "
    component . revision : " v1 "
  labels :
    app : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
spec :
  replicas : 1
  selector :
    matchLabel s :
      app : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
  template :
    metadata :
      labels :
        app : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
    spec :
      serviceAccountName : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
      containers :
        - name : aliyun - acr - credential - helper
          image : registry . cn - hangzhou . aliyuncs . com / acs /
aliyun - acr - credential - helper : v19 . 01 . 28 . 0 - f063330 -
aliyun
          imagePullPolicy : Always
          env :
            - name : POD_NAME
              valueFrom :
                fieldRef :
                  fieldPath : metadata . name
            - name : POD_NAMESPACE
              valueFrom :
                fieldRef :
                  fieldPath : metadata . namespace
          volumeMounts :
            - name : localtime
              mountPath : / etc / localtime
              readOnly : true
          volumes :
            - name : localtime
              hostPath :
                path : / etc / localtime
                type : File
      nodeSelector :
        beta . kubernetes . io / os : linux

```



**Note:**

The component Credential Helper of Alibaba Cloud Container Registry (ACR) is set with a ConfigMap. The settings of this component automatically take effect.

Table 4-1: ACR Credential Helper

Setting	Description	Default value
<code>acr - api - version</code>	<p>The version of the ACR API.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> The API of the Enterprise Edition of Alibaba Cloud Container Registry is supported.</p>	2018-12-01
<code>acr - registry</code>	<p>The target registry from which you pull an image without a password.</p>	<p>registry.*.aliyuncs.com,registry-vpc.*.aliyuncs.com,xxx-registry.*.cr.aliyuncs.com,xxx-registry-vpc.*.cr.aliyuncs.com</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> To set multiple registries, use commas (,) to separate them.</p>
<code>watch - namespace</code>	<p>The namespace that you use to pull an image without a password.</p>	<p>default</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> If you set this parameter as <code>All</code>, then all namespaces can be used to pull an image without a password.</p> <p>To set multiple namespaces, use commas (,) to separate them.</p>

Setting	Description	Default value
<code>expiring - threshold</code>	<p>The valid period before a temporary token in your local cache expires.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> A temporary token of Container Registry is located in your local cache and is automatically refreshed at intervals of this valid period.</p>	15m

## 5 Workflow

---

### 5.1 Create a workflow

This topic describes how to create a workflow by using the Container Service console or Ags CLI.

#### Background information

Based on Argo, the workflows developed by Alibaba Cloud provide containerized workflows for Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes. Specifically, a workflow is implemented as a Kubernetes Custom Resource Definition (CRD). As such, you can use `kubectl` to manage workflows, and integrate them with other Kubernetes services, such as volumes, Secrets, and Role-Based Access Control (RBAC). At the backend, the workflow controller provides complete workflow features such as parameter substitution, artifacts, fixtures, loops, and recursive workflows.

#### Prerequisites

- A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- The Master node of the Kubernetes cluster is accessible. For more information, see [#unique\\_26](#).

#### Procedure

- Use the Container Service console to create a workflow named Hello World
  1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
  2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Applications > Workflow.
  3. In the upper-right corner, click Create by Template.
  4. Set the template parameters.
    - Clusters: Select the target cluster.
    - Namespaces: Select the target namespace. The default namespace is used.
    - Sample Template: Select a sample YAML template or customize a YAML template.



Note:

Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes offers you with the sample YAML templates of various resources.

Create with Template
✕

**Clusters**

k8s-test ▾

**Namespaces**

default ▾

**Sample Template**

Resource - Hello World ▾

**Template**

```

1  apiVersion: argoproj.io/v1alpha1
2  kind: Workflow          # new type of k8s spec
3  metadata:
4    generateName: hello-world- # name of the workflow spec
5  spec:
6    entrypoint: whalesay      # invoke the whalesay template
7    templates:
8      - name: whalesay        # name of the template
9        container:
10         image: docker/whalesay
11         command: [cowsay]
12         args: ["hello world"]
13         resources:          # limit the resources
14           limits:
15             memory: 32Mi
16             cpu: 100m

```

DEPLOY

Cancel

The following is a sample YAML template of the workflow named Hello World:

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow          # new type of k8s
spec
metadata :
  generateName : hello - world - # name of the
workflow spec
spec :
  entrypoint : whalesay      # invoke the whalesay
template
  templates :
    - name : whalesay        # name of the template

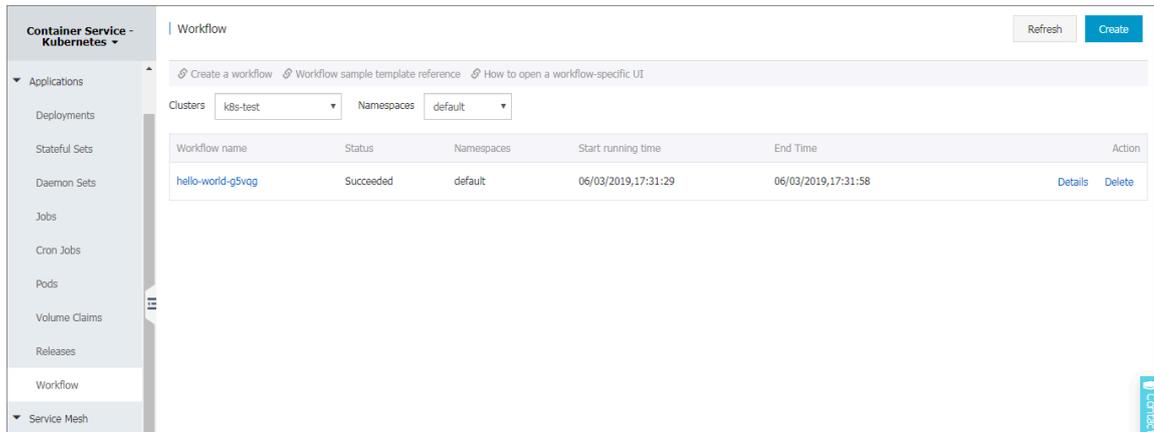
```

```

container :
  image : docker / whalesay
  command : [ cowsay ]
  args : [" hello world "]
  resources : # limit the resources
    limits :
      memory : 32Mi
      cpu : 100m

```

5. Click **DEPLOY**.
6. On the **Workflow** page, find the target workflow. Then, in the **Action** column, click **Details** to view the overview and container group information of the workflow.



- Use the command line interface (CLI) to create a workflow named **Parameters**



#### Note:

Ags CLI is a CLI tool customized by Alibaba Cloud. This tool is compatible to Argo. With Ags CLI, you can submit, check, modify, and delete workflows. For more information, see [#unique\\_68](#).

1. Create the file `arguments - parameters . yaml` , and then copy the following code to the file:

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : hello - world - parameters -
spec :
  # invoke the whalesay template with
  # " hello world " as the argument
  # to the message parameter
  entrypoint : whalesay
  arguments :
    parameters :
      - name : message
        value : hello world

  templates :
    - name : whalesay

```

```

inputs :
  parameters :
    - name : message      # parameter declaratio n
  container :
    # run cowsay with that message input parameter
  as args
    image : docker / whalesay
    command : [ cowsay ]
    args : ["{{ inputs . parameters . message }}" ]

```

2. Run the `ags submit arguments - parameters . yaml - p message` `= " goodbye world " command.`

You can create more workflows by modifying the sample workflow templates. For more information, see [#unique\\_69](#).

## 5.2 Sample workflow templates

This topic provides several sample workflow templates that can be used to create workflows.

### Steps

This sample workflow template can be used to create multi-step workflows, define more than one template in a workflow specification, and create nested workflows.



#### Note:

We recommend that you read the comments to ensure qualified code.

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : steps -
spec :
  entrypoint : hello - hello - hello

  # This spec contains two templates : hello - hello - hello
  # and whalesay
  templates :
    - name : hello - hello - hello
      # Instead of just running a container
      # This template has a sequence of steps
      steps :
        - - name : hello1          # hello1 is run before
          the following steps
            template : whalesay
            arguments :
              parameters :
                - name : message
                  value : " hello1 "
        - - name : hello2a        # double dash => run after
          previous step
            template : whalesay

```

```

arguments :
  parameters :
    - name : message
      value : " hello2a "
    - name : hello2b # single dash => run in
parallel with previous step
  template : whalesay
  arguments :
    parameters :
      - name : message
        value : " hello2b "

# This is the same template as from the previous
example
- name : whalesay
  inputs :
    parameters :
      - name : message
  container :
    image : docker / whalesay
    command : [ cowsay ]
    args : ["{{ inputs . parameters . message }}" ]

```

The preceding workflow prints a hello-hello-hello template that contains three distinct hello steps. The first step named `hello1` runs in sequence, whereas the next two steps named `hello2a` and `hello2b` run parallel with each other. By using the `Ags CLI` command, you can display the running records of this workflow specification through the following tree-structure diagram:

```

STEP                                     PODNAME
# arguments - parameters - rbm92
├---# hello1                             steps - rbm92 - 2023062412
├---# hello2a                             steps - rbm92 - 685171357
└---# hello2b                             steps - rbm92 - 634838500

```

### Directed acyclic graph (DAG)

This sample workflow template can be also used to specify the sequence of steps in a workflow. You can define the workflow as a directed acyclic graph (DAG) by specifying the dependencies of each task. This method can help to simplify complex workflows by allowing a maximum number of tasks to be run in parallel.

The following workflow template shows the sequence of steps as follows:

1. Step A runs first having no dependency.
2. When step A is complete, steps B and C run in parallel.
3. When both B and C are complete, step D runs.

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : dag - diamond -
spec :

```

```

entrypoint : diamond
templates :
- name : echo
  inputs :
    parameters :
      - name : message
  container :
    image : alpine : 3 . 7
    command : [ echo , "{{ inputs . parameters . message }}" ]
- name : diamond
  dag :
    tasks :
      - name : A
        template : echo
        arguments :
          parameters : [{ name : message , value : A }]
      - name : B
        dependencies : [ A ]
        template : echo
        arguments :
          parameters : [{ name : message , value : B }]
      - name : C
        dependencies : [ A ]
        template : echo
        arguments :
          parameters : [{ name : message , value : C }]
      - name : D
        dependencies : [ B , C ]
        template : echo
        arguments :
          parameters : [{ name : message , value : D }]

```

A dependency graph may have multiple roots. The templates called from a DAG or Steps template can be a DAG or Steps template. This allows you to separate a complex workflow into manageable parts.

## Secrets

This sample workflow templates supports the same secret syntax and mechanisms as the Kubernetes pod specification. Through using this template, you can access a secret that functions as an environment variable or volume.

```

# To run this example , first create the secret by
running :
# kubectl create secret generic my - secret -- from -
literal = mypassword = S00perS3cr etPa55word
apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : secret - example -
spec :
  entrypoint : whalesay
  # To access secrets as files , add a volume entry
in spec . volumes [] and
# then in the container template spec , add a mount
using volumeMounts .
  volumes :
  - name : my - secret - vol
    secret :

```

```

    secretName : my - secret      # name of an existing
k8s secret
  templates :
  - name : whalesay
    container :
      image : alpine : 3 . 7
      command : [ sh , - c ]
      args : ['
        echo " secret from env : $ MYSECRETPA SSWORD ";
        echo " secret from file : ` cat / secret / mountpath /
mypassword ` "
        ' ]
      # To access secrets as environment variables , use
the k8s valueFrom and
      # secretKeyRef constructs .
      env :
      - name : MYSECRETPA SSWORD # name of env var
        valueFrom :
          secretKeyRef :
            name : my - secret      # name of an existing
k8s secret
            key : mypassword        # ' key ' subcomponent of
the secret
          volumeMounts :
          - name : my - secret - vol # mount file containing
secret at / secret / mountpath
            mountPath : "/ secret / mountpath "

```

## Scripts and results

Generally, a template is required to run a script specified in the workflow specification. This following example shows how to do that:

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : scripts - bash -
spec :
  entrypoint : bash - script - example
  templates :
  - name : bash - script - example
    steps :
    - - name : generate
      template : gen - random - int - bash
    - - name : print
      template : print - message
      arguments :
        parameters :
        - name : message
          value : "{{ steps . generate . outputs . result }}" #
The result of the here - script

  - name : gen - random - int - bash
    script :
      image : debian : 9 . 4
      command : [ bash ]
      source : | # Contents
of the here - script
      cat / dev / urandom | od - N2 - An - i | awk - v f
= 1 - v r = 100 '{ printf "% i \ n ", f + r * $ 1 / 65536
}'

```

```

- name : gen - random - int - python
  script :
    image : python : alpine3 . 6
    command : [ python ]
    source : |
      import random
      i = random . randint ( 1 , 100 )
      print ( i )

- name : gen - random - int - javascript
  script :
    image : node : 9 . 1 - alpine
    command : [ node ]
    source : |
      var rand = Math . floor ( Math . random () * 100 );
      console . log ( rand );

- name : print - message
  inputs :
    parameters :
      - name : message
  container :
    image : alpine : latest
    command : [ sh , - c ]
    args : [" echo result was : {{ inputs . parameters .
message }}" ]

```

The `script` keyword allows you to specify the script body by using the `source` tag. This action first creates a temporary file that contains the script body, and then it passes the name of the temporary file as the final parameter to the command. The command must be the interpreter that runs the script body.

The `script` feature can also be used to assign the standard output of running the script to a special output parameter named `result`. All of this allows you to use the result of running the script in the rest of the workflow specification. In the preceding example, the result is echoed by the `print-message` template.

## Output parameters

This sample workflow templates provides a general means by which you can use the result of a step as a parameter, rather than as an artifact. This allows you to use the results from any type of step (rather than scripts) for condition tests, loops, and arguments. Output parameters work similarly to script results except that the value of the output parameters is set to the content of a generated file rather than the content of `stdout`.

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : output - parameter -
spec :
  entrypoint : output - parameter
  templates :

```

```

- name : output - parameter
  steps :
  - - name : generate - parameter
      template : whalesay
  - - name : consume - parameter
      template : print - message
      arguments :
        parameters :
          # Pass the hello - param output from the
generate - parameter step as the message input to print
- message
      - name : message
        value : "{{ steps . generate - parameter . outputs .
parameters . hello - param }}"

- name : whalesay
  container :
    image : docker / whalesay : latest
    command : [ sh , - c ]
    args : [" echo - n hello world > / tmp / hello_worl d .
txt "] # generate the content of hello_worl d . txt
    outputs :
      parameters :
        - name : hello - param # name of output parameter
          valueFrom :
            path : / tmp / hello_worl d . txt # set the value
of hello - param to the contents of this hello - world
. txt

- name : print - message
  inputs :
    parameters :
      - name : message
  container :
    image : docker / whalesay : latest
    command : [ cowsay ]
    args : ["{{ inputs . parameters . message }}" ]

```

However, DAG templates use a task prefix to refer to another task. For example, `{{ tasks . generate - parameter . outputs . parameters . hello - param }}`.

## Loops

- The following template iterates over a set of inputs:

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : loops -
spec :
  entrypoint : loop - example
  templates :
  - name : loop - example
    steps :
    - - name : print - message
        template : whalesay
        arguments :
          parameters :
            - name : message
              value : "{{ item }}"

```

```

    withItems : # invoke whalesay once for
each item in parallel
  - hello world # item 1
  - goodbye world # item 2

- name : whalesay
  inputs :
    parameters :
      - name : message
  container :
    image : docker / whalesay : latest
    command : [ cowsay ]
    args : ["{{ inputs . parameters . message }}"]

```

- The following template iterates over sets of items:

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : loops - maps -
spec :
  entrypoint : loop - map - example
  templates :
    - name : loop - map - example
      steps :
        - name : test - linux
          template : cat - os - release
          arguments :
            parameters :
              - name : image
                value : "{{ item . image }}"
              - name : tag
                value : "{{ item . tag }}"
            withItems :
              - { image : ' debian ', tag : ' 9 . 1 ' } # item
set 1
              - { image : ' debian ', tag : ' 8 . 9 ' } # item
set 2
              - { image : ' alpine ', tag : ' 3 . 6 ' } # item
set 3
              - { image : ' ubuntu ', tag : ' 17 . 10 ' } # item
set 4

    - name : cat - os - release
      inputs :
        parameters :
          - name : image
          - name : tag
        container :
          image : "{{ inputs . parameters . image }}:{{ inputs .
parameters . tag }}"
          command : [ cat ]
          args : [ / etc / os - release ]

```

- The following template passes lists of items as parameters:

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : loops - param - arg -
spec :
  entrypoint : loop - param - arg - example
  arguments :

```

```

    parameters :
      - name : os - list                                     # a
list of items
  value : |
    [
      { " image " : " debian ", " tag " : " 9 . 1 " },
      { " image " : " debian ", " tag " : " 8 . 9 " },
      { " image " : " alpine ", " tag " : " 3 . 6 " },
      { " image " : " ubuntu ", " tag " : " 17 . 10 " }
    ]

  templates :
    - name : loop - param - arg - example
      inputs :
        parameters :
          - name : os - list
      steps :
        - - name : test - linux
            template : cat - os - release
            arguments :
              parameters :
                - name : image
                  value : "{{ item . image }}"
                - name : tag
                  value : "{{ item . tag }}"
              withParam : "{{ inputs . parameters . os - list }}" #
parameter specifies the list to iterate over

# This template is the same as in the previous
example
    - name : cat - os - release
      inputs :
        parameters :
          - name : image
          - name : tag
      container :
        image : "{{ inputs . parameters . image }}:{{ inputs .
parameters . tag }}"
        command : [ cat ]
        args : [ / etc / os - release ]

```

- The following template dynamically generates the list of items to be iterated over:

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : loops - param - result -
spec :
  entrypoint : loop - param - result - example
  templates :
    - name : loop - param - result - example
      steps :
        - - name : generate
            template : gen - number - list
            # Iterate over the list of numbers generated by
            the generate step above
        - - name : sleep
            template : sleep - n - sec
            arguments :
              parameters :
                - name : seconds
                  value : "{{ item }}"
              withParam : "{{ steps . generate . outputs . result }}"

```

```

# Generate a list of numbers in JSON format
- name: gen-number-list
  script:
    image: python:alpine3.6
    command: [python]
    source: |
      import json
      import sys
      json.dump([i for i in range(20, 31)], sys
. stdout)

- name: sleep-n-sec
  inputs:
    parameters:
      - name: seconds
  container:
    image: alpine:latest
    command: [sh, -c]
    args: ["echo sleeping for {{inputs.parameters.
seconds}} seconds; sleep {{inputs.parameters.seconds}};
echo done"]

```

## Conditionals

A workflow template of the Conditionals type supports conditional execution. The following is a sample template named coinflip.

```

apiVersion: argoproj.io/v1alpha1
kind: Workflow
metadata:
  generateName: coinflip-
spec:
  entrypoint: coinflip
  templates:
    - name: coinflip
      steps:
        # flip a coin
        - name: flip-coin
          template: flip-coin
        # evaluate the result in parallel
        - name: heads
          template: heads # call heads template
        if "heads"
          when: "{{steps.flip-coin.outputs.result}} ==
heads"
        - name: tails
          template: tails # call tails template
        if "tails"
          when: "{{steps.flip-coin.outputs.result}} ==
tails"

        # Return heads or tails based on a random number
        - name: flip-coin
          script:
            image: python:alpine3.6
            command: [python]
            source: |
              import random
              result = "heads" if random.randint(0, 1) == 0
            else "tails"
            print(result)

```

```

- name : heads
  container :
    image : alpine : 3 . 6
    command : [ sh , - c ]
    args : [" echo \" it was heads \"" ]

- name : tails
  container :
    image : alpine : 3 . 6
    command : [ sh , - c ]
    args : [" echo \" it was tails \"" ]

```

## Recursion

Workflow templates can recursively invoke each other. In the following template (a variation of the preceding coinflip template), the coin is flipped until it lands on heads.

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : coinflip - recursive -
spec :
  entrypoint : coinflip
  templates :
    - name : coinflip
      steps :
        # flip a coin
        - - name : flip - coin
            template : flip - coin
        # evaluate the result in parallel
        - - name : heads
            template : heads # call heads template
        if " heads "
          when : "{{ steps . flip - coin . outputs . result }}" ==
heads "
        - name : tails # keep flipping coins
        if " tails "
          template : coinflip
          when : "{{ steps . flip - coin . outputs . result }}" ==
tails "

    - name : flip - coin
      script :
        image : python : alpine3 . 6
        command : [ python ]
        source : |
          import random
          result = " heads " if random . randint ( 0 , 1 ) == 0
else " tails "
          print ( result )

    - name : heads
      container :
        image : alpine : 3 . 6
        command : [ sh , - c ]

```

```
args : [" echo \" it was heads \""]
```

The following shows the result of several times of running templates to flip the coin:

```
ags get coinflip - recursive - tzcb5

STEP          PODNAME
MESSAGE
# coinflip - recursive - vhph5
|--# flip - coin          coinflip - recursive - vhph5 -
2123890397
L.-# heads              coinflip - recursive - vhph5 -
128690560
L-o tails

STEP          PODNAME
MESSAGE
# coinflip - recursive - tzcb5
|--# flip - coin          coinflip - recursive - tzcb5 -
322836820
L.-o heads
L-# tails
  |--# flip - coin          coinflip - recursive - tzcb5 -
1863890320
  L.-o heads
  L-# tails
    |--# flip - coin          coinflip - recursive - tzcb5 -
1768147140
    L.-o heads
    L-# tails
      |--# flip - coin          coinflip - recursive - tzcb5 -
4080411136
      L.-# heads              coinflip - recursive - tzcb5 -
4080323273
        L-o tails
```

In the first round to run the template to flip the coin, the coin immediately lands on heads and the coin is no longer flipped. In the second round to flip the coin, the coin lands on tails three times before landing on heads at which time the coin is no longer flipped.

### Exit handlers

An exit handler is a template run at the end of the workflow, regardless of whether the workflow succeeded or failed.

Exit handlers can be used if you want to perform any of the following actions:

- Clean up after a workflow is run.
- Send notifications of workflow status (for example, emails or Slack messages).
- Post the pass or fail status to a WebHook result (for example, a GitHub build result).

- **Resubmit a workflow or submit a new workflow.**

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : exit - handlers -
spec :
  entrypoint : intentiona l - fail
  onExit : exit - handler # invoke exit -
handler template at end of the workflow
  templates :
    # primary workflow template
    - name : intentiona l - fail
      container :
        image : alpine : latest
        command : [ sh , - c ]
        args : [ " echo ` intentiona l failure ; exit 1 " ]

    # Exit handler templates
    # After the completion of the entrypoint template ,
the status of the
    # workflow is made available in the global variable
{{ workflow . status }}.
    # {{ workflow . status }} will be one of : Succeeded ,
Failed , Error
    - name : exit - handler
      steps :
        - name : notify
          template : send - email
        - name : celebrate
          template : celebrate
          when : "{{ workflow . status }} == Succeeded "
        - name : cry
          template : cry
          when : "{{ workflow . status }} != Succeeded "
    - name : send - email
      container :
        image : alpine : latest
        command : [ sh , - c ]
        args : [ " echo send e - mail : {{ workflow . name }} {{
workflow . status }}" ]
    - name : celebrate
      container :
        image : alpine : latest
        command : [ sh , - c ]
        args : [ " echo hooray !" ]
    - name : cry
      container :
        image : alpine : latest
        command : [ sh , - c ]
        args : [ " echo boohoo !" ]

```

## Timeouts

A workflow template of the `timeouts` type can be used to limit the timeout of a workflow. In such a template, you must set the variable `activeDeadlineSeconds` for a timeout value to be specified.

```

# To enforce a timeout for a container template ,
specify a value for activeDeadlineSeconds .

```

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : timeouts -
spec :
  entrypoint : sleep
  templates :
  - name : sleep
    container :
      image : alpine : latest
      command : [ sh , - c ]
      args : [ " echo sleeping for 1m ; sleep 60 ; echo
done " ]
      activeDeadlineSeconds : 10 # terminate
      containerTemplate : after 10 seconds

```

## Volumes

In the following example, a volume is dynamically created, and then used in a two-step workflow.

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : volumes - pvc -
spec :
  entrypoint : volumes - pvc - example
  volumeClaimTemplates : # define volume , same
  syntax as k8s Pod spec
  - metadata :
    name : workdir # name of volume
claim
  spec :
    accessModes : [ "ReadWriteOnce " ]
    resources :
      requests :
        storage : 1Gi # Gi => 1024 * 1024
* 1024
  templates :
  - name : volumes - pvc - example
    steps :
    - name : generate
      template : whalesay
    - name : print
      template : print - message
  - name : whalesay
    container :
      image : docker / whalesay : latest
      command : [ sh , - c ]
      args : [ " echo generating message in volume ; cowsay
hello world | tee / mnt / vol / hello_world . txt " ]
      # Mount workdir volume at / mnt / vol before
invoking docker / whalesay
      volumeMounts : # same syntax as
k8s Pod spec
    - name : workdir
      mountPath : / mnt / vol
  - name : print - message
    container :

```

```

    image : alpine : latest
    command : [ sh , - c ]
    args : [" echo getting message from volume ; find /
mnt / vol ; cat / mnt / vol / hello_world . txt "]
    # Mount workdir volume at / mnt / vol before
invoking docker / whalesay
    volumeMounts :
    # same syntax as
k8s Pod spec
- name : workdir
  mountPath : / mnt / vol

```

Volumes help you move large amounts of data from one step in a workflow to another. Depending on the system, some volumes can be accessed from multiple steps at the same time.

If you want to access an existing volume, instead of dynamically create or destroy a volume, you can use or modify the following sample volume as needed:

```

# Define Kubernetes PVC
kind : PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion : v1
metadata :
  name : my-existing-volume
spec :
  accessModes : [ "ReadWriteOnce" ]
  resources :
    requests :
      storage : 1Gi
---
apiVersion : argoproj.io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : volumes-existing-
spec :
  entrypoint : volumes-existing-example
  volumes :
    # Pass my-existing-volume as an argument to the
volumes-existing-example template
    # Same syntax as k8s Pod spec
    - name : workdir
      persistentVolumeClaim :
        claimName : my-existing-volume

  templates :
    - name : volumes-existing-example
      steps :
        - name : generate
          template : whalesay
        - name : print
          template : print-message

    - name : whalesay
      container :
        image : docker / whalesay : latest
        command : [ sh , - c ]
        args : [" echo generating message in volume ; cowsay
hello world | tee / mnt / vol / hello_world . txt "]
        volumeMounts :
          - name : workdir

```

```

    mountPath : / mnt / vol

- name : print - message
  container :
    image : alpine : latest
    command : [ sh , - c ]
    args : [" echo 'getting message from volume ; find /
mnt / vol ; cat / mnt / vol / hello_world . txt "]
    volumeMounts :
      - name : workdir
        mountPath : / mnt / vol

```

## Daemon containers

Workflows can start containers (also known as daemon containers) that run in the backend while the workflow continues to be run. The daemons are automatically destroyed when the workflow exits the template scope in which the daemon is invoked. Daemon containers can be used to start services to be tested, or can be directly used in a fixture test or other tests.

Daemon containers can also be used to run large simulations to set a database as a daemon for collecting and organizing the results. The advantage of daemons over sidecars is that daemons can be run over multiple steps or even the entire workflow.

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : daemon - step -
spec :
  entrypoint : daemon - example
  templates :
    - name : daemon - example
      steps :
        - - name : influx
            template : influxdb # start an influxdb
            as a daemon ( see the influxdb template spec below )

        - - name : init - database # initialize
            influxdb
            template : influxdb - client
            arguments :
              parameters :
                - name : cmd
                  value : curl - XPOST ' http ://{{ steps . influx .
ip }}: 8086 / query ' -- data - urlencode " q = CREATE DATABASE
mydb "

        - - name : producer - 1 # add entries to
            influxdb
            template : influxdb - client
            arguments :
              parameters :
                - name : cmd
                  value : for i in $( seq 1 20 ); do curl -
XPOST ' http ://{{ steps . influx . ip }}: 8086 / write ? db = mydb
' - d " cpu , host = server01 , region = uswest load =$ i " ;
sleep . 5 ; done

```

```

- name : producer - 2 # add entries to
influxdb
  template : influxdb - client
  arguments :
    parameters :
      - name : cmd
        value : for i in $(seq 1 20); do curl -
XPOST ' http ://{{ steps . influx . ip }}: 8086 / write ? db = mydb
' - d " cpu , host = server02 , region = uswest load =$( ( RANDOM
% 100 )) " ; sleep . 5 ; done
      - name : producer - 3 # add entries to
influxdb
        template : influxdb - client
        arguments :
          parameters :
            - name : cmd
              value : curl - XPOST ' http ://{{ steps . influx . ip
}}: 8086 / write ? db = mydb ' - d ' cpu , host = server03 , region
= useast load = 15 . 4 '

- - name : consumer # consume intries
from influxdb
  template : influxdb - client
  arguments :
    parameters :
      - name : cmd
        value : curl -- silent - G http ://{{ steps . influx
. ip }}: 8086 / query ? pretty = true -- data - urlencode " db =
mydb " -- data - urlencode " q = SELECT * FROM cpu "

- name : influxdb
a daemon : true # start influxdb as
  container :
    image : influxdb : 1 . 2
    restartPolicy : Always # restart container
if it fails
  readinessProbe : # wait for
readinessProbe to succeed
  httpGet :
    path : / ping
    port : 8086

- name : influxdb - client
inputs :
  parameters :
    - name : cmd
  container :
    image : appropriate / curl : latest
    command : [ "/ bin / sh " , "- c " ]
    args : [ "{{ inputs . parameters . cmd }}" ]
    resources :
      requests :
        memory : 32Mi
        cpu : 100m

```

DAG templates use the tasks prefix to refer to another task. For example, `{{ tasks . influx . ip }}`.

## Sidecars

A sidecar is a container that is run in the same pod where the main container is executed. Sidecars help you create a pod that contains multiple containers.

The following workflow template of the sidecar type creates a sidecar container that runs Nginx as a simple web server. Containers come up in random order. Therefore, the main container polls the Nginx container until it is ready to response requests. We recommend that you use this design pattern for multi-container systems. That is, before you run the main code, you must wait for all of the required services to come up.

```

apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : sidecar - nginx -
spec :
  entrypoint : sidecar - nginx - example
  templates :
  - name : sidecar - nginx - example
    container :
      image : appropriate / curl
      command : [ sh , - c ]
      # Try to read from nginx web server until it
      comes up
      args : [" until ` curl - G ' http :// 127 . 0 . 0 . 1 /'
      >& / tmp / out ` ; do echo sleep && sleep 1 ; done && cat
      / tmp / out " ]
      # Create a simple nginx web server
    sidecars :
    - name : nginx
      image : nginx : 1 . 13

```

## Kubernetes resources

If you want to manage Kubernetes resources by using workflows, you can use a resource template, which allows you to create, delete, or updated any type of Kubernetes resources.

```

# in a workflow . The resource template type accepts
# any k8s manifest
# ( including CRDs ) and can perform any kubectl action
# against it ( e . g . create ,
# apply , delete , patch ).
apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : k8s - jobs -
spec :
  entrypoint : pi - tpl
  templates :
  - name : pi - tpl
    resource : # indicates that this is a
    resource template

```

```

    action : create          # can be any kubectl
    action ( e . g . create , delete , apply , patch )
    # The successCondition and failureCondition are
    optional expressions .
    # If failureCondition is true , the step is
    considered failed .
    # If successCondition is true , the step is
    considered successful .
    # They use kubernetes label selection syntax and
    can be applied against any field
    # of the resource ( not just labels ). Multiple AND
    conditions can be represented by comma
    # delimited expressions .
    # For more details : https :// kubernetes . io / docs /
    concepts / overview / working - with - objects / labels /
    successCondition : status . succeeded > 0
    failureCondition : status . failed > 3
    manifest : |             # put your kubernetes spec
here
    apiVersion : batch / v1
    kind : Job
    metadata :
      generateName : pi - job -
    spec :
      template :
        metadata :
          name : pi
        spec :
          containers :
            - name : pi
              image : perl
              command : [" perl ", "- Mbignum = bpi ", "- wle ", "
print bpi ( 2000 )"]
              restartPolicy : Never
              backoffLimit : 4

```

Resources created with this method are independent of the workflow. If you want the resource to be deleted when you delete the workflow, you can use Kubernetes garbage collection and the workflow resources as an owner reference.



#### Note:

- When you patch the Kubernetes resources, the resources gain the `mergeStrategy` attribute, which can be `strategy`, `merge`, or `json`. By default, `strategy` is used.
- `strategy` cannot be used to patch custom resources. You must use one of the other two `mergeStrategy` values. For example, you have defined a `CronTab` of Custom Resource Definition as follows:

```

apiVersion : " stable . example . com / v1 "
kind : CronTab
spec :
  cronSpec : "* * * * * / 5 "

```

```
image : my - awesome - cron - image
```

You can modify the preceding CronTab by using the following workflow:

```
apiVersion : argoproj . io / v1alpha1
kind : Workflow
metadata :
  generateName : k8s - patch -
spec :
  entrypoint : cront - tpl
  templates :
  - name : cront - tpl
    resource :
      action : patch
      mergeStrategy : merge # Must be one
of [ strategic merge json ]
    manifest : |
      apiVersion : " stable . example . com / v1 "
      kind : CronTab
      spec :
        cronSpec : "* * * * */ 10 "
        image : my - awesome - cron - image
```

## Reference

- For information about more resources, see [Argo workflow templates by example](#).
- For information about all the sample templates, see [Sample templates](#).

## 5.3 Enable the workflow UI

This topic describes how to enable and access the workflow UI by creating an Ingress. By using the workflow UI, you can view the status of all workflows, and the container logs of each step of a workflow.

### Prerequisites

- A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- The Master node of the Kubernetes cluster is accessible. For more information, see [#unique\\_26](#).

### Procedure

1. Run an `htpasswd` command to generate the file `auth`.



Note:

In this file, you can set the password used to access the workflow UI.

```
$ htpasswd -c auth workflow
New password : < workflow >
New password :
Re - type new password :
```

## Adding password for user workflow

2. Run the following command to create a Secret that is used to store the `auth` file in the target Kubernetes cluster.

```
$ kubectl create secret generic workflow - basic - auth --
from - file = auth - n argo
```

3. Create the file `ingress.yaml`, and then copy the following code to the file:

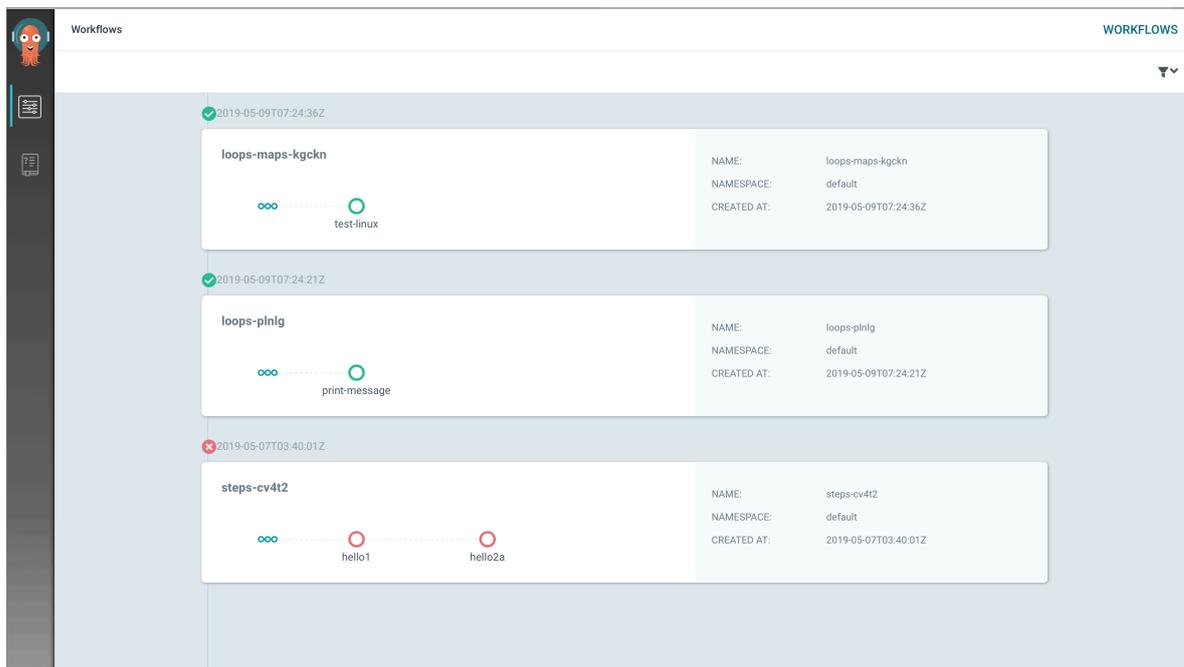
```
apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Ingress
metadata :
  name : workflow - ingress
  namespace : argo
  annotations :
    # type of authentication
    nginx . ingress . kubernetes . io / auth - type : basic
    # name of the secret that contains the user /
password definition s
    nginx . ingress . kubernetes . io / auth - secret : workflow -
basic - auth
    # message to display with an appropriate context
why the authentication is required
    nginx . ingress . kubernetes . io / auth - realm : '
Authenticat ion Required - workflow '
spec :
  rules :
  - host : workflow .< yourTestHo st >
    http :
      paths :
      - path : /
        backend :
          serviceNam e : argo - ui
          servicePor t : 80
```

**Note:**

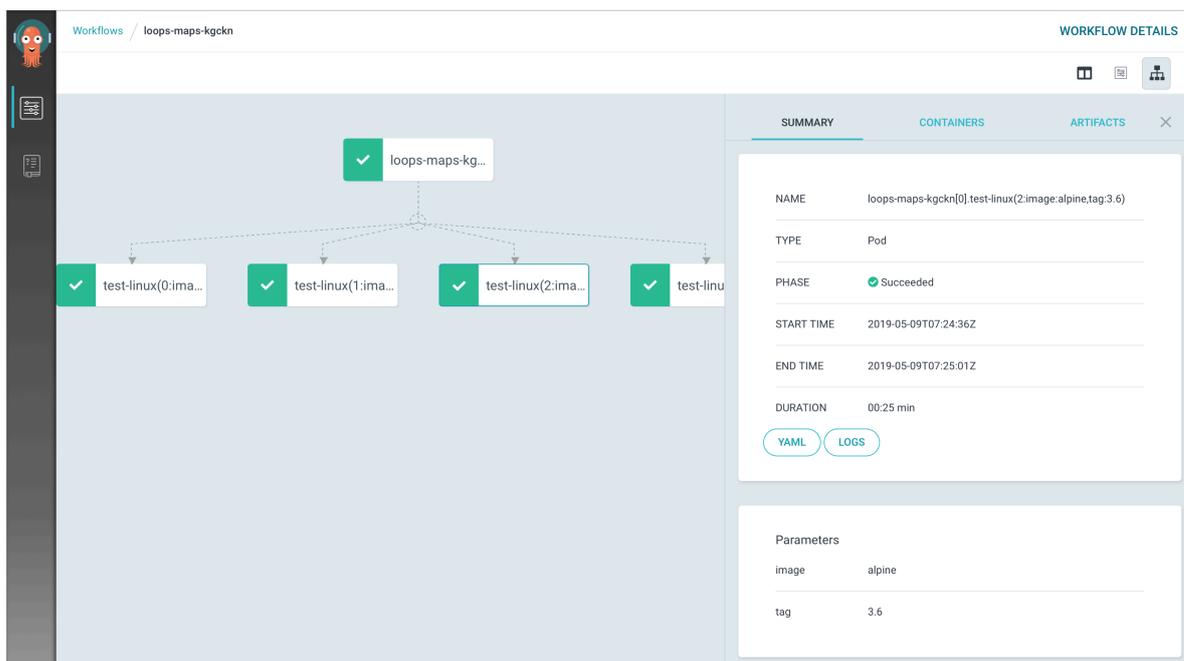
You must replace `< yourTestHo st >` with your cluster address (That is, the value of `Testing Domain` in the Cluster Information area. For example, `cfb131.cn-zhangjiakou.alicontainer.com`).

4. Run the `kubectl apply -f ingress.yaml` command to create an Ingress named `workflow-ingress`.

5. In your browser, enter `workflow.<yourTestHost>`, and then enter the password to view the page of workflow UI.



6. View the status of the target workflow.



## 5.4 Introduction to AGS CLI

This topic describes the features of Alibaba Cloud Genomics Compute Service (AGS) and how to download and configure AGS. By default, AGS calls Alibaba Cloud services

by using Alibaba Cloud access keys. AGS works with Log Service to collect pod logs. To use this function, you must select to enable Log Service when you create a cluster.

## Features

- Fully compatible to argo commands
- Works with Log Service, allowing you to view logs after a pod is deleted
- Compatible to kubectl commands, allowing you to manage clusters by using kubectl
- Provides `install` and `uninstall` commands, allowing you to install or uninstall resources as needed



### Note:

- You can run the `ags install` command to install resources.
- You can run the `ags uninstall` command to uninstall resources.
- Provides the `get workflow` command, allowing you to view the resource usage
- Provides YAML templates that allow special characters such as underscores (`_`)
- Provides security contexts
- Synchronizes pod status (such as pending and failed) with workflows
- Uses YAML templates to customize retries
- Retries an entire workflow when the workflow fails at any point
- Supports ECI Serverless Kubernetes architecture

## Download and installation

To install AGS and configure relevant permissions, run the following command:

```
wget http://ags-hub.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/ags-linux && chmod +x ags-linux && mv ags-linux /usr/local/bin/ags
```



### Note:

- You can run the `ags config init` command to enter required information in the CLI. After the system is initialized, the configuration files are saved to the `~/.ags/config` file. You can run the `ags config show` command to display the configured information. In the configured information, the `AccessKeySecret` is encrypted.

- To collect logs by using Log Service, you must first configure `ags config`. We recommend that you create an access key for the CLI and grant relevant permissions for Log Service.

If you are using a managed Kubernetes cluster, you can [connect to the Kubernetes cluster by using kubectl](#) and run the following command to use AGS through Cloud Shell:

```
wgethttp :// ags - hub . oss - cn - hangzhou . aliyuncs . com / ags
- linux && chmod + x ags - linux && mv ags - linux / usr /
local / bin / ags
```

## Available commands in AGS CLI

The available commands in AGS CLI are as follows:

```
[ root @ iZwz92q9h3 6kv8posr0i 6uZ ~]# ags
ags is the command line interface to Alibaba Cloud
Genomics Compute Service

Usage :
ags [ flags ]
ags [ command ]

Available Commands :
completion  output shell completion code for the
specified shell ( bash or zsh )
config      setup ags client necessary info
delete      delete a workflow and its associated pods
get         display details about a workflow
help        Help about any command
install     install ags
kubectl     kubectl command
lint        validate a file or directory of workflow
manifests
list        list workflows
logs        view logs of a workflow
resubmit    resubmit a workflow
resume      resume a workflow
retry       retry a workflow
submit      submit a workflow
suspend     suspend a workflow
terminate   terminate a workflow
uninstall   uninstall ags
version     Print version information
wait        waits for a workflow to complete
watch       watch a workflow until it completes

Flags :
-- as string                Username to impersonate
for the operation
-- as - group stringArray  Group to
impersonate for the operation , this flag can be
repeated to specify multiple groups .
-- certificate - authority string Path to a cert
file for the certificate authority
-- client - certificate string Path to a client
certificate file for TLS
```

```

    -- client - key string          Path to a client
key file for TLS
    -- cluster string              The name of the
kubeconfig cluster to use
    -- context string             The name of the
kubeconfig context to use
- h , -- help                      help for ags
    -- insecure - skip - tls - verify If true , the
server ' s certificat e will not be checked for
validity . This will make your HTTPS connection s
insecure
    -- kubeconfig string          Path to a kube
config . Only required if out - of - cluster
- n , -- namespace string         If present , the
namespace scope for this CLI request
    -- password string           Password for basic
authenticat ion to the API server
    -- request - timeout string   The length of
time to wait before giving up on a single server
request . Non - zero values should contain a correspond
ing time unit ( e . g . 1s , 2m , 3h ). A value of
zero means don ' t timeout requests . ( default " 0 " )
    -- server string             The address and port
of the Kubernetes API server
    -- token string              Bearer token for
authenticat ion to the API server
    -- user string               The name of the
kubeconfig user to use
    -- username string           Username for basic
authenticat ion to the API server

Use " ags [ command ] -- help " for more informatio n about
a command .

```

## 6 Network management

---

### 6.1 ACK network overview

This topic describes networks supported by Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes (ACK). Specifically, the interconnections supported within container networks, functions of container networks, infrastructures of container networks, the network plugin Terway, and network policies.

#### Interconnections within container networks

ACK provides stable and high-performance container networks by integrating Kubernetes networks and Alibaba Cloud Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) networks. The following features are supported within the interconnections of a container network:

- Pods that can access each other in a Kubernetes cluster.
- A pod that can access a service in a Kubernetes cluster.
- An Elastic Compute Service (ECS) instance that can access a service.
- A pod and an ECS instance that are mutually accessible in the same VPC, if a valid security group rule is set.

#### Functions of container networks

##### Service

In Kubernetes, a service is an object, which is assigned with a fixed IP address. The service forwards its received traffic to the corresponding pods according to label selectors. In addition, services in Kubernetes can work as load balancers for pods.

Services in Kubernetes solve the troubles caused by the following issues:

- Pods may be inaccessible because controllers in Kubernetes delete pods and then recreate new pods at any time.
- The IP address of a pod cannot be obtained. A pod is assigned with an IP address only after the pod is started.
- It is not feasible to access pods one by one because an application consists of a group of pods that run the same image.

For more information, see [#unique\\_60](#).

##### Ingress

IP addresses of services and pods can only be accessed within a Kubernetes cluster. Any request outside a Kubernetes cluster must be forwarded by a load balancer to the NodePort that is exposed by the destination service on a node, and then kube-proxy forwards the request to the corresponding pod by using an edge router or deserts the request. An Ingress in Kubernetes is an object that provides routing rules for the requests that enter into a Kubernetes cluster.

An Ingress can be configured to provide services with externally-reachable URLs, load balance traffic, terminate SSL / TLS, HTTP routes, and more. To implement these Ingress rules, the cluster administrator must deploy an Ingress controller. The Ingress controller listens to the changes occurred to the Ingress and services, configures load balancer according to the Ingress rules, and provides access endpoints.

The Ingress function is implemented by the following parts:

- **Nginx:** works as a load balancer to distribute requests to pods.
- **Ingress controller:** obtains the IP address of the pod that corresponds to the service by accessing the cluster API server, and then adds the IP address to the configuration file of Nginx.
- **Ingress:** creates a virtual machine for Nginx.

For more information, see [#unique\\_75](#).

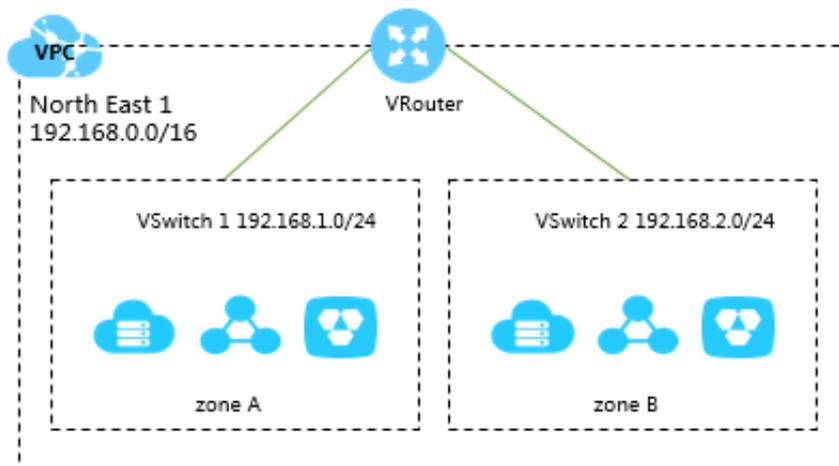
## Infrastructures of container networks

Infrastructures of container networks consist of VPCs and SLB instances.

### VPC

Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) is a type of private network developed by Alibaba Cloud. Different VPCs are logically isolated from other virtual networks in Alibaba Cloud. In a VPC, you can create and manage instances of cloud resources, such as ECS instances (cloud servers), RDS instances (cloud databases), and SLB instances.

A VPC consists of a private CIDR block, a VRouter, and at least a VSwitch.



## SLB

By setting a virtual service address, SLB virtualizes added ECS instances into an application service pool that has high performance and high availability, and distributes client requests to ECS instances in the server pool based on forwarding rules.

SLB also checks the health status of added backend servers, and automatically isolates abnormal ECS instances to eliminate Single Point of Failures (SPOFs), improving the overall service capability of your application. Additionally, working with Alibaba Anti-DDoS, SLB can defend DDoS attacks.

SLB consists of the following components:

- SLB instances

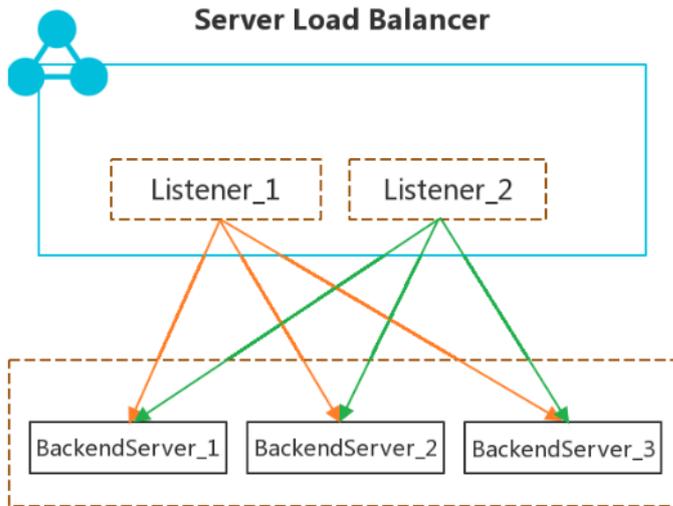
An SLB instance is a running load balancing service that distributes incoming traffic to backend servers. To use the SLB service, you must create an SLB instance, and then configure the instance with at least one listener and two backend servers.

- Listeners

A listener checks client requests and forwards the requests to backend servers according to the configured rules. It also performs health checks on backend servers.

- Backend servers

Backend servers are the ECS instances added to an SLB instance to process the distributed requests. You can add ECS instances to the default server group, a VServer group, or an active/standby server group for better management.



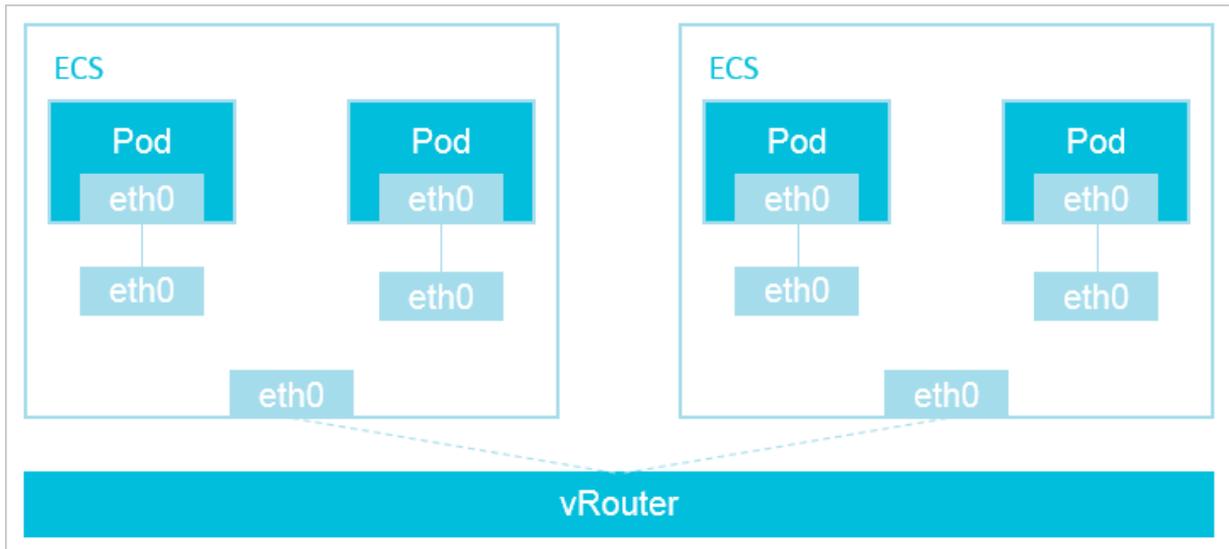
### Network plugin Terway

Terway is a network plugin developed by ACK. It is fully compatible with the Flannel plugin.

The following are features of Terway:

- Terway allocates Alibaba Cloud Elastic Network Interfaces (ENIs) to containers.
- Terway defines the access policies between containers according to the Kubernetes network policies. It is compatible with the Calico network policies.

The container network supported by Terway shows higher communication performance because no VXLAN or any other tunnel technology is used to encapsulate packets. Specifically, in the container network that the Terway network plugin is installed, each pod in a Kubernetes cluster has a network stack and IP address. When pods that run on one ECS instance communicate with each other, packets are forwarded within the ECS instance. When pods that run on different ECS instance communicate with each other, packets are forwarded by a VRouter of the VPC where the Kubernetes cluster is located.



### Network policy

A network policy is a specification of how pods are allowed to communicate with each other and other network endpoints.

In Kubernetes, the object used to configure a network policy is `NetworkPolicy`. It uses labels to select pods, and defines rules which specify what traffic is allowed to the selected pods. For more information, see [#unique\\_76](#).

## 6.2 Access services by using SLB

You can access services by using Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer (SLB).

### Context

If you specify an existing SLB instance for your cluster that uses Cloud Controller Manager (CCM) of V1.9.3 or later, CCM will not configure listeners for this SLB instance. You can set the `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-force-override-listeners` annotation to true to enable CCM to configure listeners for this SLB instance. Alternatively, you can manually configure listeners for this SLB instance.

You can run the following command to query the CCM version:

```
root@master # kubectl get po -n kube-system -o yaml | grep image: | grep cloud-con | uniq
```

```
image : registry - vpc . cn - hangzhou . aliyuncs . com / acs /
cloud - controller - manager - amd64 : v1 . 9 . 3
```

## Note

- If the type of a service is `LoadBalancer`, CCM creates or configures an SLB instance for the service, including resources such as the SLB instance, listener, and VServer group.
- If the type of a service is not `LoadBalancer`, CCM will not configure an SLB instance for the service. Especially, if you change the type setting of a service from `type = LoadBalancer` to `type != LoadBalancer`, CCM deletes the SLB instance that has been created for the service. If the SLB instance is an existing SLB instance specified through the `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-id` annotation, CCM will not delete the SLB instance.
- Automatic configuration update: CCM uses a declarative API and automatically updates the configuration of an SLB instance according to the service configuration under certain conditions. If you modify the configuration of the SLB instance in the SLB console, the modification may be overwritten when CCM updates the configuration. The modification is not overwritten only in the scenario where the SLB instance is an existing SLB instance specified by you and the `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-force-override-listeners` annotation is set to `false`. Do not modify the configuration of an SLB instance created and maintained by CCM in the SLB console.
- You can specify an existing SLB instance for a service, or enable CCM to create an SLB instance for a service. The SLB instances specified or created in the two methods are managed differently.

### Existing SLB instance

- You can set the `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-id` annotation to specify an existing SLB instance for a service.
- SLB instance configuration: CCM uses this SLB instance and configures it based on other annotations. CCM creates multiple VServer groups for this SLB instance. When the nodes of your cluster change, CCM updates the nodes in the VServer groups accordingly.
- Listener configuration: Whether CCM configures listeners for this SLB instance depends on the setting of the `service.beta.kubernetes.io`.

`io / alibabacloud - loadbalancer - force - override - listeners`

annotation. If this annotation is set to false, CCM will not configure listeners for this SLB instance. If this annotation is set to true, CCM tries to update listeners for this SLB instance. CCM checks whether a listener of the SLB instance is one managed by Kubernetes based on the name of the listener. If the listener name is in the format of `k8s / Port / ServiceName / Namespace / ClusterID`, the listener is managed by Kubernetes. If the listening port declared by the service conflicts with an existing listening port, CCM reports an error.

- SLB instance deletion: When the service is deleted, CCM will not delete the existing SLB instance specified through the `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-id` annotation.

#### SLB instance managed by CCM

- CCM can automatically create and configure resources such as the SLB instance, listener and VServer groups for a service based on the service configuration. All these resources are managed by CCM. Do not manually modify the configurations of these resources in the SLB console. If the configurations are modified, CCM will restore the configurations to those declared by the service at the next reconciliation, which causes unexpected results.
- SLB instance deletion: When the service is deleted, CCM deletes the SLB instance.
- Backend server update
  - CCM automatically updates the backend VServer group for the SLB instance of a service. When the backend endpoint of the service changes or nodes in the cluster change, CCM updates the backend servers accordingly.
  - If `spec . externalTrafficPolicy` is set to Cluster for a service, CCM adds all nodes of the cluster as backend servers of the SLB instance. CCM will not do so if the backend servers have been specified for the service through backend labels. SLB limits the number of SLB instances to which an Elastic Compute Service (ECS) instance can attach. This quota is consumed quickly if CCM adds backend servers in the preceding way. When the quota is used up, service reconciliation fails. To resolve this issue, you can set `spec.ExternalTrafficPolicy` to Local for a service.
  - If `spec . externalTrafficPolicy` is set to Local for a service, CCM adds only the nodes where the pods corresponding to the service are located as

backend servers to the SLB instance. This significantly reduces the consumption speed of the quota. In addition, Layer-4 source IP addresses can be retained in this mode.

- Under no circumstances will CCM add the master node of the cluster as a backend server to the SLB instance.
- If any node is drained or marked as unschedulable through the `kubectl drain` or `kubectl cordon` command, CCM removes it as a backend server from the SLB instance.

Use the command line

### Method 1:

#### 1. Create an NGINX application on the command line.

```
root @ master # kubectl run nginx -- image = registry .
aliyuncs . com / acs / netdia : latest
root @ master # kubectl get po
NAME                                READY    STATUS
RESTARTS      AGE
nginx - 2721357637 - dvwq3          1 / 1    Running
1                6s
```

#### 2. Create a service for the NGINX application and specify `type = LoadBalancer` to expose the NGINX service to the public network through an SLB instance.

```
root @ master # kubectl expose deployment nginx -- port =
80 -- target - port = 80 -- type = LoadBalancer
root @ master # kubectl get svc
NAME                                CLUSTER - IP          EXTERNAL - IP
PORT ( S )                          AGE
nginx                                172 . 19 . XX . XX    101 . 37 . XX . XX
80 : 31891 / TCP                      4s
```

#### 3. Visit `http :// 101 . 37 . XX . XX` in a browser to access your NGINX service.

### Method 2:

#### 1. Copy the following YAML code to the `nginx - svc . yml` file and save the file:

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  labels :
    run : nginx
    name : nginx - 01
    namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
```

```
run : nginx
type : LoadBalancer
```

2. Run the following command to create an NGINX application:

```
kubectl apply -f nginx - svc . yml
```

3. Run the following command to expose the NGINX service to the public network:

```
root @ master # kubectl get service
NAME          PORT ( S )      AGE9d      CLUSTER - IP          EXTERNAL - IP
ngi - 01nx    37 . XX . XX    LoadBalanc er      172 . 19 . XX . XX    101 .
80 : 32325 / TCP 3h
```

4. Visit `http://101.37.XX.XX` in a browser to access your NGINX service.

### Use the Kubernetes dashboard

1. Copy the following YAML code to the `nginx - svc . yml` file and save the file:

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  labels :
    run : nginx
  name : http - svc
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

2. Log on to the [Container Service console](#) and click Dashboard on the right of the target cluster. The Kubernetes dashboard page appears.
3. Click CREATE in the upper-right corner to create an application.
4. Click the CREATE FROM FILE tab. Select the `nginx - svc . yml` file you saved.
5. Click UPLOAD.

An NGINX service of the LoadBalancer type is created for the NGINX application. The service name is `http - svc`.

6. On the Kubernetes dashboard page, select the default namespace, and then click Services .

You can find the NGINX service `http - svc` . Its public endpoint is `http :// 114 . 55 . XX . XX : 80` .

7. Visit the endpoint in a browser to access the NGINX service.

Use the Container Service console

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service - Kubernetes, choose Applications > Deployments. The Deployments page appears.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and click Create from Template in the upper-right corner.
4. Select Custom in Sample Template and copy the following code to the Template section:

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  labels :
    run : nginx
    name : nginx
    namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

5. Click Create.
6. Click Kubernetes Dashboard to check the creation progress on the Kubernetes dashboard page.
7. Alternatively, choose Ingresses and Load Balancing > Services in the left-side navigation pane, and select the target cluster and namespace to check the deployed service.

## More information

Alibaba Cloud SLB supports a variety of parameters for you to configure, such as the health check, billing method, and SLB instance type. For more information, see [SLB configuration parameters](#).

## Annotations

Alibaba Cloud allows you to use SLB features by specifying `annotation s`.

- Create a public SLB instance

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

- Create an internal SLB instance

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotation s :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-address-type : "intranet"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

- Create an HTTP-type SLB instance

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotation s :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-protocol-port : "http : 80"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
```

```
targetPort : 80
selector :
  run : nginx
type : LoadBalancer
```

- **Create an HTTPS-type SLB instance**

Create a certificate in the Alibaba Cloud console and record the certificate ID. Then create an HTTPS-type SLB instance by specifying the required annotations.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-protocol-port : "https:443"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-cert-id : "${YOUR_CERT_ID}"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 443
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

- **Limit the bandwidth of an SLB instance**

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-charge-type : "paybybandwidth"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-bandwidth : "100"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 443
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

- **Specify the SLB instance specification**

For more information about SLB instance specifications, see [#unique\\_79](#).

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-
spec : "slb.s1.small"
  name : nginx
```

```

namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 443
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer

```

- **Use an existing SLB instance**

- **By default, listeners of an existing SLB instance are not overwritten. To forcibly overwrite listeners of an existing SLB instance, set `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-force-override-listeners` to `true`.**

```

service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-force-override-listeners : true

```

- **Currently, you cannot attach additional tags to an existing SLB instance by using the `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-additional-resource-tags` annotation.**

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-id : "${YOUR_LOADBALANCER_ID}"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 443
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer

```

- **Use an existing SLB instance and forcibly overwrite listeners of the SLB instance**

If you choose to forcibly overwrite listeners of an existing SLB instance, all existing listeners of the SLB instance are deleted.

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-id : "${YOUR_LOADBALANCER_ID}"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-force-override-listeners : "true"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 443
    protocol : TCP

```

```
targetPort : 443
selector :
  run : nginx
type : LoadBalancer
```

- Use backend labels to specify the worker nodes to be used as backend servers

Separate multiple labels with commas (,). Example: "k1=v1,k2=v2". A node must meet all the specified labels to be added as a backend server.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-backend-label : "failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/zone=ap-southeast-5a"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 443
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

- Set the session persistence time for a TCP-type SLB instance
  - The `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-persistence-time` annotation applies only to TCP listeners.
  - If an SLB instance has multiple TCP listeners, the setting takes effect on all the TCP listeners by default.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-persistence-time : "1800"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 443
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx
```

```
type : LoadBalancer
```

- **Configure session persistence based on cookie inserting for an HTTP-type or HTTPS-type SLB instance**
  - Only HTTP-type and HTTPS-type SLB instances support this setting.
  - If an SLB instance has multiple HTTP or HTTPS listeners, the setting takes effect on all the HTTP or HTTPS listeners by default.
  - All the annotations specified in the following example are required to configure session persistence based on cookie inserting.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-sticky-session : "on"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-sticky-session-type : "insert"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-cookie-timeout : "1800"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-protocol-port : "http:80"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 80
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

- **Configure session persistence based on the server cookie for an HTTP-type or HTTPS-type SLB instance**
  - Only HTTP-type and HTTPS-type SLB instances support this setting.
  - If an SLB instance has multiple HTTP or HTTPS listeners, the setting takes effect on all the HTTP or HTTPS listeners by default.
  - All the annotations specified in the following example are required to configure session persistence based on the server cookie.
  - The cookie specified by the `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-cookie` annotation can contain only letters, digits, underscores (`_`), and hyphens (`-`).

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
```

```

    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er -
    sticky - session : " on "
    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er -
    sticky - session - type : " server "
    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er -
    cookie : "${ YOUR_COOKI E }"
    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er -
    protocol - port : " http : 80 "
    name : nginx
    namespace : default
  spec :
    ports :
    - port : 80
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 80
    selector :
      run : nginx
    type : LoadBalanc er

```

- Specify the primary and secondary zones when creating an SLB instance
  - SLB instances in some regions do not support primary and secondary zones, such as ap-southeast-5.
  - Once created, the primary and secondary zones cannot be changed.

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotation s :
    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er -
    master - zoneid : " ap - southeast - 5a "
    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er -
    slave - zoneid : " ap - southeast - 5a "
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalanc er

```

- Use the nodes where pods are located as backend servers

By default, `externalTrafficPolicy` is set to Cluster for a service. In Cluster mode, all nodes in the cluster are used as backend servers. You can set `externalTrafficPolicy` to Local for a service so that only nodes where pods are located are used as backend servers.

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  externalTrafficPolicy : Local

```

```

ports :
- port : 80
  protocol : TCP
  targetPort : 80
selector :
  run : nginx
type : LoadBalancer

```

- Create an SLB instance of the Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) network type
  - All the annotations specified in the following example are required to create an SLB instance of the VPC network type.
  - Internal SLB instances support the VPC and classic network types. For more information, see [#unique\\_80](#).

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-address-type : "intranet"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-network-type : "vpc"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 443
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer

```

- Create an SLB instance that is charged by bandwidth
  - Only public SLB instances support billing by bandwidth.
  - All the annotations specified in the following example are required to create an SLB instance that is charged by bandwidth.

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-bandwidth : "45"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-charge-type : "paybybandwidth"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 443
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx

```

```
type : LoadBalancer
```

- Create an SLB instance with the health check feature enabled

- Create a TCP-type SLB instance with the health check feature enabled

- By default, the health check feature is enabled for TCP listeners and cannot be disabled. That is, the `service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-flag` annotation is invalid.

- All the annotations specified in the following example are required to create a TCP-type SLB instance with the health check feature enabled.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-type : "tcp"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-connect-timeout : "8"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-healthy-threshold : "4"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-unhealthy-threshold : "4"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-interval : "3"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 80
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

- Create an HTTP-type SLB instance with the health check feature enabled

All the annotations specified in the following example are required to create an HTTP-type SLB instance with the health check feature enabled.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-flag : "on"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-type : "http"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-uri : "/test/index.html"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-healthy-threshold : "4"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-unhealthy-threshold : "4"
```

```

    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er
- health - check - timeout : " 10 "
    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er
- health - check - interval : " 3 "
    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er
- protocol - port : " http : 80 "
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalanc er

```

- Specify the scheduling algorithm for an SLB instance

- **wrr (default):** Backend servers with higher weights receive more requests than those with lower weights.
- **wlc:** Requests are forwarded based on the weight and load (the number of connections) of each backend server. If the weights are the same, backend servers with fewer connections receive more requests than those with more connections.
- **rr:** Requests are sequentially distributed to backend servers.

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er -
scheduler : " wlc "
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 443
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx

```

```
type : LoadBalancer
```

- Create an SLB instance with the access control feature enabled
  - Create an access control list (ACL) in the Alibaba Cloud console and record the ACL ID. Then create an SLB instance with the access control feature enabled by specifying the required annotations.
  - A whitelist allows only access from specific IP addresses, while a blacklist restricts only access from specific IP addresses.
  - All the annotations specified in the following example are required to create an SLB instance with the access control feature enabled.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-acl-status : "on"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-acl-id : "${YOUR_ACL_ID}"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-acl-type : "white"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 443
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 443
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

- Specify a VSwitch for an SLB instance
  - Search for the ID of a VSwitch in the Alibaba Cloud VPC console. Then specify the VSwitch for an SLB instance by using the required annotations.
  - All the annotations specified in the following example are required to specify a VSwitch for an SLB instance.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-address-type : "intranet"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-vswitch-id : "${YOUR_VSWITCH_ID}"
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 443
      protocol : TCP
```

```
targetPort : 443
selector :
  run : nginx
type : LoadBalancer
```

- **Configure port forwarding for an SLB instance**

- Port forwarding enables an SLB instance to forward requests from an HTTP port to an HTTPS port.
- To configure port forwarding, you need to first create a certificate in the Alibaba Cloud console and record the certificate ID.
- All the annotations specified in the following example are required to configure port forwarding for an SLB instance.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-protocol-port : "https : 443 , http : 80 "
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-cert-id : "${YOUR_CERT_ID}"
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-forward-port : "80 : 443 "
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - name : https
      port : 443
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 443
    - name : http
      port : 80
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```

- **Attach additional tags to an SLB instance**

Separate multiple tags with commas (,), for example, "k1=v1,k2=v2".

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  annotations :
    service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-additional-resource-tags : "Key1 = Value1 , Key2 = Value2 "
  name : nginx
  namespace : default
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 80
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 80
```

```
selector :
  run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer
```



**Note:**

The values of the annotations are case sensitive.

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-loadbalancer-protocol-port	String	The listening port. Separate multiple ports with commas (,), for example, https:443,http:80.	None
service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-loadbalancer-address-type	String	The type of the SLB instance. Valid values: internet and intranet.	internet
service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-loadbalancer-slb-network-type	String	The network type of the SLB instance. Valid values: classic and vpc.  Set the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-loadbalancer-address-type</code> annotation to intranet if you need to select vpc as the network type.	classic

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-charge-type</code>	String	The billing method of the SLB instance. <b>Valid values:</b> paybytraffic and paybybandwidth.	paybytraffic
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-id</code>	String	The ID of the SLB instance. You can specify an existing SLB instance by setting the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-id</code> annotation. If you specify an existing SLB instance, its listeners are not overwritten by default. To forcibly overwrite the listeners of an existing SLB instance, set the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-force-override-listeners</code> annotation to <code>true</code> .	None
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-backend-label</code>	String	The labels for specifying the worker nodes to be added as backend servers of the SLB instance.	None

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-lb-spec</code>	String	The specification of the SLB instance. For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_79</a>	None
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-lb-persistence-timeout</code>	String	The session persistence time. Unit: seconds.  This annotation applies only to TCP listeners. Valid values: 0 to 3600.  The default value is 0, indicating that session persistence is disabled.  For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_81</a>	0
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-lb-sticky-session</code>	String	Specifies whether to enable session persistence. Valid values: on and off.   <b>Note:</b> This annotation applies only to HTTP and HTTPS listeners.  For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_82</a> and <a href="#">#unique_83</a>	off

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-lb-sticky-session-type</code>	<b>String</b>	<p>The method for processing cookies. Valid values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>insert : inserts a cookie.</li> <li>server : rewrites a cookie.</li> </ul> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p> <b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This annotation applies only to HTTP and HTTPS listeners.</li> <li>You must specify this annotation if the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-lb-sticky-session</code> annotation is set to <code>on</code>.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_82</a> and <a href="#">#unique_83</a></p> </div>	None

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<pre>service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er - cookie - timeout</pre>	<p><b>String</b></p>	<p><b>The cookie timeout period. Unit: seconds. Valid values: 1 to 86400 .</b></p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p> <b>Note:</b>  <b>You must specify this annotation if the service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er - sticky - session annotation is set to on and the service . beta . kubernetes . io / alicloud - loadbalanc er - sticky - session - type annotation is set to insert .</b></p> </div> <p><b>For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_82</a> and <a href="#">#unique_83</a></b></p>	<p>None</p>

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-cookie</code>	<b>String</b>	<p>The cookie configured on the backend server.</p> <p>The cookie must be 1 to 200 characters in length. It can contain only ASCII letters and digits. It cannot contain commas (,), semicolons (;), or spaces. It cannot start with a dollar sign (\$).</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p> <b>Note:</b></p> <p>You must specify this annotation if the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-sticky-session</code> annotation is set to <code>on</code> and the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-sticky-session-type</code> annotation is set to <code>server</code>.</p> </div> <p>For more</p>	None

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-master-zoneid</code>	String	The ID of the primary zone of backend servers.	None
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-slave-zoneid</code>	String	The ID of the secondary zone of backend servers.	None
<code>externalTrafficPolicy</code>	String	The policy for adding nodes as backend servers. Valid values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cluster : adds all nodes as backend servers.</li> <li>Local : adds the nodes where pods are located as backend servers.</li> </ul>	Cluster
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-force-override-listeners</code>	String	Specifies whether to overwrite the listeners of an existing SLB instance that is specified.	false : The listeners of the existing SLB instance are not overwritten.
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-bandwidth</code>	String	The bandwidth of the SLB instance . This annotation applies only to public SLB instances.	50

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-cert-id</code>	String	The ID of the certificate in Alibaba Cloud. You must upload a certificate first.	None
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-flag</code>	String	Specifies whether to enable the health check feature. Valid values: <code>on</code> and <code>off</code> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default value is <code>on</code> for TCP listeners, and cannot be changed.</li> <li>The default value is <code>off</code> for HTTP listeners.</li> </ul>	<code>off</code> . This annotation is not required for TCP listeners. By default, the health check feature is enabled for TCP listeners and cannot be disabled.
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-type</code>	String	The type of health checks. Valid values: <code>tcp</code> and <code>http</code> .  For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_81</a>	<code>tcp</code>
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-uri</code>	String	The URI used for health checks.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;">  <b>Note:</b> This annotation is not required when the type of health checks is set to TCP. </div> For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_81</a>	None

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-connect-port</code>	String	<p>The port number used for health checks. Valid values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 520 : uses the backend port number configured for the listener.</li> <li>1 - 65535 : the backend port number used for health checks.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_81</a></p>	None
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-healthy-threshold</code>	String	<p>The number of consecutive health check successes before the backend server is declared to be healthy (from fail to success).</p> <p>Valid values: 2 to 10</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_81</a></p>	3

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-lb-unhealthy-threshold</code>	String	The number of consecutive health check failures before the backend server is declared to be unhealthy (from success to fail). Valid values: 2 to 10 .  For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_81</a>	3
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-lb-health-check-interval</code>	String	The interval between two consecutive health checks. Unit: seconds.  Valid values: 1 to 50 .  For more information, see <a href="#">#unique_81</a>	2

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-connect-timeout</code>	<b>String</b>	<p>The timeout period for waiting for a health check response. Unit: seconds. This annotation applies to TCP health checks. If a backend server does not respond within the specified timeout period, the server fails the health check.</p> <p>Valid values: 1 to 300.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b>                      If the value of the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-connect-timeout</code> annotation is less than that of the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-interval</code> annotation, the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-connect-timeout</code> </div>	5
234		<code>er-health-check-connect-</code>	Issue: 20190916

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-health-check-timeout</code>	<b>String</b>	<p>The timeout period for waiting for a health check response. Unit: seconds. This annotation applies to HTTP health checks. If a backend server does not respond within the specified timeout period, the server fails the health check.</p> <p>Valid values: 1 to 300.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b>                      If the value of the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-health-check-timeout</code> annotation is less than that of the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-health-check-interval</code> annotation, the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibabacloud-loadbalancer-health-check-timeout</code> annotation is                 </div>	5

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-domain</code>	String	<p>The domain name used for health checks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>\$_ip</code> : the private IP address of the backend server. If you do not specify this annotation or you set it to <code>\$_ip</code>, the SLB instance uses the private IP address of each backend server as the domain name for health checks.</li> <li>• <code>domain</code> : The domain name must be 1 to 80 characters in length. It can contain only letters, digits, periods (.), and hyphens (-).</li> </ul>	None

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-health-check-httpcode</code>	String	<p>The HTTP status code indicating that a health check is successful.</p> <p>Separate multiple HTTP status codes with commas (,).</p> <p>Valid values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• http_2xx</li><li>• http_3xx</li><li>• http_4xx</li><li>• http_5xx</li></ul> <p>Default value: http_2xx .</p>	http_2xx

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-loadbalancer-scheduler</code>	String	<p>The scheduling algorithm. Valid values: <code>wrr</code>, <code>wlc</code>, and <code>rr</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>wrr</code> (default): Backend servers with higher weights receive more requests than those with lower weights.</li> <li><code>wlc</code>: Requests are forwarded based on the weight and load (the number of connections) of each backend server. If the weights are the same, backend servers with fewer connections receive more requests than those with more connections.</li> <li><code>rr</code>: Requests are sequentially distributed to backend servers.</li> </ul>	<code>wrr</code>
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-acl-status</code>	String	<p>Specifies whether to enable the access control feature. Valid values: <code>on</code> and <code>off</code>.</p>	<code>off</code>

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-acl-id</code>	String	The ID of the ACL to which the listener is bound. This annotation is required if the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-acl-status</code> annotation is set to on.	None

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<pre>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-acl-type</pre>	<p><b>String</b></p>	<p>The type of the ACL.</p> <p><b>Valid values:</b></p> <p>white and black .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>white : specifies the ACL as a whitelist. Only requests from the IP addresses or classless inter-domain routing (CIDR) blocks in the ACL are forwarded. Whitelists are applicable in scenarios where you want to allow only specific IP addresses to access an application. Risks may arise if you specify the ACL as a whitelist. Once a whitelist is set, the SLB instance forwards only requests from the IP addresses in the whitelist. If a whitelist is set without any IP addresses specified in it, the SLB instance forwards all requests.</li> </ul>	<p>None</p>
<p>240</p>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>black : specifies the ACL as a blacklist. All</li> </ul>	<p>Issue: 20190916</p>

Annotation	Type	Description	Default value
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-vswitch-id</code>	String	The ID of the VSwitch to which the SLB instance belongs. To specify this annotation, you must set the <code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-address-type</code> annotation to <code>intranet</code> .	None
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-forward-port</code>	String	The port forwarding configuration for forwarding HTTP requests to the specified HTTPS port. Example: <code>80:443</code> .	None
<code>service.beta.kubernetes.io/alibaba-cloud-loadbalancer-additional-resource-tags</code>	String	The tags to be attached to the SLB instance. Separate multiple tags with commas (,). Example: <code>"k1=v1,k2=v2"</code> .	None

## 6.3 Support for Ingress

In Kubernetes clusters, Ingress is a collection of rules that authorize inbound connection to the cluster services and provides you with Layer-7 Server Load Balancer capabilities. You can provide the Ingress configuration with externally accessible URL, Server Load Balancer, SSL, and name-based virtual host.

### Prerequisites

To test the complex routing service, create an Nginx application in this example. You must create the Nginx deployment and multiple services in advance to observe the

routing effect. Replace with your own service in the actual test. In the actual test enter your own service.

```
root @ master # kubectl run nginx -- image = registry . cn -
hangzhou . aliyuncs . com / acs / netdia : latest

root @ master # kubectl expose deploy nginx -- name = http -
svc -- port = 80 -- target - port = 80
root @ master # kubectl expose deploy nginx -- name = http -
svc1 -- port = 80 -- target - port = 80
root @ master # kubectl expose deploy nginx -- name = http -
svc2 -- port = 80 -- target - port = 80
root @ master # kubectl expose deploy nginx -- name = http -
svc3 -- port = 80 -- target - port = 80
```

### Simple routing service

Create a simple Ingress service by using the following commands. All the accesses to the `/ svc` path are routed to the Nginx service. `nginx . ingress . kubernetes . io / rewrite - target : /` redirects the path `/ svc` to the path `/` that can be recognized by backend services.

```
root @ master # cat << EOF | kubectl create - f -
apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Ingress
metadata :
  name : simple
  annotations :
    nginx . ingress . kubernetes . io / rewrite - target : /$ 2
spec :
  rules :
  - http :
    paths :
    - path : / svc ( / | $ ) ( . * )
      backend :
        serviceName : http - svc
        servicePort : 80
EOF

root @ master # kubectl get ing
NAME          HOSTS          ADDRESS          PORTS          AGE
simple         *              101 . 37 . 192 . 211    80            11s
```

Now visit `http :// 101 . 37 . 192 . 211 / svc` to access the Nginx service.

### Simple fanout routing based on domain names

If you have multiple domain names providing different external services, you can generate the following configuration to implement a simple fanout effect based on domain names:

```
root @ master # cat << EOF | kubectl create - f -
apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Ingress
```

```

metadata :
  name : simple - fanout
spec :
  rules :
  - host : foo . bar . com
    http :
      paths :
      - path : / foo
        backend :
          serviceNam e : http - svc1
          servicePor t : 80
      - path : / bar
        backend :
          serviceNam e : http - svc2
          servicePor t : 80
  - host : foo . example . com
    http :
      paths :
      - path : / film
        backend :
          serviceNam e : http - svc3
          servicePor t : 80
EOF
root @ master # kubectl get ing
NAME          HOSTS          ADDRESS          PORTS          AGE
simple - fanout *          101 . 37 . 192 . 211      80
11s

```

Then, you can access the `http - svc1` service by using `http://foo.bar.com/foo`, access the `http - svc2` service by using `http://foo.bar.com/bar`, and access the `http - svc3` service by using `http://foo.example.com/film`.



#### Note:

- In a production environment, point the domain name to the preceding returned address `101 . 37 . 192 . 211`.
- - In a testing environment, you can modify the `hosts` file to add a domain name mapping rule.

```

101 . 37 . 192 . 211  foo . bar . com
101 . 37 . 192 . 211  foo . example . com

```

### Default domain name of simple routing

It does not matter if you do not have the domain name address. Container Service binds a default domain name for Ingress service. You can use this default domain name to access the services. The domain name is in the format of `*.[cluster-id].[region-id].alicontainer.com`. You can obtain the address on the cluster Basic Information page in the console.

Use the following configuration to expose two services with the default domain name.

```

root @ master # cat << EOF | kubectl create -f -
apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Ingress
metadata :
  name : shared - dns
spec :
  rules :
  - host : foo .[ cluster - id ].[ region - id ]. alicontain er .
    com ## Replace with the default service access domain
    name of your cluster .
    http :
      paths :
      - path : /
        backend :
          serviceNam e : http - svc1
          servicePor t : 80
  - host : bar .[ cluster - id ].[ region - id ]. alicontain er .
    com ## Replace with the default service access domain
    name of your cluster .
    http :
      paths :
      - path : /
        backend :
          serviceNam e : http - svc2
          servicePor t : 80
EOF
root @ master # kubectl get ing
NAME          HOSTS          ADDRESS          PORTS          AGE
shared - dns  foo .[ cluster - id ].[ region - id ]. alicontain
er . com , bar .[ cluster - id ].[ region - id ]. alicontain
er . com       47 . 95 . 160 . 171      80              40m

```

Then, you can access the `http - svc1` service by using `http :// foo .[ cluster - id ].[ region - id ]. alicontain er . com /` and access the `http - svc2` service by using `http :// bar .[ cluster - id ].[ region - id ]. alicontain er . com .`

## Configure a safe routing service

Management of multiple certificates is supported to provide security protection for your services.

### 1. Prepare your service certificate.

If no certificate is available, generate a test certificate in the following method:



**Note:**

**The domain name must be consistent with your Ingress configuration.**

```
root @ master # openssl req -x509 -nodes -days 365
- newkey rsa : 2048 - keyout tls . key - out tls . crt -
subj "/ CN = foo . bar . com / O = foo . bar . com "
```

The above command generates a certificate file `tls . crt` and a private key file `tls . key` .

Create a Kubernetes secret named `foo . bar` using the certificate and private key. The secret must be referenced when you create the Ingress.

```
root @ master # kubectl create secret tls foo . bar --
key tls . key -- cert tls . crt
```

**2. Create a safe Ingress service.**

```
root @ master # cat << EOF | kubectl create -f -
apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Ingress
metadata :
  name : tls - fanout
spec :
  tls :
  - hosts :
    - foo . bar . com
    secretName : foo . bar
  rules :
  - host : foo . bar . com
    http :
      paths :
      - path : / foo
        backend :
          serviceNam e : http - svc1
          servicePor t : 80
      - path : / bar
        backend :
          serviceNam e : http - svc2
          servicePor t : 80
EOF
root @ master # kubectl get ing
NAME          HOSTS          ADDRESS          PORTS
AGE
```

tls - fanout 11s	*	101 . 37 . 192 . 211	80
---------------------	---	----------------------	----

3. Follow the notes in Simple fanout routing based on domain names to configure the `hosts` file or set the domain name to access the TLS service.

You can access the `http - svc1` service by using `http://foo.bar.com/foo` and access the `http - svc2` service by using `http://foo.bar.com/bar`.

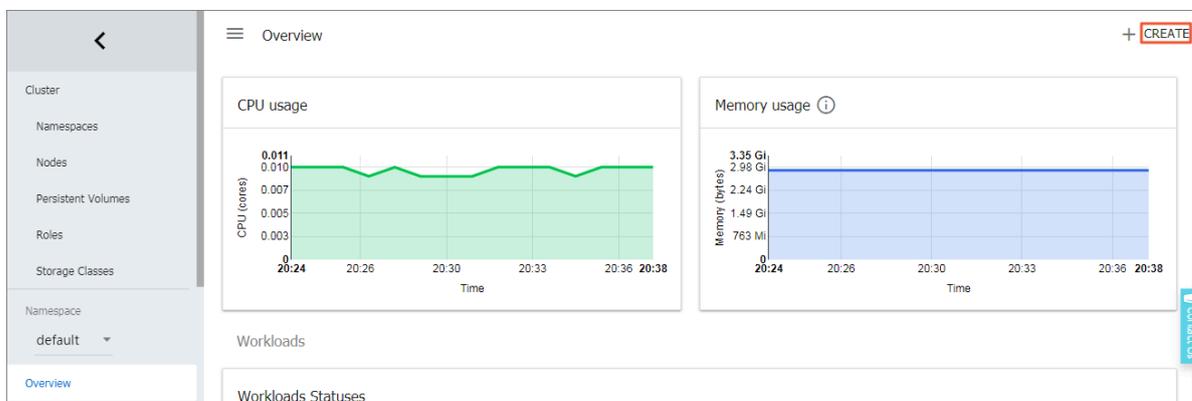
You can also access the HTTPS service by using HTTP. By default, Ingress redirects HTTP access configured with HTTPS to the HTTPS address. Therefore, access to `http://foo.bar.com/foo` will be automatically redirected to `https://foo.bar.com/foo`.

### Deploy Ingress in Kubernetes dashboard

1. Save the following yml code to the `nginx - ingress . yml` file.

```
apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Ingress
metadata :
  name : simple
spec :
  rules :
  - http :
    paths :
    - path : / svc
      backend :
        serviceName : http - svc
        servicePort : 80
```

2. Log on to the [Container Service console](#). In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, click Clusters. Then click Dashboard on the right of the target cluster.
3. Click CREATE in the upper-right corner to create an application.



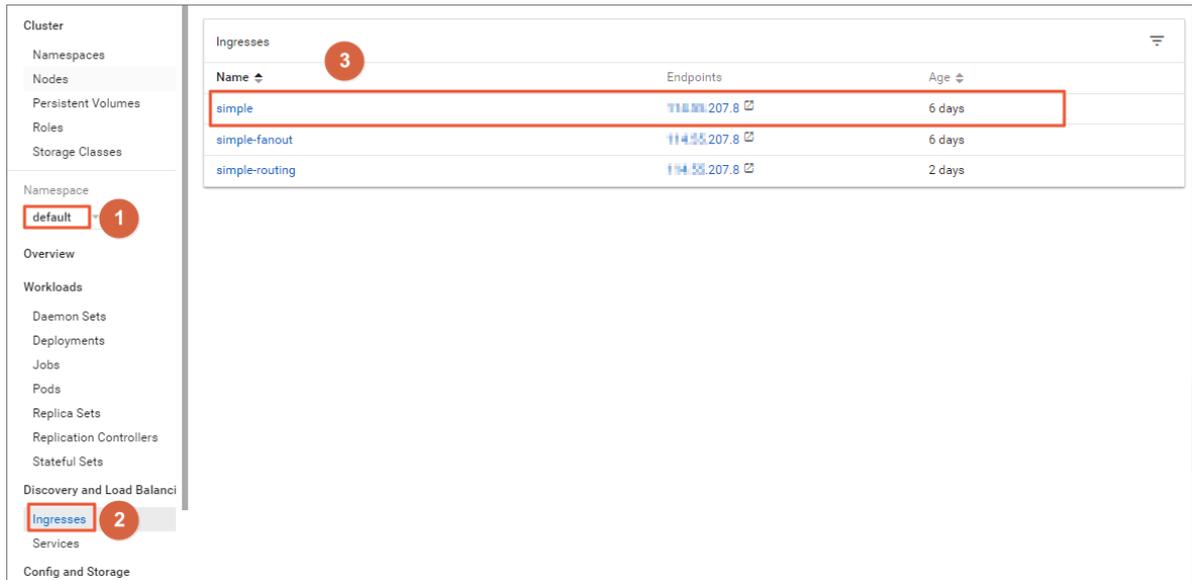
4. Click the CREATE FROM FILE tab. Select the `nginx - ingress . yml` file you saved.

## 5. Click UPLOAD.

Then an Ingress Layer-7 proxy route will be created to the `http - svc` service.

## 6. Click default under Namespace in the left-side navigation pane. Click Ingresses in the left-side navigation pane.

You can view the created Ingress resource and its access address `http :// 118 . 178 . 174 . 161 / svc .`



## 7. Enter the address in the browser to access the created `http - svc` service.

## 6.4 Analyze logs of Ingress to monitor access to Ingress

This topic describes how to enable Ingress to collect logs, how to analyze log reports of different types, and how to use reports by using alarm configurations and report subscription. Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes (ACK) provides Ingress to collect all HTTP requests to a standard output. You can use Log Service (integrated with ACK) to create dashboards to analyze logs of Ingress and monitor access to Ingress.

Before you begin

### 1. Install the log component in a Kubernetes cluster.



Note:

If you want to create a new Kubernetes cluster or use an existing Kubernetes cluster in which the log component is not installed, follow these steps:

- For information about how to install the log component in a Kubernetes cluster when the cluster is created, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- For information about how to install the log component in a Kubernetes cluster after the cluster is created, see [#unique\\_86](#).

## 2. Upgrade the log component `alibaba - log - controller` of the target Kubernetes cluster.

The log component `alibaba - log - controller` is a deployment application located in the `kube-system` namespace of the target Kubernetes cluster. To upgrade it, you must modify the following two parameters:

- `Image name` : Replace `{ region - id }` in the image name `registry - vpc . { region - id } . aliyuncs . com / acs / log - controller` with the ID of the region to which the target Kubernetes cluster belongs. For example, `{ region - id }` can be replaced with `cn-hangzhou`, `cn-beijing`, or `ap-southeast-1`.
- `Image version` : It must be the version `0 . 2 . 0 . 0 - 76648ee - aliyun` or later.

You can choose one of the following two upgrade methods:

- Run the `kubectl edit deployment alibaba - log - controller - n kube - system` command.
- Update by using the Container Service console.

To do so, follow these steps:

- a. Log on to the Container Service console.
- b. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Applications > Deployments**.
- c. Select the target Kubernetes cluster and the `kube-system` namespace, find `alibaba-log-controller`, and then, in the Action column, click **Edit**.

## Deploy the configurations for Ingress to collect logs

### Overview

The following are the configurations for Ingress to collect logs. The configurations can be viewed as the expanded Kubernetes Custom Resource Definitions (CRDs).

Therefore, the configurations are referred to as only CRD configurations later in this

topic. When the CRD configurations are deployed, the log component automatically creates the parameters and report resources that are related to Log Service.

```

apiVersion : log . alibabacloud . com / v1alpha1
kind : AliyunLogConfig
metadata :
  # your config name , must be unique in your k8s
  cluster
  name : k8s - nginx - ingress
spec :
  # logstore name to upload log
  logstore : nginx - ingress
  # product code , only for k8s nginx ingress
  productCode : k8s - nginx - ingress
  # logtail config detail
  logtailConfig :
    inputType : plugin
    # logtail config name , should be same with [
    metadata . name ]
    configName : k8s - nginx - ingress
    inputDetail :
      plugin :
        inputs :
          - type : service_docker_stdout
            detail :
              IncludeLabel :
                io . kubernetes . container . name : nginx - ingress -
controller
              Stderr : false
              Stdout : true
        processors :
          - type : processor_regex
            detail :
              KeepSource : false
              Keys :
                - client_ip
                - x_forward_for
                - remote_user
                - time
                - method
                - url
                - version
                - status
                - body_bytes_sent
                - http_referer
                - http_user_agent
                - request_length
                - request_time
                - proxy_upstream_name
                - upstream_address
                - upstream_response_length
                - upstream_response_time
                - upstream_status
                - req_id
                - host
              NoKeyError : true
              NoMatchError : true
              Regex : ^(\ S+)\ S -\ S \[[^]]+\]\ S -\ S (\ S+)\
S \[(\ S+)\ S \ S +\ S "(\ w+)\ S (\ S+)\ S ([^"]+)"\ S (\ d
+)\ S (\ d+)\ S "[^"]*" \ S "[^"]*" \ S (\ S+)\ S (\ S+)\ S
\[[^]]*\]\ S (\ S+)\ S
*(\ S *).*
```

```
SourceKey : content
```

- If you have deployed the CRD configurations before you upgrade the log component `alibaba-log-controller` to version `0.2.0.0-76648ee-aliyun`, you must first delete the deployed CRD configurations, and then redeploy the CRD configurations after the upgrade.
- The preceding CRD configurations take effect only for the log format of the default Ingress Controller of ACK. If the log format is modified, you must modify the regular expression (the `processor_regex` part) in the CRD configurations according to the procedures described in [#unique\\_87](#).

### Procedure

You can use one of the following two methods to deploy the CRD configurations:

- Use a `kubectl` command.

Save the preceding CRD configurations as an `nginx-ingress.yaml` file, and then run the `kubectl apply -f` command.

- Use an orchestration template.

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Save the preceding CRD configurations as an orchestration template. For more information, see [#unique\\_88](#).
3. In the default namespace of the target Kubernetes cluster, use this template to create an application.

### View logs and reports of Ingress

1. Log on to the [Log Service console](#)
2. Click the Project associated with the target Kubernetes cluster.



Note:

The default name of the Project is `k8s-log-{cluster-id}`.

Then, the `nginx-ingress` Logstore is display. All the logs of Ingress are store in this Logstore.

3. In the left-side navigation pane, click Dashboard to view all the reports of Ingress.



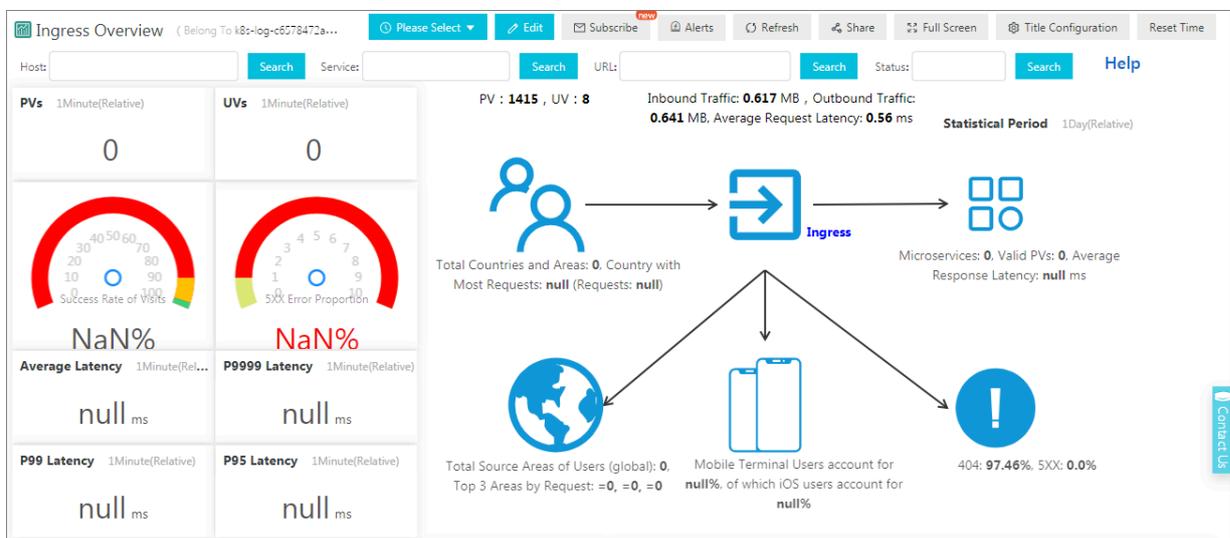
Note:

The following are the reports of Ingress logs: Ingress Overview , Ingress Access Center, Ingress Monitoring Center, Ingress Monitoring Center for Blue/Green Deployment, and Ingress Exceptions Center.

## Ingress Overview report

An Ingress Overview report displays the overall status of the Ingress with the following information:

- Overall status ( each day ): PV, UV, traffic, request latency, and the ratio of the number of mobile terminal users to the number of all users.
- Website status in real time ( each minute ): PV, UV, rate of successful access, the proportion of 5XX errors in all errors, average latency, P95 latency, and P99 latency.
- Statistics of users requests ( each day ): PVs of today and seven days, visit distribution by area, the top 10 province and cities by requests, shares of mobile terminals, and shares of Android and IOS terminals.
- Statistics of Top URLs (each hour): Top 10 URLs by request, Top10 URLs by latency, Top 10 5XX URLs and Top 10 404 URLs.

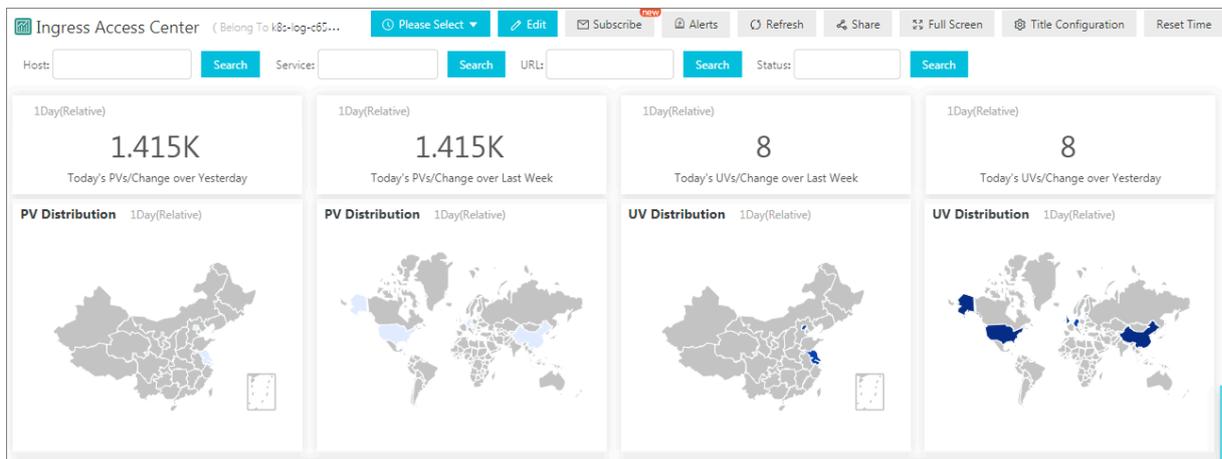


## Ingress Access Center

Ingress Access Center provides the statistics of access requests that can be used to analyze the operation status. This report contains the following information:

- UV and PV of the current day
- UV and PV distribution
- UV and PV trend

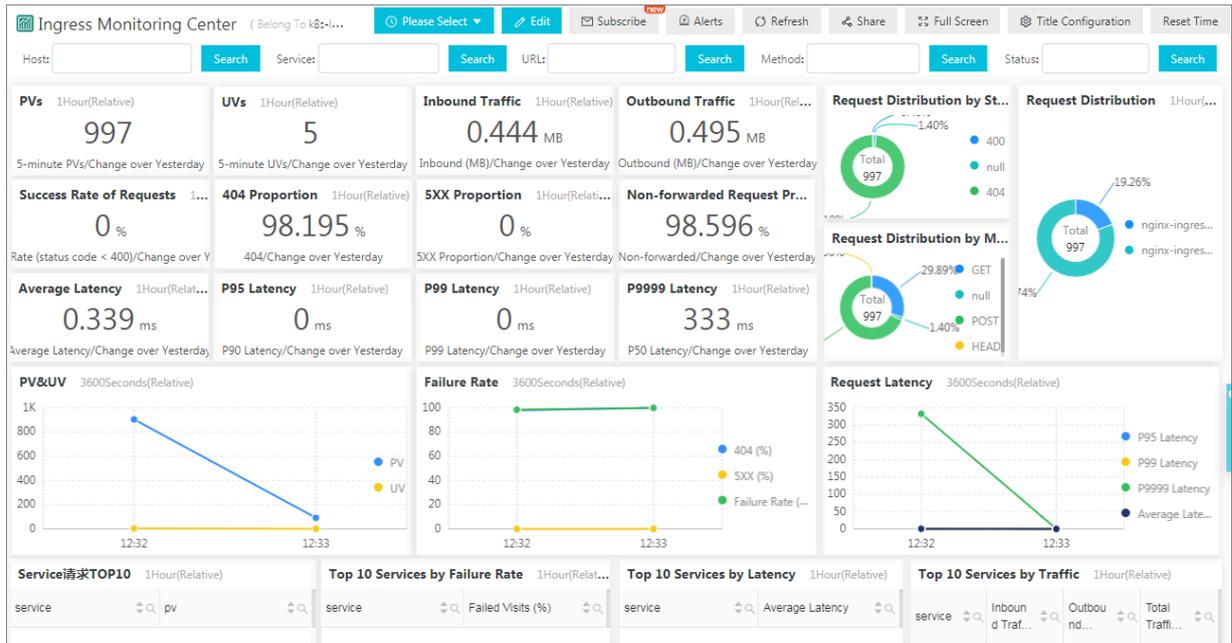
- Top 10 areas and cities by request
- Top browsers
- Top IP addresses of accesses
- Shares of mobile terminals
- Shares of Android and IOS



## Ingress Monitoring Center

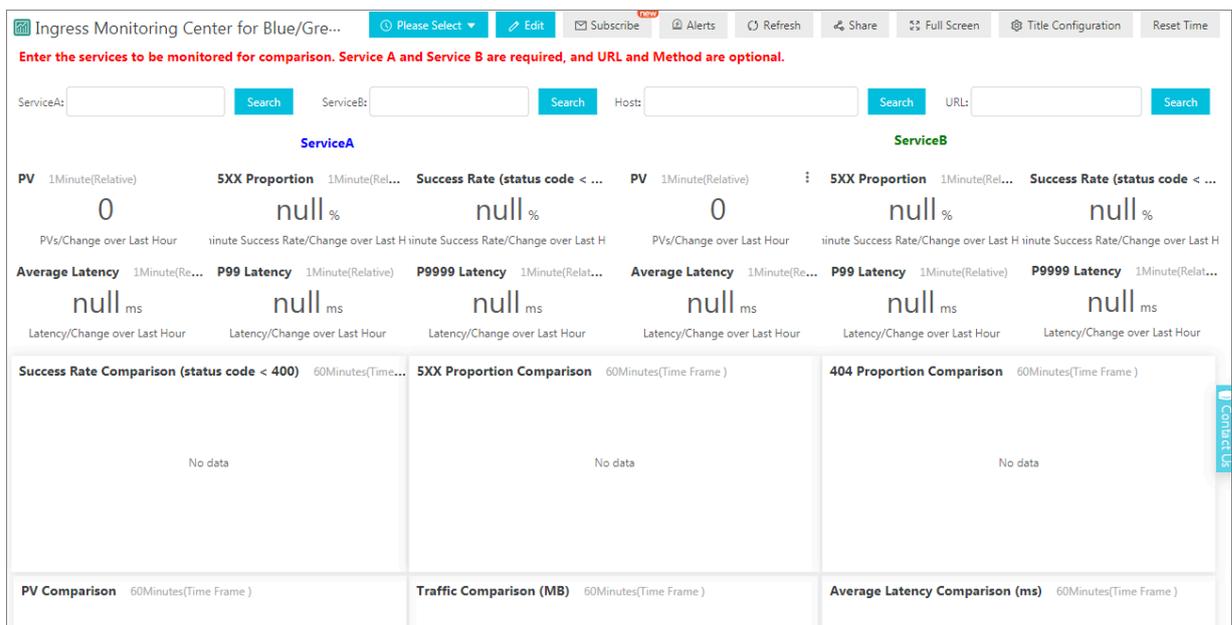
Ingress Monitoring Center provides the real-time monitoring statistics for a website. This report contains the following statistics:

- Rate of successful requests
- Proposition of 404 status codes
- Proposition of status codes of 5XX
- Non-forwarded request proportion
- Average latency
- P95, P99, and P9999 latency
- Top 10 services by requests
- Top 10 services by failures
- Top 10 services by latency
- Top 10 services by traffic



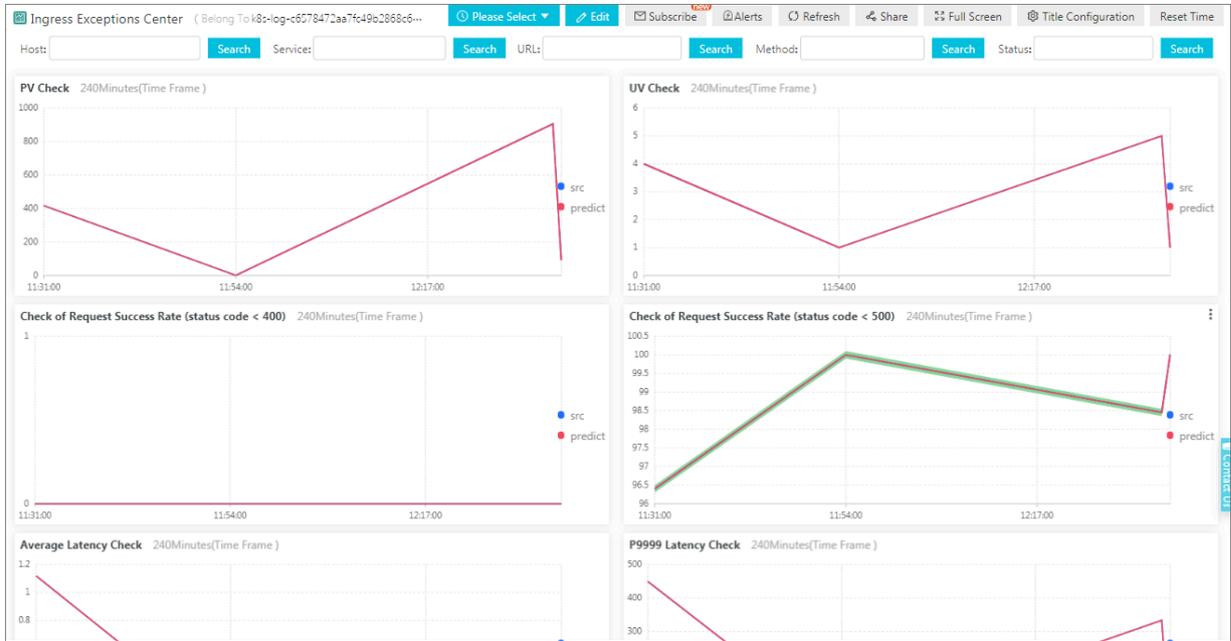
### Ingress Monitoring Center for Blue/Green Deployment

This report is used to monitor version releases and compare the blue and green versions. This helps you quickly find release exceptions and then roll back the the original version. In this report, you need to select the blue and green versions (for example, Service A and Service B). The report dynamically displays the statistics about the two versions, including PV, the ratio of 5XX errors to all errors, rate of success, average latency, traffic, and latency of P5, P99, and P9999.



## Ingress Exceptions Center

Ingress Exceptions Center operates on the basis of the algorithm of machine learning provided by Log Service. It automatically detects exceptions from the Ingress metrics by using multiple timing analysis algorithms.

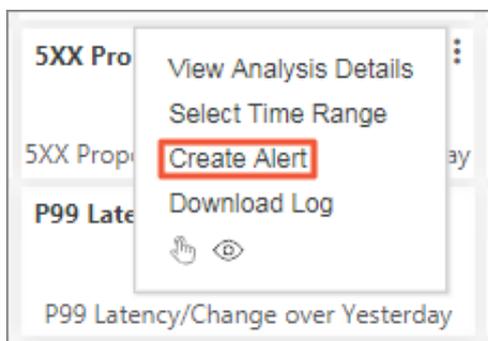


### Configure an alarm

You can configure an alarm for each of the preceding reports. For more information, see [#unique\\_89](#).

The following shows how to configure an alarm for the statistics of the porportion of 5xx status codes:

1. Open the Ingress Monitoring Center report, move your pointer to the upper-right corner of the 5XX Proportion chart, and then, in the displayed box, click Create Alarm.



2. Set the alarm name, search interval, and enter a trigger condition `total > 1` .

### Create Alert ✕

Alert Configuration Notifications

\* Alert Name  17/64

\* Associated Chart   ✕

Query

Search Period

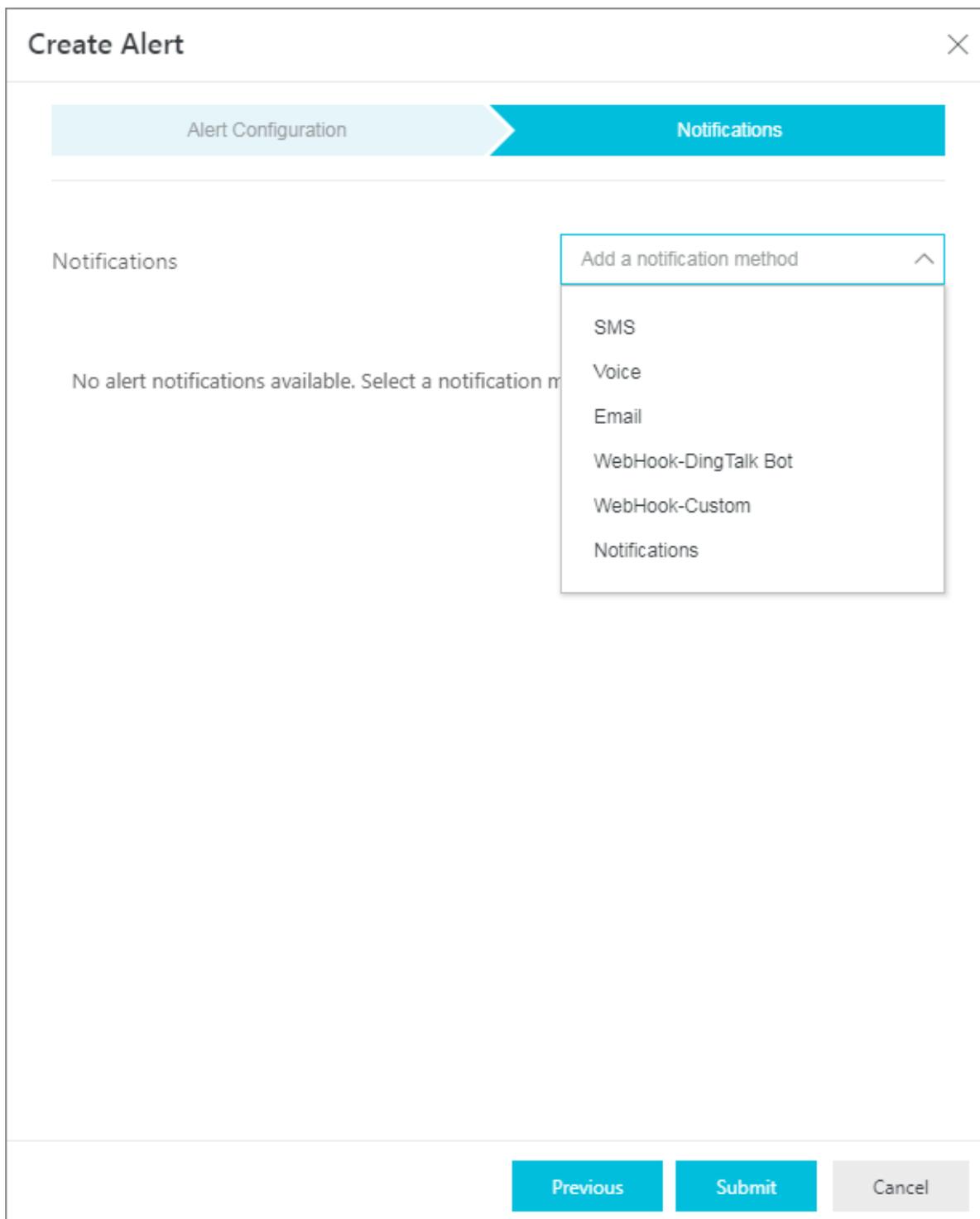
\* Search Interval

\* Trigger Condition  ?

Support the addition (+), subtraction (-), multiplication (\*), division (/), and modulo (%) operations and comparison operations including >, >=, <, <=, ==, !=, =~, and !~. [Documentation](#)

[Advanced >](#)

3. Set a notification method as needed.



Subscribe to a scheduled report

You can schedule Log Service to render a report to a figure and then send the figure to you through an email or sent the figure to a specific DingTalk group. For more information, see [Subscribe to dashboard snapshots](#).

The following shows how to subscribe to a scheduled Ingress overview report (the figure generated by rendering the report is sent to the specified DingTalk group at 10:00 every day):

1. Open the Ingress overview report. Then, in the upper-right corner, click **Subscribe**.
2. On the displayed page, select **Daily** and **10 : 00** from the two drop-down lists of **Frequency**, turn off **Add Watermark**.
3. Select the **WebHook-DingTalk Bot** from the **Notifications** drop-down list, and then enter the request URL.

## 6.5 Ingress configurations

Alibaba Cloud Container Service provides the highly reliable Ingress controller components and integrates with Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer to provide the flexible and reliable Ingress service for your Kubernetes clusters.

See the following Ingress orchestration example. You must configure the annotation when creating an Ingress in the Container Service console. Some configurations must create dependencies. For more information, see [#unique\\_75](#), [#unique\\_91](#), and [Kubernetes Ingress](#). Ingress also supports the configuration of configmap. For more information, see <https://kubernetes.github.io/ingress-nginx/user-guide/nginx-configuration/configmap/>.

```
apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Ingress
metadata :
  annotations :
    nginx . ingress . kubernetes . io / service - match : ' new -
nginx : header (" foo ", /^ bar $/)' # Gray release
rule . Header is used in this example .
    nginx . ingress . kubernetes . io / service - weight : ' new -
nginx : 50 , old - nginx : 50 ' # Traffic weight
  annotations
  creationTimestamp : null
  generation : 1
  name : nginx - ingress
  selfLink : / apis / extensions / v1beta1 / namespaces / default /
ingresses / nginx - ingress
spec :
  rules : #
Ingress rule
  - host : foo . bar . com
    http :
      paths :
        - backend :
            serviceName : new - nginx
            servicePort : 80
          path : /
        - backend :
```

```
      serviceName : old - nginx
      servicePort : 80
      path : /
    tls :
      Enable TLS to set a secure Ingress .
      - hosts :
        - *.xxxxxx.cn - hangzhou.alicloud.com
        - foo.bar.com
        secretName : nginx - ingress - secret
      ## Secret name
    status :
      loadBalancer : {}
```

## Annotation

You can configure an ingress annotation, specifying the ingress controller to use, rules for routing, such as routing weight rules, grayscale publish, and rewrite rules. For more information, see <https://kubernetes.github.io/ingress-nginx/user-guide/nginx-configuration/annotations/>.

For example, a typical rewrite annotation `nginx.ingress.kubernetes.io/rewrite-target: /` redirects the path `/path` to the path `/` that can be recognized by the backend services.

## Rules

The rules indicate those that authorize the inbound access to the cluster and are generally the HTTP rules, including the domain name (virtual hostname), URL access path, service name, and port.

You must complete the following configurations for each HTTP rule:

- **Host:** Enter the testing domain name of an Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes cluster or a virtual hostname, such as `foo.bar.com`.
- **Path:** Specify the URL path of the service access. Each path is associated with a backend service. Before Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer forwards the traffic to the backend, all inbound requests must match with the domain name and path.

- **Backend configuration:** Service configuration that is a combination of `service` : `port` and traffic weight. The Ingress traffic is forwarded to the matched backend services based on the traffic weight.
  - **Name:** The name of the backend service forwarded by Ingress.
  - **Port:** The port exposed by the service.
  - **Weight:** The weight rate of each service in a service group.

**Note:**

1. The service weight is calculated in relative values. For example, if both service weights are set to 50, the weight ratio of both services is 50%.
2. A service group (a service with the same Host and Path in the same ingress yaml) has a default weight value of 100 and the weight is not explicitly set.

### Grayscale publish

Container Service supports different traffic segmentation methods for grayscale publish and AB test scenarios.

**Note:**

Currently, the Alibaba Cloud Container Service Kubernetes Ingress Controller requires `0.12.0-5` and above to support the traffic segmentation feature.

1. Traffic segmentation based on the request header.
2. Traffic segmentation based on cookie.
3. Traffic segmentation based on query (request) parameters.

After the grayscale rule is configured, the request that matches the grayscale publish rule can be routed to the set service. If the service sets a weight rate of less than 100%, requests that match the grayscale publish rule continue to be routed to the corresponding service based on the weight rate.

### TLS

You can encrypt the Ingress by specifying a secret that contains the TLS private key and certificate to implement the secure Ingress access. The TLS secret must contain the certificate named `tls.crt` and private key named `tls.key`. For more information about the TLS principles, see [TLS](#). For how to create a secret, see [#unique\\_91/unique\\_91\\_Connect\\_42\\_section\\_j4d\\_jrs\\_vdb](#).

## Label

You can add tags for Ingress to indicate the characteristics of the Ingress.

## 6.6 Create an Ingress in the Container Service console

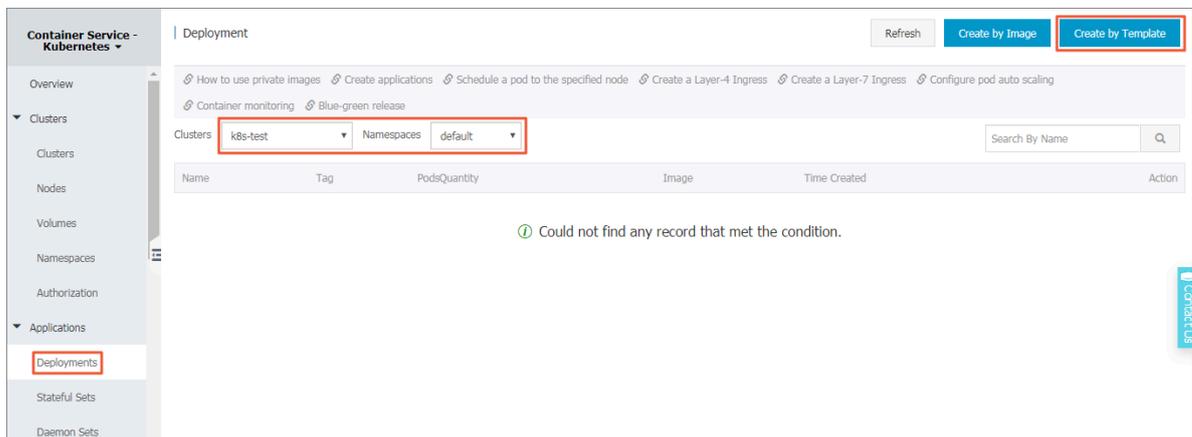
Alibaba Cloud Container Service console integrates with the Ingress service, which allows you to quickly create an Ingress service in the Container Service console to build the flexible and reliable traffic access layer.

### Prerequisites

- You have successfully created a Kubernetes cluster and Ingress controller is running normally in the cluster. For how to create a Kubernetes cluster, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- Log on to the master node by using SSH. For more information, see [#unique\\_50](#).

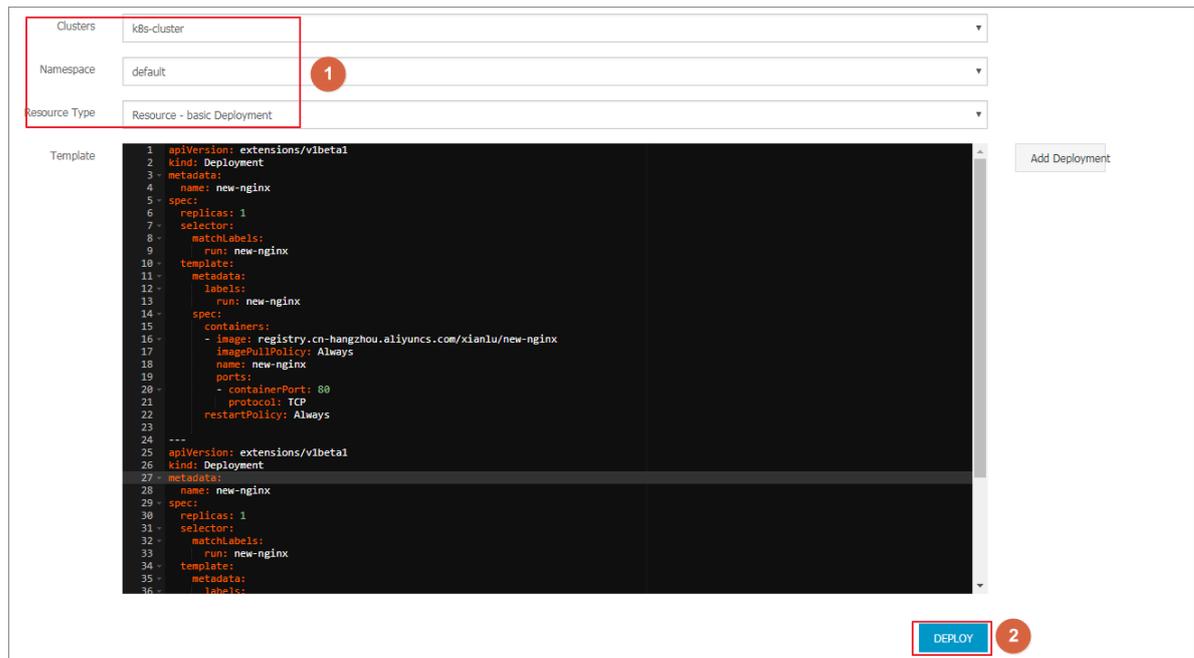
### Step 1: Create a deployment and a service

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Applications > Deployments**.
3. Click **Create by template** in the upper-right corner.



4. Select the cluster and namespace from the Clusters and Namespace drop-down lists. Select a sample template or Custom from the Resource Type drop-down list. Click DEPLOY.

In this example, three nginx applications are created. One for the old application (old-nginx), one for the new (new-nginx), and an application for testing the cluster access domain name (domain-nginx).



The orchestration template for old-nginx is as follows:

```

apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : old - nginx
spec :
  replicas : 2
  selector :
    matchLabel s :
      run : old - nginx
  template :
    metadata :
      labels :
        run : old - nginx
    spec :
      containers :
        - image : registry . cn - hangzhou . aliyuncs . com / xianlu
          / old - nginx
          imagePullP olicy : Always
          name : old - nginx
          ports :
            - containerP ort : 80
              protocol : TCP
              restartPol icy : Always
---
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service

```

```

metadata :
  name : old - nginx
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : old - nginx
  sessionAffinity : None
  type : NodePort

```

The orchestration template for new-nginx is as follows:

```

apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : new - nginx
spec :
  replicas : 1
  selector :
    matchLabels :
      run : new - nginx
  template :
    metadata :
      labels :
        run : new - nginx
    spec :
      containers :
      - image : registry . cn - hangzhou . aliyuncs . com / xianlu
        / new - nginx
        imagePullPolicy : Always
        name : new - nginx
        ports :
        - containerPort : 80
          protocol : TCP
        restartPolicy : Always
---
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  name : new - nginx
spec :
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : new - nginx
  sessionAffinity : None
  type : NodePort

```

The orchestration template for domain-nginx is as follows:

```

apiVersion : apps / v1beta2 # For versions before 1.8.0
                                use apps / v1beta1
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : domain - nginx
  labels :
    app : nginx
spec :

```

```

replicas : 2
selector :
  matchLabels :
    app : nginx
template :
  metadata :
    labels :
      app : nginx
  spec :
    containers :
      - name : nginx
        image : nginx : 1 . 7 . 9 # replace it with your
        exactly < image_name : tags >
        ports :
          - containerPort : 80
---
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  name : domain - nginx
spec :
  ports :
    - port : 80
      protocol : TCP
      targetPort : 80
  selector :
    app : nginx
  sessionAffinity : None
  type : NodePort

```

5. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Services**.

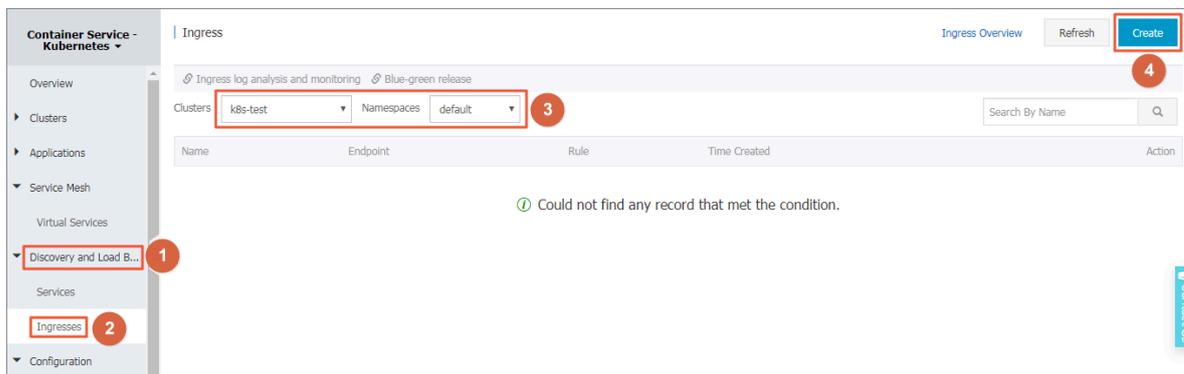
After the service is created, you can see it on the Service List page.

Name	Type	Time Created	ClustersIP	InternalEndpoint	ExternalEndpoint	Action
domain-nginx	NodePort	07/11/2018,17:43:32	[Redacted]	domain-nginx:80 TCP domain-nginx:32347 TCP	-	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Update</a>   <a href="#">View YAML</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
kubernetes	ClusterIP	07/11/2018,17:35:35	[Redacted]	kubernetes:443 TCP	-	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Update</a>   <a href="#">View YAML</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
new-nginx	NodePort	07/11/2018,17:37:01	[Redacted]	new-nginx:80 TCP new-nginx:32637 TCP	-	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Update</a>   <a href="#">View YAML</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
old-nginx	NodePort	07/11/2018,17:37:01	[Redacted]	old-nginx:80 TCP old-nginx:32039 TCP	-	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Update</a>   <a href="#">View YAML</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>

## Step 2: Create an Ingress

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Ingresses**.

3. Select the cluster and namespace from the Clusters and Namespace drop-down lists. Then click Create in the upper-right corner.



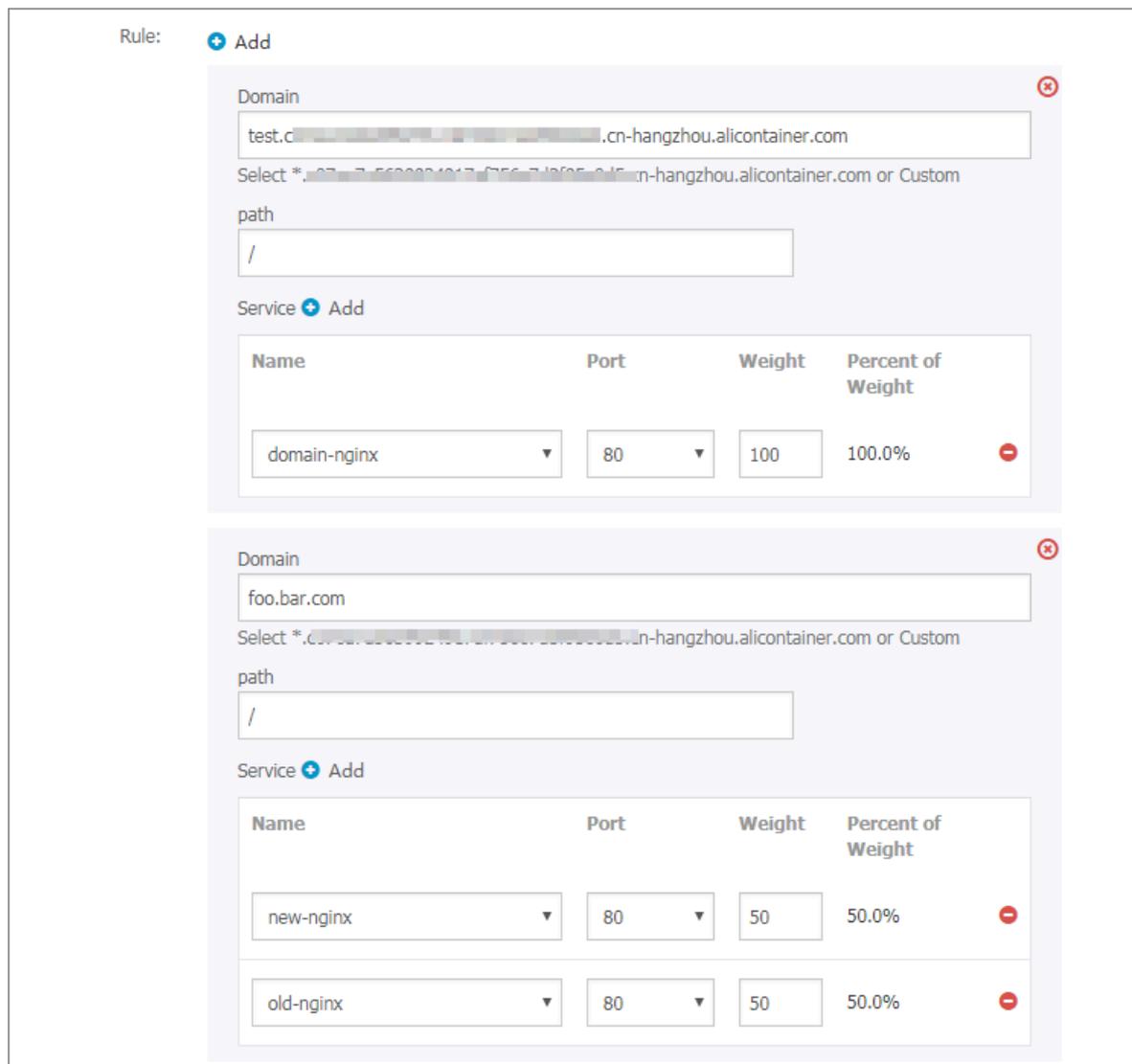
4. In the displayed dialog box, enter the Ingress name. In this example, enter nginx-ingress.



### 5. Configure the rules.

The Ingress rules are the rules that authorize the inbound access to the cluster and are generally the HTTP rules. Configure the domain name (virtual hostname), URL path, service name, and port. For more information, see [#unique\\_41](#).

In this example, add a complicated Ingress rule. Configure the default test domain name and virtual hostname of the cluster to display the Ingress service based on the domain names.



- The simple Ingress based on the default domain name, that is, provide the access service externally by using the default domain name of the cluster.
  - Domain: Enter the default domain name of the cluster. In this example, use `test.[cluster-id].[region-id].alicontainer.com`.

The default domain name of this cluster is displayed in the Create dialog box, in the `*.[ cluster - id ].[ region - id ].alicontainer.com` format. You can also obtain the default domain name on the Basic Information page of the cluster.

- **Service:** Configure the access path, name, and port of the service.
  - **Path:** Specify the URL path of the service access. The default is the root path `/`, which is not configured in this example. Each path is associated with a backend service. Before Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer forwards the traffic to the backend, all inbound requests must match with the domain name and path.
  - **Service configuration:** The backend configuration, which is a combination of service name, port, and service weight. The configuration of multiple services in the same access path is supported, and Ingress traffic is split and is forwarded to the matched backend services.
- **The simple fanout Ingress based on the domain name.** In this example, use a virtual hostname as the testing domain name to provide the access service externally. You can use the recorded domain name in the production environment to provide the access service. You can use the recorded domain name in the production environment to provide the access service.
  - **Domain:** In this example, use the testing domain name `foo.bar.com`.

You must modify the hosts file to add a domain name mapping rule.

```
118 . 178 . 108 . 143   foo . bar . com #   Ingress   IP
address
```

- **Service:** Configure the access path, name, and port of the service.
  - **Path:** Specify the URL path of the service access. Path is not configured in this example, and the root path is `/`.
  - **Name:** In this example, set up both new and old services, `nginx-new` and `nginx-old`.
  - **Port:** Expose 80 port.
  - **Weight settings:** Set the weight of multiple services under this path. The service weight is calculated by relative value. The default value is 100. As shown in this example, the service weight values of both the old and new versions are 50, which means that the weight rate of both services is 50%.

## 6. Grayscale publish configuration.



Note:

Currently, the Alibaba Cloud Container Service Kubernetes Ingress Controller requires 0.12.0-5 and above to support the traffic segmentation feature.

Container Service supports different traffic segmentation methods for grayscale publish and AB test scenarios.

- a. Traffic segmentation based on the request header.
- b. Traffic segmentation based on cookie.
- c. Traffic segmentation based on query (request) parameters.

After the grayscale rule is configured, the request that matches the grayscale publish rule can be routed to the new service version new-nginx. If the service sets a weight rate of less than 100%, requests that match the grayscale publish rule continue to be routed to the corresponding service based on the weight rate.

In this case, set the request header to meet a grayscale publish rule of `foo =^ bar $`, only requests with the request header can access the new-nginx service.

Grayscale release: + Add After the gray rule is set, the request meeting the rule will set a weight other than 100, the request to satisfy the gamma rule and old version services according to the weights.

Service	Type	Name
new-nginx	Header	foo

- Service: Routing rule configuration service.
- Type: matching request header, cookie, and query (request) parameters are supported.
- Name and match value: User-defined request field, name and match value are key-value pairs.
- Match rules: Regular and exact matches are supported.

### 7. Configure the annotations.

Click rewrite annotation, a typical redirection annotation can be added to the route. `nginx.ingress.kubernetes.io/rewrite-target:/` indicates that the `/ path` is redirected to the root path / that the backend service can recognize.



Note:

In this example, the access path is not configured, so no need to configure rewrite annotations. The purpose of the rewrite annotation is to enable Ingress to forward to the backend as the root path, avoiding 404 errors caused by incorrect access path configuration.

You can also click Add to enter the annotation name and value, which is the annotation key-value pair for Ingress. For more information, see <https://kubernetes.github.io/ingress-nginx/user-guide/nginx-configuration/annotations/>.

annotation: + Add rewrite annotation

Name	Value
<input type="text" value="nginx.ingress.kubernetes.io/rewri"/>	<input type="text" value="/"/>

8. Configure TLS. Select **Enable** and configure the secure Ingress service. For more information, see [#unique\\_91/unique\\_91\\_Connect\\_42\\_section\\_j4d\\_jrs\\_vdb](#).

- You can select to use an existing secret.

- Log on to the master node and create `tls . key` and `tls . crt`.

```
openssl req -x509 -nodes -days 365 -newkey rsa :
2048 -keyout tls . key -out tls . crt -subj "/ CN =
foo . bar . com / O = foo . bar . com "
```

- Create a secret.

```
kubectl create secret tls foo . bar --key tls .
key --cert tls . crt
```

- Run the `kubectl get secret` command to see that secret has been successfully created. You can use the secret that you have created in the Web interface, `foo . bar`.

- You can create the secret with one click by using the created TLS private key and certificate.

- Log on to the master node and create `tls . key` and `tls . crt`.

```
openssl req -x509 -nodes -days 365 -newkey rsa :
2048 -keyout tls . key -out tls . crt -subj "/ CN =
foo . bar . com / O = foo . bar . com "
```

- Run the `vim tls . key` and `vim tls . crt` to get the generated private key and certificate.
- Copy the generated certificate and private key to the Cert and Key fields.

9. Add the tags.

Add the corresponding tags for Ingress to indicate the characteristics of the Ingress.



10. Click Create.

The Ingress nginx-ingress is displayed on the Ingress page.



11. Click on the access domain name `test.[cluster-id].[region-id].alicontainer.com` in the route, and `foo.bar.com` to access the welcome page of nginx.



Click on the route address pointing the new-nginx service and find the page that points the old-nginx application.



Note:

Access the route address in the browser. By default, the request header does not have the `foo =^ bar $`, so the traffic is directed to the old-nginx application.



12. Log on to the master node by using SSH. Run the following command to simulate the access result with a specific request header.

```
curl -H "Host : foo . bar . com " http :// 47 . 107 . 20 . 35
old
curl -H "Host : foo . bar . com " http :// 47 . 107 . 20 . 35
old
curl -H "Host : foo . bar . com " http :// 47 . 107 . 20 . 35 # Similar to browser access requests
old
curl -H "Host : foo . bar . com " -H "foo : bar " http :// 47 . 107 . 20 . 35 # Simulate an access request with a unique header , returning results based on routing weight
new
curl -H "Host : foo . bar . com " -H "foo : bar " http :// 47 . 107 . 20 . 35
old
curl -H "Host : foo . bar . com " -H "foo : bar " http :// 47 . 107 . 20 . 35
old
curl -H "Host : foo . bar . com " -H "foo : bar " http :// 47 . 107 . 20 . 35
new
```

## 6.7 View Ingress details

### Prerequisites

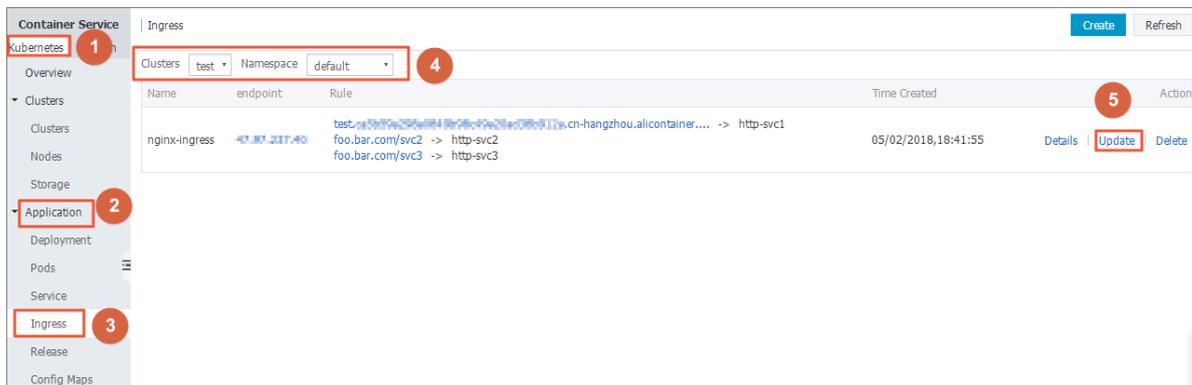
- You have successfully created a Kubernetes cluster and Ingress controller is running normally in the cluster. For how to create a Kubernetes cluster, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have successfully created an Ingress. For more information, see [#unique\\_75](#).

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Click Kubernetes Application > Ingress in the left-side navigation pane.



3. Select the cluster and namespace from the Clusters and Namespace drop-down lists. Click Update at the right of the Ingress.



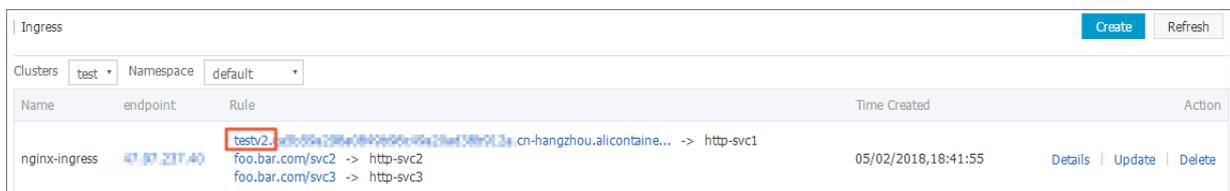
4. Update the Ingress parameters in the displayed dialog box and then click OK.

change test.[cluster-id].[region-id].alicontainer.com to testv2.[cluster-id].[region-id].alicontainer.com.



### What's next

On the Ingress page, you can see a rule of this Ingress is changed.



## 6.9 Delete an Ingress

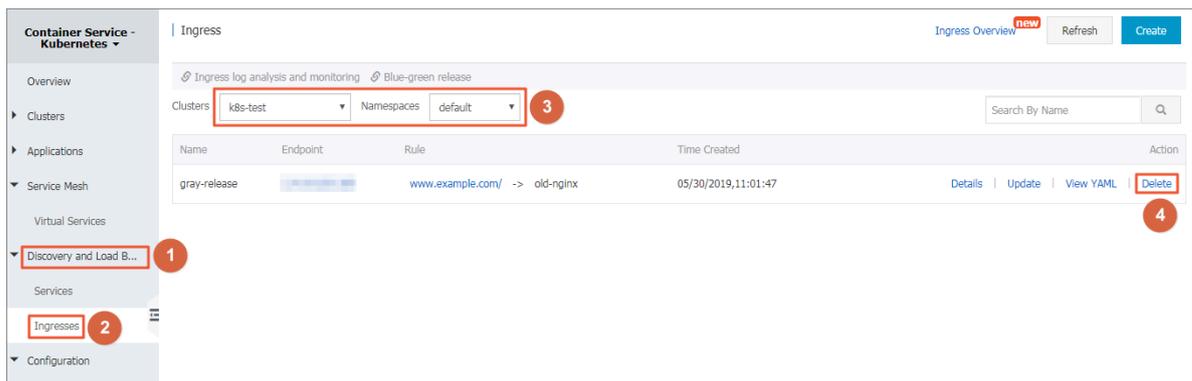
This topic describes how to delete an Ingress.

### Prerequisites

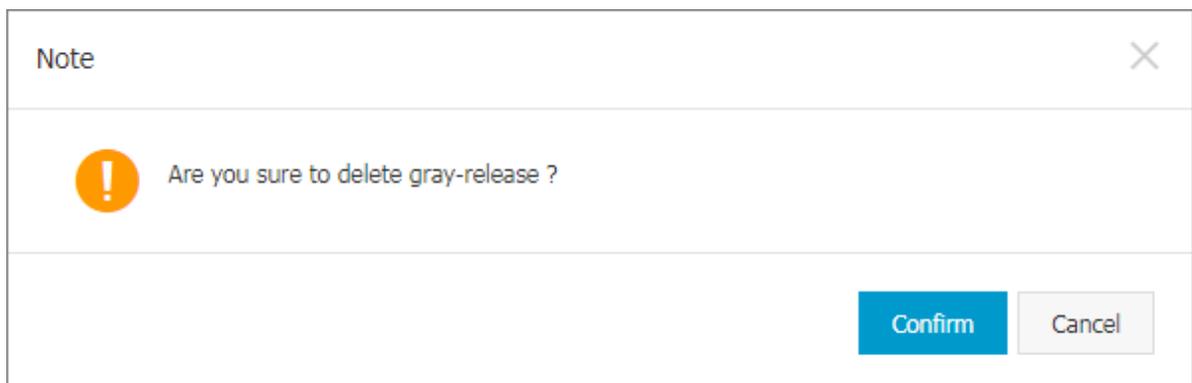
- You have created a Kubernetes cluster and Ingress controller is running normally in the cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have created an Ingress. For more information, see [#unique\\_75](#).

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Ingresses**.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace. Find the target Ingress, and then click **Delete** in the Action column.



4. In the displayed dialog box, click **Confirm**.



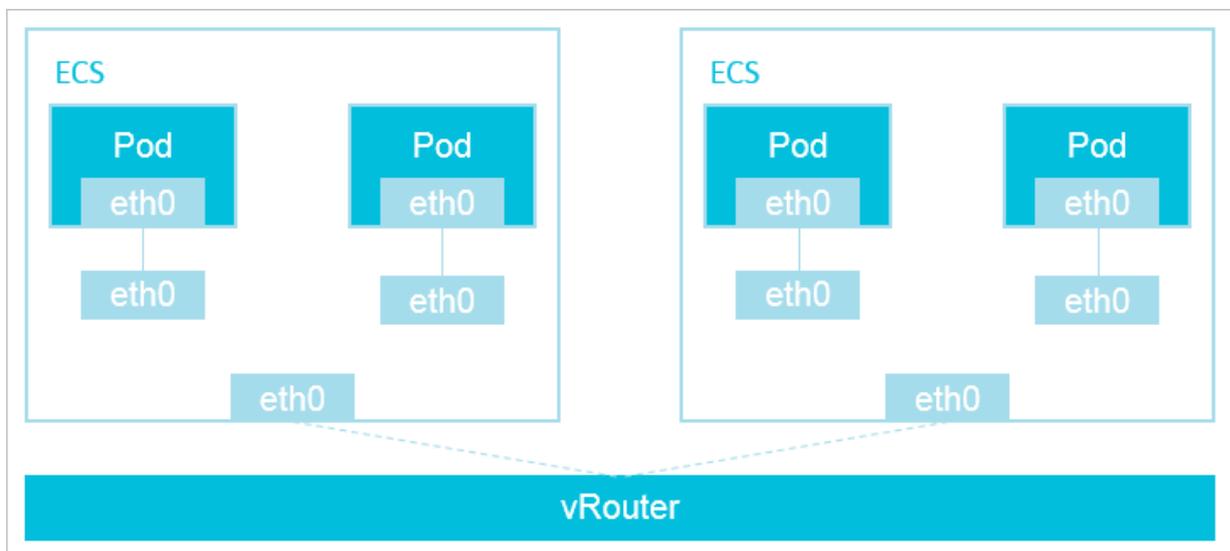
## 6.10 Terway network plugin

This topic describes how to use the Terway network plugin in a Kubernetes cluster that runs on Alibaba Cloud Container Service.

### Terway network plugin

Terway, a network plugin developed by Alibaba Cloud Container Service, is fully compatible with Flannel, and provides the following features:

- Allocates Alibaba Cloud Elastic Network Interfaces (ENIs) to containers.
- Defines the access policies for containers according to the Kubernetes Network Policy. This network plugin is also compatible with the Calico Network Policy.

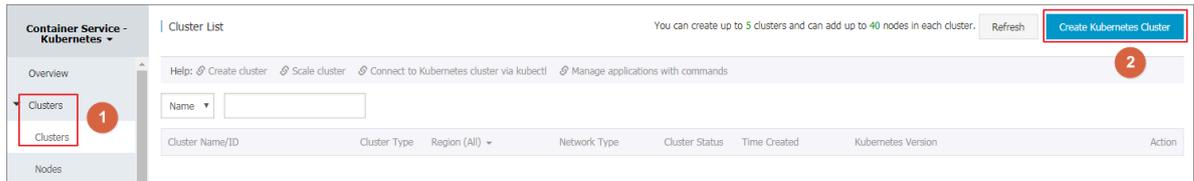


If you install the Terway network plugin in a Kubernetes cluster, each pod then has its own network stack and an IP address. Packets between pods on one ECS instance are forwarded directly by the instance. Packets between pods on different ECS instances are forwarded through the VRouter of a VPC. The Terway network plugin delivers high communication performance because it does not use tunneling technologies such as VXLAN to encapsulate packets.

### Use the Terway network plugin

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, click Clusters.

### 3. In the upper-right corner, click Create Kubernetes Cluster.

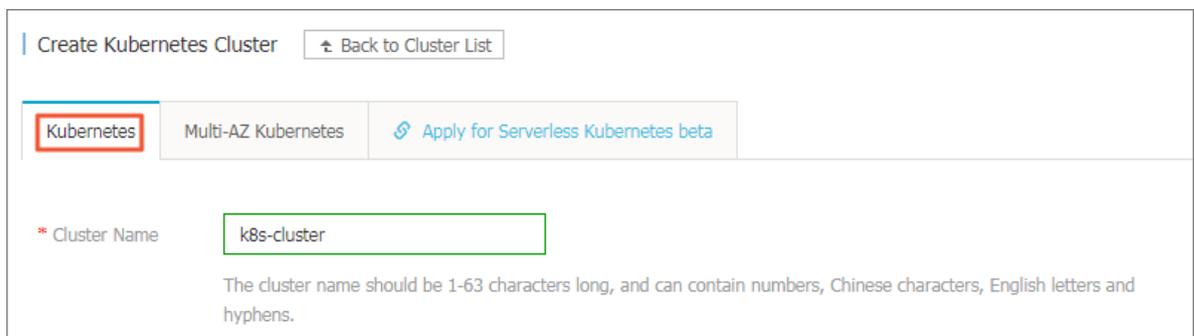


By default, the Create Kubernetes Cluster page is displayed.



#### Note:

In this example, a dedicated Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).



### 4. Select the Terway network plugin.



#### Flannel and Terway

Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes provides two types of network plugins for you to create a Kubernetes cluster: Terway and Flannel.



#### Note:

For how to select a network plugin, see [#unique\\_97](#)

- **Flannel:** a simple and stable community [Flannel](#) CNI plugin. Flannel can interoperate with the high-speed network of Alibaba Cloud VPC to provide a high-performance and stable container network for clusters. However, it provides a limited amount of features. For example, it does not support the Kubernetes Network Policy.

- **Terway:** a network plugin developed by Alibaba Cloud Container service. It is fully compatible with Flannel, and can allocate Alibaba Cloud Elastic Network Interfaces (ENIs) to containers. It can also define the access policies between containers according to the Kubernetes Network Policy. In addition, you can use this network plugin to limit the bandwidth traffic of a single container. If you do not need to use the Network Policy, we recommend that you select Flannel. In other cases, we recommend that you select Terway.

**Note:**

- Terway provides the same Network Policy as Calico because Terway is integrated with the Felix component of Calico. If you create a cluster to use Calico, you can use Terway to switch to Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes.
- Terway is integrated with the Felix component V2.6.6.

## 6.11 Associate an ENI with a pod

This topic describes how to associate an Elastic Network Interface (ENI) with a pod.

### Context

- When you create a Kubernetes cluster, you need to select Network Plugin as Terway. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- If you use a Kubernetes cluster that is installed with the Terway network plugin, you must make sure that the Terway plugin is V1.0.0.1 or later.

**Note:**

1. Log on to the Container Service console, click Clusters under the Kubernetes menu.
2. In the action column of the target cluster, choose More > Addon Upgrade.
3. On the Addon Upgrade page, view your current version of Terway.

#### 4. Determine whether to upgrade according to Current Version and Upgradeable Version. If you want to upgrade Terway, click Upgrade in the action column.

Addon Upgrade
✕

Component	Current Version	Upgradeable Version	Consistency Check	Action	Status
alicloud-application-controller	v0.1.0.1-f832bed-aliyun	v0.1.0.1-f832bed-aliyun	Success	Latest	
alicloud-disk-controller	v1.11.2.2-a390cfb-aliyun	v1.11.2.2-a390cfb-aliyun	Success	Latest	
Cloud Controller Manager <a href="#">Readme</a> <a href="#">Version Information</a>	v1.9.3.59-ge3bc999-aliyun	v1.9.3.59-ge3bc999-aliyun	Success	Latest	
flexvolume	v1.11.2.32-af2d48c-aliyun	v1.11.2.32-af2d48c-aliyun	Success	Latest	
Nginx Ingress Controller <a href="#">Readme</a> <a href="#">Version Information</a>	v0.20.0.1-4597ce2-aliyun	v0.20.0.1-4597ce2-aliyun	Success	Latest	
terway	v1.0.8.11-g323b1f3-aliyun	v1.0.8.11-g323b1f3-aliyun	Success	Latest	

Refresh Close

#### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Application > Deployment**.
3. In the upper-right corner, click **Create by Template**.

You can use the following YAML template to create a pod:

```

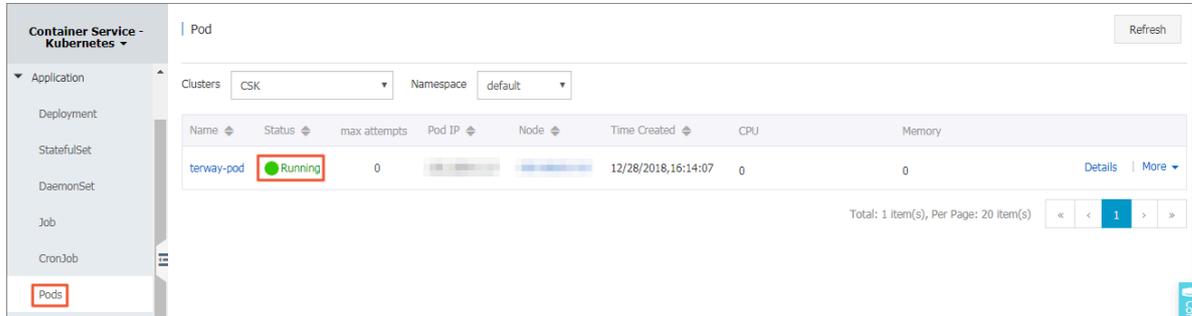
apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  name : terway - pod
  labels :
    app : nginx
spec :
  containers :
  - name : nginx
    image : nginx
    ports :
  - containerPort : 80
  resources :
    limits :
      aliyun / eni : 1

```

#### Result

1. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Application > Pods**.

The pod named `terway-pod` is displayed.



2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, click **Clusters**.
3. Click the name of the target cluster to view the cluster details.
4. In the Cluster Resource area, click **VPC** to view the VPC CIDR block of the cluster.
5. Run the following command to obtain the IP address of the deployed pod and verify that the IP address is within the VPC CIDR block of the cluster:

```
$ kubectl get pod -o wide
```

## 6.12 Use a network policy

### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have selected the Terwaynetwork plugin when creating the Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have connected to the Kubernetes cluster by using `kubectl`, see [#unique\\_26](#).

Verify that an Nginx service is accessible to pods

1. Run the following command to create an Nginx application and expose it through a service named Nginx:

```
$ kubectl run nginx -- image = nginx
deployment.apps/nginx created
$ kubectl get pod
NAME                                READY    STATUS    RESTARTS    AGE
nginx - 64f497f8fd - znbxb          1 / 1    Running    0           45s
$ kubectl expose deployment nginx -- port = 80
service/nginx exposed
$ kubectl get service
```

NAME	TYPE	CLUSTER - IP	EXTERNAL - IP
PORT ( S )	AGE		
kubernetes 443 / TCP	ClusterIP 3h	172 . 19 . 0 . 1	< none >
nginx 80 / TCP	ClusterIP 10s	172 . 19 . 8 . 48	< none >

2. Run the following command to create a pod named busybox and use the pod to access the Nginx service created in step 1:

```
$ kubectl run busybox -- rm - ti -- image = busybox / bin /
sh
kubectl run -- generator = deployment / apps . v1beta1 is
DEPRECATED and will be removed in a future version
. Use kubectl create instead .
If you don ' t see a command prompt , try pressing
enter .
/ # wget nginx
Connecting to nginx ( 172 . 19 . 8 . 48 : 80 )
index . html 100 % |
*****
612 0 : 00 : 00 ETA
/ #
```

Use a network policy to set the Nginx service to be accessible only to a specifically labeled application

1. Run the following command to create a *policy . yaml* file:

```
$ vim policy . yaml
kind : NetworkPol icy
apiVersion : networking . k8s . io / v1
metadata :
  name : access - nginx
spec :
  podSelecto r :
    matchLabel s :
      run : nginx
  ingress :
  - from :
    - podSelecto r :
      matchLabel s :
        access : " true "
```

2. Run the following command to create a network policy according to the *policy . yaml* file created in step 1:

```
$ kubectl apply - f policy . yaml
networkpol icy . networking . k8s . io / access - nginx created
```

3. Run the following command to verify that the Nginx service cannot be accessed if you do not define any access label in the command:

```
$ kubectl run busybox -- rm - ti -- image = busybox / bin /
sh
If you don ' t see a command prompt , try pressing
enter .
```

```

/ # wget nginx
Connecting to nginx ( 172 . 19 . 8 . 48 : 80 )
wget : can ' t connect to remote host ( 172 . 19 . 8 . 48
): Connection timed out
/ #

```

4. Run the following command to verify that the Nginx service can be accessed if an access label is defined in the command:

```

$ kubectl run busybox -- rm - ti -- labels =" access = true
" -- image = busybox / bin / sh
If you don ' t see a command prompt , try pressing
enter .
/ # wget nginx
Connecting to nginx ( 172 . 19 . 8 . 48 : 80 )
index . html          100 % |
*****
612    0 : 00 : 00    ETA
/ #

```

Use a network policy to specify a source IP CIDR block that can access a service exposed by an SLB service over the Internet

1. Run the following command to create an Alibaba Cloud SLB service for the preceding Nginx application, that is, specify `type = LoadBalancer` to expose the Nginx service to the Internet:

```

$ vim nginx - service . yaml
apiVersion : v1
kind : Service
metadata :
  labels :
    run : nginx
  name : nginx - slb
spec :
  externalTrafficPolicy : Local
  ports :
  - port : 80
    protocol : TCP
    targetPort : 80
  selector :
    run : nginx
  type : LoadBalancer

$ kubectl apply - f nginx - service . yaml
service / nginx - slb created

$ kubectl get service nginx - slb
NAME          TYPE          CLUSTER - IP          EXTERNAL - IP
  PORT ( S )          AGE
nginx - slb   LoadBalancer  172 . 19 . 12 . 254    47 . 110
. 200 . 119     80 : 32240 / TCP      8m

```

2. Run the following command to verify that the IP address of the created SLB service, that is, 47.110.200.119, cannot be accessed:

```

$ wget 47 . 110 . 200 . 119

```

```
-- 2018 - 11 - 21 11 : 46 : 05 -- http :// 47 . 110 . 200 . 119
/
Connecting to 47 . 110 . 200 . 119 : 80 ... failed :
Connection refused .
```

**Note:****Access failure occurs due to the following reasons:**

- You have configured access to the Nginx service only for the applications labeled with `access = true` .
- You have attempted to access the IP address of the SLB instance from outside the Kubernetes system. This is different from [Use a network policy to set the Nginx service to be accessible only to a specifically labeled application.](#)

**Solution:** Modify the network policy and add a source IP CIDR block that is allowed to access the Nginx service.

**3. Run the following command to view your local IP address:**

```
$ curl myip . ipip . net

IP address : 10 . 0 . 0 . 1 from : China Beijing Beijing
# The local IP address varies by devices .
```

**4. Run the following command to modify the created `policy . yaml` file:**

```
$ vim policy . yaml
kind : NetworkPol icy
apiVersion : networking . k8s . io / v1
metadata :
  name : access - nginx
spec :
  podSelecto r :
    matchLabel s :
      run : nginx
  ingress :
  - from :
    - podSelecto r :
      matchLabel s :
        access : " true "
    - ipBlock :
      cidr : 100 . 64 . 0 . 0 / 10
    - ipBlock :
      cidr : 10 . 0 . 0 . 1 / 24 # Set the CIDR
block to which the local IP address belongs . This
is an example . Set the required parameters according
to your device .

$ kubectl apply - f policy . yaml
networkpol icy . networking . k8s . io / access - nginx
unchanged
```

**Note:**

- The outgoing interface of a network may have multiple IP addresses. We recommend that you specify an entire CIDR block.
- The SLB health check address belongs to the `100 . 64 . 0 . 0 / 10` CIDR block. Therefore, you must specify the `100 . 64 . 0 . 0 / 10` CIDR block.

##### 5. Run the following command to verify that the Nginx service can be accessed:

```
$ kubectl run busybox --rm -ti --labels="access=true" --image=busybox /bin/sh

If you don't see a command prompt, try pressing enter.
/# wget 47.110.200.119
Connecting to 47.110.200.119 (47.110.200.119:80)
index.html 100% |
*****| 612
 0:00:00 ETA
/#
```

Use a network policy to set a pod that can access only `www.aliyun.com`

##### 1. Run the following command to obtain the IP address list resolved from the domain name of `www.aliyun.com`:

```
$ dig +short www.aliyun.com
www - jp - de - intl - adns . aliyun . com .
www - jp - de - intl - adns . aliyun . com . gds . alibabadns . com .
v6wagbridge . aliyun . com .
v6wagbridge . aliyun . com . gds . alibabadns . com .
106 . 11 . 93 . 21
140 . 205 . 32 . 4
140 . 205 . 230 . 13
140 . 205 . 34 . 3
```

##### 2. Run the following command to create a `busybox - policy` file:

```
$ vim busybox - policy . yml
kind: NetworkPolicy
apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
  name: busybox - policy
spec:
  podSelector:
    matchLabels:
      run: busybox
  egress:
  - to:
    - ipBlock:
        cidr: 106 . 11 . 93 . 21 / 32
    - ipBlock:
        cidr: 140 . 205 . 32 . 4 / 32
    - ipBlock:
        cidr: 140 . 205 . 230 . 13 / 32
    - ipBlock:
        cidr: 140 . 205 . 34 . 3 / 32
```

```
- to :
  - ipBlock :
      cidr : 0 . 0 . 0 . 0 / 0
    ports :
      - protocol : UDP
        port : 53
```

**Note:**

In the preceding `busybox - policy` file, an egress rule is set to specify the CIDR blocks that can be accessed by cluster applications. You need to set the condition that UDP requests are allowed. Otherwise, DNS resolution will fail.

3. Run the following command to create a network policy according to the `busybox - policy` file:

```
$ kubectl apply -f busybox - policy . yam
networkpol icy . networking . k8s . io / busybox - policy
created
```

4. Run the following command to verify that no website (for example, `www . google . com`) can be accessed except for `www . aliyun . com`:

```
$ kubectl run busybox -- rm - ti -- image = busybox / bin /
sh
If you don ' t see a command prompt , try pressing
enter .
/ # wget www . google . com
Connecting to www . google . com ( 64 . 13 . 192 . 74 : 80 )
wget : can ' t connect to remote host ( 64 . 13 . 192 .
74 ) : Connection timed out
```

5. Run the following command to verify that `www . aliyun . com` can be accessed:

```
/ # wget www . aliyun . com
Connecting to www . aliyun . com ( 140 . 205 . 34 . 3 : 80 )
Connecting to www . aliyun . com ( 140 . 205 . 34 . 3 : 443 )
wget : note : TLS certificat e validation not
implemente d
index . html 100 % |
*****| 462k
 0 : 00 : 00 ETA
/ #
```

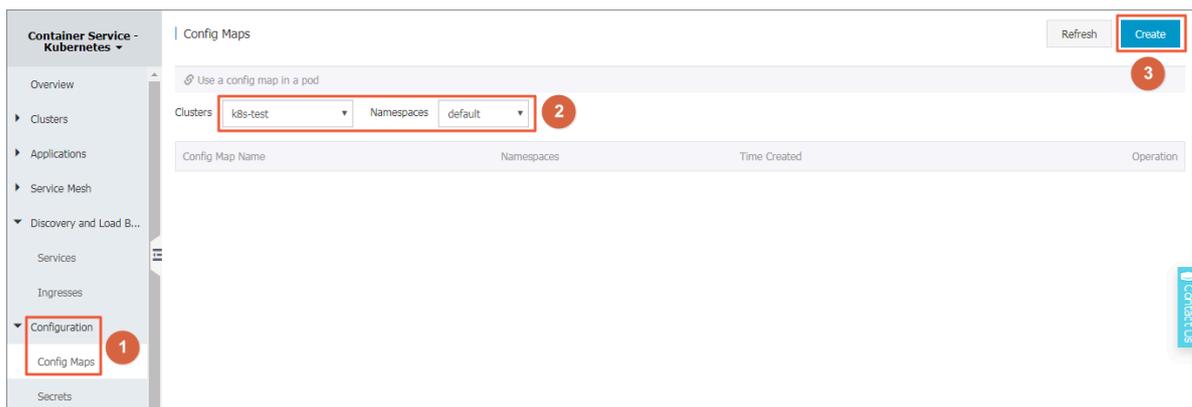
# 7 Config Map and Secret management

## 7.1 Create a Config Map

In the Container Service console, you can create a Config Map on the Config Maps page or by using a template.

Create a Config Map on Config Maps page

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Configuration > Config Maps.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace. Then, in the upper-right corner, click Create.



4. Complete the settings and then click OK.

- **Namespace:** Select the namespace to which the Config Map belongs. Config Map is a Kubernetes resource object that must be applied to the namespace.
- **Config Map Name:** Enter the Config Map name, which can contain lowercase letters, numbers, hyphens (-), and periods (.). The name cannot be empty.

Other resource objects must reference the Config Map name to obtain the configuration information.

- **Configuration:** Enter the Variable Name and the Variable Value. Then, click Add on the right. You can also click Edit, complete the configuration in the displayed dialog box, and click OK.

\* Namespace: default

\* Config Map Name: test-config  
Name must consist of lowercase alphanumeric characters, '-' or '.'. Name cannot be empty.

Variable Name	Variable Value	Action
enemies	aliens	Edit   Delete
lives	3	Edit   Delete

Name Value Add

Variable key must be unique. Variable key and value cannot be empty.

Edit YAML file

OK Cancel

In this example, configure the variables enemies and lives to pass the parameters aliens and 3 respectively.



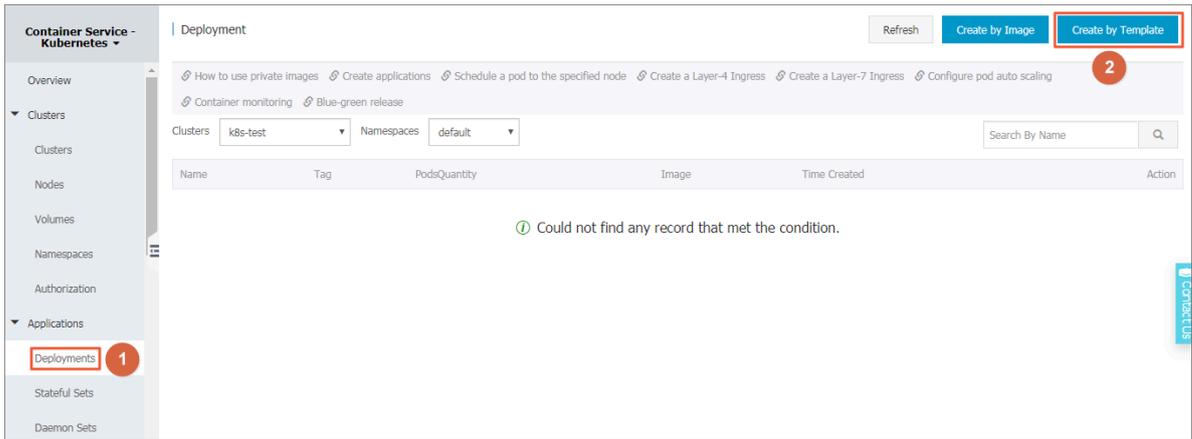
5. You can view the Config Map test-config on the Config Maps page after clicking OK.

Config Map Name	Namespace	Time Created	Operation
test	default	2018-02-09 03:30:31	Delete   Modify
test-config	default	2018-02-09 05:56:47	Delete   Modify

### Create a Config Map by using a template

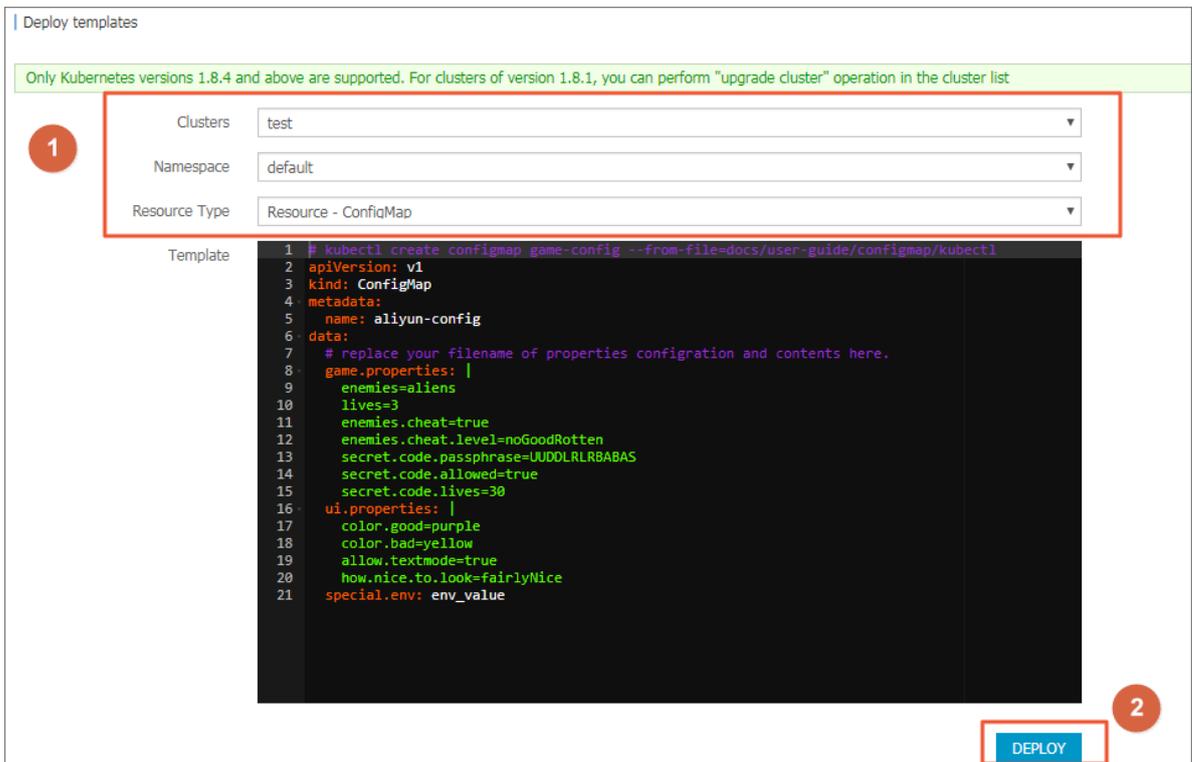
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Applications > Deployments.

3. Click Create by template in the upper-right corner.



4. On the Deploy templates page, complete the settings and then click DEPLOY.

- **Clusters:** Select the cluster in which the Config Map is to be created.
- **Namespace:** Select the namespace to which the Config Map belongs. Config map is a Kubernetes resource object that must be applied to the namespace.
- **Resource Type:** You can write your own Config Map based on the Kubernetes YAML syntax rules, or select the sample template resource-ConfigMap. In the sample template, the Config Map is named as aliyun-config and includes two variable files `game . properties` and `ui . properties`. You can make modifications based on the sample template. Then, click DEPLOY.



5. After the deployment, you can view the Config Map `aliyun-config` on the Config Maps page.

Config Map Name	Namespace	Time Created	Operation
aliyun-config	default	04/24/2018,15:41:32	Delete   Modify

## 7.2 Use a config map in a pod

You can use a config map in a pod in the following scenarios:

- Use a config map to define the pod environment variables.
- Use a config map to configure command line parameters.
- Use a config map in data volumes.

For more information, see [Configure a pod to use a ConfigMap](#).

### Limits

To use a config map in a pod, make sure the config map and the pod are in the same cluster and namespace.

### Create a config map

In this example, create a config map `special-config`, which includes two key-value pairs: `SPECIAL_LE VEL : very` and `SPECIAL_TY PE : charm`.

Create a config map by using an orchestration template

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click `Application > Deployment`. Click `Create by template` in the upper-right corner.
3. Select the cluster and namespace from the `Clusters` and `Namespace` drop-down lists. Select a sample template or `Custom` from the `Resource Type` drop-down list. Click `DEPLOY`.

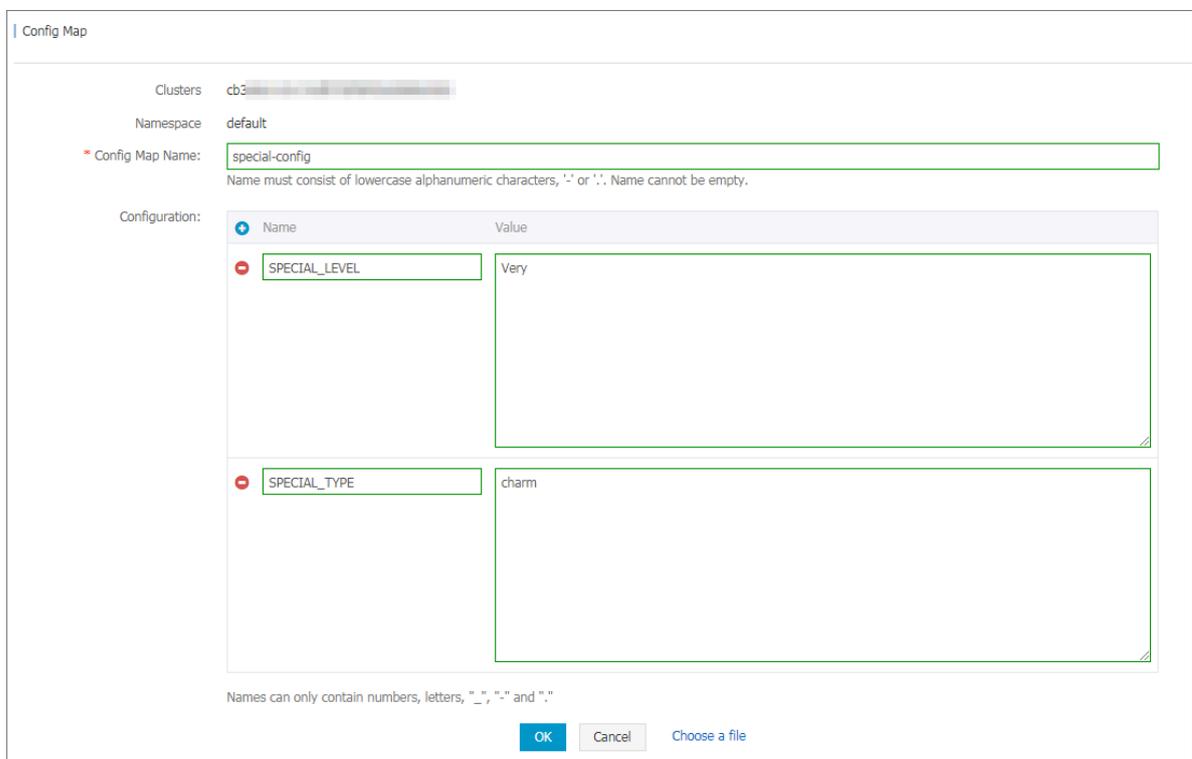
You can use the following YAML sample template to create a config map.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : ConfigMap
metadata :
  name : special - config
  namespace : default
data :
  SPECIAL_LE VEL : very
```

```
SPECIAL_TYPE : charm
```

### Create a config map on Config Maps page

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, choose Configuration > Config Maps in the left-side navigation pane.
3. Select the cluster and namespace from the Clusters and Namespace drop-down lists. Click Create in the upper-right corner.
4. Enter a config map name, click the plus icon , set the name and value for each entry of the config map, and then click OK.



### Use a config map to define pod environment variables

#### Use config map data to define pod environment variables

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Application > Deployment . Click Create by template in the upper-right corner.

3. Select the cluster and namespace from the Clusters and Namespace drop-down lists. Select a sample template or Custom from the Resource Type drop-down list. Click DEPLOY.

You can define the environment variables in a pod. Use `valueFrom` to reference the value of SPECIAL\_LEVEL to define the pod environment variables.

See the following orchestration example:

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  name : config - pod - 1
spec :
  containers :
    - name : test - container
      image : busybox
      command : [ "/ bin / sh ", "- c ", " env " ]
      env :
        - name : SPECIAL_LEVEL_KEY
          valueFrom :
            configMapKeyRef :
              name : special - config
              key : SPECIAL_LEVEL
            restartPolicy : Never

```

valueFrom to specify env to reference the value of the config map. ## Use of the config map. ## The referenced config map name. ## The referenced config map key.

Similarly, to define the values of multiple config maps to the environment variable values of the pod, add multiple env parameters in the pod.

Configure all key-value pairs of a config map to pod environment variables

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Application > Deployment. Click Create by template in the upper-right corner.
3. Select the cluster and namespace from the Clusters and Namespace drop-down lists. Select a sample template or Custom from the Resource Type drop-down list. Click DEPLOY.

To configure all the key-value pairs of a config map to the environment variables of a pod, use the envFrom parameter. The key in a config map becomes the environment variable name in the pod.

See the following orchestration example:

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :

```

```

name : config - pod - 2
spec :
  containers :
    - name : test - container
      image : busybox
      command : [ "/ bin / sh ", "- c ", " env " ]
      envFrom :
        - configMapReference :
            name : special - config
        - secretReference :
            name : special - config
      restartPolicy : Never

```

### Use a config map to configure command line parameters

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click **Application > Deployment** . Click **Create by template** in the upper-right corner.
3. Select the cluster and namespace from the **Clusters and Namespace** drop-down lists. Select a sample template or **Custom** from the **Resource Type** drop-down list. Click **DEPLOY**.

You can use the config map to configure the commands or parameter values in the container by using the environment variable replacement syntax `$( VAR_NAME )`.

See the following orchestration example:

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  name : config - pod - 3
spec :
  containers :
    - name : test - container
      image : busybox
      command : [ "/ bin / sh ", "- c ", " echo $( SPECIAL_LE
VEL_KEY ) $( SPECIAL_TYPE PE_KEY )" ]
      env :
        - name : SPECIAL_LE VEL_KEY
          valueFrom :
            configMapKeyRef :
              name : special - config
              key : SPECIAL_LE VEL
        - name : SPECIAL_TYPE PE_KEY
          valueFrom :
            configMapKeyRef :
              name : special - config
              key : SPECIAL_TYPE PE

```

```
restartPolicy : Never
```

The output after running the pod is as follows:

```
very charm
```

Use a config map in data volumes

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under the Kubernetes menu, click Application Deployment in the left-side navigation pane. Click Create by template in the upper-right corner.
3. Select the cluster and namespace from the Clusters and Namespace drop-down lists. Select a sample template or Custom from the Resource Type drop-down list. Click DEPLOY.

You can also use a config map in data volumes. Specifying the config map name under volumes stores the key-value pair data to the mountPath directory (`/ etc / config` in this example). It finally generates a configuration file with key as the file name and values as the contents of the file.

Then, the configuration file with key as the name and value as the contents is generated.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  name : config - pod - 4
spec :
  containers :
    - name : test - container
      image : busybox
      command : [ "/ bin / sh ", "- c ", " ls / etc / config /" ]
      ## List the file names under this directory .
      volumeMounts :
        - name : config - volume
          mountPath : / etc / config
  volumes :
    - name : config - volume
      configMap :
        name : special - config
      restartPolicy : Never
```

Keys of the config map are output after running the pod.

```
SPECIAL_TY PE
```

SPECIAL\_LEVEL

## 7.3 View a ConfigMap

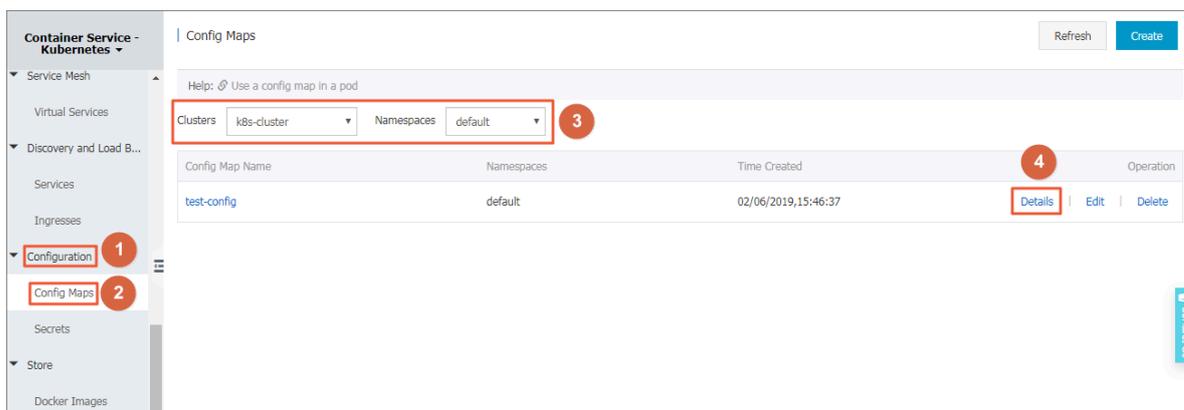
This topic describes how to view a created ConfigMap by using the Container Service console of Alibaba Cloud.

### Prerequisites

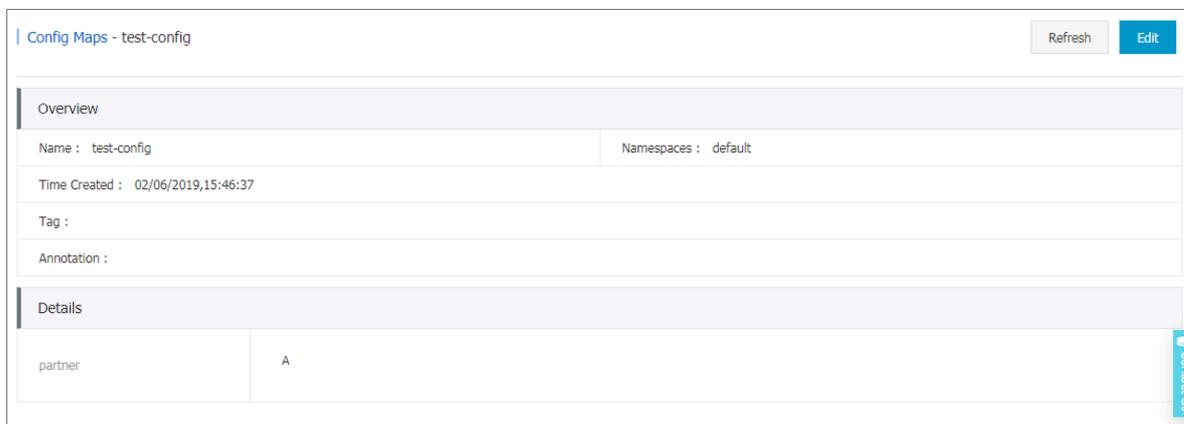
- A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- A ConfigMap is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_104](#).

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Configuration > Config Maps**.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace, find the target ConfigMap, and then click **Details** in the Operation column.



Then, you can view the details of the ConfigMap.



## 7.4 Modify a Config Map

You can modify the configurations of a Config Map.

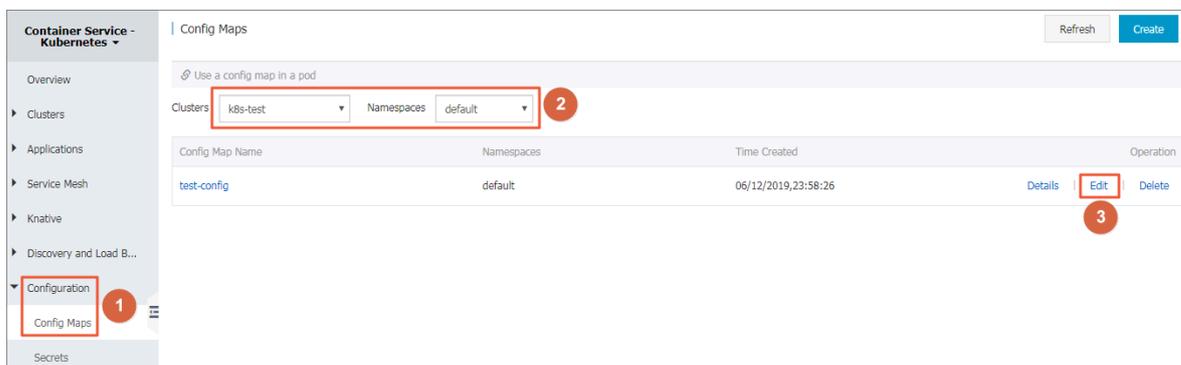


Note:

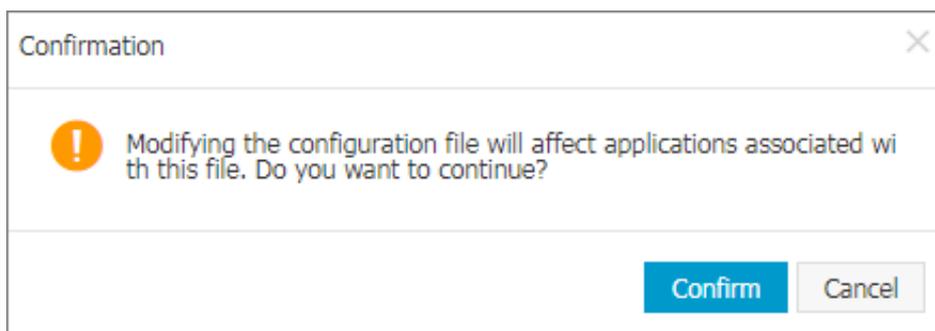
Modifying a Config Map affects applications that use this Config Map.

Modify a Config Map on the Config Maps page

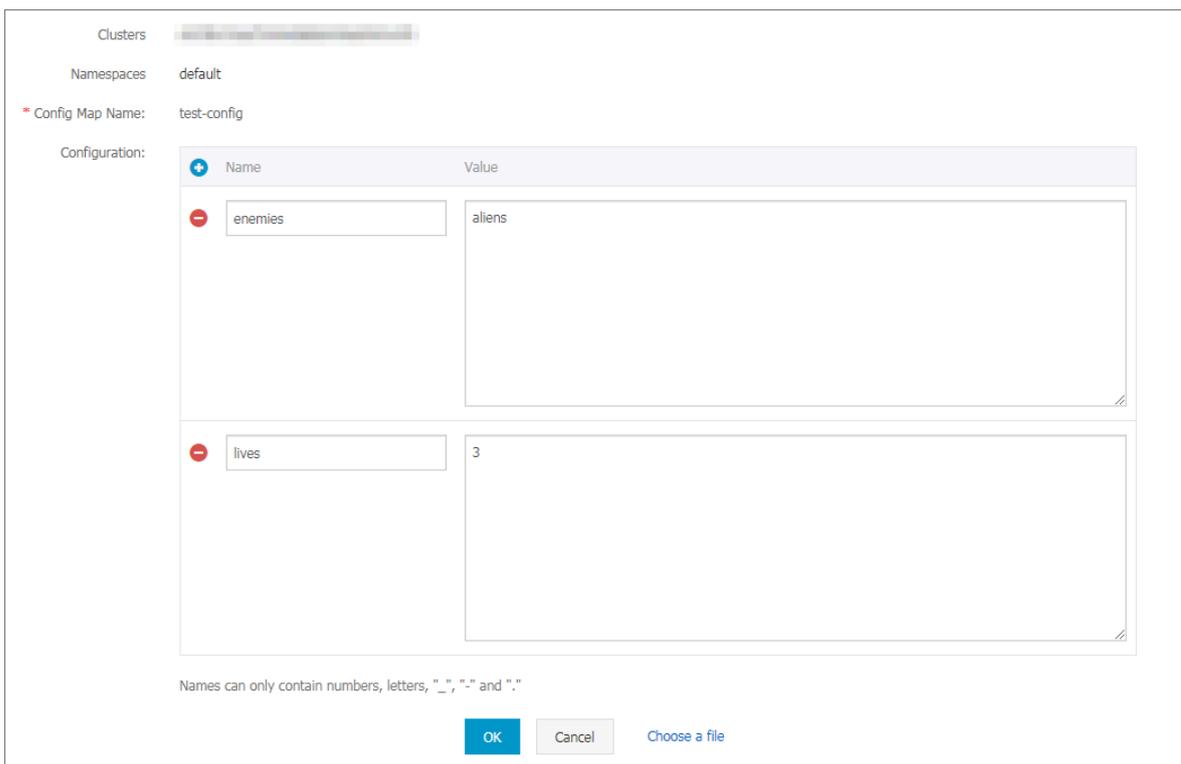
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Configuration > Config Maps.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and find the target Config Map. Then, in the Operation column, click Edit.



4. In the displayed dialog box, click Confirm



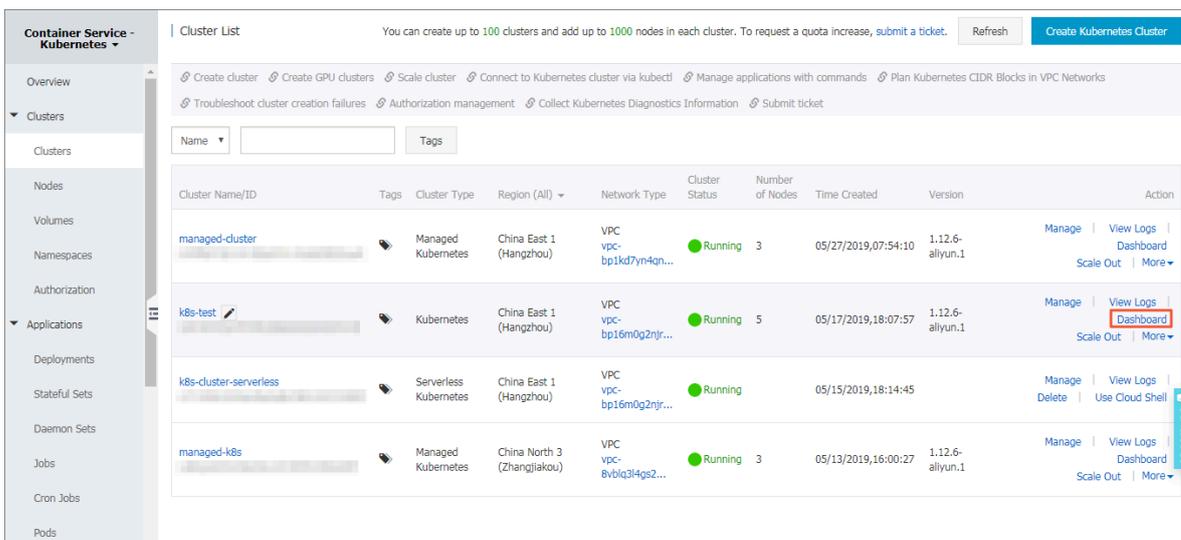
### 5. Modify the configurations.



### 6. Click OK.

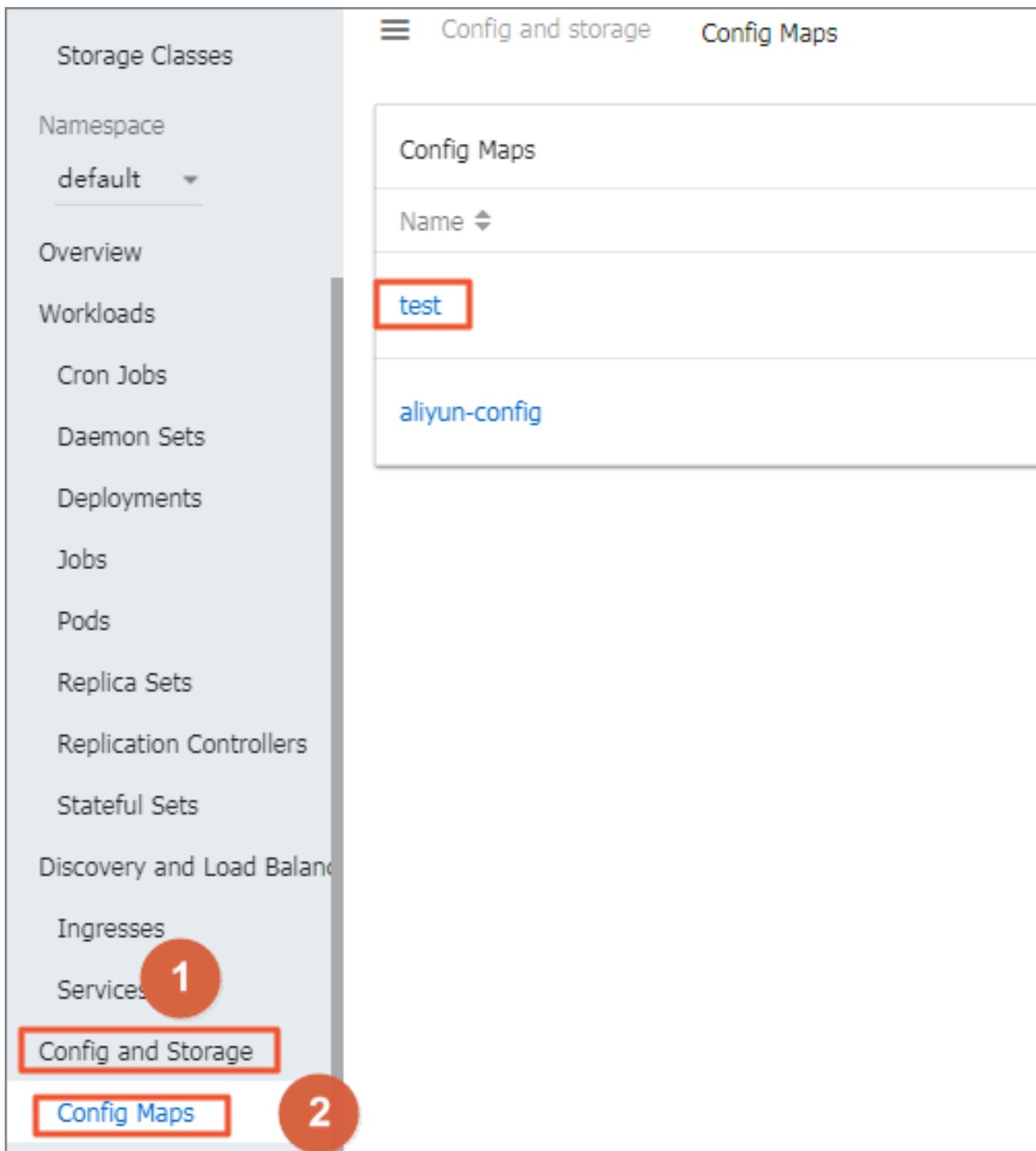
## Modify a Config Map in the Kubernetes dashboard

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Clusters.
3. Find the target cluster. In the Action column, click Dashboard.



4. In the left-side navigation pane, select the target namespace, and then choose Config and Storage > Config Maps.

5. Find the target Config Map, and choose Actions > View/edit YAML.



6. In the displayed dialog box, modify the configurations, and then click UPDATE.



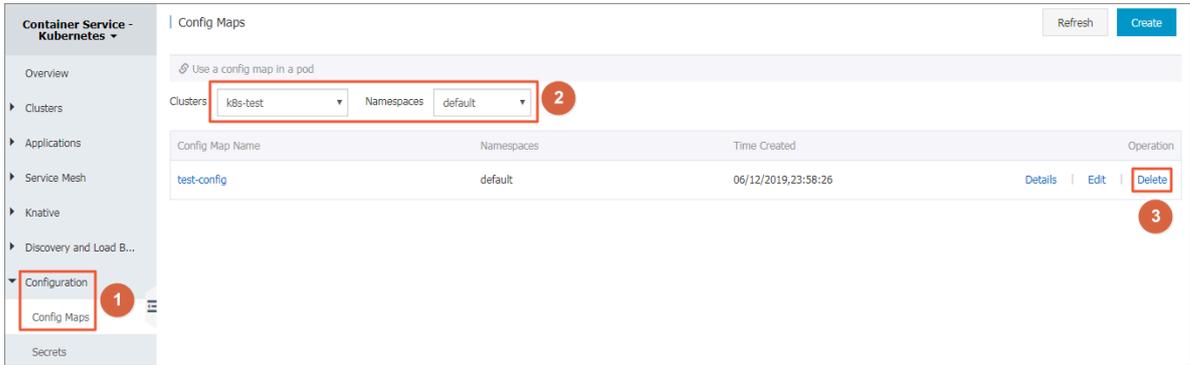
## 7.5 Delete a Config Map

This topic describes the two methods to delete a Config Map.

Delete a Config Map on the Config Maps page

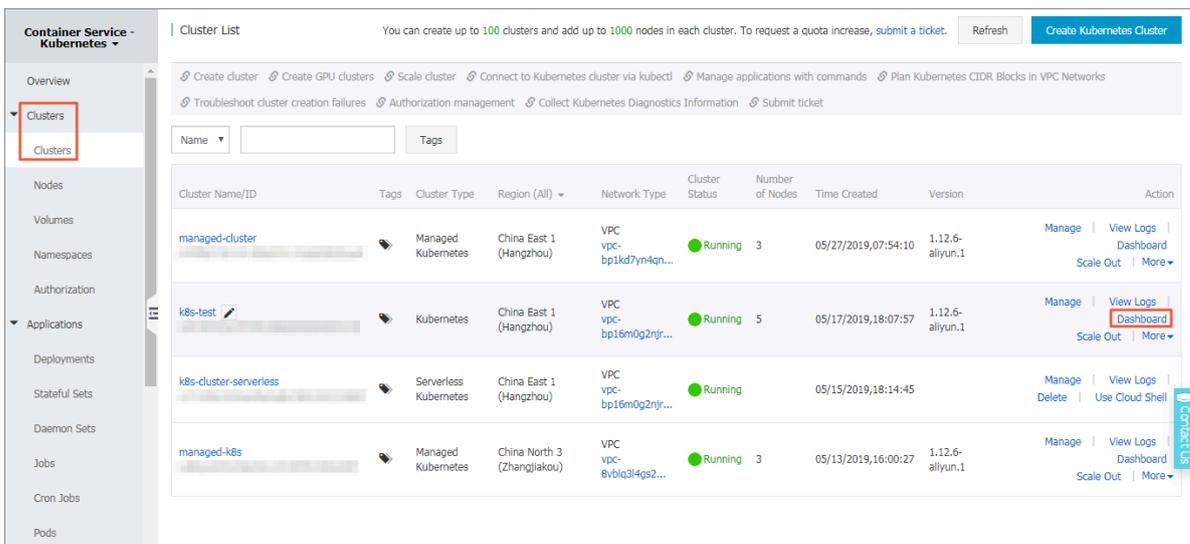
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Configuration > Config Maps.

3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and find the target Config Map. Then, in the Operation column, click Delete.



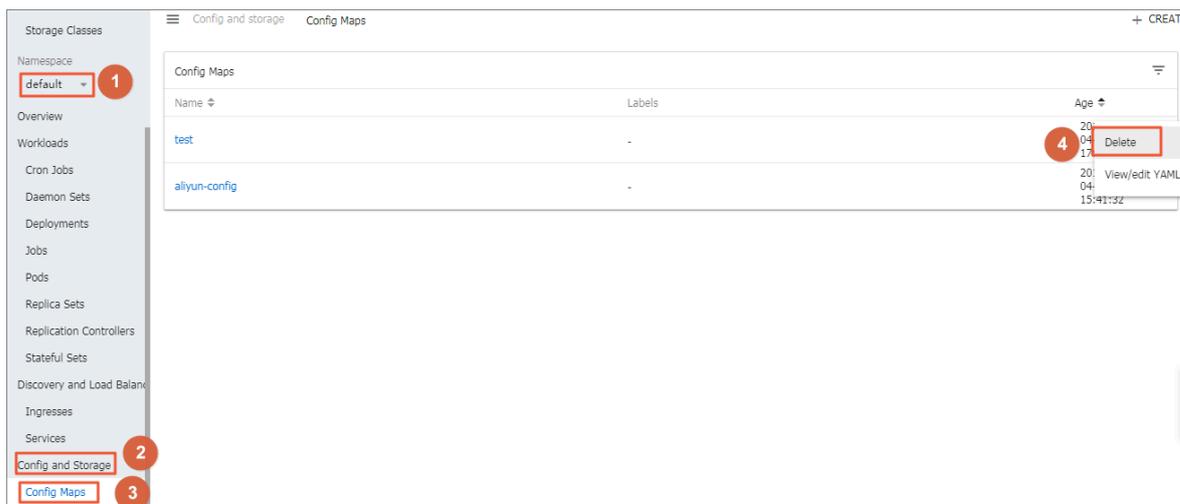
### Delete a Config Map in the Kubernetes dashboard

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Clusters.
3. Find the target cluster. In the Action column, click Dashboard.



4. In the left-side navigation pane, select the target namespace, and then choose Config and Storage > Config Maps.

5. Find the target Config Map, and choose Actions > Delete.



6. In the displayed dialog box, click DELETE.

## 7.6 Create a Secret

This topic describes how to use the Container Service console to create a Secret.

### Prerequisites

A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

### Context

We recommend that you use Secrets for sensitive configurations in Kubernetes clusters, such as passwords and certificates.

Secrets have many types. For example:

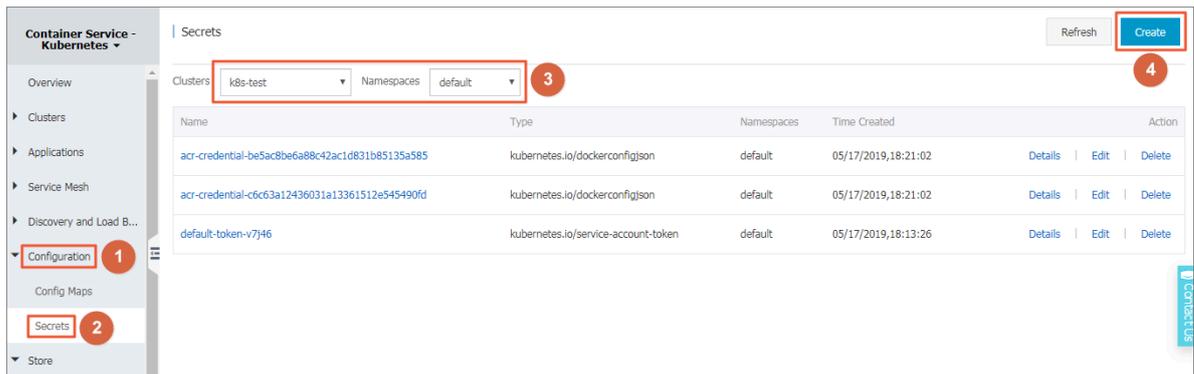
- **Service Account:** Automatically created by Kubernetes, which is used to access Kubernetes APIs and is automatically mounted to the pod directory `/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount`.
- **Opaque:** Secret in the base64 encoding format, which is used to store sensitive information such as passwords and certificates.

By default, you can only create secrets of the Opaque type in the Container Service console. Opaque data is of the map type, which requires the value to be in the base64 encoding format. Alibaba Cloud Container Service supports creating Secrets with one click and automatically encoding the clear data to base64 format.

You can also manually create Secrets by using command lines. For more information, see [Kubernetes Secrets](#).

## Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Configuration > Secrets.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace. Then, in the upper-right corner, click Create.



4. Complete the configurations to create a Secret.



Note:

To enter the clear data of the secret, select the Encode data values using Base64 check box.

\* Name  1  
Name must consist of lowercase alphanumeric characters, '-' or '.'. Name cannot be empty.

\* Type  Opaque  Private Repository Logon Password  TLS Certificate

\* Data

Name	Value
password	1qaz2wsx09
username	admin

Names can only contain numbers, letters, "\_", "-" and "."

Encode data values using Base64 3

- a. Name: Enter the Secret name, which must be 1–253 characters long, and can only contain lowercase letters, numbers, hyphens (-), and dots (.).
- b. Configure the Secret data. Click the add icon next to Name and enter the name and value of the Secret, namely, the key-value pair. In this example, the Secret contains two values: `username : admin` and `password : 1f2d1e2e67 df`.
- c. Click OK.

5. The Secret page appears. You can view the created Secret in the Secret list.

Secrets

Clusters  Namespaces

Name	Type	Namespaces	Time Created	Action
account	Opaque	default	05/20/2019,10:52:53	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
acr-credential-be5ac8be6a88c42ac1d831b85135a585	kubernetes.io/dockerconfigjson	default	05/17/2019,18:21:02	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
acr-credential-c6c63a12436031a13361512e545490fd	kubernetes.io/dockerconfigjson	default	05/17/2019,18:21:02	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
default-token-v7j46	kubernetes.io/service-account-token	default	05/17/2019,18:13:26	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>

## 7.7 Use a Secret in a pod

This topic describes how to use a Secret in a pod. You can use a Secret to configure volumes and environment variables in a pod.

### Prerequisites

- A Secret named `secret-test` is created by using the following YAML template:

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Secret
metadata :
  name : secret - test
type : Opaque
data :
  username : admin
  password : 12345 # You must encode your password by
  using Base64 .
```

For more information about how to create a secret, see [#unique\\_109](#).

- The Secret and pod share the same cluster and namespace.
- The Master node of your Kubernetes cluster is connected. For more information, see [#unique\\_26](#).

### Use a Secret to configure pod volumes

You can configure pod volumes by using either of the following methods:

- **Method 1: Configure pod volumes by running the `kubectl apply -f <example0 . yaml >` command.**



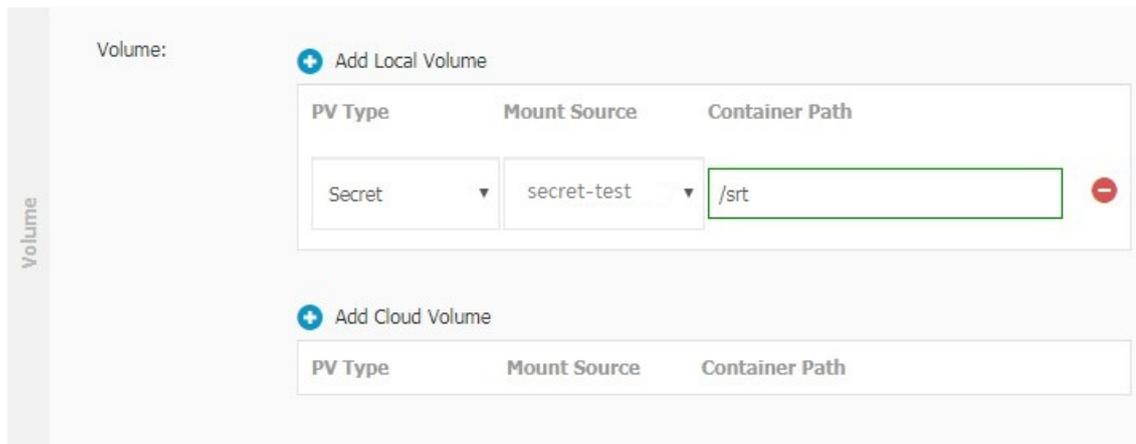
#### Note:

You must replace the `example0 . yaml` file with the name of the target YAML file.

- **Method 2: Configure pod volumes in the Container Service console.**
  1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
  2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Application > Deployment**.
  3. In the upper-right corner, click **Create from Image**. For information about how to create a deployment application by using an image, see [#unique\\_32](#).

In the **Volume** section of the **Container** tab, click **Add Local Volume**, select **Secret** from the **PV Type** drop-down list, select `secret - test` from

the **Mount Source** drop-down list, and set **Container Path** to the path where `secret - test` is saved.



A Secret can be used as a file in a pod. For example, the username and password of the Secret (`secret-test`) is saved to the `/srt` directory as a file.

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  name : pod0
spec : undefined containers :
  - name : redis
    image : redis
    volumeMoun ts :
      - name : srt
        mountPath : "/ srt "
        readOnly : true
  volumes :
    - name : srt
      secret :
        secretName : secret - test
```

### Use a Secret to configure environment variables

You can configure environment variables by using either of the following methods:

- **Method 1: Configure environment variables by running the `kubectl apply -f < example1 . yaml >` command.**

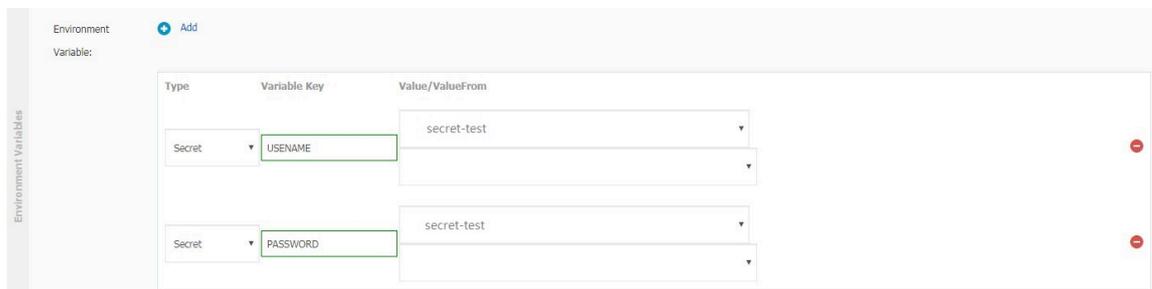


**Note:**

You must replace the `example1 . yaml` file with the name of the target YAML file.

- Method 2: Configure environment variables in the Container Service console.
  1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
  2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Application > Deployment.
  3. In the upper-right corner, click Create from Image. For information about how to create a deployment application by using an image, see [#unique\\_32](#).

In the Environment Variable section of the Container tab, click Add, select Secret from the Type drop-down list, select secret - test from the Value / ValueFrom drop-down list, select the target keys, and enter a name for the variables.



For more information about Secrets, see [Secrets](#).

## 7.8 View a Secret

You can view the details of a created Secret in the Container Service console.

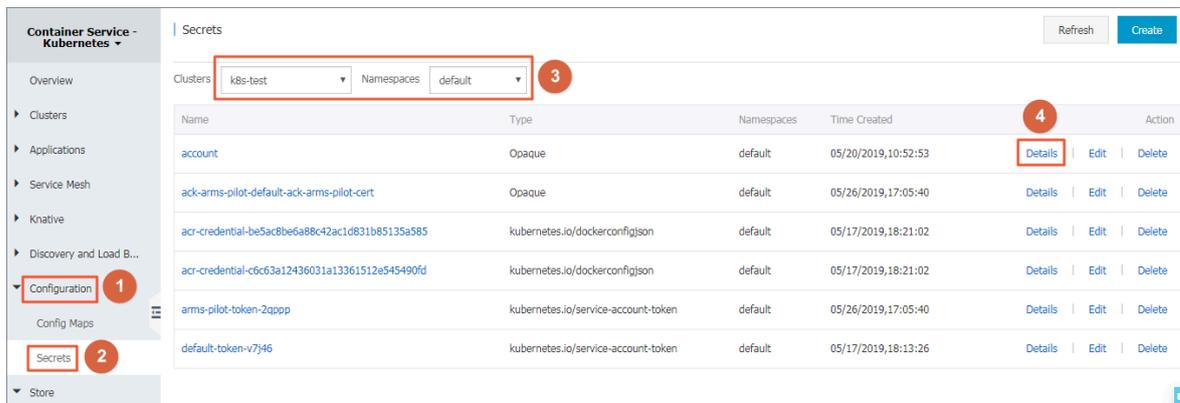
### Prerequisites

- A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- A Secret is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_109](#).

### Procedure

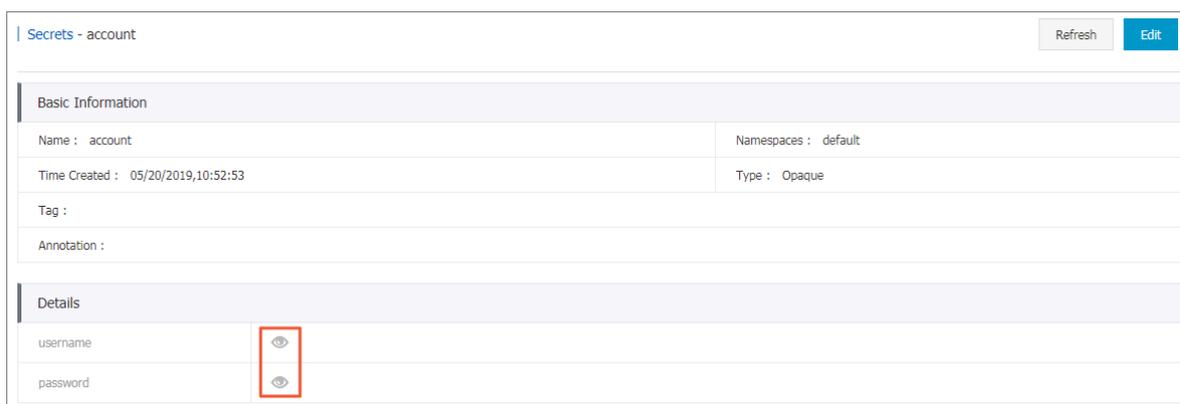
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Configuration > Secrets.

3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and find the target Secret. Then, in the Action column, click Details.



4. You can view the basic information of the secret, and the data that the secret contains.

In the Details area, click the icon on the right of the data name to view the plain text.



## 7.9 Edit a Secret

This topic describes how to edit a Secret in the Container Service console.

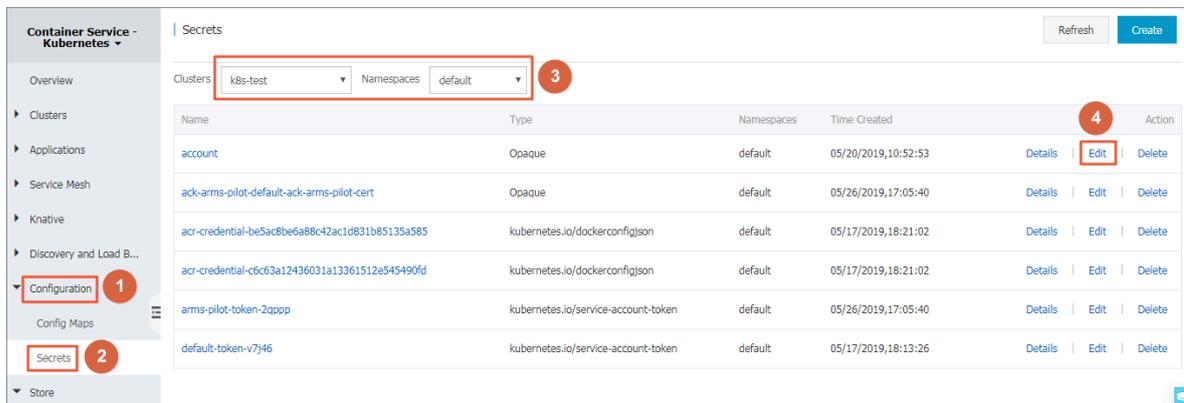
### Prerequisites

- A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- A Secret is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_109](#).

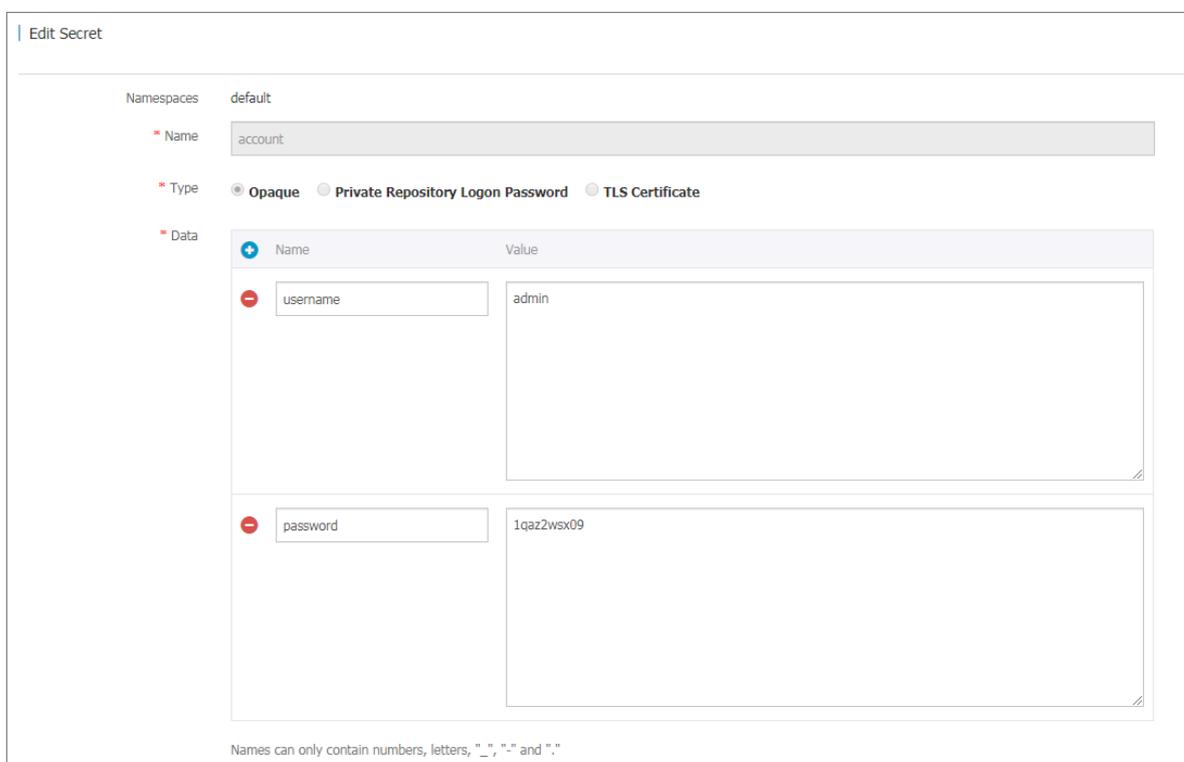
### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Configuration > Secrets.

3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and find the target Secret. Then, in the Action column, click Edit.



4. Edit the Secret data on the Edit Secret page.



5. Click OK.

## 7.10 Delete a Secret

This topic describes how to delete a Secret in the Container Service console.

### Prerequisites

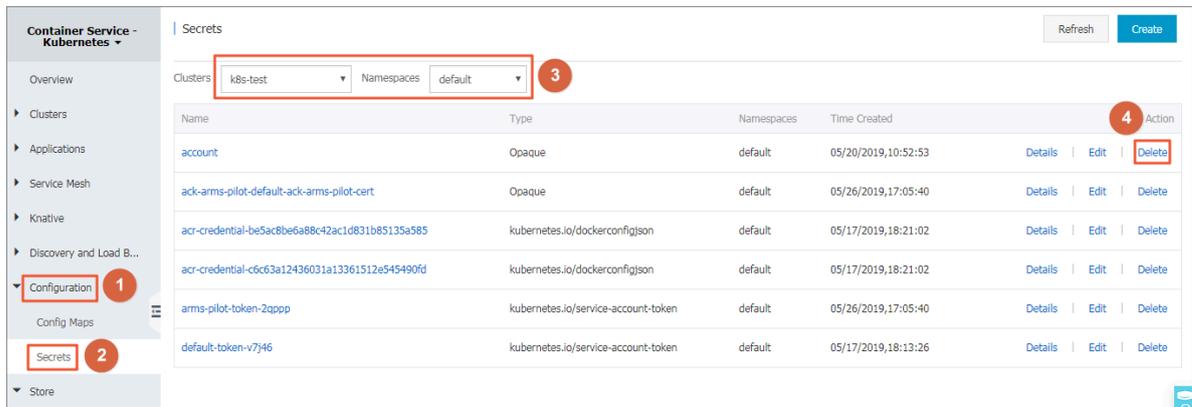
- A Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- A Secret is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_109](#).

## Context

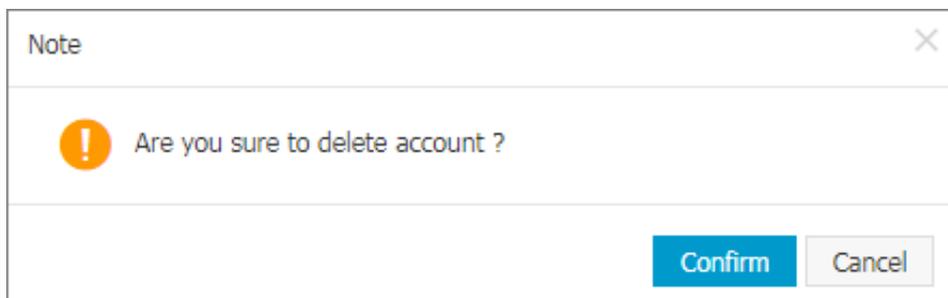
Do not delete the Secret generated when the cluster is created.

## Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Configuration > Secrets**.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace, and find the target Secret. Then, in the **Action** column, click **Delete**.



4. In the displayed dialog box, click **Confirm**.



## 8 Log management

---

### 8.1 Application log management

A Kubernetes cluster that runs on Alibaba Cloud Container Service provides you with multiple methods to manage application logs.

- Following the instructions of [#unique\\_86](#), you can make the best use of the functions provided by Alibaba Cloud Log Service, such as log statistics and analysis.
- With [Log-pilot](#), an open source project provided by Alibaba Cloud Container Service, and [#unique\\_115](#), you can easily build your own application log clusters.

### 8.2 View cluster logs

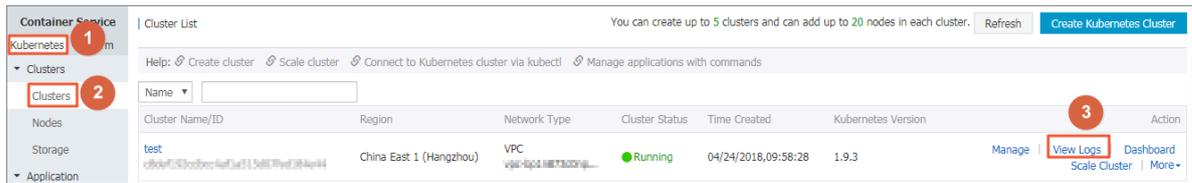
#### Context

You can view the cluster operation logs by using the simple log service of Container Service.

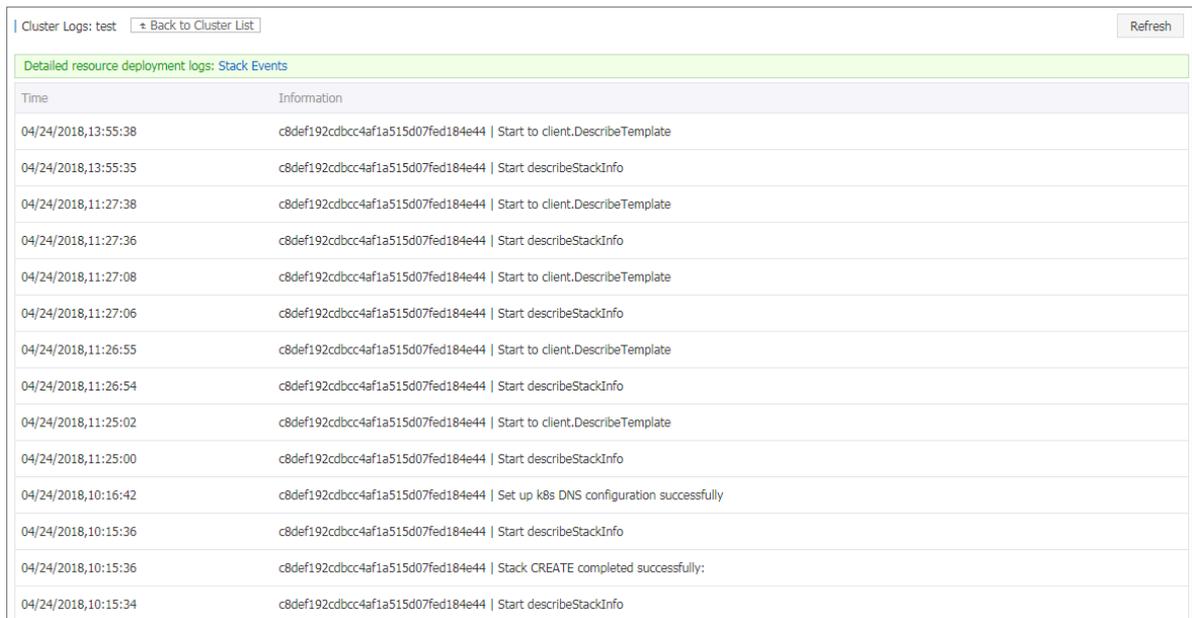
#### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Clusters in the left-side navigation pane.

### 3. Click View Logs at the right of the cluster.



### View the cluster operation information.



## 8.3 Use Log Service to collect Kubernetes cluster logs

Log Service is integrated with Kubernetes clusters of Alibaba Cloud Container Service. You can enable Log Service when creating a cluster to quickly collect container logs for the Kubernetes cluster, such as the standard output of the container and text files of the container.

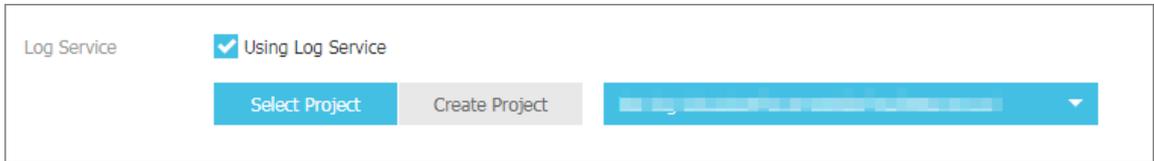
### Enable Log Service when creating a Kubernetes cluster

If you have not created any Kubernetes clusters, follow steps in this section to enable Log Service:

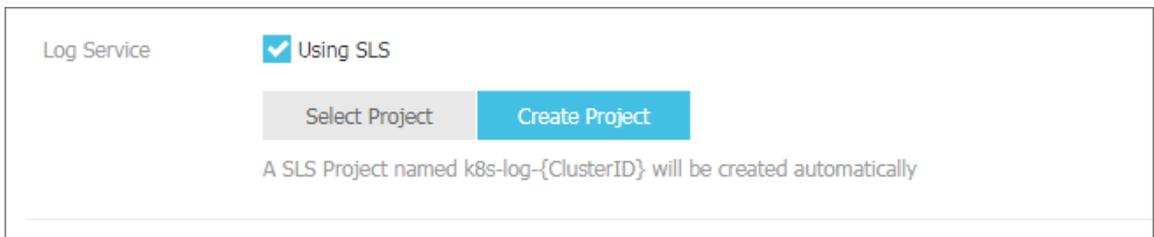
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Click Clusters in the left-side navigation pane and click Create Kubernetes Cluster in the upper-right corner.
3. For how to configure a cluster on the creation page, see [#unique\\_118](#).
4. Drag to the bottom of the page and select the Using Log Service check box. The log plug-in will be installed in the newly created Kubernetes cluster.

5. When you select the Using Log Service check box, project options are displayed. A project is the unit in Log Service to manage logs. For more information about projects, see [#unique\\_119](#). Currently, two ways of using a project are available:

- Select an existing project to manage collected logs.

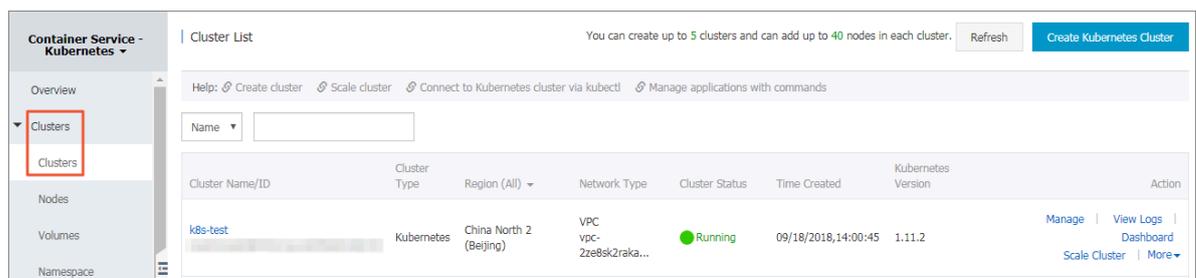


- The system automatically creates a new project to manage collected logs. The project is automatically named `k8s - log -{ ClusterID }`, where ClusterID represents the unique identifier of the created Kubernetes cluster.



6. After you complete the configurations, click Create in the upper-right corner. In the displayed dialog box, click OK.

After the cluster creation is completed, the newly created Kubernetes cluster is displayed on the cluster list page.



### Manually install Log Service components in a created Kubernetes cluster

If you have created a Kubernetes cluster, following instructions in this section to use Log Service:

- Log Service components are not installed. Manually install the components.
- Log Service components are installed but in an earlier version. Upgrade the components. If you do not upgrade the components, you can only use the Log Service console or custom resource definition (CRD) to configure log collection.

Check the Log Service component version

1. Use Cloud Shell to connect to the target Kubernetes cluster.

For more information, see [#unique\\_120](#).

2. Run the following command to fast determine whether an upgrade or migration operation is required:

```
$ kubectl describe daemonsets -n kube-system logtail -ds | grep ALICLOUD_L OG_DOCKER_ ENV_CONFIG
```

- If `ALICLOUD_L OG_DOCKER_ ENV_CONFIG : true` is output, the components can be used directly without requiring upgrade or migration.
- If other results are output, check the components further.

3. Run the following command to determine whether Helm is used to install the components.

```
$ helm get alibaba-log-controller | grep CHART  
CHART : alibaba-cloud-log-0.1.1
```

- 0.1.1 in the output indicates the version of the Log Service components. Please use the version of 0.1.1 and later. If the version is too early, please see [Upgrade Log Service components](#) to upgrade the components. If you have used Helm to install the components of a valid version, you can skip next steps.
- If no results are output, the components are installed by using Helm. But the DaemonSet installation method might be used. Follow the next step to check further.

4. DaemonSet can be an old one or a new one:

```
$ kubectl get daemonsets -n kube-system logtail
```

- If no result is output or `No resources found` is output, the Log Service components are not installed. For information about the installation method, see [Manually install Log Service components](#).
- If the correct result is output, an old DaemonSet is used to install the components which require upgrade. For information about upgrading the components, see [Upgrade Log Service components](#).

### Manually install Log Service components

1. Use Cloud Shell to connect to the target Kubernetes cluster.

For more information, see [#unique\\_120](#).

2. Run the `echo $ALIBABA_CLUSTER_ID OUD_ACCOUNT_ID` command in Cloud Shell to get the ID of your account in Alibaba Cloud.
3. Run the following command:

**Note:**

For this command, you need to specify the following parameters as required:

```
{ your_k8s_cluster_id }, { your_ali_uid }, and { your_k8s_cluster_region_id }.
```

```
wget https://acs-logging.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh -O alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh; chmod 744 ./alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh; ./alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh --cluster-id { your_k8s_cluster_id } --ali-uid { your_ali_uid } --region-id { your_k8s_cluster_region_id }
```

**Parameter description**

- `your_k8s_cluster_id`: indicates your Kubernetes cluster ID.
- `your_ali_uid`: indicates the ID of your account in Alibaba Cloud. It can be obtained in step 2.
- `your_k8s_cluster_region_id`: indicates the region in which your Kubernetes cluster resides, which can be found in [Regions and zones](#). For example, if the cluster resides in Hangzhou, the value of this parameter is `cn-hangzhou`.

**Installation example**

```
[ root @ iZbp*****biaZ ~]# wget https://acs-logging.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh -O alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh; chmod 744 ./alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh; ./alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh --cluster-id c77a*****0106 --ali-uid 19*****19 --region-id cn-hangzhou
-- 2018 - 09 - 28 15 : 25 : 33 -- https://acs-logging.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh
Resolving acs-logging.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com ...
118.31.219.217, 118.31.219.206
Connecting to acs-logging.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com | 118.31.219.217 | : 443 ... connected.
HTTP request sent, awaiting response ... 200 OK
Length: 2273 (2.2K) [text/x-sh]
Saving to: 'alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh'

alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh                               100
%[=====
  2.22K --. - KB / s      in 0s

2018 - 09 - 28 15 : 25 : 33 (13.5 MB / s) - 'alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh' saved [2273 / 2273]
```

```
-- 2018 - 09 - 28 15 : 25 : 33 -- http://logtail - release -
cn - hangzhou . oss - cn - hangzhou . aliyuncs . com / kubernetes /
alibaba - cloud - log . tgz
Resolving logtail - release - cn - hangzhou . oss - cn - hangzhou .
aliyuncs . com ... 118 . 31 . 219 . 49
Connecting to logtail - release - cn - hangzhou . oss - cn -
hangzhou . aliyuncs . com | 118 . 31 . 219 . 49 | : 80 ... connected
.
HTTP request sent , awaiting response ... 200 OK
Length : 2754 ( 2 . 7K ) [ application / x - gzip ]
Saving to : ' alibaba - cloud - log . tgz '

alibaba - cloud - log . tgz 100
%[=====
 2 . 69K --. - KB / s in 0s

2018 - 09 - 28 15 : 25 : 34 ( 79 . 6 MB / s ) - ' alibaba -
cloud - log . tgz ' saved [ 2754 / 2754 ]

[ INFO ] your k8s is using project : k8s - log -
c77a92ec5a 3ce4e64a1b f13bde1820 106
NAME : alibaba - log - controller
LAST DEPLOYED : Fri Sep 28 15 : 25 : 34 2018
NAMESPACE : default
STATUS : DEPLOYED

RESOURCES :
==> v1beta1 / CustomResourceDefinition
NAME AGE
aliyunlogconfig . log . alibabacloud . com 0s

==> v1beta1 / ClusterRole
alibaba - log - controller 0s

==> v1beta1 / ClusterRoleBinding
NAME AGE
alibaba - log - controller 0s

==> v1beta1 / DaemonSet
NAME DESIRED CURRENT READY UP - TO - DATE
AVAILABLE NODE SELECTOR AGE
logtail - ds 2 2 0 2 0
< none > 0s

==> v1beta1 / Deployment
NAME DESIRED CURRENT UP - TO - DATE
AVAILABLE AGE
alibaba - log - controller 1 1 1 0
0s

==> v1 / Pod ( related )
NAME READY STATUS
RESTARTS AGE
logtail - ds - 6v979 0 / 1 ContainerC
reating 0 0s
logtail - ds - 7ccqv 0 / 1 ContainerC
reating 0 0s
alibaba - log - controller - 84d8b6b8cf - nkrkx 0 / 1
ContainerC reating 0 0s

==> v1 / ServiceAccount
NAME SECRETS AGE
alibaba - log - controller 1 0s
```

```
[ SUCCESS ] install helm package : alibaba - log - controller
success .
```

## Upgrade Log Service components

If you have installed Log Service components of an early version through Helm or DaemonSet, upgrade or migrate the components as follows.



### Note:

You need to use Cloud Shell to connect to the target Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_120](#).

## Use Helm to upgrade Log Service components (recommended)

1. Run the following command to download the latest Helm package of Log Service components:

```
wget http://logtail-release-cn-hangzhou.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/kubernetes/alibaba-cloud-log.tgz -O alibaba-cloud-log.tgz
```

2. Upgrade the components by using helm upgrade. The command is as follows:

```
helm get values alibaba-log-controller --all > values.yaml && helm upgrade alibaba-cloud-log alibaba-cloud-log.tgz --recreate-pods -f values.yaml
```

## Use DaemonSet to upgrade Log Service components

You can upgrade Log Service components by modifying the DaemonSet template. If your image account is acs, upgrade the image tag to the latest version that can be viewed in [Container Registry](#). If your image account is aliyun, upgrade the image tag to the latest version that can be viewed in [Container Registry](#).



### Note:

- If upgrading the tag has not enabled a rolling update of Logtail, you must manually remove the Logtail pod to trigger a Logtail update.
- You need to check whether Logtail runs on all nodes, including Master nodes. If Logtail does not run on all nodes, you must set [tolerations](#) for Logtail.

```
toleration s :
```

```
- operator : " Exists "
```

For more information, see [Latest Helm package configurations](#).

## DaemonSet migrate

This upgrade method is applicable to the situation that you find the components are installed through the old DaemonSet when you check the Log Service component version. This method does not support configuring Log Service in Container Service. You can upgrade the components as follows:

1. At the end of the installation command, add a parameter which is the name of the project of Log Service used by your Kubernetes cluster.

For example, if the project name is `k8s-log-demo` and the cluster ID is `c12ba2028cxxxxxxxxxx6939f0b`, then the installation command is:

```
wget https://acs-logging.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh -O alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh; chmod 744 ./alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh; ./alicloud-k8s-log-installer.sh --cluster-id c12ba2028cxxxxxxxxxx6939f0b --ali-uid 19 ***** 19 --region-id cn-hangzhou --log-project k8s-log-demo
```

2. After you complete the installation, log on the [Log Service console](#).
3. After you complete the installation, log on the [Log Service console](#).
4. In the Log service console, apply the history collection configuration of the project and Logstore to the new machine group `k8s - group -${ your_k8s_cluster_id }`.
5. After one minute, the history collection configuration is unbound from the history machine group.
6. When log collection is normal, you can delete the previously installed Logtail DaemonSet.



### Note:

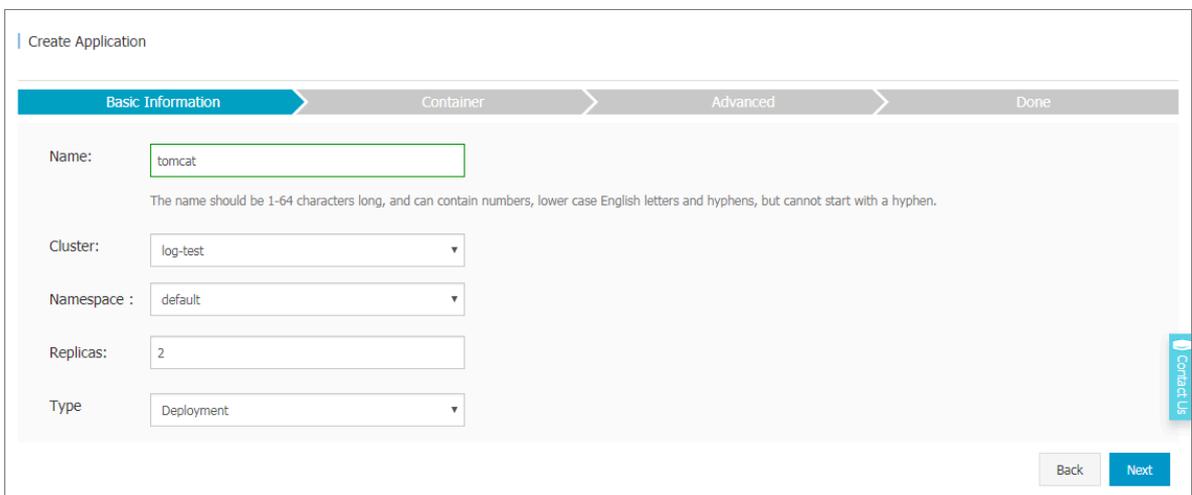
During the upgrade, some logs are duplicated. The CRD configuration management takes effect only for the configuration created by using CRD. The history configuration does not support the CRD management because the history configuration is created by using the non-CRD mode.

## Configure Log Service when creating an application

Container Service allows you to configure Log Service to collect container logs when creating an application. Currently, you can use the console or a YAML template to create an application.

### Create an application by using the console

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Applications > Deployments**. Then, click **Create by Image** in the upper-right corner.
3. Configure **Name**, **Cluster**, **Namespace**, **Replicas**, and **Type**, and then click **Next**.



The screenshot shows the 'Create Application' wizard in the console. The 'Basic Information' step is active, with the following fields:

- Name:** tomcat (with a note: "The name should be 1-64 characters long, and can contain numbers, lower case English letters and hyphens, but cannot start with a hyphen.")
- Cluster:** log-test
- Namespace:** default
- Replicas:** 2
- Type:** Deployment

Navigation buttons 'Back' and 'Next' are at the bottom right. A 'Contact Us' button is on the right side.

4. On the **Container** page, select the Tomcat image and configure container log collection.

The following describes only configurations related to Log Service. For information about other application configurations, see [#unique\\_32](#).

5. Configure Log Service. Click the + sign to create a configuration which consists of a Logstore name and a log path.
  - **Logstore name:** Specify a Logstore in which collected logs are stored. If your specified Logstore does not exist, the system automatically creates the Logstore in the project of Log Service with which the cluster is associated .



**Note:**

A Logstore name cannot contain underscores (\_). You can use hyphens (-) instead.

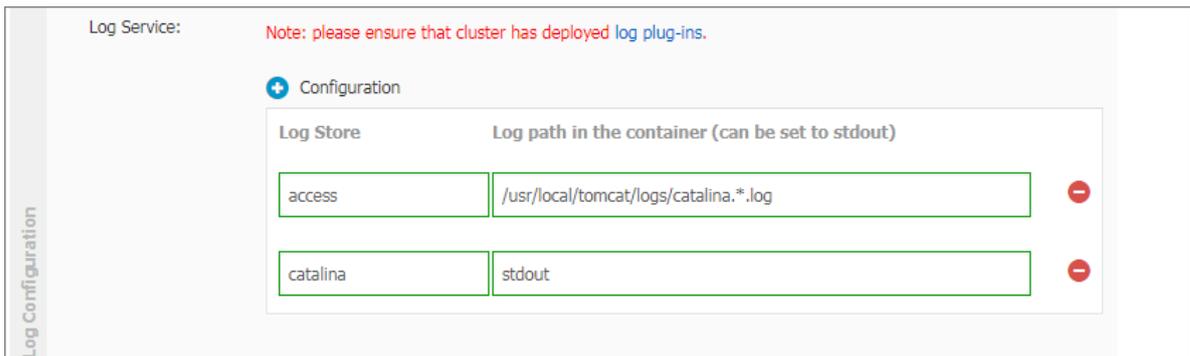
- **Log path:** Specify the path where logs to be collected reside. For example, use `/usr/local/tomcat/logs/catalina.*.log` to collect text logs of tomcat.



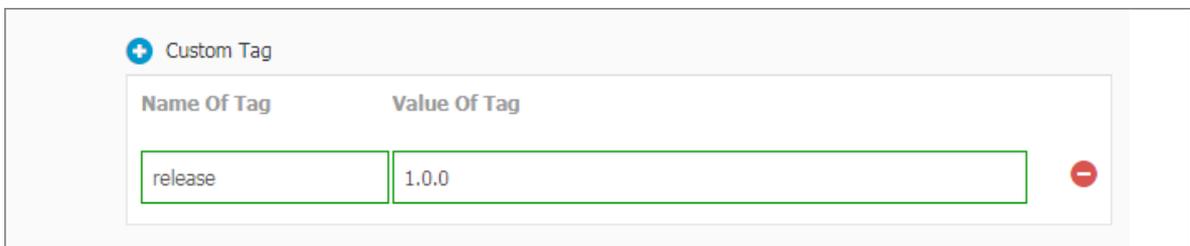
Note:

If you specify the log path as `stdout`, the container standard output and standard error output will be collected.

Each configuration is automatically created as a configuration for the corresponding Logstore. By default, the simple mode (by row) is used to collect logs. To use more collection modes, log on go to the Log Service console, and enter the corresponding project (prefixed with `k8s-log` by default) and Logstore to modify the configuration.



6. **Custom tag.** Click the + sign to create a new custom tag. Each custom tag is a key-value pair which will be added to collected logs. You can use a custom tag to mark container logs. For example, you can create a custom tag as a version number.



7. When you complete all the configurations of the container, click **Next** in the upper-right corner to perform further configurations. For more information, see [#unique\\_32](#).

Create an application by using a YAML template

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Applications > Deployments**. Then, click **Create by Template** in the upper-right corner.
3. The syntax of the YAML template is the same as the Kubernetes syntax. To specify the collection configuration for the container, you need to use `env` to add collection configuration and custom tag for the container, and create corresponding `volumeMounts` and `volumes`. The following is a simple pod example:

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  name : my - demo
spec :
  containers :
    - name : my - demo - app
      image : ' registry . cn - hangzhou . aliyuncs . com / log -
service / docker - log - test : latest '
      env :
        ##### Configure environmen t variables #####
        - name : aliyun_log s_log - stdout
          value : stdout
        - name : aliyun_log s_log - varlog
          value : / var / log /*. log
        - name : aliyun_log s_mytag1_t ags
          value : tag1 = v1
        #####
        ##### Configure vulume mount #####
        volumeMoun ts :
          - name : volumn - sls - mydemo
            mountPath : / var / log
        volumes :
          - name : volumn - sls - mydemo
            emptyDir : {}
        #####

```

- Configure three parts in order based on your needs.
- In the first part, use environment variables to create your collection configuration and custom tag. All environment variables related to configuration are prefixed with `aliyun_log s_`.
- Rules for creating the collection configuration are as follows:

```

- name : aliyun_log s_ { Logstore name }
  value : { log path }

```

In the example, create two collection configurations. The `aliyun_log s_log - stdout` env creates a configuration that contains a Logstore named log-

stdout and the log path of stdout. The standard output of the container is collected and stored to the Logstore named log-stdout.



Note:

A Logstore name cannot contain underscores (\_). You can use hyphens (-) instead.

- Rules for creating a custom tag are as follows:

```
- name : aliyun_log_s_{ a name without ' _ ' }_tags
  value : { Tag name }={ Tag value }
```

After a tag is configured, when logs of the container are collected, fields corresponding to the tag are automatically attached to Log Service.

- If you specify a non-stdout log path in your collection configuration, create corresponding volumeMounts in this part.

In the example, the `/var/log/*.log` log path is added to the collection configuration, therefore, the `/var/log` volumeMounts is added.

4. When you complete a YAML template, click DEPLOY to deliver the configurations in the template to the Kubernetes cluster to execute.

## Set environment variables to control log collection

The environment variables of containers support multiple advanced parameters, which that can be used to control the collection of logs. The following table details these parameters.

Parameter	Description	Example	Remarks
<code>aliyun_log_s_ { key }</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Required. This parameter is used to specify the name of a log collection configuration. The value of <code>{ key }</code> must start with a letter, and be followed by letters, numbers, and hyphens (-). It cannot contain underlines (_).</li> <li>If you do not specify a Logstore by using the optional parameter <code>aliyun_log_s_ { key } _logstore</code>, logs are automatically collected to the Logstore named <code>{ key }</code>.</li> <li>To collect the standard output of containers, set this parameter as <code>stdout</code>. To collect logs of a specific path, set this parameter as the path.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>- name : aliyun_log_s_catalina stdout</code></li> <li><code>- name : aliyun_log_s_access - log / var / log / nginx / access . log</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>By default, the simple collection mode is used to collect logs. If you want to parse collected logs, we recommend that you use the Log Service console to follow the procedure described in <a href="#">#unique_122</a>, <a href="#">#unique_123</a>, or <a href="#">#unique_87</a>.</li> <li>The value of <code>{ key }</code> must be unique within the target Kubernetes cluster.</li> </ul>
Issue: 20190916			321
<code>aliyun_log_s_ { key } tags</code>	Optional. This parameter is used	<code>- name : aliyun_log</code>	-

Set the `aliyun_log_s_{key}_logstore` parameter to implement this task. For example, to collect the stdout logs of two applications to a Logstore named `stdout - logstore`, use this parameter to set the environment variables of two applications.

Set the environment variables of Application 1 as follows:

```
##### set environment variables #####
- name : aliyun_log_s_app1 - stdout
  value : stdout
- name : aliyun_log_s_app1 - stdout_log_store
  value : stdout - logstore
```

Set the environment variables of Application 2 as follows:

```
##### set environment variables #####
- name : aliyun_log_s_app2 - stdout
  value : stdout
- name : aliyun_log_s_app2 - stdout_log_store
  value : stdout - logstore
```

Scenario 2: Collect the log data of each application to an exclusive project



Note:

This means that a project stores only the log data of one specific application.

To implement this task, follow these steps to configure each application:

1. In each project, create a machine group and customize an identifier for the machine group.



Note:

The identifier name is in the format of `k8s-group-{cluster-id}`.

2. For the environment variables of each application, set the following parameter:

`project`, `logstore`, and `machinegroup`.



Note:

The value of the `machinegroup` parameter is the name of the machine group that you create in step 1.

The following shows the example settings for environment variables of an application:

```
##### set environment variables #####
- name : aliyun_log_s_app1 - stdout
  value : stdout
```

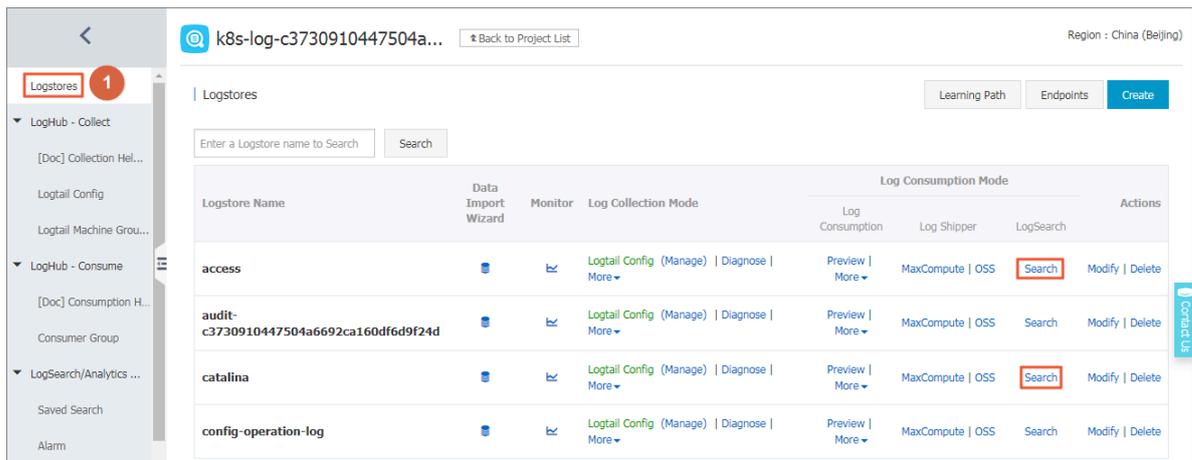
```

- name : aliyun_log_s_app1 - stdout_pro  ject
  value : app1 - project
- name : aliyun_log_s_app1 - stdout_log  store
  value : app1 - logstore
- name : aliyun_log_s_app1 - stdout_mac  hinegroup
  value : app1 - machine - group
    
```

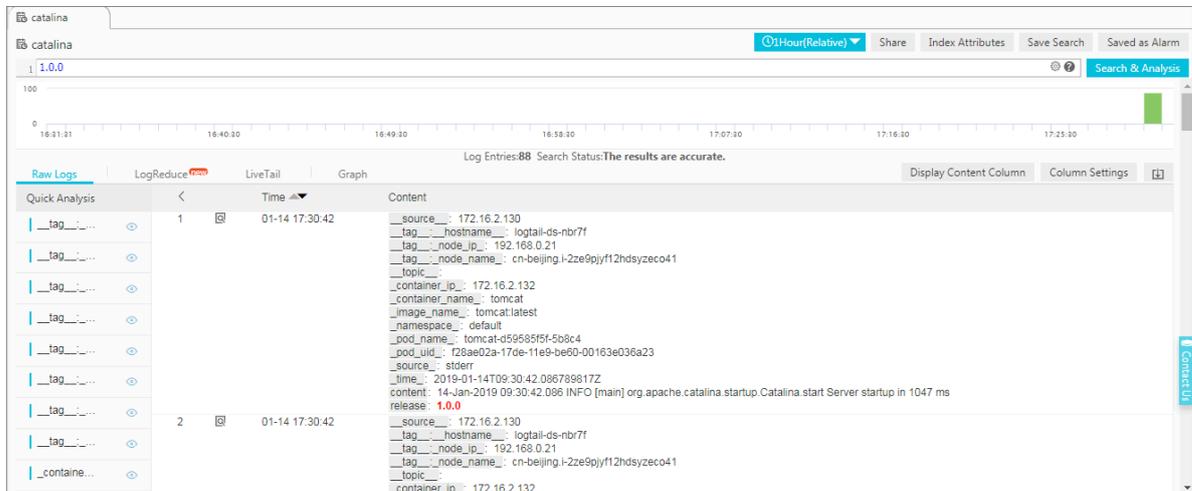
### View logs

In this example, view logs of the tomcat application created in the console. After you complete the application configuration, logs of the tomcat application are collected and stored to Log Service. You can view your logs as follows:

1. Log on to the [Log Service console](#).
2. Log on to the [Log Service console](#).
3. In the console, select the project (k8s-log-{Kubernetes cluster ID} by default) corresponding to the Kubernetes cluster.
4. In the Logstore list, locate the Logstore specified in your configuration and click **Search**.



5. In this example, on the log search page, you can view the standard output logs of the tomcat application and text logs in the container, and you can find your custom tag is attached to log fields.



### More information

1. By default, the system use the simple mode to collect your data, that is, to collect data by row without parsing. To perform more complex configurations, see the following Log Service documents and log on to the Log Service console to modify configurations.
  - [#unique\\_122](#)
  - [#unique\\_123](#)
2. In addition to configuring log collection through the console, you can also directly collect logs of the Kubernetes cluster through the CRD configuration. For more information, see [#unique\\_87](#).
3. For troubleshooting exceptions, see [#unique\\_124](#).

## 8.4 Collect logs of a Kubernetes cluster by using Log-Pilot, Elasticsearch, and Kibana

This topic describes how to collect logs of a Kubernetes cluster by using Log-Pilot, Elasticsearch, and Kibana.

Requirements for logs of distributed Kubernetes clusters always bother developers . This is mainly because of the characteristics of containers and the defects of log collection tools.

- **Characteristics of containers:**
  - **Many collection targets:** The characteristics of containers cause the number of collection targets is large, which requires to collect the container logs and container stdout. Currently, no good tool can collect file logs from containers dynamically. Different data sources have different collection softwares. However, no one-stop collection tool exists.
  - **Difficulty caused by auto scaling:** Kubernetes clusters are in the distributed mode. The auto scaling of services and the environment brings great difficulty to log collection. You cannot configure the log collection path in advance, the same as what you do in the traditional virtual machine (VM) environment. The dynamic collection and data integrity are great challenges.
- **Defects of current log collection tools:**
  - **Lack the capability to dynamically configure log collection:** The current log collection tools require you to manually configure the log collection method and path in advance. These tools cannot dynamically configure the log collection because they cannot automatically detect the lifecycle changes or dynamic migration of containers.
  - **Log collection problems such as logs are duplicate or lost:** Some of the current log collection tools collect logs by using the tail method. Logs may be lost in this way. For example, the application is writing logs when the log collection tool is being restarted. Logs written during this period may be lost. Generally, the conservative solution is to collect logs of 1 MB or 2 MB previous to the current log by default. However, this may cause the duplicate log collection.
  - **Log sources without clear marks:** An application may have multiple containers that output the same application logs. After all the application logs are collected to a unified log storage backend, you cannot know a log is generated on which application container of which node when querying logs.

This document introduces Log-Pilot, a tool to collect Docker logs, and uses the tool together with Elasticsearch and Kibana to provide a one-stop solution to log collection problems in the Kubernetes environment.

## Introduction on Log-Pilot

Log-Pilot is an intelligent tool used to collect container logs, which not only collects container logs and outputs these logs to multiple types of log storage backends

efficiently and conveniently, but also dynamically discovers and collects log files from containers.

Log-Pilot uses declarative configuration to manage container events strongly and obtain the stdout and file logs of containers, which solves the problem of auto scaling. Besides, Log-Pilot has the functions of automatic discovery, maintenance of checkpoint and handle, and automatic tagging for log data, which effectively deals with the problems such as dynamic configuration, duplicate logs, lost logs, and log source marking.

[Log-Pilot](#) is an open-source project in GitHub.

### Declarative configuration for container logs

Log-Pilot supports managing container events, can dynamically listen to the event changes of containers, parse the changes according to the container labels, generate the configuration file of log collection, and then provide the file to collection plug-in to collect logs.

For Kubernetes clusters, Log-Pilot can dynamically generate the configuration file of log collection according to the environment variable `aliyun_log_s_ $name = $path`. This environment variable contains the following two variables:

- One variable is `$name`, a custom string which indicates different meanings in different scenarios. In this scenario, `$name` indicates index when collecting logs to Elasticsearch.
- The other is `$path` which supports two input modes, stdout and paths of log files within containers, respectively corresponding to the standard output of logs and log files within containers.
  - Stdout indicates to collect standard output logs from containers. In this example, to collect Tomcat container logs, configure the label `aliyun . logs . catalina = stdout` to collect standard output logs of Tomcat.
  - The path of a log file within a container also supports wildcards. To collect logs within the Tomcat container, configure the environment variable `aliyun_log_s_access = /usr / local / tomcat / logs /* . log`. To not use the keyword `aliyun`, you can use the environment variable `PILOT_LOG_PREFIX`, which is also provided by Log-Pilot, to specify the prefix of your declarative log configuration. For example, `PILOT_LOG_ PREFIX : " aliyun , custom "`.

Besides, Log-Pilot supports multiple log parsing formats, including none, JSON, CSV, Nginx, apache2, and regexp. You can use the `aliyun_log_s_ $ name_format =< format >` label to tell Log-Pilot to use what format to parse logs when collecting logs.

Log-Pilot also supports custom tags. If you configure `aliyun_log_s_ $ name_tags = " K1 = V1 , K2 = V2 "` in the environment variable, K1=V1 and K2=V2 are collected to log output of the container during the log collection. Custom tags help you tag the log generation environment for convenient statistics, routing, and filter of logs.

### Log collection mode

In this document, deploy a Log-Pilot on each machine and collect all the Docker application logs from the machines.

Compared with deploying a logging container on each pod, the most obvious advantage of this solution is less occupied resources. The larger the cluster scale is, the more obvious the advantage is. This solution is also recommended in the community.

### Prerequisites

- A Kubernetes cluster is created with ACK. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- An Elasticsearch instance is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_126](#).
- The Elasticsearch cluster can be accessed through the intranet or Internet.

### Procedure overview

- Step 1: Enable the Auto Indexing feature for the target Elasticsearch instance
- Step 2: Deploy the Log-Pilot components on your Kubernetes cluster
- Step 3: Collect logs of the target application

### Procedure

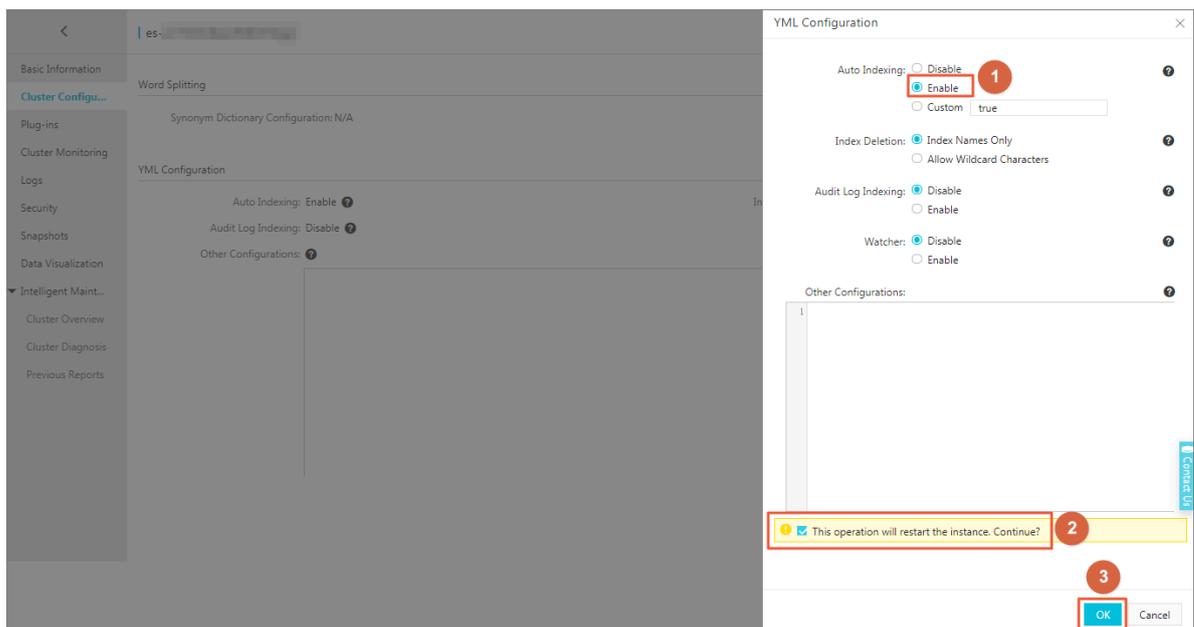
#### Step 1: Enable the Auto Indexing feature for the target Elasticsearch instance



#### Note:

Alibaba Cloud Elasticsearch by default disables the Auto Indexing feature. However, to automatically collect container logs, Log-Pilot automatically creates indexes according to the configurations of log collection. Therefore, you must enable the Auto Indexing feature.

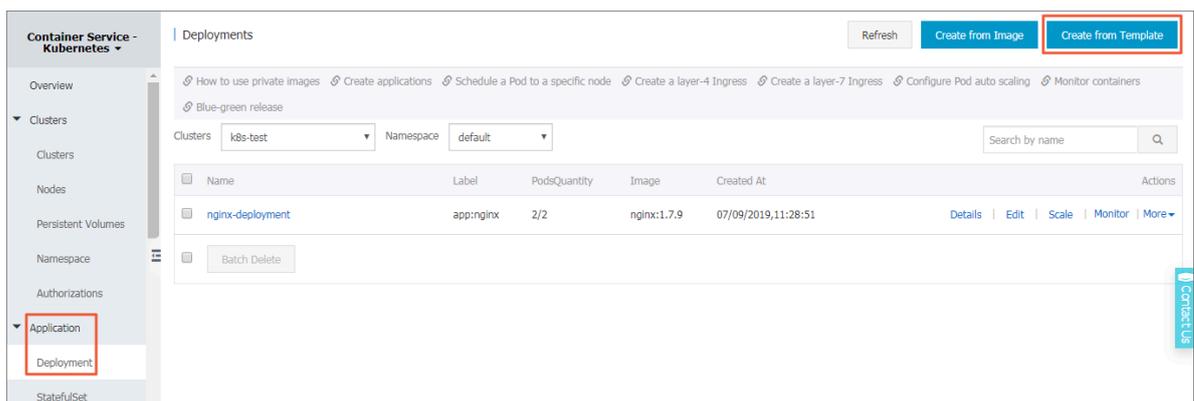
1. Log on to the Elasticsearch console.
2. Find the target Elasticsearch instance, and then, in the Actions column, click **Manage**.
3. In the left-side navigation pane, click **Cluster Configuration**. Then, on the right side of the page, click **Modify Configuration**.
4. On the right of **Auto Indexing**, select the **Enable** radio button. Then, on the bottom of the page, select the check box **This operation will restart the instance. Continue?**, and click **OK**.



## Step 2: Deploy the Log-Pilot components on your Kubernetes cluster

To save resources for cluster nodes, deploy the Log-Pilot components as a DaemonSet object on each node of the target Kubernetes cluster.

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under **Container Service-Kubernetes**, choose **Application > Deployment**.



3. In the upper-right corner, click **Create from Template**.
4. Select the target cluster where you want to deploy the Log-Pilot component, and select the kube-system namespace.
5. Select **Custom** from the Sample Template drop-down list, copy the follow code into the Template area, and click **Create**.

Clusters:

Namespace:

Sample Template:

Template:

```

1 apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
2 kind: DaemonSet
3 metadata:
4   name: log-pilot
5   labels:
6     app: log-pilot
7 # The target namespace where you want to deploy log-pilot.
8 namespace: kube-system
9 spec:
10  updateStrategy:
11    type: RollingUpdate
12  template:
13    metadata:
14      labels:
15        app: log-pilot
16    annotations:
17      scheduler.alpha.kubernetes.io/critical-pod: ''
18    spec:
19      # Deploy log-pilot on the Master nodes.
20      tolerations:
21        - key: node-role.kubernetes.io/master
22          effect: NoSchedule
23      containers:
24        - name: log-pilot
25          # For information about the log-pilot version, see https://github.com/AliyunContainerService/log-pilot/releases.
26          image: registry.cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/acs/log-pilot:0.9.6-filebeat
27      resources:
28        limits:
29          memory: 500Mi
30          requests:
31            cpu: 200m

```

[Use Existing Template](#)

```

apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : DaemonSet
metadata :
name : log - pilot
labels :
  app : log - pilot
# The target namespace where you want to deploy log
- pilot .
namespace : kube - system
spec :
updateStra tegy :
type : RollingUpd ate
template :
metadata :
labels :
  app : log - pilot
annotation s :
scheduler . alpha . kubernetes . io / critical - pod : ''
spec :
# Deploy log - plilot on the Master nodes .
toleration s :
- key : node - role . kubernetes . io / master
effect : NoSchedule
containers :
- name : log - pilot

```

```

# For information about the log-pilot version, see
https://github.com/AliyunContainerService/log-pilot/releases
image: registry.cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/acs/log-pilot:0.9.6-filebeat
resources:
  limits:
    memory: 500Mi
  requests:
    cpu: 200m
    memory: 200Mi
  env:
    - name: "NODE_NAME"
      valueFrom:
        fieldRef:
          fieldPath: spec.nodeName
    - name: "LOGGING_OUTPUT"
      value: "elasticsearch"
# Make sure that your Kubernetes cluster can access
the target Elasticsearch instance.
    - name: "ELASTICSEARCH_HOSTS"
      value: "{es_endpoint}:{es_port}"
# Set the permissions to access the target
Elasticsearch instance.
    - name: "ELASTICSEARCH_USER"
      value: "{es_username}"
    - name: "ELASTICSEARCH_PASSWORD"
      value: "{es_password}"
  volumeMounts:
    - name: sock
      mountPath: /var/run/docker.sock
    - name: root
      mountPath: /host
      readOnly: true
    - name: varlib
      mountPath: /var/lib/filebeat
    - name: varlog
      mountPath: /var/log/filebeat
    - name: localtime
      mountPath: /etc/localtime
      readOnly: true
  livenessProbe:
    failureThreshold: 3
  exec:
    command:
    - /pilot/healthz
  initialDelaySeconds: 10
  periodSeconds: 10
  successThreshold: 1
  timeoutSeconds: 2
  securityContext:
    capabilities:
      add:
    - SYS_ADMIN
  terminationGracePeriodSeconds: 30
  volumes:
    - name: sock
      hostPath:
        path: /var/run/docker.sock
    - name: root
      hostPath:
        path: /
    - name: varlib
      hostPath:

```

```

path : / var / lib / filebeat
type : Directory0 rCreate
- name : varlog
  hostPath :
    path : / var / log / filebeat
    type : Directory0 rCreate
- name : localtime
  hostPath :
    path : / etc / localtime

```

- `{ es_endpoint }`: indicates the address used to access the target Elasticsearch instance.



#### Note:

The address of the target Elasticsearch is shown on the Basic Information page of the Elasticsearch console.

- If your Kubernetes cluster and the target Elasticsearch instance are deployed within the same VPC, set this parameter as the Internal Network Address of the Elasticsearch instance.
- If your Kubernetes cluster and the target Elasticsearch instance are deployed in different VPCs, set this parameter as the Public Network Address of the Elasticsearch instance.
- `{ es_port }`: indicates the port used to access the target Elasticsearch instance. We recommend that you set it as 9200.
- `{ es_username }`: indicates the user name used to access the target Elasticsearch instance. The default is elastic.
- `{ es_password }`: indicates the password used to access the target Elasticsearch instance. It is the password that you set when you created the Elasticsearch instance.

6. Click Kubernetes Dashboard to view the progress.

7. In the left-side navigation pane, select kube-system from the Namespace drop-down list. Then, choose Workloads > Pods to verify that the Log-Pilot components are in the Running status.



#### Note:

You can also use [kubectl](#) to access your Kubernetes cluster, and then run the following commands to view the status of the Log-Pilot components:

```

~ kubectl apply -f log-pilot.yml
  daemonset.extensions "log-pilot" created
~ kubectl -n kube-system get pod | grep log-pilot

```

```

log - pilot - 458nj    1 / 1    Running    0    23s
log - pilot - 8ld4n    1 / 1    Running    0    23s
log - pilot - b4kqv    1 / 1    Running    0    23s
log - pilot - gd588    1 / 1    Running    0    23s
log - pilot - k2ttk    1 / 1    Running    0    23s

```

### Step 3: Collect logs of the target application

A Tomcat application is deployed in the Kubernetes cluster as the example to test whether logs of the application can be collected, indexed, and displayed.



#### Note:

In this example, the application type of the Tomcat application is set as Deployment. The configurations are also applicable to the application type of StatefulSet.

1. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Application > Deployment**.
2. In the upper-right corner, click **Create from Template**.
3. Select the same cluster as that you selected to deploy the Log-Pilot components, and select the target namespace.
4. Select **Custom** from the **Sample Template** drop-down list, copy the follow code into the **Template** area, and click **Create**.

```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
name : tomcat
spec :
containers :
- name : tomcat
image : " tomcat : 7 . 0 "
env :
# 1 . stdout is a fixed keyword that indicates to
collect standard output logs .
# 2 . Collect the standard output logs to the
catalina index of the target Elasticsea rch instance .
- name : aliyun_log s_catalina
value : " stdout "
# 1 . Collect container logs what are in file format
. Wildcard characters are supported .
# 2 . Collect the logs to the access index of the
target Elasticsea rch instance .
- name : aliyun_log s_access
value : "/ usr / local / tomcat / logs / catalina .*. log "
# To set the path of the container logs that are
in the file format , set the emptyDir parameter .
volumeMoun ts :
- name : tomcat - log
mountPath : / usr / local / tomcat / logs
volumes :
- name : tomcat - log

```

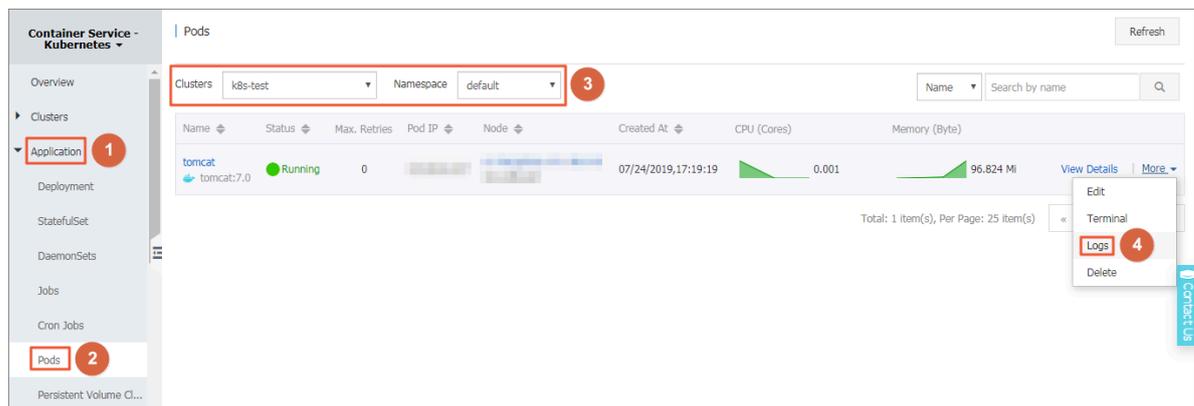
```
emptyDir : {}
```

By customizing environment variables in a pod, the preceding orchestration file dynamically generates the configuration file to collect logs. The following settings of environment variables:

- `aliyun_log_s_catalina = stdout` indicates to collect the stdout logs of the target containers.
- `aliyun_log_s_access = /usr/local/tomcat/logs/catalina.*.log` indicates to collect the logs (in the file format) that meet the following requirements:
  - The logs are generated in the directory of `/usr/local/tomcat/logs/`.
  - The log names match the form of `catalina.*.log`.

In this example, the `$name` parameter in the environment variables indicates the catalina access indexes.

5. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Application > Pods**.
6. Select the target cluster and namespace where you deployed the Tomcat application. Then, in the Action column, choose **More > Logs**.



The following logs displayed in the Logs tab of the Pods - tomcat page indicates that the Tomcat application is deployed in the target Kubernetes cluster.

7. On the Elasticsearch console, click Kibana console to log on to Kibana.



## 8.5 Configure Log4jAppender for Kubernetes and Log Service

Log4j is an open-source project of Apache, which consists of three important components: log level, log output destination, and log output format. By configuring Log4jAppender, you can set the log output destination to console, file, GUI component, socket server, NT event recorder, or UNIX Syslog daemon.

This document introduces how to configure a YAML file to output Alibaba Cloud Container Service Kubernetes cluster logs to Alibaba Cloud Log Service, without modifying the application codes. In this document, deploy a sample API application in the Kubernetes cluster for demonstration.

### Prerequisites

- You have activated Container Service and created a Kubernetes cluster.  
In this example, create a Kubernetes cluster in the region of China East 1 (Hangzhou).
- Enable AccessKey or Resource Access Management (RAM). Make sure you have sufficient access permissions. Use the AccessKey in this example.

### Step 1 Configure Log4jAppender in Alibaba Cloud Log Service

1. Log on to the [Log Service console](#).
2. On the Project List page, click Create Project in the upper-right corner. Complete the configurations and then click Confirm to create the project.

In this example, create a project named k8s-log4j and select the same region (China East 1 (Hangzhou)) as the Kubernetes cluster.



#### Note:

Generally, create a Log Service project in the same region as the Kubernetes cluster. When the Kubernetes cluster and Log Service project are in the same region, log data is transmitted by using the intranet, which saves the Internet bandwidth cost and time of data transmission because of different regions, and implements the best practice of real-time collection and quick query.

3. After being created, the project k8s-log4j is displayed on the Project List page. Click the project name.

4. The Logstore List page appears. Click Create in the upper-right corner.
5. Complete the configurations and then click Confirm.  
In this example, create a Logstore named k8s-logstore.
6. Then, a dialog box asking you to use the data import wizard appears.
7. Click Data Import Wizard. In the Select Data Source step, select log4jAppender under Other Sources and then complete the configurations as instructed on the page.  
Use the default configurations in this example. Configure the settings according to the specific scenarios of log data.

## Step 2 Configure Log4jAppender in the Kubernetes cluster

In this example, use the sample YAML files [demo-deployment](#) and [demo-service](#) for demonstration.

1. Connect to your Kubernetes cluster.

For more information, see [#unique\\_50](#) or [#unique\\_26](#).

2. Obtain the `demo - deployment . yaml` file and configure the environment variable `JAVA_OPTS` to collect logs from the Kubernetes cluster.

The sample orchestration of the `demo - deployment . yaml` file is as follows:

```
apiVersion : apps / v1beta2
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : log4j - appender - demo - spring - boot
  labels :
    app : log4j - appender
spec :
  replicas : 1
  selector :
    matchLabels :
      app : log4j - appender
  template :
    metadata :
      labels :
        app : log4j - appender
    spec :
      containers :
        - name : log4j - appender - demo - spring - boot
```

```

    image : registry . cn - hangzhou . aliyuncs . com /
jaegertracing / log4j - appender - demo - spring - boot : 0 . 0 .
2
    env :
      - name : JAVA_OPTS ## Note
        value : "- Dproject ={ your_project } - Dlogstore ={
your_logstore } - Dendpoint ={ your_endpoint } - Daccess_key_id
={ your_access_key_id } - Daccess_key_secret ={ your_access_key_secret }"
      ports :
        - containerPort : 8080

```

#### Wherein:

- `- Dproject` : The name of the used Alibaba Cloud Log Service project. In this example, it is `k8s-log4j`.
- `- Dlogstore` : The name of the used Alibaba Cloud Log Service Logstore. In this example, it is `k8s-logstore`.
- `- Dendpoint` : The service endpoint of Log Service. You must configure your service endpoint according to the region where the Log Service project resides. For more information, see [Service endpoint](#). In this example, it is `cn-hangzhou.log.aliyuncs.com`.
- `- Daccess_key_id` : Your AccessKey ID.
- `- Daccess_key_secret` : Your AccessKey Secret.

#### 3. Run the following command in the command line to create the deployment:

```
kubectl create -f demo - deployment . yml
```

#### 4. Obtain the `demo - service . yml` file and run the following command to create the service.

No need to modify the configurations in the `demo - service . yml` file.

```
kubectl create -f demo - service . yml
```

### Step 3 Test to generate Kubernetes cluster logs

You can run the `kubectl get` command to view the deployment status of the resource object. Wait until the deployment and the service are successfully deployed. Then, run the `kubectl get svc` command to view the external access IP of the service, that is, the EXTERNAL-IP.

```

$ kubectl get svc
NAME      TYPE      CLUSTER - IP      EXTERNAL - IP      PORT ( S )      AGE

```

```
log4j - appender - demo - spring - boot - svc LoadBalancer 172
. 21 . XX . XX 120 . 55 . XXX . XXX 8080 : 30398 / TCP 1h
```

In this example, test to generate Kubernetes cluster logs by running the `login` command, wherein, `K8S_SERVICE_IP` is the `EXTERNAL_IP`.



**Note:**

See [GitHub log4j-appender-demo](#) to view the complete collection of APIs.

```
curl http ://${ K8S_SERVICE_IP }: 8080 / login ? name = bruce
```

#### Step 4 View logs in Alibaba Cloud Log Service

Log on to the [Log Service console](#).

Click the project name and click Search at the right of the Logstore k8s-logstore to view the output logs of the Kubernetes cluster.

The output content of the log corresponds to the preceding command. This example demonstrates how to output the logs of the sample application to Alibaba Cloud Log Service. By completing the preceding steps, you can configure Log4JAppender in Alibaba Cloud and implement advanced functions such as collecting logs in real time, filtering data, and querying logs by using Alibaba Cloud Log Service.

## 9 Monitoring management

---

### 9.1 Deploy the Prometheus monitoring system

Prometheus is an open source monitoring tool for cloud native applications. This topic describes how to deploy the Prometheus monitoring system by using Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes.

#### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have connected to the Master node so that you can view node labels and other information. For more information, see [#unique\\_26](#).

#### Context

A monitoring system monitors the following two types of objects:

- Resource, namely, the resource usage of a node or application. The monitoring system of Container Service for Kubernetes monitors node resource usage, cluster resource usage, and pod resource usage.
- Application, namely, internal metrics of an application. For example, The monitoring system collects statistics regarding the number of online users that use an application in real time, and performs service-level monitoring and alarming for the application by exposing ports.

The following are the objects monitored in a Kubernetes cluster:

- System components, which are built-in components of the Kubernetes cluster, such as apiserver, controller-manager, and etcd.
- Static resource entities, which include node resource status and kernel events.
- Dynamic resource entities, which are abstract workload entities of Kubernetes, such as deployment, DaemonSet, and pods.
- Customized application objects, which includes the data and metrics that require customization within an application.

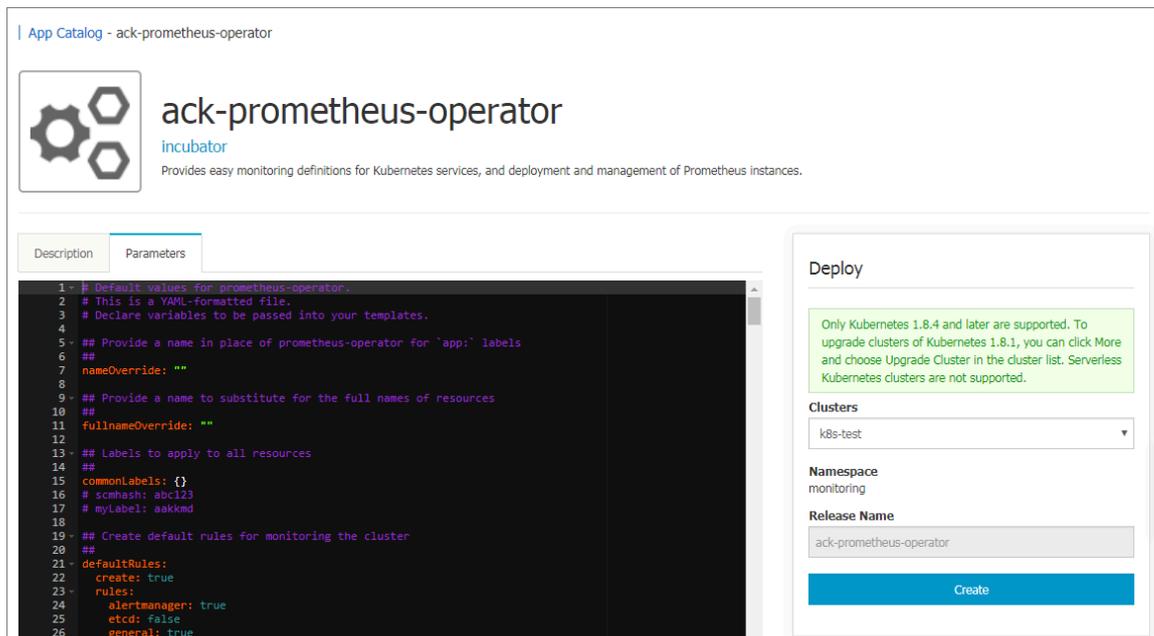
To monitor system components and static resource entities, you need to specify monitoring methods for them in the configuration file.

To monitor dynamic resource entities, we recommend that you deploy the Prometheus monitoring system.

## Procedure

### 1. Deploy Prometheus monitoring system

- a) Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
- b) In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Marketplace > App Catalog. Then, click ack-prometheus-operator.
- c) In the Deploy area, select the target cluster. Then, click Create.



### Verify the result

- A. Run the following command to map the Prometheus that is deployed to the cluster to the local port 9090.

```
kubectl port -f svc / ack - prometheus - operator -  
prometheus 9090 : 9090 - n monitoring
```

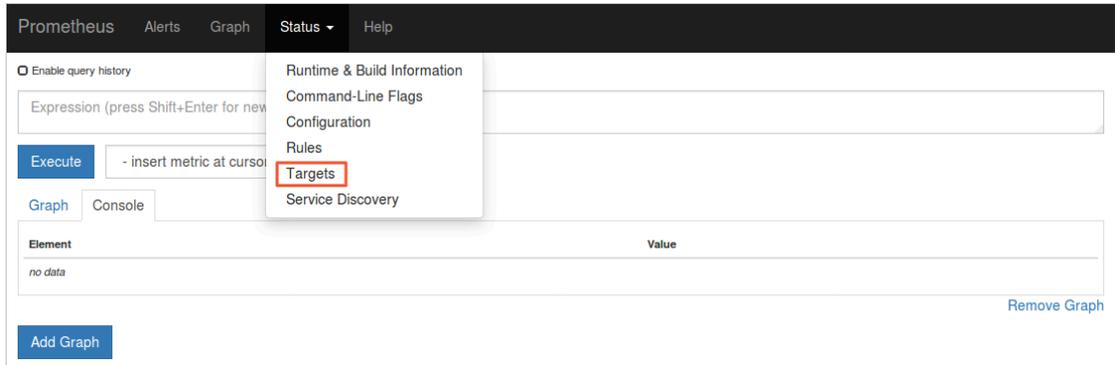
- B. To view Prometheus, access `localhost : 9090` in a browser.



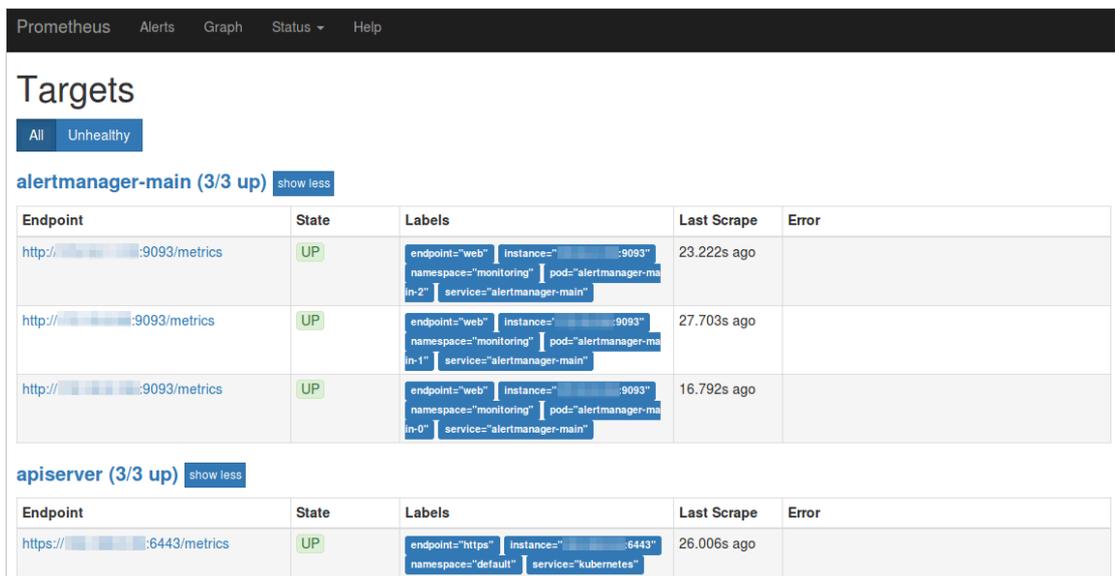
Note:

**By default, Prometheus cannot be accessed through the Internet. You must use your local proxy to access it.**

**C. Select Targets under the Status menu to view all collection tasks.**



**If the status of all tasks is UP, all collection tasks are running properly.**



**2. View and display data aggregation.**

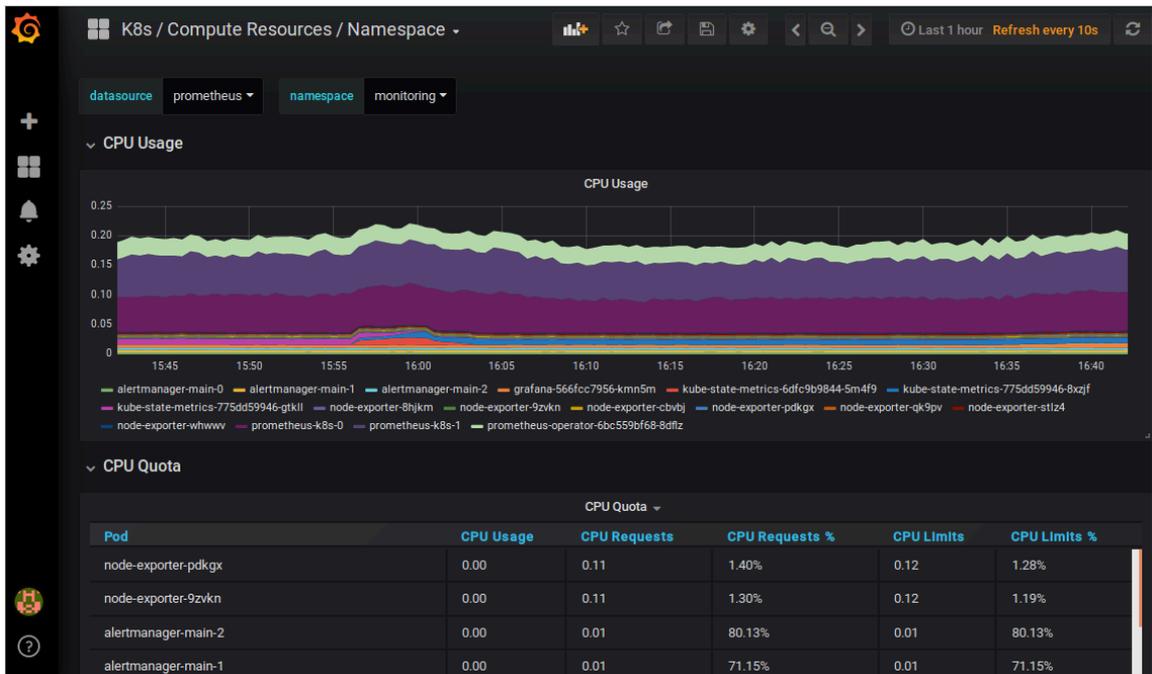
- a) Run the following command to may the Grafana that is deployed to the cluster to the local port 3000.

```
kubectl -n monitoring port -forward svc / ack -
prometheus - operator - grafana 3000 : 80
```

- b) Access localhost : 3000 in your browser and then select a dashboard to view data aggregation.

 **Note:**

The default user name and password are both admin.

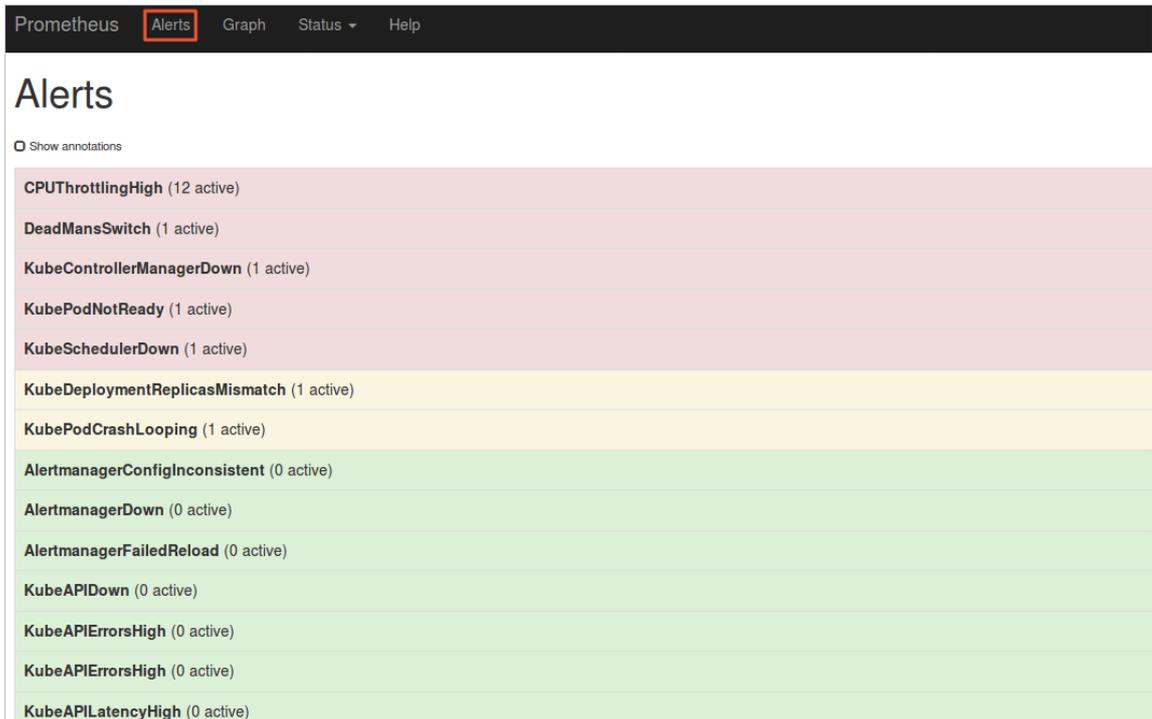


### 3. View alerting rules and set alert silencing.

- View alerting rules

Access `localhost : 9090` in your browser and click the Alerts menu to view the current alerting rules.

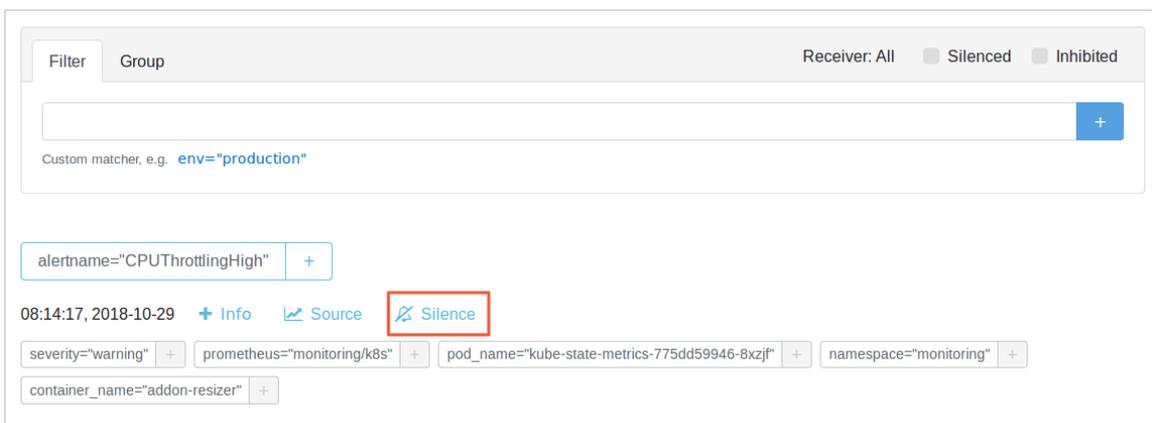
- Red: indicates that an alert is triggered.
- Green: indicates the normal status.



- Set alert silencing

Run the following command, open `localhost : 9093` in your browser, and select Silenced to set alert silencing:

```
kubectl --namespace monitoring port - forward svc /
alertmanag er - operated 9093
```



# 10 Security management

---

## 10.1 Security

### Authorization

Kubernetes clusters support authorizing RAM users to perform operations on clusters.

For more information, see [#unique\\_9](#).

### Full-link TLS certificates

The following communication links in Container Service Kubernetes clusters are verified by TLS certificates to prevent the communication from being eavesdropped or tampered:

- `kubelet` on worker nodes actively communicates with `apiserver` on master nodes
- `apiserver` on master nodes actively communicates with `kubelet` on worker nodes

During initialization, the master node uses SSH tunnels to connect to the SSH service of other nodes (port 22) for initialization.

### Native secret & RBAC support

Kubernetes secrets are used to store sensitive information such as passwords, OAuth tokens, and SSH keys. Using plain text to write sensitive information to a pod YAML file or a Docker image may leak the information, while using secrets avoids such security risks effectively.

For more information, see [Secret](#).

Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) uses the Kubernetes built-in API group to drive authorization and authentication, which allows you to use APIs to manage pods that correspond to different roles, and the access permissions of roles.

For more information, see [Using RBAC authorization](#).

## Network policy

In a Kubernetes cluster, pods on different nodes can communicate with each other by default. In some scenarios, to reduce risks, the network intercommunication among different business services is not allowed and you must introduce the network policy. In Kubernetes clusters, you can use the Canal network driver to implement the support for network policy.

## Image security scan

Kubernetes clusters can use Container Registry to manage images, which allows you to perform image security scan.

Image security scan identifies the security risks in images quickly and reduces the possibility of applications running on your Kubernetes cluster being attacked.

For more information, see [Image security scan](#).

## Security group and Internet access

By default, each newly created Kubernetes cluster is assigned a new security group with the minimal security risk. This security group only allows ICMP for the Internet inbound.

By default, you cannot use Internet SSH to access your clusters. To use Internet SSH to connect to the cluster nodes, see [#unique\\_50](#).

The cluster nodes access the Internet by using the NAT Gateway, which further reduces the security risks.

## 10.2 Kube-apiserver audit logs

In a Kubernetes cluster, apiserver audit logs are important for cluster Operation & Maintenance (O&M) because they record daily operations of different users. This topic describes how to configure the apiserver audit logs of an Alibaba Cloud Kubernetes cluster, and how to collect and analyze audit logs through Log Service, and how to customize audit log alarm rules.

### Configurations of apiserver audit logs

The apiserver audit function is enabled by default when you create a Kubernetes cluster. Relevant parameters and description are as follows:

**Note:**

Log on to the Master node, and the directory of the apiserver configuration files is `/etc / kubernetes / manifests / kube - apiserver . yaml` .

Configuration	Description
<code>audit-log-maxbackup</code>	The maximum fragment of audit logs stores 10 log files.
<code>audit-log-maxsize</code>	The maximum size of a single audit log is 100 MB.
<code>audit-log-path</code>	The audit log output path is <code>/ var / log / kubernetes / kubernetes . audit</code> .
<code>audit-log-maxage</code>	The longest storage period of audit logs is seven days.
<code>audit-policy-file</code>	Configuration policy file of audit logs. The directory is <code>/ etc / kubernetes / audit - policy . yml</code> .

Log on to the Master node machine. The directory of the audit log configuration policy file is `/ etc / kubernetes / audit - policy . yml` . The content of the file is as follows:

```
apiVersion : audit . k8s . io / v1beta1 # This is required .
kind : Policy
# We recommend that you do not generate audit events
# for all requests in RequestReceived stage .
omitStages :
- " RequestReceived "
rules :
# The following requests are manually identified as
high - volume and low - risk .
# Therefore , we recommend that you drop them .
- level : None
  users : [ " system : kube - proxy " ]
  verbs : [ " watch " ]
  resources :
  - group : "" # core
    resources : [ " endpoints " , " services " ]
- level : None
  users : [ " system : unsecured " ]
  namespaces : [ " kube - system " ]
  verbs : [ " get " ]
  resources :
  - group : "" # core
    resources : [ " configmaps " ]
- level : None
  users : [ " kubelet " ] # legacy kubelet identity
  verbs : [ " get " ]
```

```

resources :
  - group : "" # core
    resources : [" nodes "]
- level : None
  userGroups : [" system : nodes "]
  verbs : [" get "]
  resources :
    - group : "" # core
      resources : [" nodes "]
- level : None
  users :
    - system : kube - controller - manager
    - system : kube - scheduler
    - system : serviceaccount : kube - system : endpoint -
controller
  verbs : [" get ", " update "]
  namespaces : [" kube - system "]
  resources :
    - group : "" # core
      resources : [" endpoints "]
- level : None
  users : [" system : apiserver "]
  verbs : [" get "]
  resources :
    - group : "" # core
      resources : [" namespaces "]
# We recommend that you do not log these read -
only URLs .
- level : None
  nonResourceURLs :
    - / healthz *
    - / version
    - / swagger *
# We recommend that you do not log events requests
.
- level : None
  resources :
    - group : "" # core
      resources : [" events "]
# Secrets , ConfigMaps , and TokenReviews can contain
sensitive and binary data .
# Therefore , they are logged only at the Metadata
level .
- level : Metadata
  resources :
    - group : "" # core
      resources : [" secrets ", " configmaps "]
    - group : authentication.k8s.io
      resources : [" tokenreviews "]
# Get responses can be large ; skip them .
- level : Request
  verbs : [" get ", " list ", " watch "]
  resources :
    - group : "" # core
    - group : " admissionregistration.k8s.io "
    - group : " apps "
    - group : " authentication.k8s.io "
    - group : " authorization.k8s.io "
    - group : " autoscaling "
    - group : " batch "
    - group : " certificates.k8s.io "
    - group : " extensions "
    - group : " networking.k8s.io "
    - group : " policy "

```

```

- group : " rbac . authorizat ion . k8s . io "
- group : " settings . k8s . io "
- group : " storage . k8s . io "
# Default level for known APIs .
- level : RequestRes ponse
resources :
- group : "" # core
- group : " admissionr egistratio n . k8s . io "
- group : " apps "
- group : " authentica tion . k8s . io "
- group : " authorizat ion . k8s . io "
- group : " autoscalin g "
- group : " batch "
- group : " certificat es . k8s . io "
- group : " extensions "
- group : " networking . k8s . io "
- group : " policy "
- group : " rbac . authorizat ion . k8s . io "
- group : " settings . k8s . io "
- group : " storage . k8s . io "
# Default level for all other requests .
- level : Metadata

```



#### Note:

- Logs are not recorded immediately after requests are received. Log recording starts only after the response body header is sent.
- The following requests or operations are not audited: redundant kube-proxy watch requests, GET requests from kubelet and system:nodes for nodes, operations performed on endpoints by kube components in the kube-system, and GET requests from the apiserver for namespaces.
- Read-only urls such as `/ healthz *`, `/ version *`, and `/ swagger *` are not audited.
- Logs of interfaces of secrets, configmaps, and tokenreviews are set to the metadata level because they might contain sensitive information or binary files . For logs of this level, only the user, timestamp, request resources, and request actions of the request event are audited. The request body and the response body are not audited.
- For sensitive interfaces such as authentication, rbac, certificates, autoscaling, and storage, the corresponding request bodies and response bodies are audited according to the read and write requests.

#### View audit log reports

A Kubernetes cluster that runs on Alibaba Cloud Container Service has three audit log reports that provide the following information:

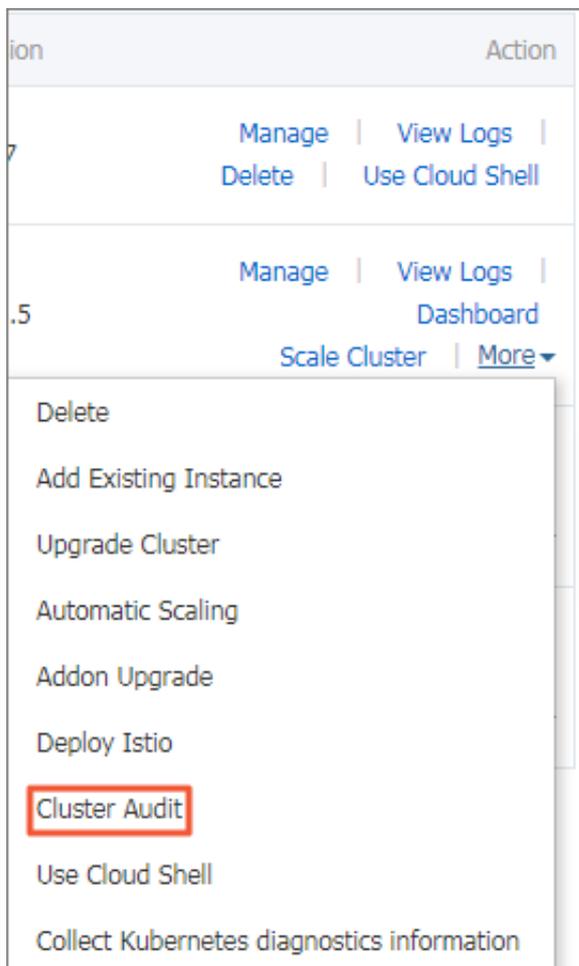
- Operations performed by all users and system components on the cluster
- The source IP address of each operation, the area to which a source IP addresses belongs, and the source IP address distribution
- Detailed operation charts of all resources
- Operation charts of each sub-account
- Charts of important operations such as logging on to a container, accessing a secret, and removing resources

**Note:**

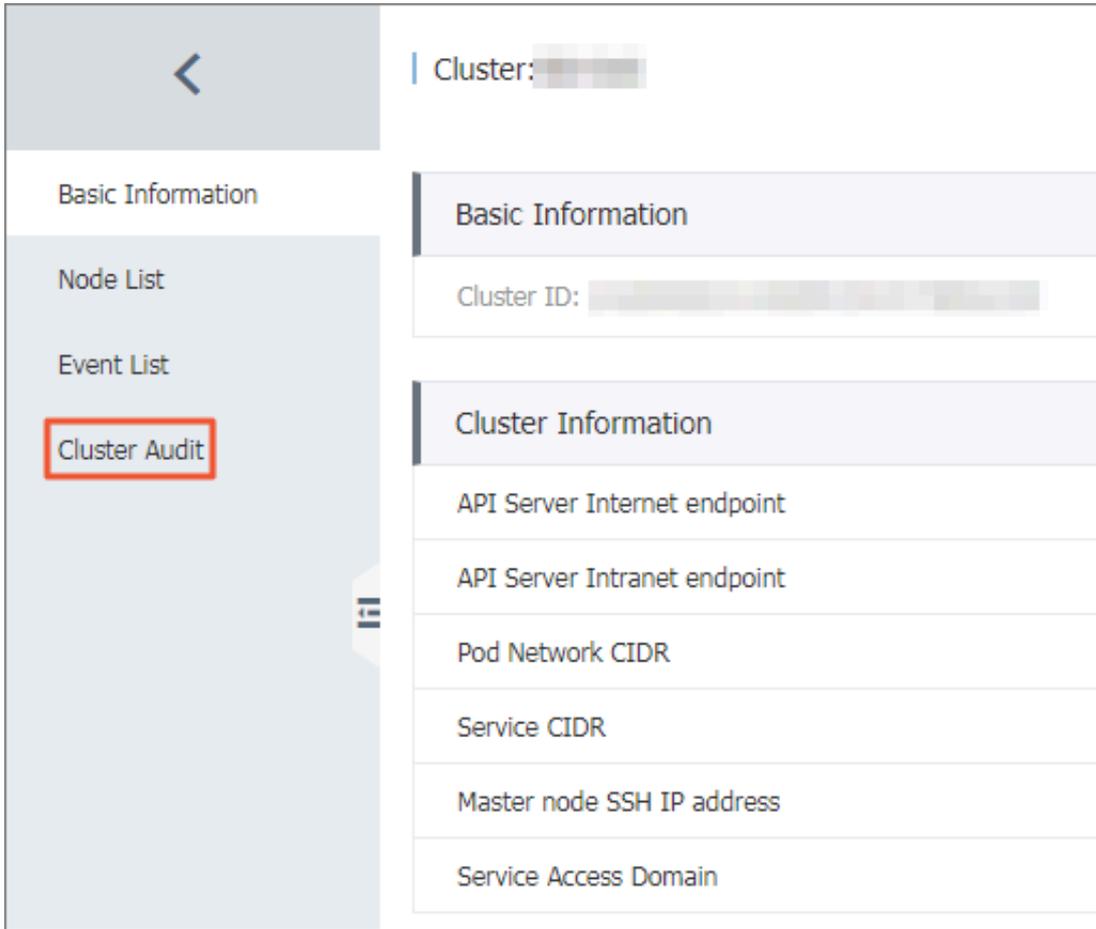
- For Kubernetes clusters created after January 13, 2019, if you active Log Service for the clusters, the system automatically enables audit log report functions. If audit log report functions are disabled for a Kubernetes cluster, see [Manually enable audit log report functions](#).
- We recommend that you do not modify audit log reports. If you want to customize audit log reports, you can create new reports in the [Log Service console](#).

You can access audit log reports by using either of the following two methods:

- Log on to the [Container Service console](#). In the action column of the target cluster, choose **More > Cluster Audit**.



- Log on to the [Container Service console](#). Click the target cluster name, and then click Cluster Audit in the left-side navigation pane.

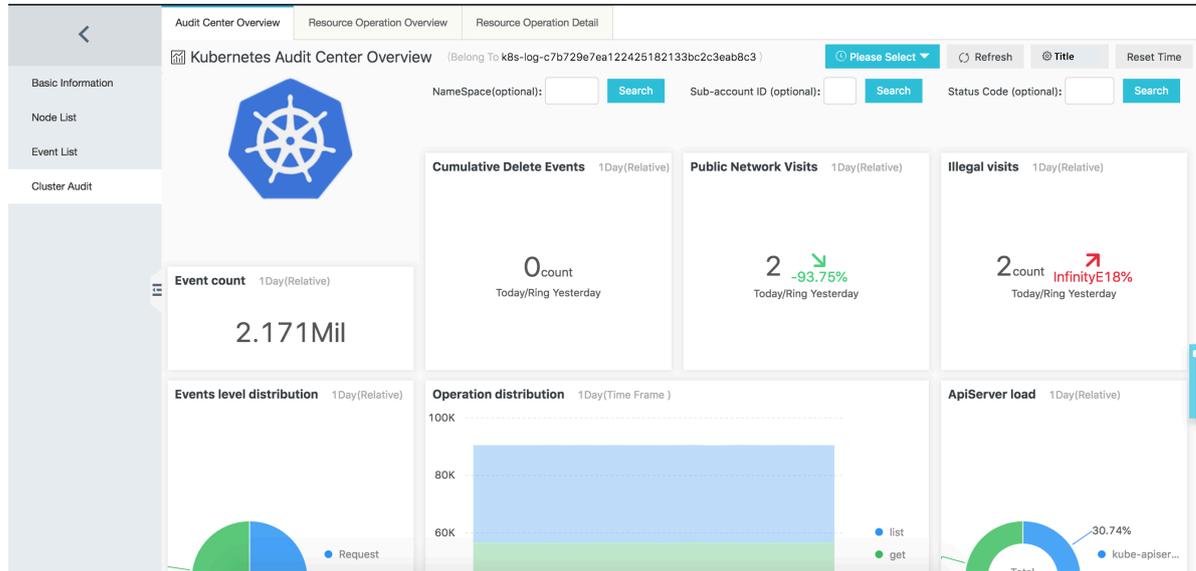


### Audit log report overview

The following three apiserver audit log reports are available: **Audit Center Overview**, **Resource Operation Overview**, and **Resource Operation Detail**.

• **Audit Center Overview**

This report displays an overview of the Kubernetes cluster events and the detailed information about important events, such as public network visits, command execution, resource removal, and secret visits.



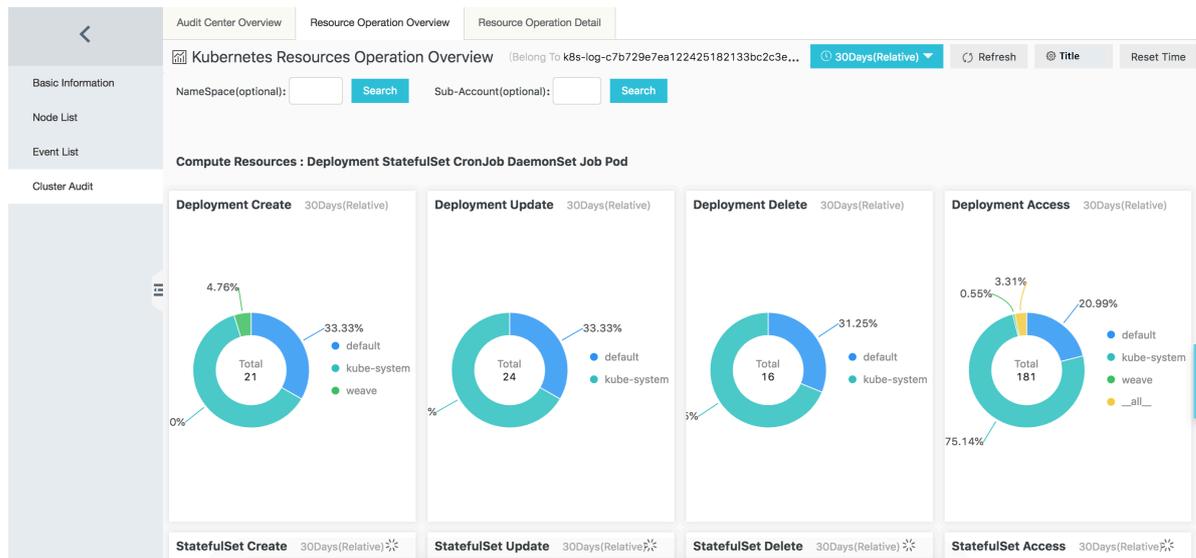
**Note:**

By default, this report displays statistics for one week. You can customize a statistics time range. In addition, you can filter events by specifying one or multiple factors, such as a namespace, a sub-account ID, and a status code.

• Resource Operation Overview

This report displays the operation statistics information about computing resources, network resources, and storage resources of a Kubernetes cluster. Operations include creation, update, removal, and access.

- Computing resources include deployment, StatefulSet, CronJob, DaemonSet, Job, and pod.
- Network resources include service and Ingress.
- Storage resources include ConfigMap, secret, and Persistent Volume Claim.



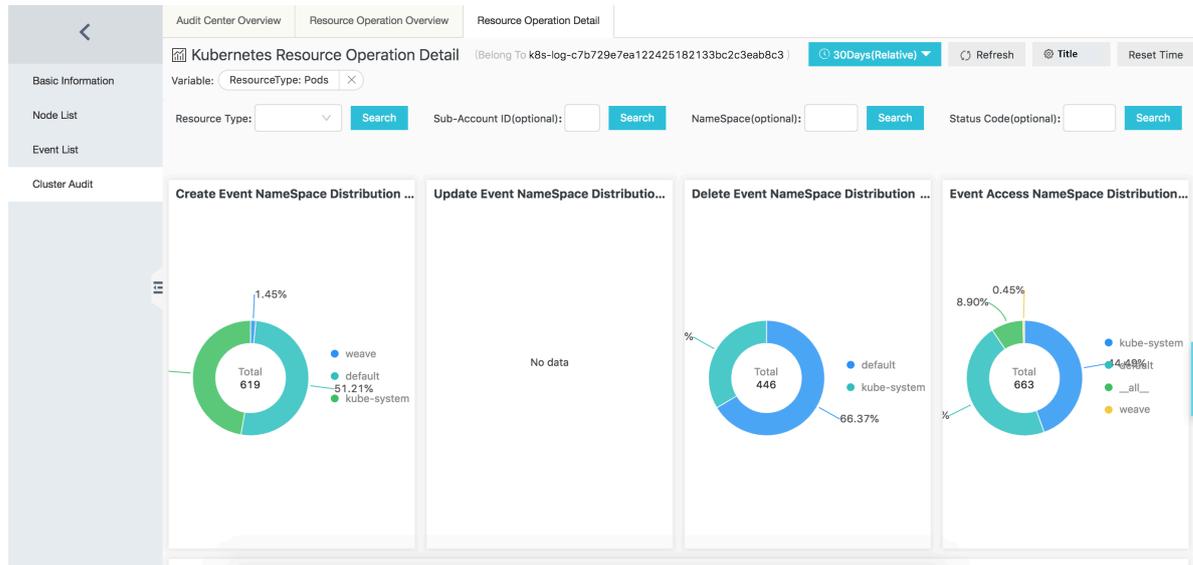
Note:

- By default, this report displays statistics for one week. You can customize a statistics time range. In addition, you can filter events by specifying one or both of the following factors: a namespace or a sub-account ID.
- If you want to view the detailed operation events of a resource, we recommend that you use Resource Operation Detail.

• Resource Operation Detail

This report displays detailed operation information of a Kubernetes cluster resource. You must select or enter a resource type to view detailed operation

information in time. This report displays the total number of operation events, namespace distribution, success rate, timing trend, and specific operation charts.

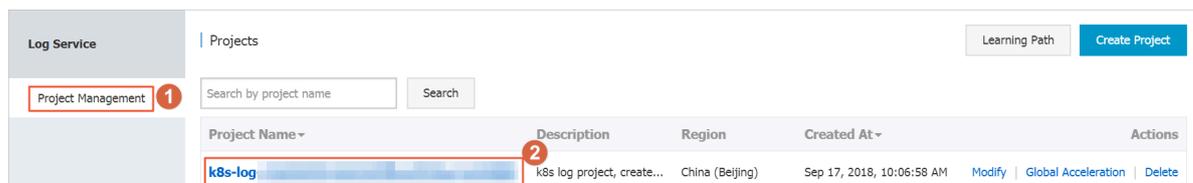


**Note:**

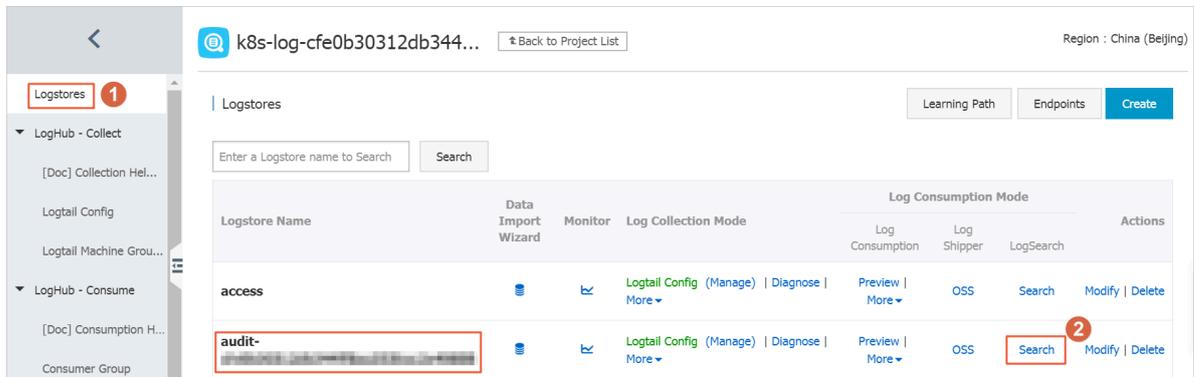
- If you want to view a CRD resource registered in Kubernetes or any other resources not listed in the report, you can enter the plural form of the target resource. For example, to view a CRD resource named AliyunLogConfig, you can enter AliyunLogConfigs.
- By default, this report displays statistics for one week. You can customize a statistics time range. In addition, you can filter events by specifying one or multiple factors, such as a namespace, a sub-account ID, and a status code.

logs, you can log on to Log Service to view detailed log records.

1. Log on to the [Log Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane, click Project Management, select the Project configured when you create the cluster, and then click the Project name.



3. On the Logstores page, find the Logstore named `audit- $\{\text{clusterid}\}$`  and click Search at the right side of the Logstore. The audit logs of the cluster are stored in this Logstore.



#### Note:

- When you create a Kubernetes cluster, your specified log Project automatically creates a Logstore named `audit- $\{\text{clusterid}\}$` .
- The audit log Logstore index is set by default. We recommend that you do not modify the index. Otherwise, the audit log reports become invalid.

To search for an audit log, you can use one of the following methods:

- To query a sub-account operation record, enter the sub-account ID and then click Search & Analysis.
- To query operations on a resource, enter the resource name and click Search & Analysis.
- To filter out operations performed by system components, enter `NOT user . username : node NOT user . username : serviceaccount NOT user . username : apiserver NOT user . username : kube - scheduler NOT user . username : kube - controller - manager`, and then click Search & Analysis.

For more information, see [Log Service search and analysis methods](#).

#### Set resource alarms

You can use the alarm function of Log Service to set resource alarms. Alarm notifications can be sent through a DingTalk group robot, a customized Webhook, and the Message Center.

**Note:**

Audit log reports provide multiple query statements. On the Logstores page, click Dashboard in the left-side navigation pane and then click a dashboard (namely, an audit log report) to display all charts. Click the menu in the upper-right corner of a chart, and then click View Details.

**Example 1: Set an alarm notification for running a command on a container**

To prevent Kubernetes cluster users from logging on to any container to run a command, you must set an alarm notification for running a command on any container. Furthermore, the alarm notification must include detailed information such as the container to which the user logged on, commands, user name, the event ID, the operation time, and the user IP address.

- The query statement is as follows:

```
verb : create and objectRef.subresource : exec and
stage : ResponseStarted | SELECT auditID as "event ID",
date_format(from_unixtime(__time__), '%Y-%m-%d %T') as "operation time",
regexp_extract("requestURI", '([^\?]*)/exec\?.*', 1) as "resource",
regexp_extract("requestURI", '\?(.*)', 1) as "command", "responseStatus.code" as "status code",
CASE
WHEN "user.username" != 'kubernetes-admin' then "user.username"
WHEN "user.username" = 'kubernetes-admin' and
regexp_like("annotations.authorization.k8s.io/reason", 'RoleBinding') then regexp_extract("annotations.authorization.k8s.io/reason", 'to User "(\w+)"', 1)
ELSE 'kubernetes-admin' END
as "operation account",
CASE WHEN json_array_length(sourceIPs) = 1 then
json_format(json_array_get(sourceIPs, 0)) ELSE
sourceIPs END
as "source IP address" limit 100
```

- The condition expression is `operation event =~ ".*"`.

**Example 2: Set an alarm notification for failed Internet access to apiserver**

To prevent malicious attacks on a Kubernetes cluster for which Internet access is enabled, you need to monitor the number of Internet access times and the failed access rate. Specifically, an alarm notification must be sent, when the number of Internet access times reaches a specified threshold and the failed access rate exceeds a specified threshold. Furthermore, the alarm notification must include detailed information such as to which the user IP address belongs, the user IP address, and the

high risk IP address. For example, to receive an alarm notification when the number of Internet access times reaches 10 and the failed access rate exceeds 50%, configure the following settings:

- Query statement.

```
* | select ip as "source IP address", total as "
number of access times", round ( rate * 100 , 2 ) as
" failed access rate %", failCount as " number of
illegal access times ", CASE when security_c heck_ip
( ip ) = 1 then ' yes ' else ' no ' end as " high
risk IP address ", ip_to_coun try ( ip ) as " country ",
ip_to_prov ince ( ip ) as " province ", ip_to_city ( ip ) as
" city ", ip_to_prov ider ( ip ) as " network operator "
from ( select CASE WHEN json_array _length ( sourceIPs )
= 1 then json_forma t ( json_array _get ( sourceIPs , 0 ))
ELSE sourceIPs END
as ip , count ( 1 ) as total ,
sum ( CASE WHEN " responseSt atus . code " < 400 then 0
ELSE 1 END ) * 1 . 0 / count ( 1 ) as rate ,
count_if ( " responseSt atus . code " = 403 ) as failCount
from log group by ip limit 10000 ) where
ip_to_doma in ( ip ) != ' intranet ' having " number of
access times " > 10 and " failed access rate %" > 50
ORDER by " number of access times " desc limit 100
```

- Condition expression is `source IP address =~ ".*"`.

## Manually enable audit log report functions

You can manually enable audit log report functions.

### 1. Enable API server audit log.

View the API server pod settings of the three Master nodes. That is, check whether audit log settings are configured for the startup parameters, the policy file, the environment variable, and the mounting directory.

- Startup parameters

```
containers :
- command :
- kube - apiserver
- -- audit - log - maxbackup = 10
- -- audit - log - maxsize = 100
- -- audit - log - path =/ var / log / kubernetes / kubernetes
. audit
- -- audit - log - maxage = 7
```

```
- -- audit - policy - file =/ etc / kubernetes / audit -
policy . yml
```

- Policy file (stored in the `/ etc / kubernetes / audit - policy . yml` directory)

For more information, see [Configure a policy file](#).



#### Note:

If the `/ etc / kubernetes /` directory does not have any policy file, you need to run the `vi audit - policy . yml` command to create a file, and then copy the content of the policy file and paste the content to the created file.

- Environment variable

```
env :
  - name : aliyun_log_s_audit - c12ba20 ***** 9f0b
    value : / var / log / kubernetes / kubernetes . audit
  - name : aliyun_log_s_audit - c12ba20 *****
9f0b_tags
    value : audit = apiserver
  - name : aliyun_log_s_audit - c12ba20 *****
9f0b_produ ct
    value : k8s - audit
  - name : aliyun_log_s_audit - c12ba20 *****
9f0b_jsonf ile
    value : " true "
```

- Mounting directory

```
volumeMoun ts :
  - mountPath : / var / log / kubernetes
    name : k8s - audit
  - mountPath : / etc / kubernetes / audit - policy . yml
    name : audit - policy
    readOnly : true
volumes :
  - hostPath :
    path : / var / log / kubernetes
    type : Directory0 rCreate
    name : k8s - audit
  - hostPath :
    path : / etc / kubernetes / audit - policy . yml
    type : FileOrCrea te
    name : audit - policy
```

Backup the original YAML file and then restart the API server by using a new `kube - apiserver . yml` YAML file. This action will overwrite the original YAML file

stored in the `/etc/kubernetes/manifests/kube-apiserver.yaml` directory.

If the API server pod settings does not contain the preceding settings, you must upgrade the Kubernetes cluster to the latest version. For more information, see [Upgrade a Kubernetes cluster](#).

## 2. Use the latest version of the Log Service component.

- For how to install the Log Service component, see [Manually install the Log Service component](#).
- If you have installed the Log Service component, but the audit log function is disabled, you must upgrade the component to the latest version and you must ensure that your Logtail version is not earlier than v0.16.16 and can run on Master nodes. For more information, see [Upgrade the Log Service component](#).

## 3. Update audit log parsing methods.

- a. Log on to the [Log Service console](#).
- b. In the left-side navigation pane, click Project Management, and then click the name of the Project specified when creating your Kubernetes cluster.
- c. The Logstores page is displayed by default. Click Manage on the right of the Logstore named `audit- $\{clustered\}$` , and then click the configuration name. On the Specify Collection Mode tab page, select the JSON Mode.

EnvKey +	EnvValue	-
aliyun_logs_audit-c3730910447504a6692ca1	/var/log/kubernetes/kubernetes.audit	✕

Collects log entries that contain the environment variables in the whitelist. If the whitelist is empty, all log entries will be collected.

EnvKey +	EnvValue	-
----------	----------	---

Collects log entries that do not contain environment variables in the blacklist. If the blacklist is empty, all log entries will be collected.

Mode: JSON Mode

[How to set JSON configuration](#)

Use System Time:

## Use a thirty-party log solution

Log on to the Master node of the cluster, and you can find the source file of the audit logs in the path of `/var/log/kubernetes/kubernetes.audit`. The source file is in standard JSON format. When deploying a cluster, you can use other log solutions to collect and search audit logs, instead of using Alibaba Cloud Log Service.

## 10.3 Implement secure access through HTTPS in Kubernetes

A Container Service Kubernetes cluster supports multiple application access methods. The most common methods include `SLB : Port` access, `NodeIP : NodePort` access, and domain name access. By default, a Kubernetes cluster does not support HTTPS access. To access applications through HTTPS, you can use the secure HTTPS access method provided by Container Service and Alibaba Cloud Server Load Balancer (SLB) service. This document explains how to configure a certificate in Container Service Kubernetes by using HTTPS access configuration as an example.

Depending on different access methods, your certificate can be configured with the following two methods:

- Configure the certificate on the frontend SLB.
- Configure the certificate on Ingress.

### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have connected to the Master node through SSH. For more information, see [#unique\\_50](#).
- After connecting to the Master node, you have created the server certificates for the cluster, including the public key certificate and the private key certificate by running the following commands :

```
$ openssl genrsa - out  tls . key  2048
Generating  RSA  private  key , 2048  bit  long  modulus
..... +++
.....
+++
e  is  65537  ( 0x10001 )

$ openssl req - sha256 - new - x509 - days  365 - key
tls . key - out  tls . crt

You  are  about  to  be  asked  to  enter  informatio n
that  will  be  incorporat ed
...
-----
Country  Name  ( 2  letter  code ) [ XX ]: CN
State  or  Province  Name  ( full  name ) []: zhejiang
Locality  Name  ( eg , city ) [ Default  City ]: hangzhou
Organizati on  Name  ( eg , company ) [ Default  Company  Ltd
]: alibaba
Organizati onal  Unit  Name  ( eg , section ) []: test
```

```
Common Name ( eg , your name or your server ' s
hostname ) []: foo . bar . com # you must configure
the domain name correctly
Email Address []: a @ alibaba . com
```

## Method 1: Configure the HTTPS certificate on SLB

This method has the following advantages and disadvantages:

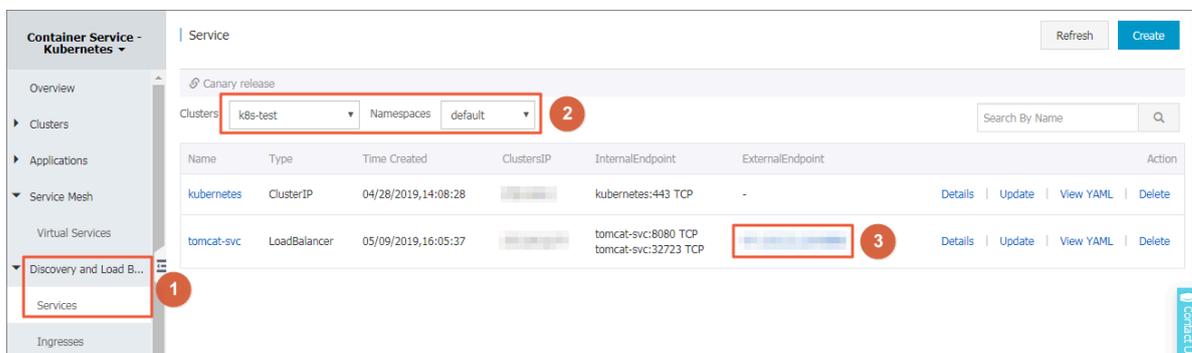
- **Advantages:** The certificate is configured on SLB and it is the external access portal of applications. The access to applications in the cluster still uses the HTTP access method.
- **Disadvantages:** You need to maintain many associations between domain names and their corresponding IP addresses.
- **Scenarios:** This method is applicable to applications that use LoadBalancer service rather than Ingress to expose access methods.

## Preparations

You have created a Tomcat application in the Kubernetes cluster. The application provides external access by using the LoadBalancer service. For more information, see [#unique\\_60](#).

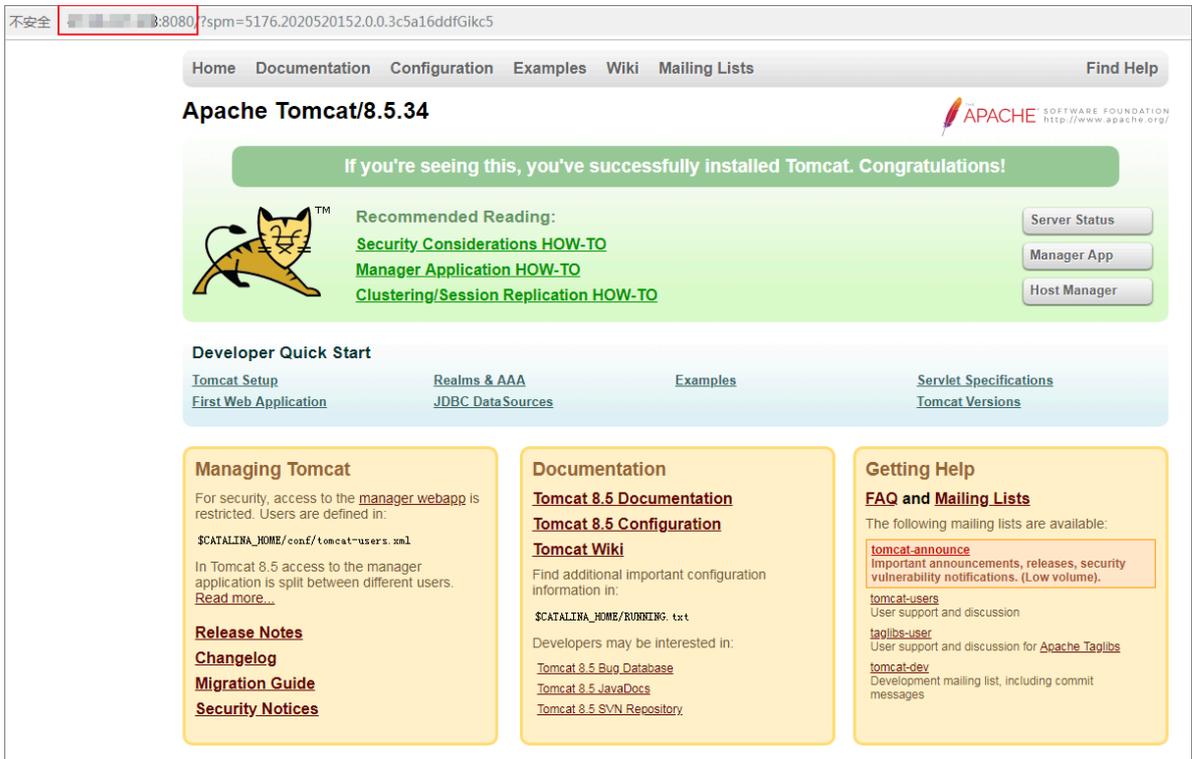
## Example

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Services**. Then, select the cluster and the namespace to view the pre-created Tomcat application. As shown in the following figure, the created Tomcat application is named tomcat and the service name is tomcat-svc. The service type of the application is LoadBalancer, and the service port exposed by the application is 8080.



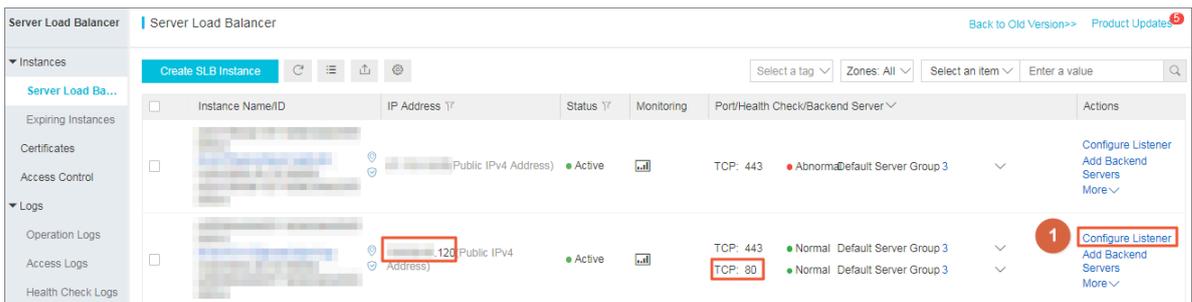
3. By clicking the external endpoint, you can access the Tomcat application through

IP : Port .



4. Log on to the SLB console.

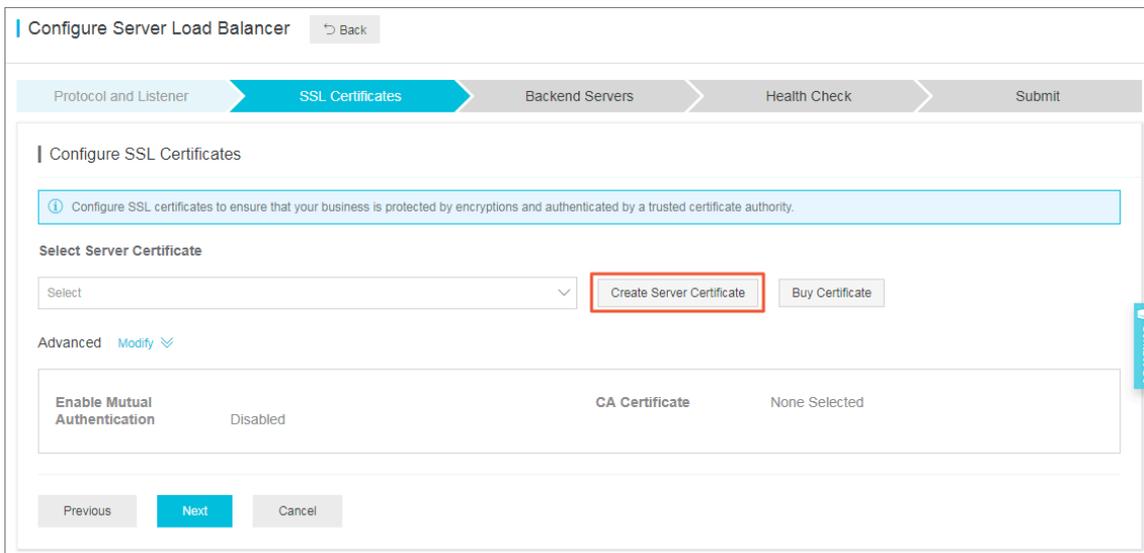
5. By default, the Server Load Balancer page is displayed. In the IP address column, find the server load balancer that corresponds to the external endpoint of the tomcat-svc service, and click Configure Listener in the actions column.



6. Configure the server load balancer. Select a listener protocol first. Select HTTPS, set the listening port to 443, and then click Next.

7. Configure the SSL certificate.

a. Click Create Server Certificate.



b. On the displayed page, select a certificate source. In this example, select Upload Third-Party Certificate, and then click Next.

c. On the uploading third-party certificate page, set the certificate name and select the region in which the certificate is deployed. In the Certificate Content and

the **Private Key** columns, enter the server public key certificate and private key created in [Prerequisites](#), and then click OK.

### Upload Third-Party Certificate ✕

- Certificate Name** ?
- Regions**
- Certificate Content** ?  

```
17 [REDACTED] zb3  
18 [REDACTED] [rF  
19 [REDACTED] 3lJ  
20 [REDACTED] ned  
21 [REDACTED] 0vz  
22 [REDACTED] TPKRDIIFUZZJDNDFQLRQ/KL4IIBSU/RY0DZRT04/QdLlJWkTPV0r/KL6ZU-  
23 [REDACTED]
```

(NGINX-compatible)  [View Sample Certificate](#)
- Private Key:** ?  

```
22 [REDACTED] J1  
23 [REDACTED] 6K  
24 [REDACTED] 0y  
25 [REDACTED] .Hs  
26 [REDACTED]  
27 -----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----  
28 [REDACTED]
```

(NGINX-compatible)  [View Sample Certificate](#)

- d. From the Select Server Certificate drop-down list, select the created server certificate.
  - e. Click Next.
8. Configure Backend Servers. By default, servers are added. You need to configure a port for each backend server to listen to the tomcat-svc service, and then click Next.



**Note:**

You need to find the NodePort number of this service in the Container Service Web interface, and configure the number as the port number of each backend server.

Configure Server Load Balancer Back

Protocol and Listener SSL Certificates **Backend Servers** Health Check Submit

Add Backend Servers

① Add backend servers to handle the access requests received by the SLB instance.

Forward Requests To

**Default Server Group** VServer Group Active/Standby Server Group

Servers Added

ECS Instance ID/Name	Public/Internal IP Address	Port	Weight	Actions
node-0003-k8s-for-cs-cad7e15c0784848a5be02443e9186ccb7-i-bp1a4u8pao171d36zfg1	192.168.0.78(Private) vpc-bp1kyevdjerjqs0u4vb vsw-bp1qb1yn2nbzm4kck66xx	32529	100	Delete
node-0001-k8s-for-cs-cad7e15c0784848a5be02443e9186ccb7-i-bp1hk1m08e5xkgrae8a	192.168.0.37(Private) vpc-bp1kyevdjerjqs0u4vb vsw-bp1qb1yn2nbzm4kck66xx	32529	100	Delete
node-0002-k8s-for-cs-cad7e15c0784848a5be02443e9186ccb7-i-bp1hk1m08e5xkgrae8b	192.168.0.38(Private) vpc-bp1kyevdjerjqs0u4vb vsw-bp1qb1yn2nbzm4kck66xx	32529	100	Delete

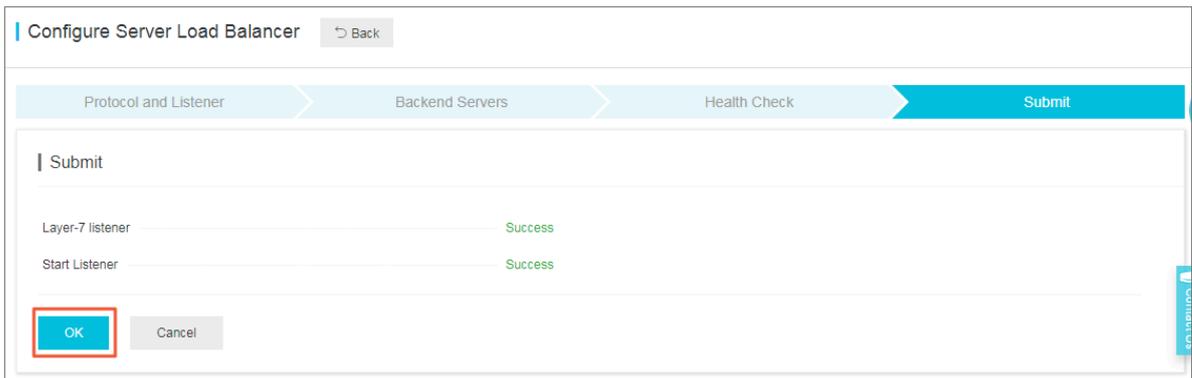
4 servers have been added. 0 servers are to be added, and 1 servers are to be deleted. Add More

Previous **Next** Cancel

9. Configure Health Check, and then click Next. In this example, use the default settings.

10. Confirm the Submit tab. When you make sure that all configurations are correct, click Submit.

11. After completing the configuration, click OK.



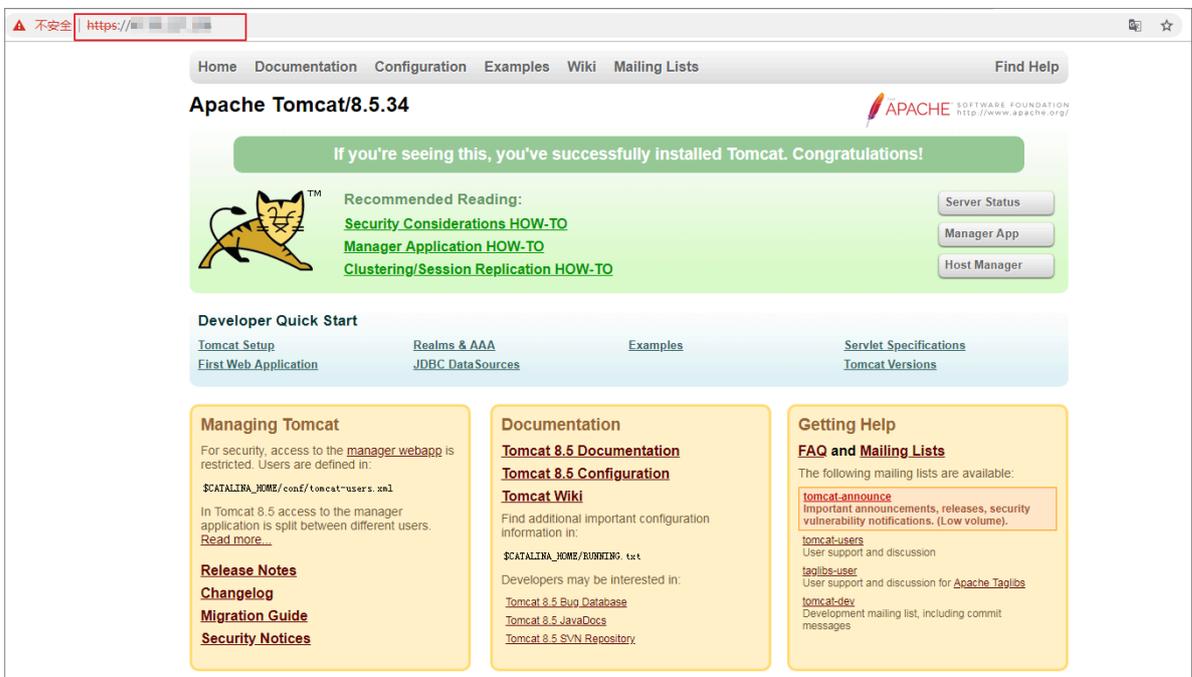
12. Return to the Server Load Balancer page to view the instance. The listening rule of `HTTPS : 443` is generated.

13. Access the Tomcat application through HTTPS. In the address bar of the browser, enter `https :// slb_ip` to access the application.



**Note:**

If the domain name authentication is included in the certificate, you can access the application by using the domain name. You can also access the application through `slb_ip : 8080` because `tcp : 8080` is not deleted.



**Method 2: Configure the certificate on Ingress**

This method has the following advantages and disadvantages:

- **Advantages:** You do not need to modify the SLB configuration. All applications can manage their own certificates through Ingress without interfering with each other.
- **Disadvantages:** Each application can be accessed by using a separate certificate or the cluster has applications that can be accessed by only using a certificate.

## Preparations

You have created a Tomcat application in the Kubernetes cluster. The service of the application provides access through ClusterIP. In this example, use Ingress to provide the HTTPS access service.

## Example

1. Log on to the Master node of the Kubernetes cluster and create a secret according to the prepared certificate.



Note:

You must set the domain name properly. Otherwise, you will encounter exceptions when accessing the application through HTTPS.

```
kubectl create secret tls secret - https -- key tls .  
key -- cert tls . crt
```

2. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
3. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Discovery and Load Balancing > Ingresses**, select a cluster and namespace, and click **Create** in the upper-right corner.

4. In the displayed dialog box, configure the Ingress to make it accessible through HTTPS, and then click OK.

For more information about Ingress configuration, see [#unique\\_75](#). The configuration in this example is as follows:

- Name: Enter an Ingress name.
- Domain: Enter the domain name set in the preceding steps. It must be the same as that configured in the SSL certificate.
- Service: Select the service corresponding to the tomcat application. The service port is 8080.
- Enable TLS: After enabling TLS, select the existing secret.

Create
✕

Name:

Rule: + Add

Domain ✕

Select \*.cd5f29d03dcd544d3943a4c2cb45bb4ec.cn-hangzhou.alicontainer.com or Custom

path

Service + Add

Name	Port	Weight	Percent of Weight	
<input type="text" value="tomcat-svc"/>	<input type="text" value="8080"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="text" value="100.0%"/>	-

Enable TLS  Exist secret  Create secret

Service weight:  Enable

Grayscale release: + Add After the gray rule is set, the request meeting the rule will be routed to the new service. If you set a weight other than 100, the request to satisfy the gamma rule will continue to be routed to the new and old version services according to the weights.

annotation: + Add rewrite annotation

Tag: + Add

Create
Cancel

You can also use a YAML file to create an Ingress. In this example, the YAML sample file is as follows:

```
apiVersion : extensions / v1beta1
kind : Ingress
metadata :
  name : tomcat - https
spec :
  tls :
  - hosts :
    - foo . bar . com
    secretName : secret - https
  rules :
  - host : foo . bar . com
    http :
      paths :
      - path : /
        backend :
          serviceNam e : tomcat - svc
          servicePor t : 8080
```

- Return to the Ingress list to view the created Ingress, the endpoint, and the domain name. In this example, the domain name is `foo . bar . com`. You can also enter the Ingress detail page to view the Ingress.



Note:

In this example, `foo . bar . com` is used as a testing domain name, and you need to create a record in the hosts file.

```
47 . 110 . 119 . 203   foo . bar . com           # where
, the IP address is the Ingress endpoint .
```

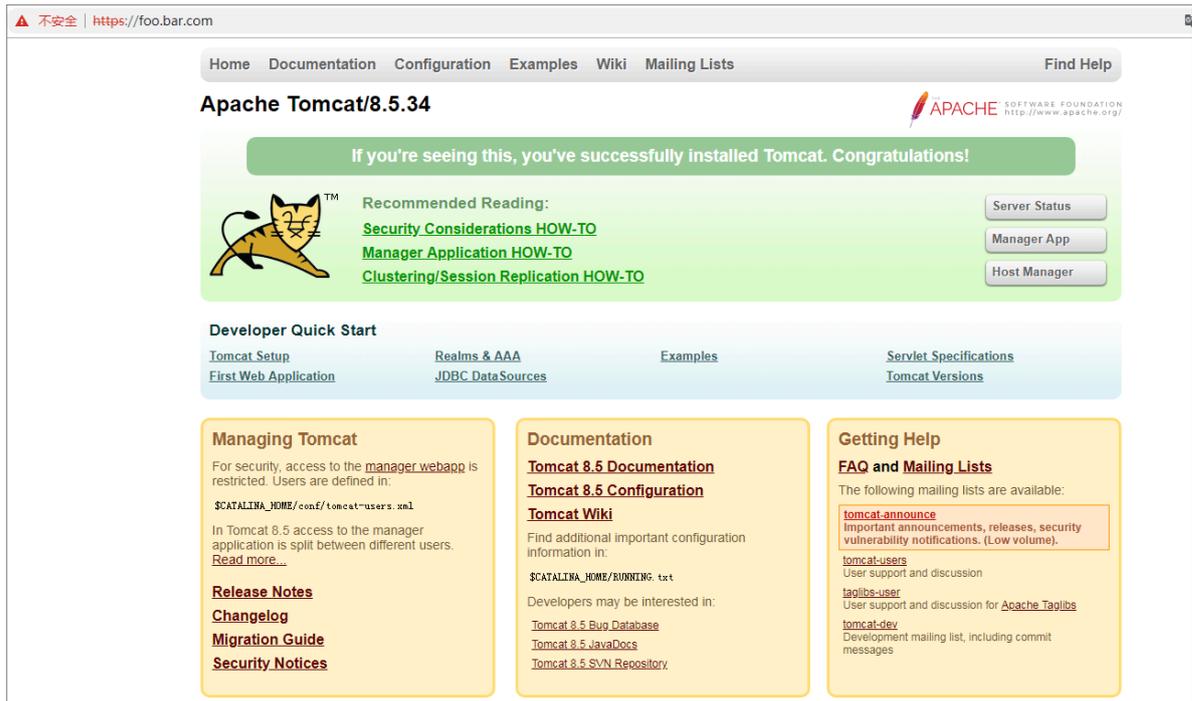
Name	Endpoint	Rule	Time Created	Action
tomcat-https	<span style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px;">[redacted]</span>	foo.bar.com/ -> tomcat-svc	11/07/2018,15:37:00	<a href="#">Details</a>   <a href="#">Update</a>   <a href="#">View YAML</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>

6. In the browser, access `https://foo.bar.com`.



Note:

You need to access the domain name by using HTTPS because you have created a TLS access certificate. This example uses `foo.bar.com` as a sample domain name to be parsed locally. In your specific configuration scenarios, you need to use the registered domain names.



## 10.4 Update the Kubernetes cluster certificates that are about to expire

This topic describes how to update the Kubernetes cluster certificates that are about to expire through the Container Service console.

### Prerequisites

- A Kubernetes cluster is created with ACK and the cluster certificates are about to expire. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- The required tasks have been completed. For more information, see [#unique\\_139](#).

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).

2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Clusters.
3. Click Update Certificate on the right of the target cluster.



Note:

If cluster certificates are about to expire in about two months, the system displays the Update Certificate prompt for the cluster.

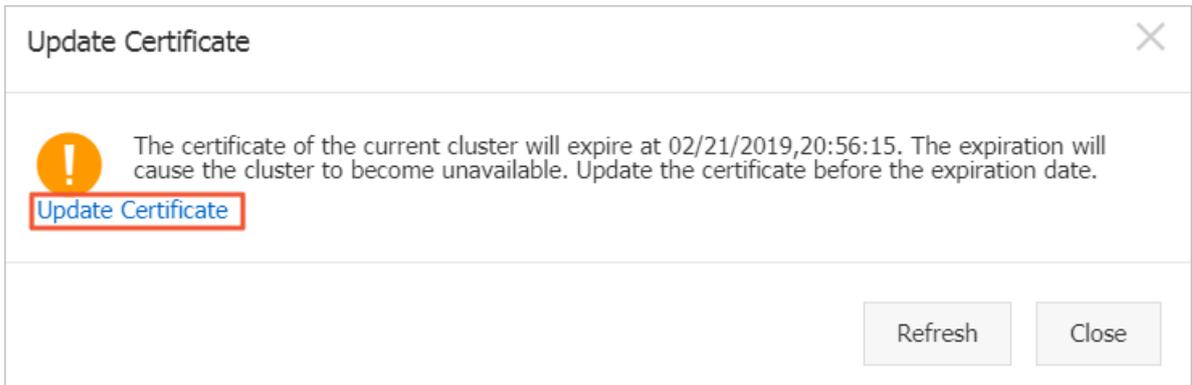
### Cluster List

Help: [Create cluster](#) [Create GPU clusters](#) [Scale cluster](#) [Authorization management](#)

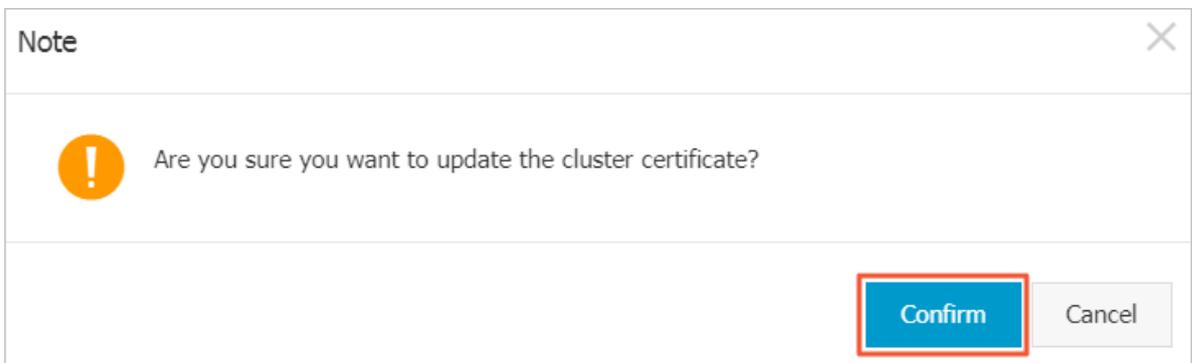
Name

Cluster Name/ID	Cluster Type	Region (All)
<a href="#">k8s-test</a> [blurred]	Kubernetes	China North 2 (Beijing)
<a href="#">test-mia</a> [blurred]	Kubernetes	China East 1 (Hangzhou)
<a href="#">kubernetes-test</a> [blurred]	Kubernetes	China East 1 (Hangzhou)

4. Click Update Certificate.

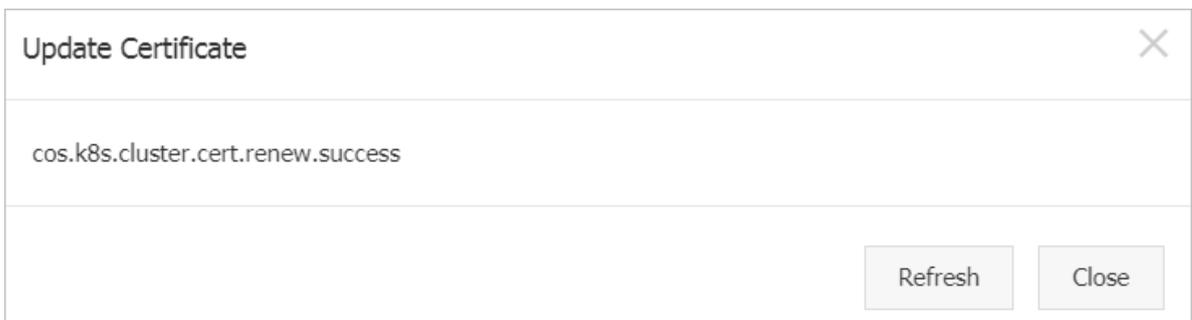


5. Click Confirm.



Result

- The Update Certificate page displays Success.



- On the Cluster List page, the Update Certificate prompt of the target cluster has been removed.

## 10.5 Security bulletins

## 10.5.1 Vulnerability fix: *CVE - 2019 - 5736* in runc

This topic describes the impacts of the security vulnerability *CVE - 2019 - 5736* in runc and how to remove it. This vulnerability has been fixed for the Kubernetes cluster versions 1.11 and 1.12.

### Background

The security vulnerability may occur with Docker, containerd, or any other containers that use runc. This vulnerability gives attackers the ability to use a specific container image or run the `exec` command to obtain the file handle used by the running host runc. Attackers can overwrite the host runc binary file, then obtain root permission to access the host, and execute commands as with root permission.

For more information, see [CVE-2019-5736](#).

### Affected clusters

- Alibaba Cloud Container Service clusters affected by the vulnerability:
  - All Docker Swarm clusters from versions earlier than Docker v18.09.02.
  - All Kubernetes clusters except for Serverless Kubernetes clusters.
- Self-built Docker and Kubernetes clusters affected by the vulnerability:
  - All clusters that use Docker versions earlier than v18.09.2.
  - All clusters that use runc v1.0-rc6 or earlier.

### Resolution

To fix the security *CVE-2019-5736* vulnerability for Kubernetes clusters earlier than V1.11 and V1.12, use one of the following two methods:

- Upgrade the Docker version of all existing clusters to v18.09.2 or later. Using this method will interrupt your cluster containers and services.
- Only upgrade runc. This method is applicable to clusters running Docker v17.06. We recommend that you upgrade the runc binary file of each cluster node individually to avoid a service interruption caused by upgrading the Docker engine. To upgrade a runc binary file, complete the following steps:

1. Run the following command to locate `docker-runc`:



Note:

```
Usually, docker-runc is located in /usr/bin/docker-runc .
```

```
which docker-runc
```

2. Run the following command to back up the original runc:

```
mv /usr/bin/docker-runc /usr/bin/docker-runc.orig.$(date -Iseconds)
```

3. Run the following command to download the fixed runc:

```
curl -o /usr/bin/docker-runc -sSL https://acs-public-mirror.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/docker-runc-17.06-amd64
```

4. Run the following command to set permission availability for docker-runc:

```
chmod +x /usr/bin/docker-runc
```

5. Run the following command to test whether runc works normally:

```
docker-runc -v
# runc version 1.0.0-rc3
# commit : fc48a25bde 6fb041aae0 977111ad81 41ff396438
# spec : 1.0.0-rc5
docker run -it --rm ubuntu echo OK
```

6. To upgrade the runc binary file of a Kubernetes cluster GPU node, you must also install nvidia-runtime by completing the following steps:

a. Run the following command to locate nvidia-container-runtime:



**Note:**

Usually, nvidia-container-runtime is located in /usr/bin/nvidia-container-runtime .

```
which nvidia-container-runtime
```

b. Run the following command to back up the original nvidia-container-runtime:

```
mv /usr/bin/nvidia-container-runtime /usr/bin/nvidia-container-runtime.orig.$(date -Iseconds)
```

c. Run the following command to download the fixed nvidia-container-runtime:

```
curl -o /usr/bin/nvidia-container-runtime -sSL https://acs-public-mirror.oss-cn-hangzhou.
```

```
aliyuncs . com / runc / nvidia - container - runtime - 17 . 06  
- amd64
```

- d. Run the following command to set permission availability for nvidia-container-runtime:

```
chmod + x / usr / bin / nvidia - container - runtime
```

- e. Run the following command to test whether nvidia-container-runtime works normally:

```
nvidia - container - runtime - v  
# runc version 1 . 0 . 0 - rc3  
# commit : fc48a25bde 6fb041aae0 977111ad81 41ff396438 -  
dirty  
# spec : 1 . 0 . 0 - rc5  
  
docker run - it -- rm - e NVIDIA_VISIBLE_DEVICES =  
all ubuntu nvidia - smi - L  
# GPU 0 : Tesla P100 - PCIE - 16GB ( UUID : GPU -  
122e199c - 9aa6 - 5063 - 0fd2 - da009017e6 dc )
```



**Note:**

This test is performed on a node of the GPU P100 model. Test outputs vary by GPU models.

## 10.5.2 Vulnerability fix: *CVE - 2018 - 18264* for Kubernetes dashboard

Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes has fixed dashboard vulnerability *CVE - 2018 - 18264* . This topic describes the dashboard versions affected by the vulnerability and how to fix the vulnerability. The Kubernetes dashboards that are built in Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes are not affected by this vulnerability because they work in the hosted form and their security settings were upgraded before the vulnerability occurred.

### Background information

A security vulnerability, that is, *CVE - 2018 - 18264* , was discovered in Kubernetes dashboards of V1.10 and earlier versions. This vulnerability allowed attackers to bypass identity authentication and read secrets within the cluster by using the dashboard logon account.

The Kubernetes dashboards that are built in Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes are not affected by this vulnerability because they work in the hosted form and their security settings were upgraded before the vulnerability occurred.

For more information about security vulnerability *CVE - 2018 - 18264* , see:

- <https://github.com/kubernetes/dashboard/pull/3289>
- <https://github.com/kubernetes/dashboard/pull/3400>
- <https://github.com/kubernetes/dashboard/releases/tag/v1.10.1>

Conditions required to determine that a Kubernetes dashboard is vulnerable

Your dashboard is vulnerable if you have independently deployed Kubernetes dashboard V1.10 or earlier versions (V1.7.0 to V1.10.0) that supports the `login` function in your Kubernetes cluster, and you have used custom certificates.

Resolution

- If you do not need a dashboard that is deployed independently, run the following command to remove the Kubernetes dashboard from your cluster:

```
kubectl -- namespace kube - system delete deployment
kubernetes - dashboard
```

- If you need an independently deployed dashboard, upgrade your dashboard to V1.10.1. For more information, see <https://github.com/kubernetes/dashboard/releases/tag/v1.10.1>.
- If you use the dashboard hosted by Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes, you can continue to use your dashboard in the Container Service console because the dashboard was upgraded before the vulnerability occurred.

### 10.5.3 Vulnerability fix: *CVE - 2018 - 1002105*

Alibaba Cloud has fixed system vulnerability *CVE - 2018 - 1002105* . This topic describes the impacts of this vulnerability and how to remove it.

This vulnerability does not affect Serverless Kubernetes clusters. Serverless Kubernetes was upgraded before the vulnerability occurred.

Background information

Engineers of the Kubernetes community have found security vulnerability *CVE - 2018 - 1002105* . Kubernetes users can gain access to the backend service by forging the request and escalating the permission on the established API Server connection. Alibaba Cloud has fixed this vulnerability. To remove the vulnerability, you need to log on to the Container Service console and upgrade Kubernetes to the latest version.

For more information about the vulnerability *CVE - 2018 - 1002105* , see <https://github.com/kubernetes/kubernetes/issues/71411>.

#### Affected Kubernetes versions:

- Kubernetes v1.0.x-1.9.x
- Kubernetes v1.10.0-1.10.10 (fixed in v1.10.11)
- Kubernetes v1.11.0-1.11.4 (fixed in v1.11.5)
- Kubernetes v1.12.0-1.12.2 (fixed in v1.12.3)

#### Affected configurations:

- Kubernetes cluster, which runs on Container Service and uses an extension API server. Furthermore, the extension API server network is directly accessible to the cluster component, kube-apiserver.
- Kubernetes cluster, which runs on Container Service and has opened permissions to interfaces such as pod exec, attach, and portforward. Then, users can use the vulnerability to obtain permissions to access all kubelet APIs of the cluster.

#### Cluster configuration of Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes

- The API server of a Kubernetes cluster that runs on Container Service has RBAC enabled by default. That is, the API server denies anonymous user access through primary account authorization. Furthermore, the starting parameter of Kubelet is `anonymous - auth = false` , providing security access control against external attacks.
- If your Kubernetes cluster has multiple RAM users, the RAM users may gain unauthorized access to the backend service through interfaces such as pod exec , attach, and portforward. If your cluster has no RAM users, you do not need to worry about the vulnerability.
- RAM users do not have access to aggregate API resources by default without custom authorization from the primary account.

#### Solution

Log on to the Container Service console to upgrade your cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_144](#).

- If your cluster is V1.11.2, upgrade it to V1.11.5.
- If your cluster is V1.10.4, upgrade it to V1.10.11 or V1.11.5.

- If your cluster is V1.9 or earlier, upgrade it to V1.10.11 or V1.11.5. When you upgrade the cluster from V1.9 to V1.10 or V1.11, upgrade the flexvolume plugin through the console if your cluster uses cloud disk volumes.

**Note:**

In the Container Service console, select the target cluster and choose More > Addon Upgrade. In the Addon Upgrade dialog box, select flexvolume and click Upgrade.

## 10.5.4 Vulnerability fix: *CVE - 2019 - 11246* related to `kubectl cp`

This topic describes how to fix the *CVE - 2019 - 11246* vulnerability related to the `kubectl cp` command.

### Background information

The `kubectl cp` command is used to copy files between containers and hosts. When you copy a file from a container to your host, Kubernetes first runs the `tar` command to create a corresponding archive file and sends the archive file to your host. Then, `kubectl` decompresses the archive file on your host.

The *CVE - 2019 - 11246* vulnerability provides attackers the opportunity to write malicious files saved in a TAR package into any paths on your host by running the `kubectl cp` command through path traversal.

If the TAR package contains malicious files, attackers who have the permission to run the `kubectl cp` command can perform [path traversal](#).

The effects of this vulnerability are similar to those of the *CVE - 2019 - 1002101* vulnerability. For information about the *CVE - 2019 - 1002101* vulnerability, see [CVE-2019-1002101: kubectl fix potential directory traversal](#).

For information about the vulnerability PR, see [CVE-2019-11246: Clean links handling in cp's tar code](#).

For more information about security issues caused by this vulnerability, see [kubernetes-security-announce](#).

### Affected Kubernetes versions

- `kubectl` v1.11.x and earlier versions
- `kubectl` v1.12.1-v1.12.8 (fixed in v1.12.9)

- kubectl v1.13.1-v1.13.5 (fixed in v1.13.6)
- kubectl v1.14.1 (fixed in v1.14.2)

**Note:**

You can view the versions of kubectl by running the `kubectl version --client` command.

**Solution**

Upgrade kubectl and confirm the kubectl version. For more information, see [Install and set up kubectl](#).

- If your kubectl is v1.12.x, upgrade it to v1.12.9.
- If your kubectl is v1.13.x, upgrade it to v1.13.6.
- If your kubectl is v1.14.x, upgrade it to v1.14.2.
- If your kubectl is v1.11 or an earlier version, upgrade it to v1.12.9, v1.13.6, or v1.14.2.

### 10.5.5 Vulnerability fix: *CVE - 2019 - 11249* related to kubectl cp

The vulnerability CVE-2019-11246 related to kubectl cp was exposed several months ago. Kubernetes recently announced another vulnerability CVE-2019-11249 related to kubectl cp. This vulnerability provides attackers with the opportunity to write malicious files saved in a TAR package into any paths on your host through directory traversal by running the kubectl cp command. This process is only restricted by the system permissions of the current user.

**Background information**

The kubectl cp command is used to copy files between containers and hosts. If you copy a file from a container to your host by running the kubectl cp command, Kubernetes performs the following three steps: creates a TAR file inside the container, sends the file to your host, and then decompresses the file on your host.

If an attacker has permission to run the kubectl cp command and the TAR package contains malicious files, the attacker can perform [directory traversal](#).

With this vulnerability fixed, the kubectl cp command performs more rigorous verification on the target paths of all files during the TAR package decompression. Copying decompressed files to any paths that are not the destination directory of the kubectl cp operation is not allowed.

For more information about security issues caused by this vulnerability, see [Kubernetes security announcement](#).

For more information about the vulnerability PR, visit <https://github.com/kubernetes/kubernetes/pull/80436/>.

### Vulnerable versions

You can view the kubectl versions by running the `kubectl version -- client` command.

The following list describes the vulnerable versions:

- Kubectl 1.0.x-1.12.x
- Kubectl 1.13.0-1.13.8 (fixed in v1.13.9)
- Kubectl 1.14.0-1.14.4 (fixed in v1.14.5)
- Kubectl 1.15.0-1.15.1 (fixed in v1.15.2)

### Solution

To fix this vulnerability, you must upgrade the kubectl and check the kubectl version. For more information, see [Install and set up kubectl](#).

- If your kubectl version is 1.13.x, upgrade it to 1.13.9.
- If your kubectl version is 1.14.x, upgrade it to 1.14.5.
- If your kubectl version is 1.15.x, upgrade it to 1.15.2.
- If your kubectl version is 1.12.x or an earlier version, upgrade it to 1.13.9, 1.14.5, or 1.15.2.

## 10.6 Cluster certificate update FAQ

When do I have to update my cluster certificates?

You can update your cluster certificates two months before your cluster certificates expire.

How can I update cluster certificates?

You can click the red button in the console to update the certificates automatically, or update them by following these steps:

## 1. Update data according to the following table.

Node type	Backup data
Master	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• /etc/kubernetes/</li> <li>• /var/lib/kubelet/pki</li> <li>• /etc/systemd/system/kubelet.service.d/10-kubeadm.conf</li> <li>• /etc/kubeadm/</li> <li>• Necessary service data</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note:</b> If the / var / lib / kubelet / pki file contains no data, or if no necessary service data is available, do not back up them.</p>
Worker	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• /etc/kubernetes/</li> <li>• /etc/systemd/system/kubelet.service.d/10-kubeadm.conf</li> <li>• /var/lib/kubelet/pki/*</li> <li>• Necessary service data</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note:</b> If the / var / lib / kubelet / pki /* file contains no data, or if no necessary service data is available, do not back up them.</p>

## 2. Update certificates according to the following tables.

Table 10-1: Master node

Certificate or conf	Path
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• apiserver.crt</li> <li>• apiserver.key</li> </ul>	/etc/kubernetes/pki
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• apiserver-kubelet-client.crt</li> <li>• apiserver-kubelet-client.key</li> </ul>	/etc/kubernetes/pki
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• front-proxy-client.crt</li> <li>• front-proxy-client.key</li> </ul>	/etc/kubernetes/pki
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dashboard.crt</li> <li>• dashboard.key</li> </ul>	/etc/kubernetes/pki/dashboard

Certificate or conf	Path
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· kubelet.crt</li> <li>· kubelet.key</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note:</b> If the <code>kubelet . key</code> file contains no data, do not update it.</p>	<p><code>/var/lib/kubelet/pki</code></p> <p> <b>Note:</b> If the file contains no data, do not update it.</p>
admin.conf	<code>/etc/kubernetes</code>
kube.conf	<code>/etc/kubernetes</code>
controller-manager.conf	<code>/etc/kubernetes</code>
scheduler.conf	<code>/etc/kubernetes</code>
kubelet.conf	<code>/etc/kubernetes</code>
config	<code>~/.kube/</code>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· kubelet-client-current.pem or kubelet-client.crt\</li> <li>· kubelet-client.key</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note:</b> If the <code>kubelet - client . key</code> file contains no data, do not update it.</p>	<p><code>/var/lib/kubelet/pki</code></p> <p> <b>Note:</b> If the file contains no data, do not update it.</p>

Table 10-2: Worker node

Certificate or conf	Path
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· kubelet.crt</li> <li>· kubelet.key</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note:</b> If the <code>kubelet . key</code> file contains no data, do not update it.</p>	<p><code>/var/lib/kubelet/pki</code></p> <p> <b>Note:</b> If the file contains no data, do not update the file.</p>

Certificate or conf	Path
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· kubelet-client-current.pem or kubelet-client.crt</li> <li>· kubelet-client.key</li> </ul> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;">  <b>Note:</b>            If the <code>kubelet - client . key</code> file contains no data, do not update it.         </div>	/var/lib/kubelet/pki <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;">  <b>Note:</b>            If the file contains no data, do not update the file.         </div>
kubelet.conf	/etc/kubernetes

How long does it take to update a cluster certificate?

Each update takes 5 to 10 minutes.



**Note:**

- When the certificates are being updated, the native components of Kubernetes will be restarted for a while. Therefore, we recommend that you perform the update during off-peak hours.
- The update does not affect existing online services.

## 10.7 Kubernetes cluster network failures caused by security group settings

This topic describes the Kubernetes cluster network failures caused by cluster security group settings, and provides corresponding resolutions.

### Symptom

Containers cannot communicate with each other over the Kubernetes cluster network

.

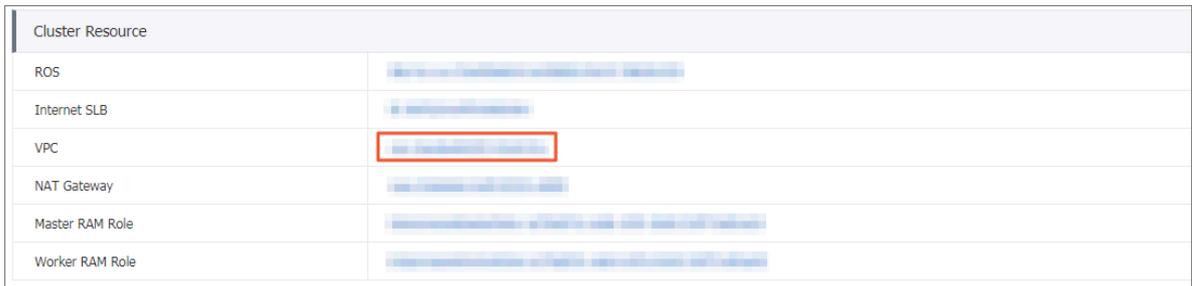
### Causes

- A relevant ingress security group rule is removed. The following are the details of the rule: the ingress Authorization Objects is Pod Network CIDR and the Protocol Type is All.
- Newly added ECS instances and the Kubernetes cluster are located in different security groups.

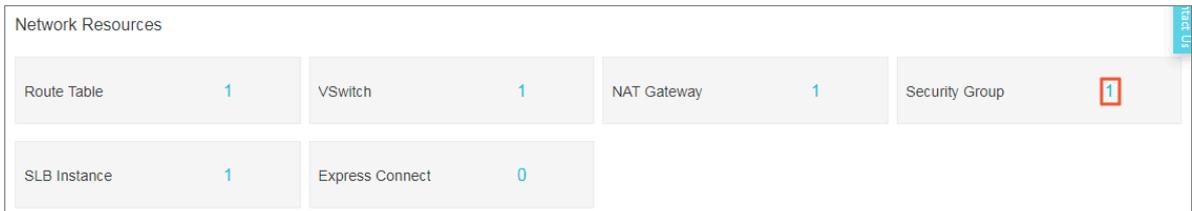
## Resolution

**Cause 1: A relevant ingress security group rule is removed. The following are details of the rule: the ingress Authorization Objects is Pod Network CIDR and the Protocol Type is All.**

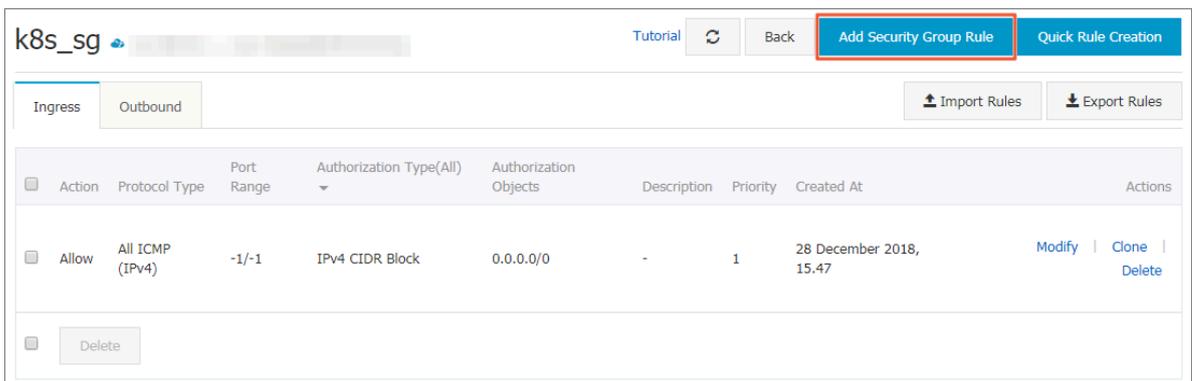
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, click Clusters.
3. Click the target cluster name to view cluster details.
4. In the Cluster Resource area, click VPC.



5. In the Network Resources area, click the number on the right of Security Group.



6. In the Actions column of the target security group, click Add Rules.
7. On the Ingress page, click Add Security Group Rule in the upper-right corner.



### 8. Set Protocol Type and Authorization Objects.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Security Group Rule' dialog box with the following configuration:

- NIC: Internal Network
- Rule Direction: Ingress
- Action: Allow
- Protocol Type: All (highlighted with a red box)
- \* Port Range: -1/-1
- Priority: 1
- Authorization Type: IPv4 CIDR Block
- \* Authorization Objects: 172.16.0.0/16 (highlighted with a red box)
- Description: (empty text box)

Buttons: OK, Cancel

Select All from the Protocol Type drop-down list.

Enter the Pod Network CIDR of the Kubernetes cluster for Authorization Objects.



Note:

- You can view the Pod Network CIDR of the Kubernetes cluster in the Cluster Information area on the cluster basic information page.

Cluster Information	
API Server Internet endpoint	https://172.16.0.0/16
API Server Intranet endpoint	https://172.16.0.0/16
Pod Network CIDR	172.16.0.0/16
Service CIDR	172.16.0.0/16
Master node SSH IP address	172.16.0.0/16
Service Access Domain	https://172.16.0.0/16

- For more information about the Authorization Objects settings, see [#unique\\_149](#).

### Verify the results

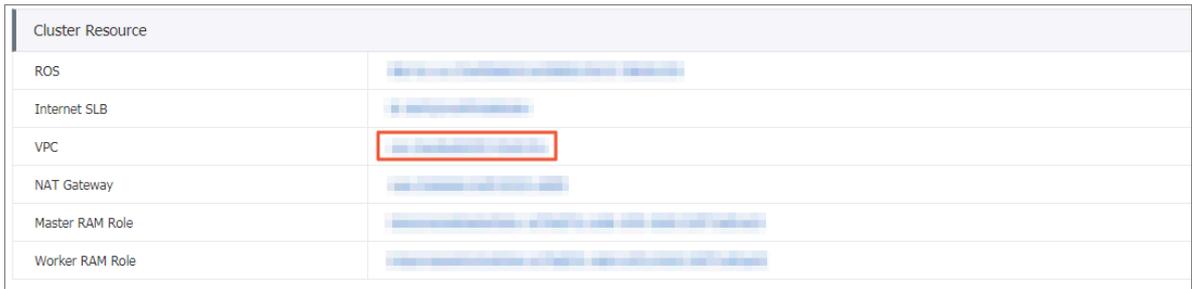
The required ingress security group rule is added. The following are details of the rule: the ingress Authorization Objects is Pod Network CIDR and the Protocol Type is All.

Action	Protocol Type	Port Range	Authorization Type(All)	Authorization Objects	Description	Priority	Created At	Actions
Allow	All	-1/-1	IPv4 CIDR Block	172.16.0.0/16	-	1	24 January 2019, 18:14	Modify   Clone   Delete
Allow	All ICMP (IPv4)	-1/-1	IPv4 CIDR Block	0.0.0.0/0	-	1	28 December 2018, 15:47	Modify   Clone   Delete

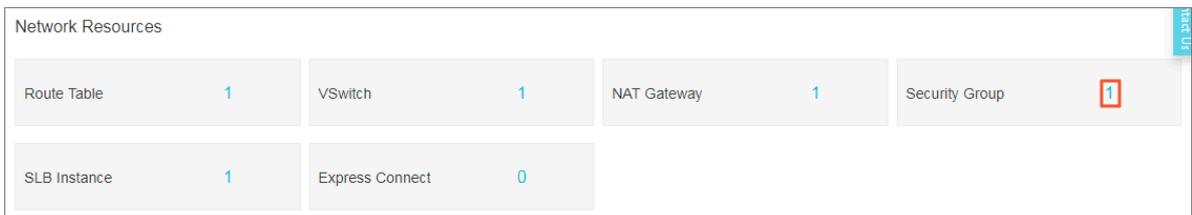
**Cause 2: Newly added ECS instances and the Kubernetes cluster are located in different security groups.**

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane, click Clusters.
3. Click the target Cluster Name.

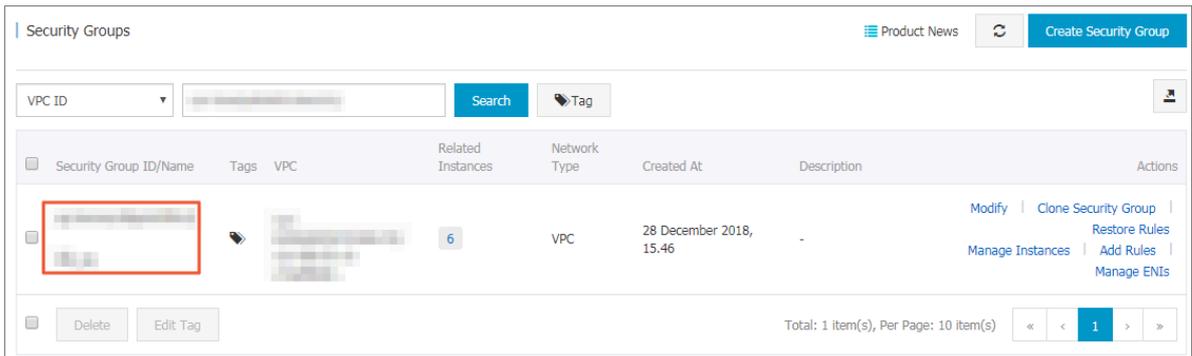
4. In the Cluster Resource area, click VPC.



5. On the VPC Details page, click the number on the right of Security Group in the Network Resources area.

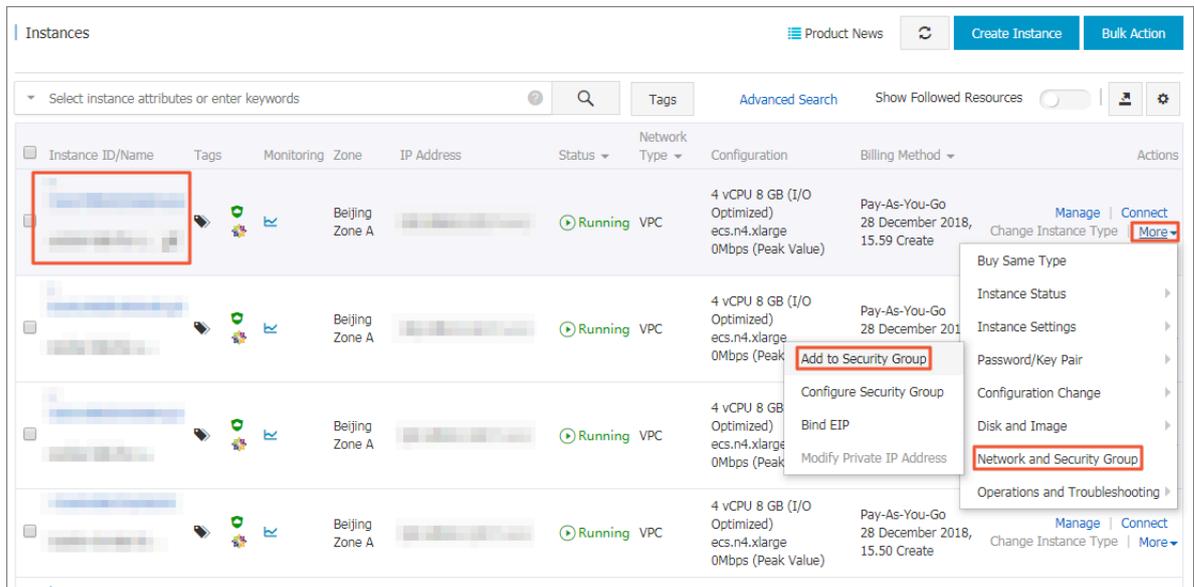


6. On the Security Groups page, view the target security group name.

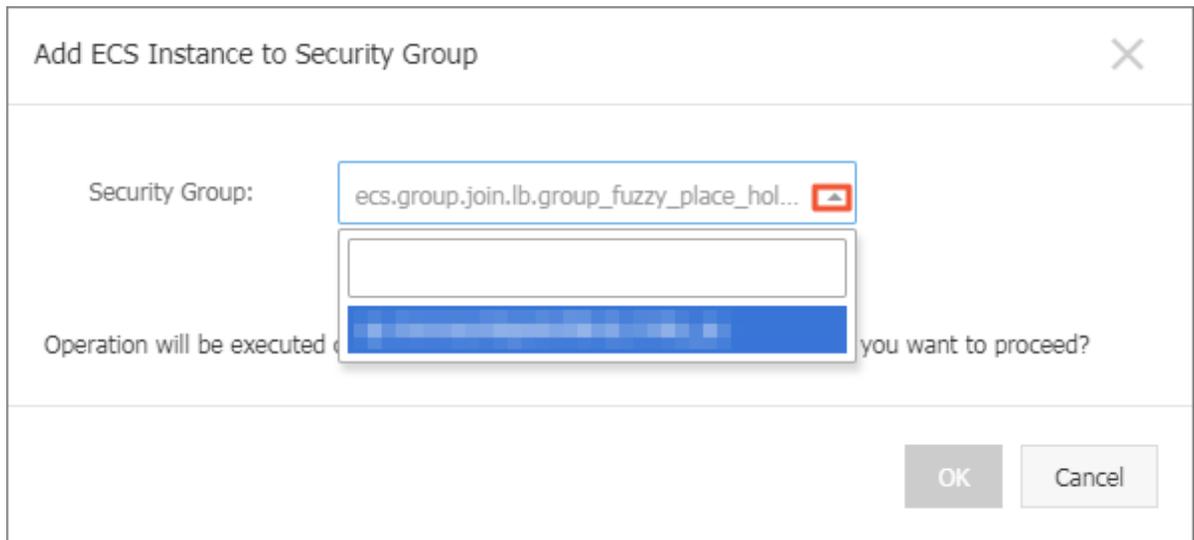


7. In the Elastic Compute Service console, click Instances in the left-side navigation pane.

8. On the Instances page, choose More > Network and Security Group > Add to Security Group in the Actions column of the target instance.



9. Click the drop-down arrow on the right of the Security Group box, and enter the cluster security group name obtained in step 6.

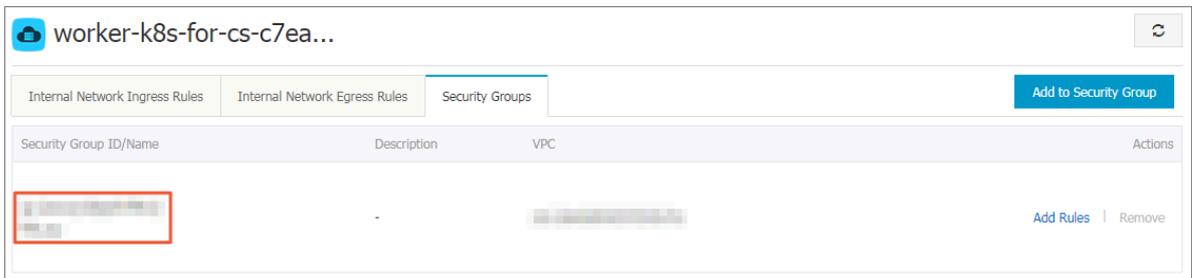


10. Click OK.

**Verify the results**

1. In the left-side navigation pane of the Elastic Computer Service console, click Instances and then click the target instance.
2. In the left-side navigation pane, click Security Groups.

3. The Security Groups area shows that the target ECS instance has been added to the security group to which the Kubernetes cluster belongs.



# 11 Release management

## 11.1 Manage a Helm-based release

Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes is integrated with the package management tool Helm to help you quickly deploy applications on the cloud.

However, Helm charts can be released multiple times and the release version must be managed. Container Service for Kubernetes provides a release function, which allows you to manage the applications released by using Helm in the Container Service console.

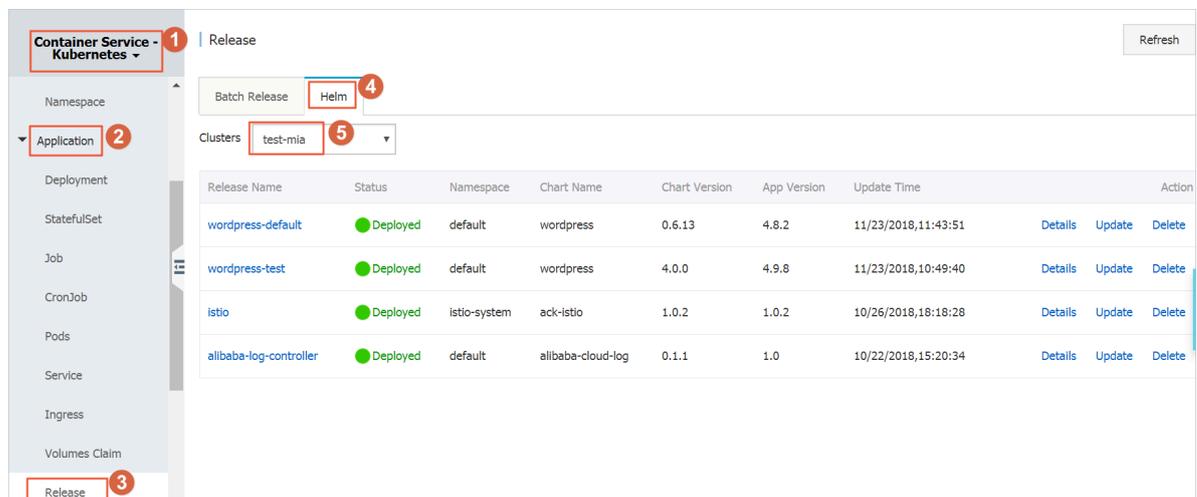
### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have installed a Helm application by using the App Catalog function or Service Catalog function. For more information, see [#unique\\_152](#). In this topic, the wordpress-default application is used as an example.

### View release details

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane, select Container Service - Kubernetes. Then, select Application > Release and click the Helm tab. Select the target cluster from the Clusters drop-down list.

In the displayed release list, you can view the applications and services released through Helm in the selected cluster.



The screenshot shows the Container Service console interface for managing Helm releases. The left navigation pane has 'Release' selected (3). The top navigation bar has 'Helm' selected (4). The 'Clusters' dropdown menu is set to 'test-mia' (5). The main area displays a table of releases with the following data:

Release Name	Status	Namespace	Chart Name	Chart Version	App Version	Update Time	Action
wordpress-default	Deployed	default	wordpress	0.6.13	4.8.2	11/23/2018,11:43:51	Details Update Delete
wordpress-test	Deployed	default	wordpress	4.0.0	4.9.8	11/23/2018,10:49:40	Details Update Delete
istio	Deployed	istio-system	ack-istio	1.0.2	1.0.2	10/26/2018,18:18:28	Details Update Delete
alibaba-log-controller	Deployed	default	alibaba-cloud-log	0.1.1	1.0	10/22/2018,15:20:34	Details Update Delete

- Find your target release (wordpress-default in this example) and click Details to view the release details.

You can view such release details as the current version and history version. In this example, the current version is 1 and no history version exists. On the Resource tab page, you can view the resource information of wordpress-default, such as the resource name and the resource type, and view the YAML information.



#### Note:

You can view the running status of the resource in details by clicking the resource name and going to the Kubernetes dashboard page.

Resource	Kind	Values
wordpress-default-mariadb	Secret	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-wordpress	Secret	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-mariadb	ConfigMap	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-mariadb	PersistentVolumeClaim	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-wordpress	PersistentVolumeClaim	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-mariadb	Service	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-wordpress	Service	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-mariadb	Deployment	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-wordpress	Deployment	<a href="#">View YAML</a>

- Click the Values tab to view the release parameters.

```

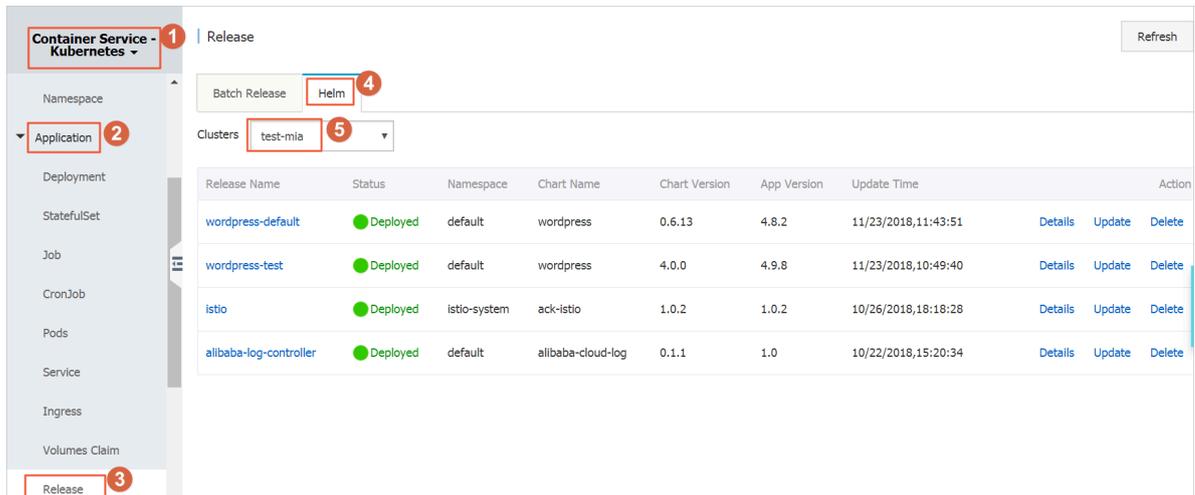
1 ## Bitnami WordPress image version
2 ## ref: https://hub.docker.com/r/bitnami/wordpress/tags/
3 ##
4 image: bitnami/wordpress:4.8.2-r0
5
6 ## Specify a imagePullPolicy
7 ## ref: http://kubernetes.io/docs/user-guide/images/#pre-pulling-images
8 ##
9 imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
10
11 ## User of the application
12 ## ref: https://github.com/bitnami/bitnami-docker-wordpress#environment-variables
13 ##
14 wordpressUsername: user
15
16 ## Application password
17 ## Defaults to a random 10-character alphanumeric string if not set
18 ## ref: https://github.com/bitnami/bitnami-docker-wordpress#environment-variables
19 ##
20 # wordpressPassword:
21
22 ## Admin email
23 ## ref: https://github.com/bitnami/bitnami-docker-wordpress#environment-variables
24 ##
25 wordpressEmail: user@example.com
  
```

## Update a release version

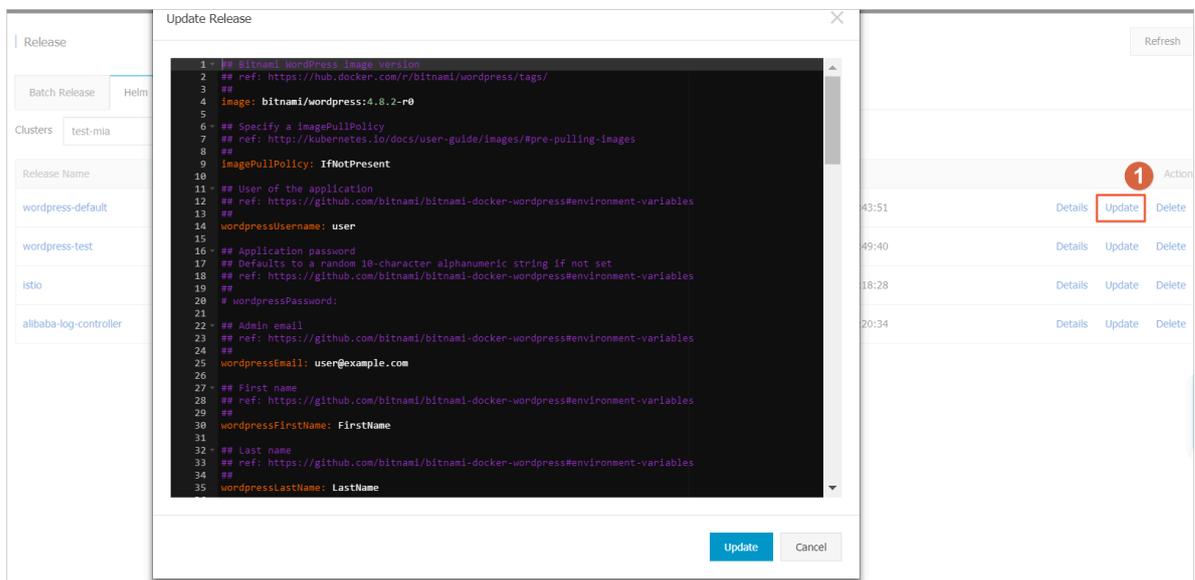
- Log on to the [Container Service console](#).

- In the left-side navigation pane, select Container Service - Kubernetes. Then, select Application > Release and click the Helm tab. Select the target cluster from the Clusters drop-down list.

In the displayed release list, you can view the applications and services released through Helm in the selected cluster.



- Find your target release (wordpress-default in this example). Click Update and the Update Release dialog box appears.



#### 4. Modify the parameters and then click Update.

Update Release ✕

```
124 ##
125 # tls:
126 # - secretName: wordpress.local-tls
127 #   hosts:
128 #     - wordpress.local
129
130 ## Enable persistence using Persistent Volume Claims
131 ## ref: http://kubernetes.io/docs/user-guide/persistent-volumes/
132 ##
133 persistence:
134   enabled: true
135   ## wordpress data Persistent Volume Storage Class
136   ## If defined, storageClassName: <storageClass>
137   ## If set to "-", storageClassName: "", which disables dynamic provisioning
138   ## If undefined (the default) or set to null, no storageClassName spec is
139   ## set, choosing the default provisioner. (gp2 on AWS, standard on
140   ## GKE, AWS & OpenStack)
141   ##
142   storageClass: "alicloud-disk-efficiency"
143   accessMode: ReadWriteOnce
144   size: 20Gi
145
146 ## Configure resource requests and limits
147 ## ref: http://kubernetes.io/docs/user-guide/compute-resources/
148 ##
149 resources:
150   requests:
151     memory: 512Mi
152     cpu: 300m
153
154 ## Node labels for pod assignment
155 ## Ref: https://kubernetes.io/docs/user-guide/node-selection/
156 ##
157 nodeSelector: {}
158
```

Update Cancel

On the release list page, you can see that the current version changes to 2. To roll back to version 1, click Details and in the History Version area, click Rollback.

Current Version

Release Name : wordpress-default    Namespace : default    Deployed at : 04/20/2018,17:45:35

Current Version : 2 Time Updated : 04/20/2018,17:45:46

Resource	Kind	Values
wordpress-default-mariadb	Secret	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-wordpress	Secret	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-mariadb	ConfigMap	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-mariadb	PersistentVolumeClaim	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-wordpress	PersistentVolumeClaim	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-mariadb	Service	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-wordpress	Service	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-mariadb	Deployment	<a href="#">View YAML</a>
wordpress-default-wordpress	Deployment	<a href="#">View YAML</a>

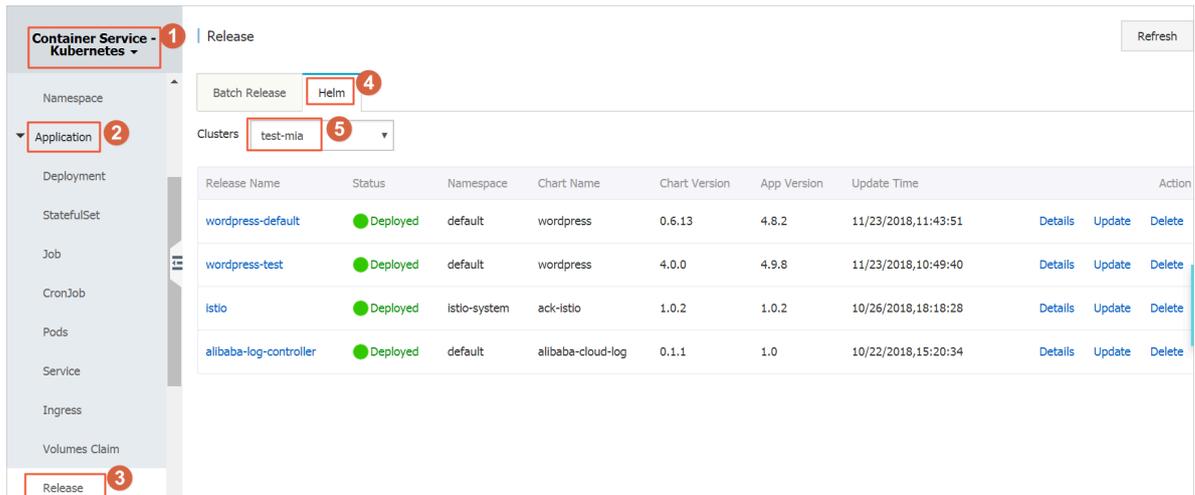
History Version

Version : 1 Rollback Time Updated : 04/20/2018,17:45:35

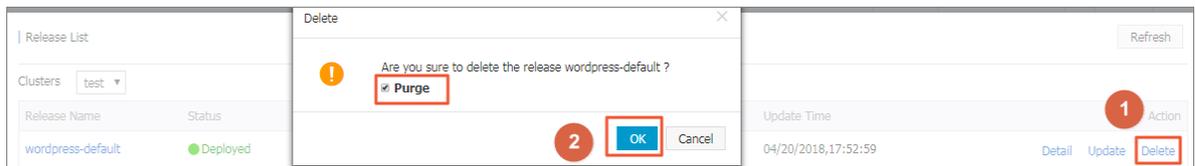
## Delete a release

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane, select Container Service - Kubernetes. Then, select Application > Release and click the Helm tab. Select the target cluster from the Clusters drop-down list.

In the displayed release list, you can view the applications and services released through Helm in the selected cluster.



3. Find your target release (wordpress-default in this example). Click Delete and the Delete dialog box appears.



4. Select the Purge check box if you want to clear the release records, and then click OK. After you delete a release, the related resources such as the services and deployments are deleted too.

## 11.2 Use batch release on Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes

You can use Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes to release application versions in batches, achieving fast version verification and rapid iteration of applications.

### Context

**Note:**

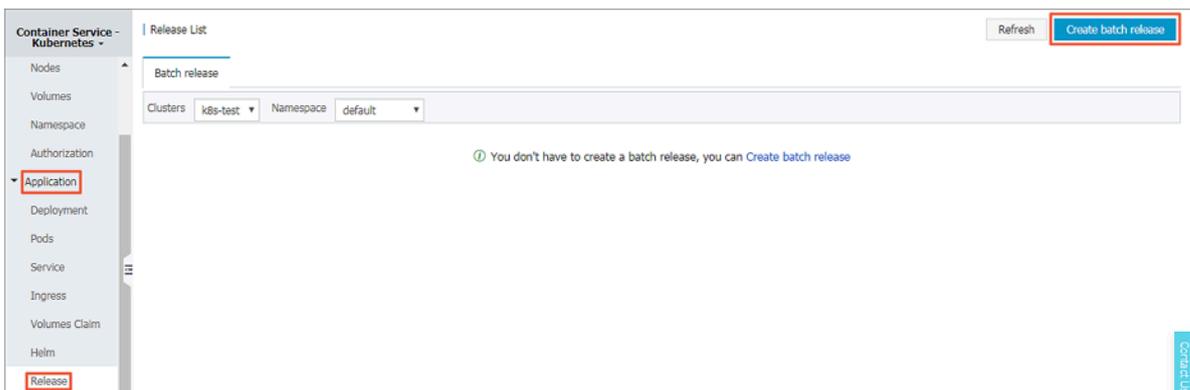
The latest Kubernetes cluster has installed alicloud-application-controller by default. For older versions of clusters, only versions of 1.9.3 and later are currently supported, and you can upgrade old versions of clusters through the prompt link on the console.

**Procedure**

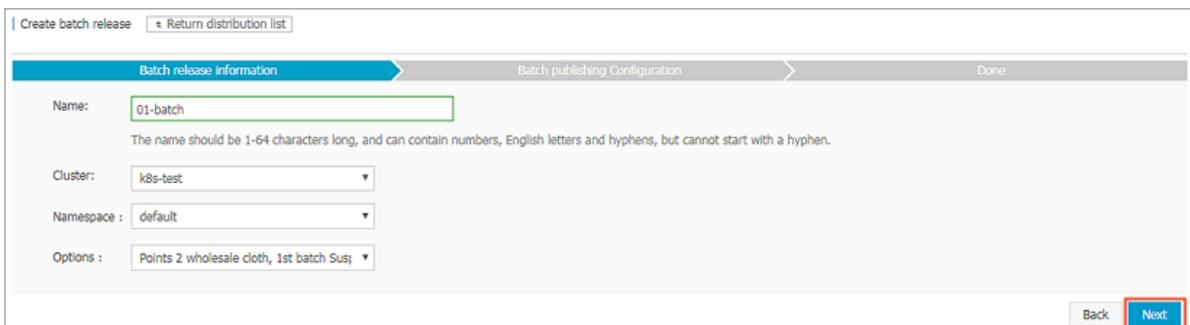
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click **Application > Release** in the left-side navigation pane. Click **Create batch release** in the upper-right corner.

**Note:**

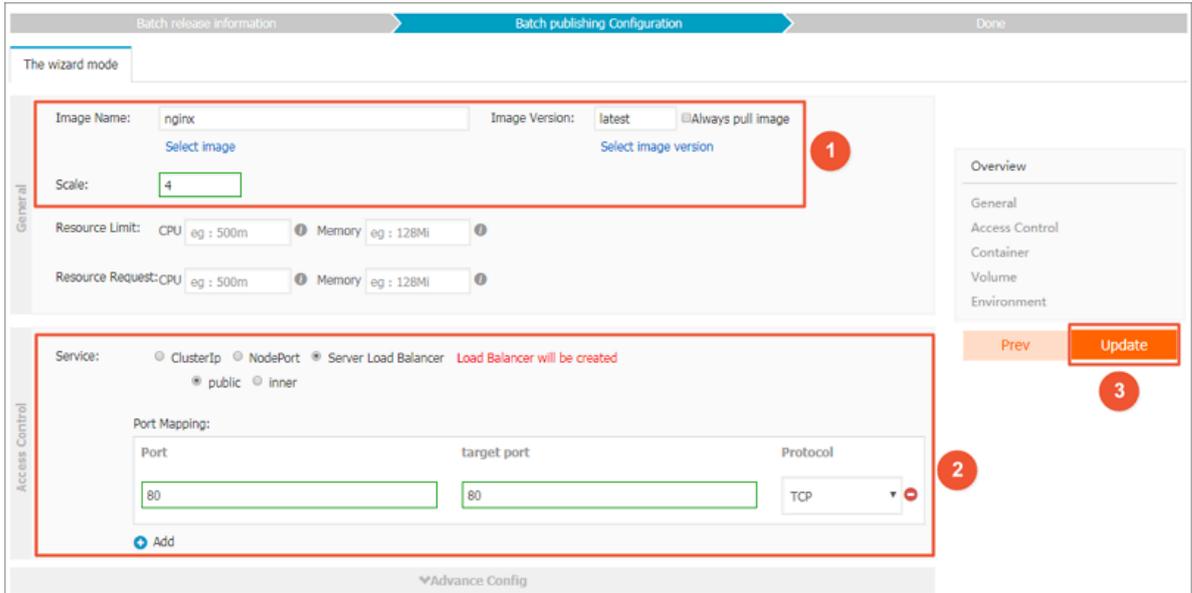
If the button is gray, you can upgrade the cluster by following the upgrade link.



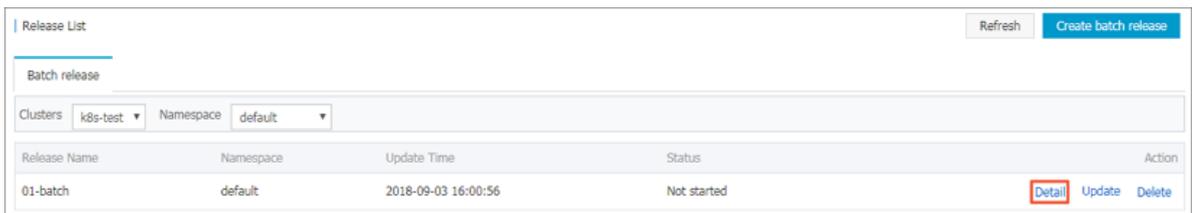
3. Configure batch release information, including the application name, cluster, namespace, and options. Click **Next**.



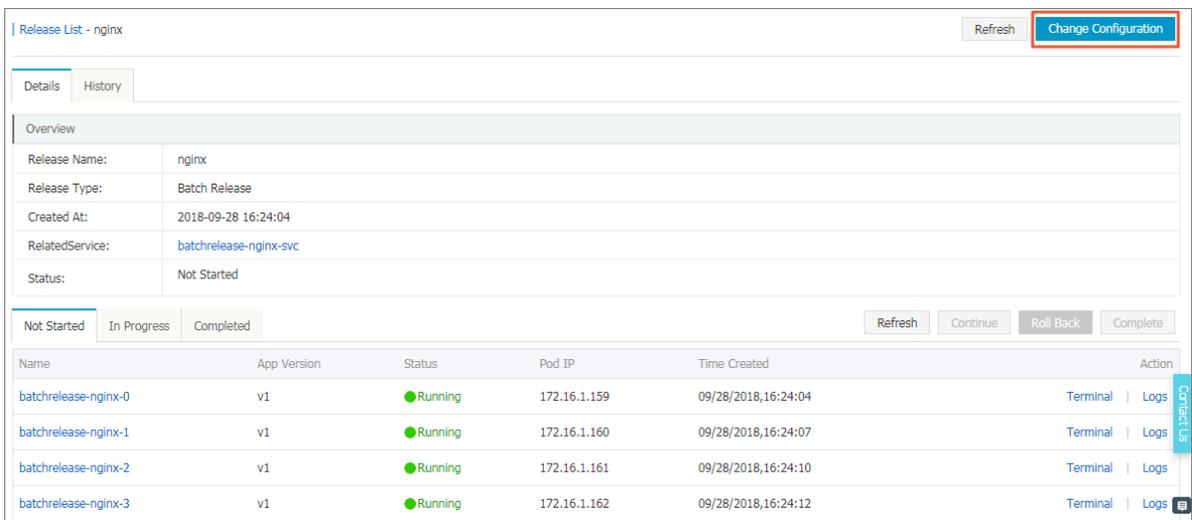
- On the batch publishing configuration page, configure the backend pod and service, and then click Update to create an application.



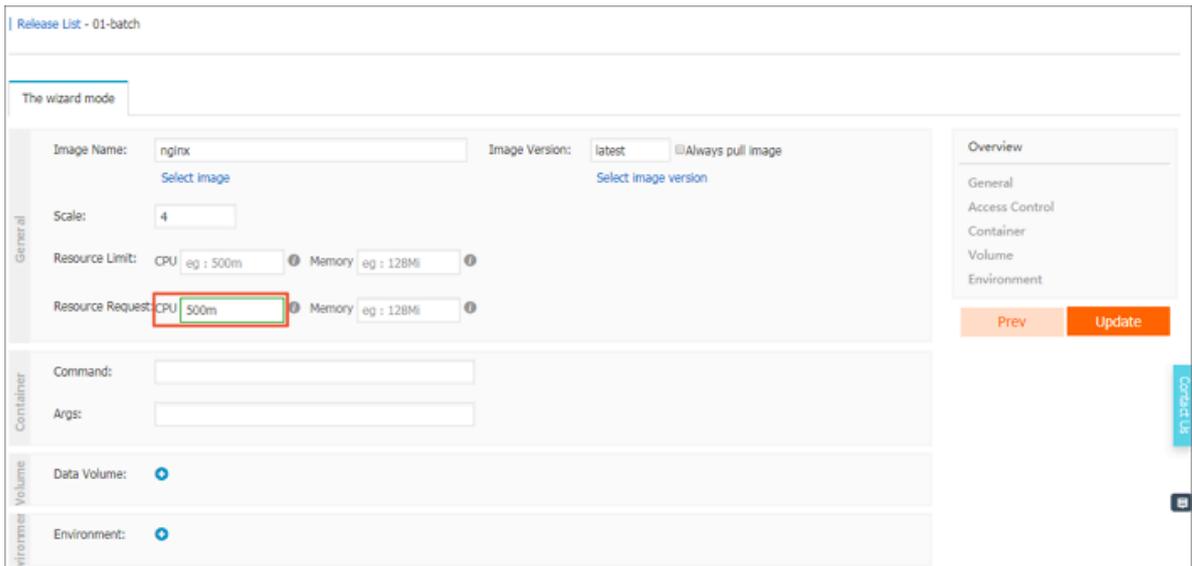
- Return to the release list, an application is displayed in the Not started status. Click Detail on the right.



- On the application detail page, you can view more information. Click Change Configuration in the upper-right corner of the page to make a batch release change.



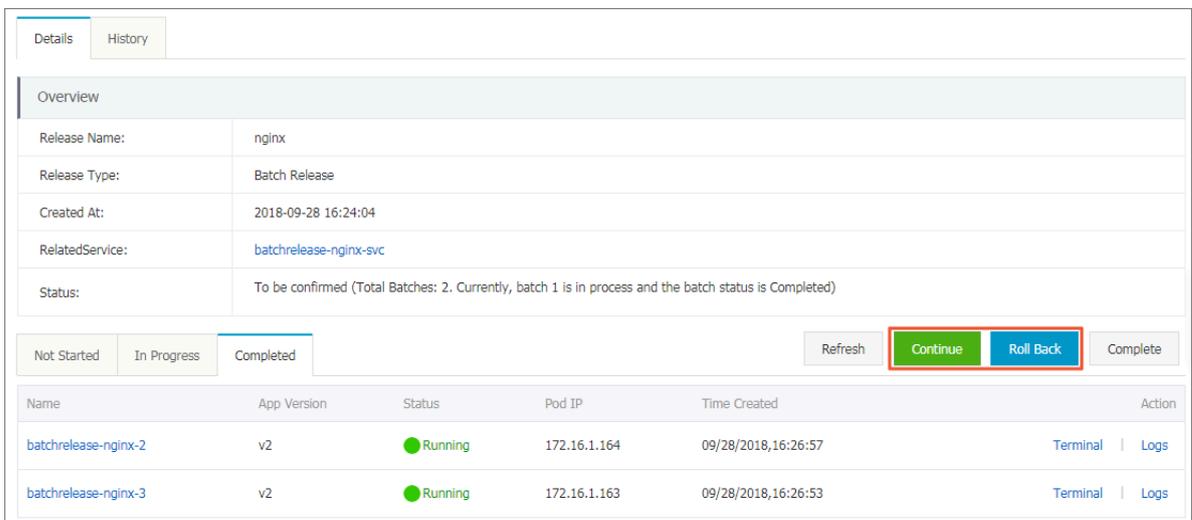
7. Configure changes for the new version of the application, and then click Update.



8. By default, you return to the release list page, where you can view the batch release status of the application. After completing the first deployment, click Detail.



9. You can see that the Not Started list is has two pods and the Completed list has two pods, which indicates that the first batch has been completed in batch release. Click Continue, you can release the second batch of pods. Click Roll Back to roll back to the previous version.



10. When completing the release, click **History** to roll back to history versions.



### What's next

You can use batch release to quickly verify your application version without traffic consumption. Batch release is more resource-saving than blue-green release. Currently, batch release can be performed on only web pages. The yaml file editing is to be opened later to support more complex operations.

# 12 Namespace management

## 12.1 Create a namespace

This topic describes how to create a namespace.

### Prerequisites

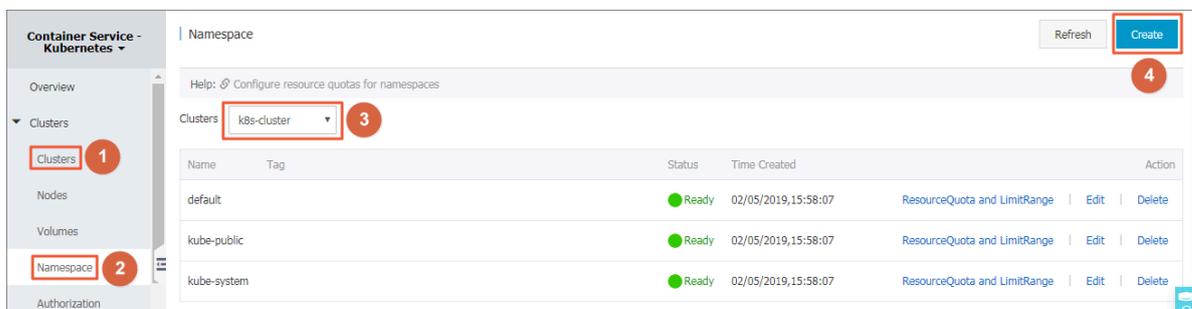
You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).

### Context

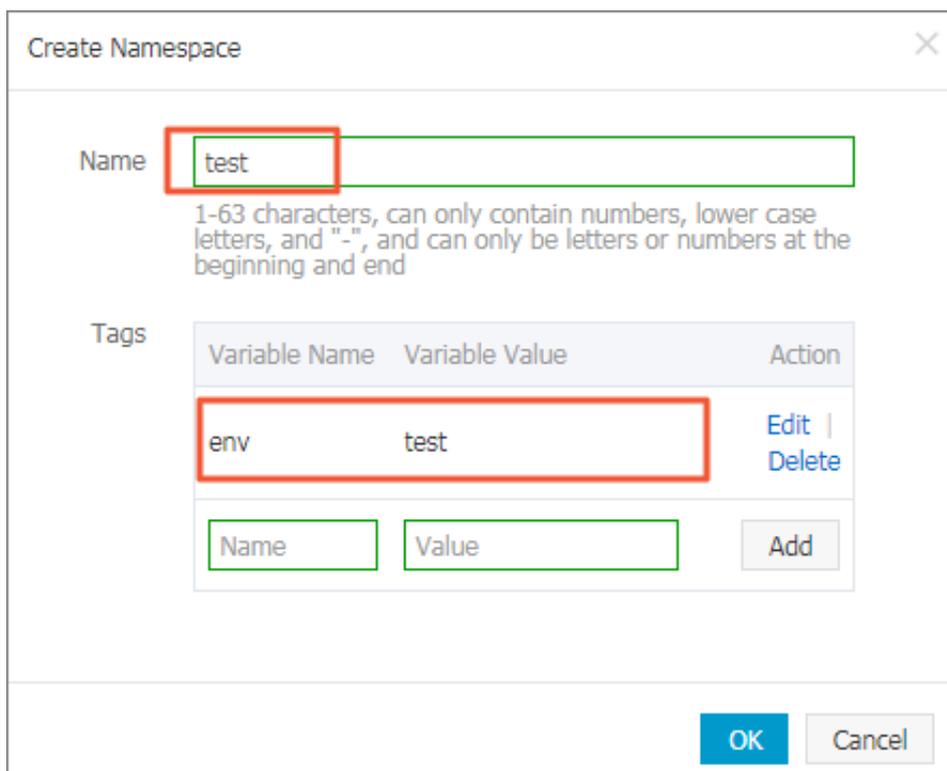
In a Kubernetes cluster, you can use namespaces to create multiple virtual spaces. When a large number of users share a cluster, multiple namespaces can be used to effectively divide different work spaces and assign cluster resources to different tasks. Furthermore, you can use [resource quotas](#) to assign resources to each namespace.

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Namespace.
3. Select the target cluster, and then click Create in the upper-right corner.



4. In the displayed dialog box, set a namespace.

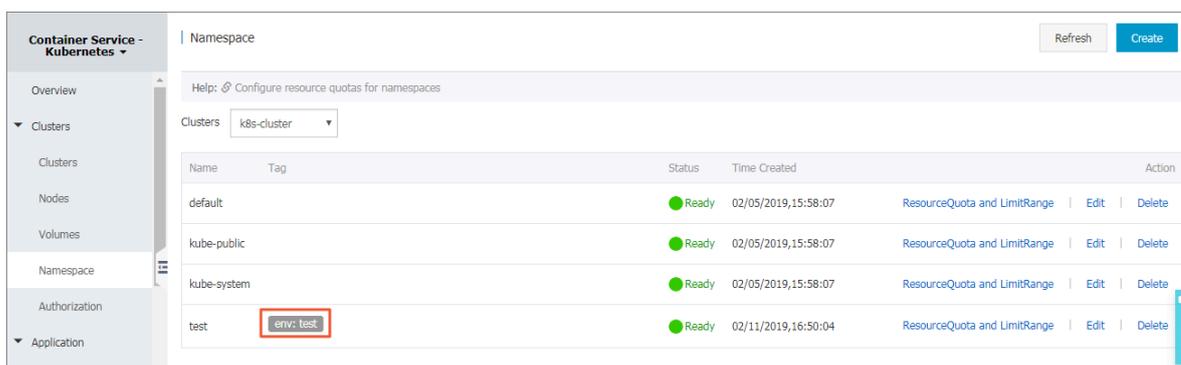


- **Name:** Enter a name for the namespace name. The name must be 1 to 63 characters in length and can contain numbers, letters, and hyphens (-). It must start and end with a letter or number. In this example, test is used as the name.
- **Tags:** Add one or multiple tags to the namespace to identify the characteristics of the namespace. For example, you can set a tag to identify that this namespace is used for the test environment.

You can enter a variable name and a variable value, and then click Add on the right to add a tag to the namespace.

5. Click OK.

6. The namespace named test is displayed in the namespace list.



## 12.2 Set resource quotas and limits for a namespace

This topic describes how to set resource quotas and limits for a namespace through the Container Services console.

### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have created a namespace. In this topic, a namespace named test is used. For more information, see [#unique\\_157](#).
- You have connected to the Master node of the cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_26](#).

### Context

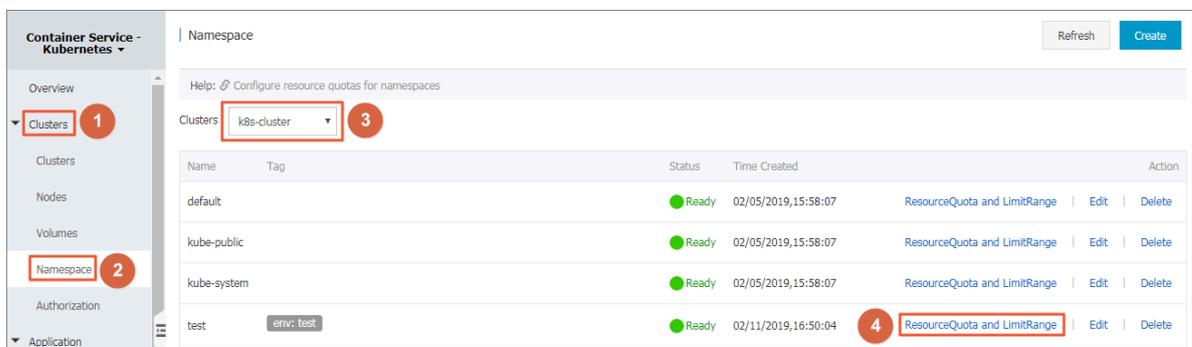
By default, a running pod uses the CPU and memory resources of nodes without limit. That is, any pod can use the computing resources of the cluster without restraint. Therefore, pods of a namespace may deplete the cluster resources.

Namespaces can be used as virtual clusters to serve multiple users. Therefore, setting resource quotas for a namespace is regarded as a best practice.

For a namespace, you can set the quotas of resources, such as CPU, memory, and number of pods. For more information, see [Resource quotas](#).

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Namespace. Select the target cluster and click ResourceQuota and LimitRange on the right of the test namespace.



**3. In the displayed dialog box, set resource quotas and default resource limits.**



**Note:**

After setting CPU/memory quotas for a namespace, you must specify CPU/memory resource limits or set the default resource limits for the namespace when creating a pod. For more information, see [Resource quotas](#).

a) Set resource quotas for the namespace.

ResourceQuota and LimitRange
✕

**Tip:** After setting the CPU/memory quota (ResourceQuota) for the namespace, you must specify the CPU/memory resource limit when configuring Pods, or configure the default resource limit (LimitRange) for the namespace. For details, please refer to: [Resource Quotas](#)

ResourceQuota

LimitRange

^ **Compute Resource Quota**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CPU Limit	Total	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text" value="2"/>	Core(s)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Memory Limit	Total	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text" value="4Gi"/>	<span>?</span>

^ **Storage Resource Quota**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	storage	Total	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text" value="1024Gi"/>	<span>?</span>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	persistentvolumeclaims	Total	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text" value="50"/>	

^ **Object Count Quota**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	configmaps	Total	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text" value="100"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Pods	Total	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text" value="50"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	services	Total	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text" value="20"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	services.loadbalancers	Total	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text" value="5"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	secrets	Total	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text" value="10"/>

OK

Cancel

b) To control the amount of resources consumed by containers, set resource limits and resource requests for containers in this namespace. For more information, see <https://kubernetes.io/memory-default-namespace/>.

ResourceQuota and LimitRange
✕

**Tip:** After setting the CPU/memory quota (ResourceQuota) for the namespace, you must specify the CPU/memory resource limit when configuring Pods, or configure the default resource limit (LimitRange) for the namespace. For details, please refer to: [Resource Quotas](#)

ResourceQuota

LimitRange

	CPU		Memory <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">?</span>
Limit	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="0.5"/>	Core(s)	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="512Mi"/>
Request	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="0.1"/>	Core(s)	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="256Mi"/>

OK
Cancel

4. Connect to the Master node and then run the following commands to view the resources of the test namespace:

```
# kubectl get limitrange , ResourceQuota -n test
NAME      AGE
limitrange / limits      8m

NAME      AGE
resourcequota / quota    8m

# kubectl describe limitrange / limits resourcequota /
quota -n test
Name:      limits
Namespace: test
Type      Resource  Min  Max  Default  Request  Default  Limit
Max      Limit / Request  Ratio
-----
Container  cpu      - - 100m  500m  -
Container  memory  - - 256Mi 512Mi  -

Name:      quota
Namespace: test
Resource  Used  Hard
-----
configmaps  0    100
limits.cpu  0    2
limits.memory  0    4Gi
persistent volumeclaims  0    50
pods        0    50
requests.storage  0    1Ti
secrets     1    10
services    0    20
```

```
services . loadbalanc ers 0 5
```

## 12.3 Edit a namespace

This topic describes how to edit a namespace.

### Prerequisites

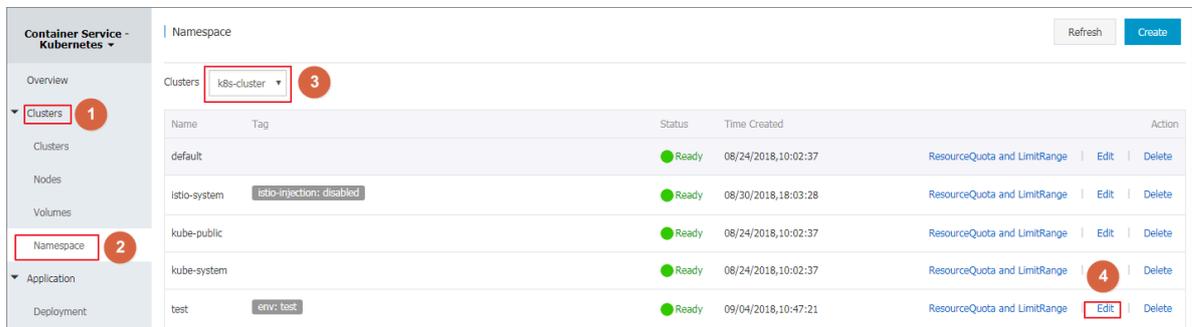
- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have created a namespace. In this topic, a namespace named test is used. For more information, see [#unique\\_157](#).

### Context

Editing a namespace means to add, modify, or delete the details of a namespace tag.

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Namespace.
3. Select the target cluster and then click Edit on the right of the target namespace tag.



4. In the displayed dialog box, click Edit to modify the namespace tag. For example, change the tag to `env : test - V2` and click Save.

**Edit Namespace**

Name:

1-63 characters, can only contain numbers, lower case letters, and "-", and can only be letters or numbers at the beginning and end

Variable Name	Variable Value	Action
<input type="text" value="env"/>	<input type="text" value="test-V2"/>	Save   Delete

5. Click OK. The edited namespace tag is then displayed in the namespace list.

Namespace

Clusters:

Name	Tag	Status	Time Created	Action
default		Ready	08/24/2018,10:02:37	ResourceQuota and LimitRange   Edit   Delete
istio-system	istio-injection: disabled	Ready	08/30/2018,18:03:28	ResourceQuota and LimitRange   Edit   Delete
kube-public		Ready	08/24/2018,10:02:37	ResourceQuota and LimitRange   Edit   Delete
kube-system		Ready	08/24/2018,10:02:37	ResourceQuota and LimitRange   Edit   Delete
test	env: test-V2	Ready	09/04/2018,10:47:21	ResourceQuota and LimitRange   Edit   Delete

## 12.4 Delete a namespace

This topic describes how to delete a namespace you no longer require.

### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have created a namespace. In this topic, a namespace named test is used. For more information, see [#unique\\_157](#).

## Context

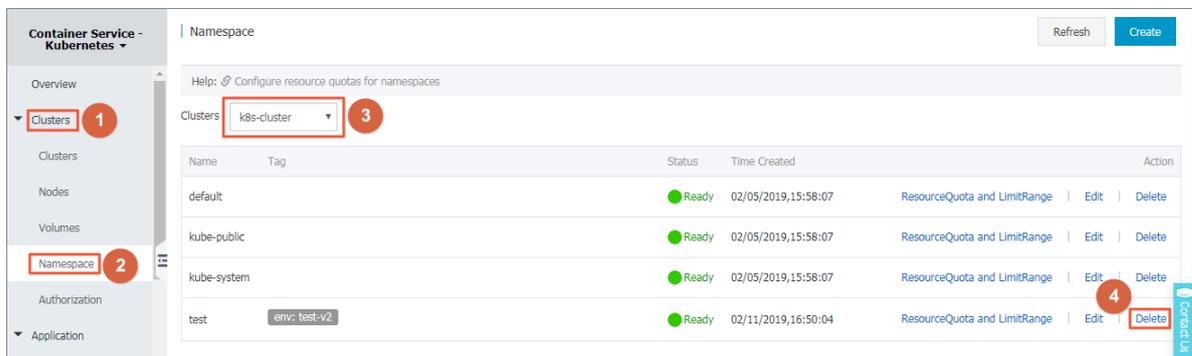


### Note:

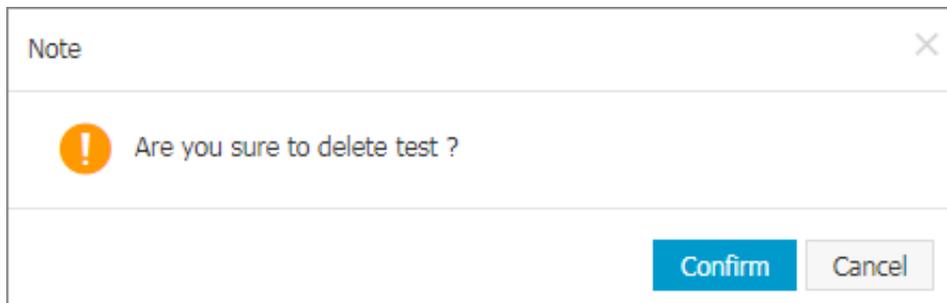
Deleting a namespace also deletes all of its resource objects. Exercise caution when performing this action.

## Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Namespace.
3. Select the target cluster and then click Delete on the right of the cluster.



4. In the displayed dialog box, click Confirm.



5. The namespace is then deleted from the namespace list, and its resource objects are also deleted.

## 13 Istio management

---

### 13.1 Deploy Istio on Kubernetes clusters across multiple regions

This topic describes how to deploy Istio on Kubernetes clusters created with Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes (ACK) across multiple regions. Istio enables you to manage all of the traffic destined for these clusters. For example, if a Kubernetes cluster near to you fails or is overloaded, Istio deployed with such a method can seamlessly redirect the traffic destined for the cluster to another available cluster.

#### Prerequisites

- A Kubernetes cluster is created with ACK. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- An Alibaba Cloud account is obtained, or a RAM user that is granted with required permissions is obtained.



#### Note:

For example, you can set the `cluster - admin` role for a RAM user to grant corresponding permissions to the RAM user. For more information, see [#unique\\_12](#).

- If you use a Flat network or VPN to deploy Istio on multiple Kubernetes clusters, the clusters must be located in the same VPC.
- If you do not use a Flat network or VPN to deploy Istio on multiple Kubernetes clusters, the clusters can be located in different VPCs. In this case, the VPCs must be connected by using Cloud Enterprise Network (CEN) or Express Connect.
- A network is planned to ensure that the pod CIDR blocks, service CIDR blocks, and VPC CIDR blocks of involved Kubernetes clusters do not overlap with each other.



#### Note:

In this topic, the Flat network or VPN is used to deploy Istio on multiple Kubernetes clusters.

- The Kubernetes cluster version is 1.10.4 or later. Any earlier version does not support Istio. Therefore, you must upgrade any earlier version to 1.10.4 or later.

- At least three Worker nodes are set for the Kubernetes cluster.

## Procedure

### Step 1: Set the network for the target Kubernetes clusters

- To enable Kubernetes clusters located in the same VPC to communicate with each other, add security group rules.



#### Note:

- By default, Kubernetes clusters located in the same VPC that belong to different security groups, which in turn causes them to be unable to communicate with each other.
- To allow multiple security groups in the VPC to communicate with each other, you must manually configure rules to allow them to communicate with each other.

- For more information, see [#unique\\_162](#).

**Add Security Group Rule**

NIC: Internal Network

Rule Direction: Ingress

Action: Allow

Protocol Type: All

\* Port Range: -1/-1

Priority: 1

Authorization Type: Security Group

Allow Current Account

Allow Other Accounts

\* Authorization Objects:

Description:

It can be 2 to 256 characters in length and cannot start with http:// or https://.

OK Cancel

• To enable Kubernetes clusters located in the different VPCs to communicate with each other, complete the following settings:

- Connect the VPCs by using a CEN instance, Express Connect, or a VPN gateway.

 **Note:**

- We recommend that you use a CEN instance because configuring this instance type is relatively easy and because this instance type can

automatically distribute and learn routes. For more information, see [#unique\\_163](#).

■ When a Kubernetes cluster is created, the default CIDR block 192.168.0.0/16 is used to create the VPC for the Kubernetes cluster. Therefore, you must set different CIDR blocks to create the VPCs for Kubernetes clusters.

- Add security group rules to the security groups to which the Kubernetes clusters belong.



Note:

For more information, see [#unique\\_162](#).

- Add a security group rule to the security group on the data plane to allow access from the CIDR block where the control plane belongs.
- Add a security group rule to the security group on the control plane to allow access from the CIDR block where the data plan belongs.

### Step 2: Deploy Istio through the Clusters page

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Clusters.
3. Find the target cluster. Then, in the Action column, choose More > Deploy Istio.

Cluster Name/ID	Cluster Type	Region (All)	Network Type	Cluster Status	Number of Nodes	Time Created	Kubernetes Version	Action
[Redacted]	Kubernetes	China North 2 (Beijing)	VPC vpc-2ze6cfm15d...	Running	6	10/22/2018,19:41:50	1.11.2	<a href="#">Manage</a>   <a href="#">View Logs</a>   <a href="#">Dashboard</a> <a href="#">Scale Cluster</a>   <a href="#">More</a>
[Redacted]	Kubernetes	China North 2 (Beijing)	VPC vpc-2ze8sk2raka...	Failed to delete	4	09/18/2018,14:00:45	1.11.2	<a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Add Existing Instance</a> <a href="#">Upgrade Cluster</a> <a href="#">Automatic Scaling</a> <a href="#">Addon Upgrade</a> <a href="#">Deploy Istio</a>

4. To deploy Istio on multiple Kubernetes clusters, set the following two parameters in addition to the parameters required to [deploy Istio on a Kubernetes cluster](#):

- **Enable locality based service routing:** Select this check box to route requests to the Kubernetes cluster located in the region nearest to the region where the request are sent from. By default, this check box is not selected.
- **Multiple clusters with a Single Control Plane:**
  - **Disable:** Do not enable the multi-cluster mode.
  - **Use Flat Networks or VPNs:** Use Flat networks or VPNs to enable pods of different Kubernetes cluster to communicate with each other.
  - **No Flat Network or VPN:** Only use gateways to enable mutual communication for different Kubernetes clusters.

5. Click Deploy Istio.

The page shows the deployment progress and status in real time.

Step	Status	
Create Istio Resource Definition	<span style="color: green;">●</span> Succeeded	53 / 53
Deploy Istio	<span style="color: green;">⚙️</span> Running	

Deploy Istio

Verify the result

- a. In the left-side navigation pane, choose Application > Pods.
- b. Select the target cluster and namespace to view the pods on which Istio is deployed.

Name	Status	max attempts	Pod IP	Node	Time Created	CPU	Memory	Details
grafana-7bfddf49c7-cm7zv grafana-istio:6.0.2	Running	0			06/29/2019,17:47:36	0.002	29.734 Mi	Details
istio-citadel-b8db64857-q99m8 citadel:1.1.8	Running	0			06/29/2019,17:47:25	0.001	11.887 Mi	Details
istio-galley-7c5f8967b6-sqloxx galley:1.1.8	Running	0			06/29/2019,17:47:25	0.061	17.883 Mi	Details
istio-ingressgateway-54d67b554f-lrjqd proxyv2:1.1.8	Running	0			06/29/2019,17:47:36	0.006	48.133 Mi	Details
istio-init-operator-77c9675ff-4mdcj istio-operator.v1.1.8.12-g95f4b6f9-aliyun	Running	0			06/29/2019,17:46:47	0.019	39.879 Mi	Details
istio-pilot-7f6c8ff-rsq2d pilot:1.1.8	Running	0			06/29/2019,17:47:25	0.005	38.148 Mi	Details

Step 3: Manage the ingress gateway of Istio

Run the `kubectl get service -n istio-system -l istio=ingressgateway` command to obtain the Internet IP address of the ingress gateway.



Note:

The Istio deployed in the preceding steps contains an ingress gateway that uses an Internet IP address to provide load balancing services. Applications that run in the Kubernetes clusters can be accessed through this IP address.

```

✓ kubectl get service -n istio-system -l istio=ingressgateway
NAME                                TYPE                CLUSTER-IP          EXTERNAL-IP          PORT(S)
istio-ingressgateway               LoadBalancer        10.10.10.10         10.10.10.10         15020:31040/TCP,80:31380/TCP,443:31390/TCP,15443:30221/TCP
AGE                                  6d22h

```

#### Step 4: Add the cluster where the data plane runs into Istio

1. In the Kubernetes cluster where the data plane of Istio runs, run the following command to generate a kubeconfig file:

```

kubectl create namespace istio-system
kubectl apply -f http://istio.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/istio-operator/rbac.yml
wget http://istio.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/istio-operator/generate-kubeconfig.sh
chmod +x generate-kubeconfig.sh
./generate-kubeconfig.sh ${CLUSTER_NAME}

```



#### Note:

The `${CLUSTER_NAME}` must be unique in the service mesh.

2. In the Kubernetes cluster where the control plane of Istio runs, run the following command:

```

wget http://istio.oss-cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/istio-operator/create-secret.sh
chmod +x create-secret.sh
./create-secret.sh ${CLUSTER_NAME}

```

3. In the Kubernetes cluster where the control plane of Istio runs, create a file `${CLUSTER_NAME}.yaml` and copy the following code into the file:

```

apiVersion: istio.alibabacloud.com/v1beta1
kind: RemoteIstio
metadata:
  name: ${CLUSTER_NAME}
  namespace: istio-system
spec:
  autoInjectNamespaces:
  - default
  dockerImage:
    region: cn-beijing
  gateways:
    k8singress: {}
    hub: registry.cn-beijing.aliyuncs.com/aliacs-app-catalog
  includeIPRanges: '*'
  proxy: {}
  security: {}
  sidecarInjector:
    enabled: true

```

```
replicaCount : 1
```

4. Run the `kubectl apply -n istio-system -f ${CLUSTER_NAME}.yaml` command.

### Verify the result

To check if Istio is deployed in the remote Kubernetes cluster, follow these steps:

1. Log on to the remote Kubernetes cluster.
2. In the left-side navigation pane, choose **Application > Pod**.
3. Select the target cluster and namespace to view the pods on which Istio is deployed.

Name	Status	max attempts	Pod IP	Node	Time Created	CPU	Memory	Details
grafana-7bfddf49c7-4ds9l grafana-istio:6.0.2	Running	0		cn-	06/14/2019,11:26:56	0.002	28.176 Mi	Details   More
istio-citadel-b8db64857-sjld7 citadel:1.1.8	Running	0		cn-	06/14/2019,11:26:46	0.002	14.336 Mi	Details   More
istio-egressgateway-9cc456789-cljgw proxyv2:1.1.4	Running	0		cn-	05/22/2019,18:05:29	0.003	40.781 Mi	Details   More
istio-galley-7c5f8967b6-qkb68 galley:1.1.8	Running	2		cn-	06/14/2019,11:26:46	0.081	20.648 Mi	Details   More
istio-ingressgateway-54d67b554f-jkn4z proxyv2:1.1.8	Running	0		cn-	06/14/2019,11:26:58	0.006	29 Mi	Details   More

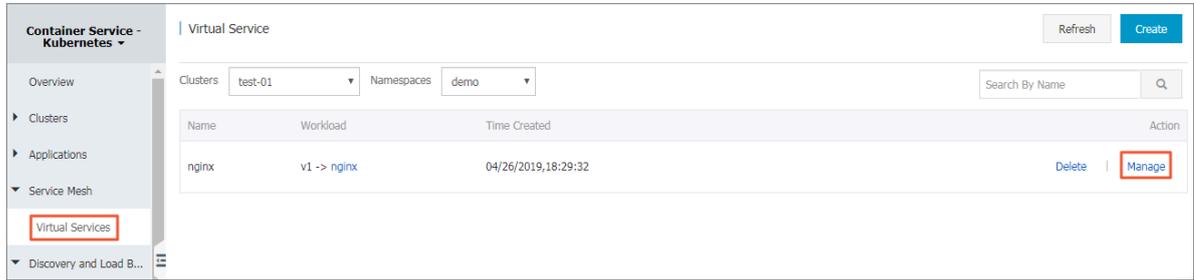
## 13.2 Manage traffic

This topic describes how to manage traffic by using Istio. Specifically, you can use Istio to set corresponding parameters for a load balancing algorithm, session affinity, connection pool, circuit breaker, or faulty injection.

### Before you begin

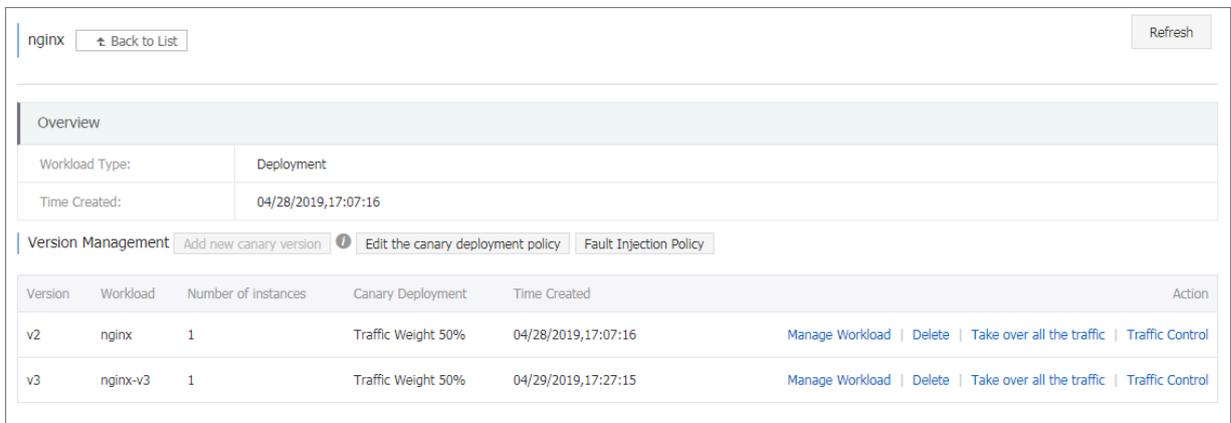
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under **Container Service-Kubernetes**, choose **Service Mesh > Virtual Services**.

3. On the right of the target virtual service, click Manage. Then, you can manage traffic related to the service according to your needs.



### Control traffic

Find the required version of the target virtual service, and then click Traffic Control.



- Set load balancing.

Istio provides two methods to set load balancing: Load Balancer Algorithm and Session Affinity.



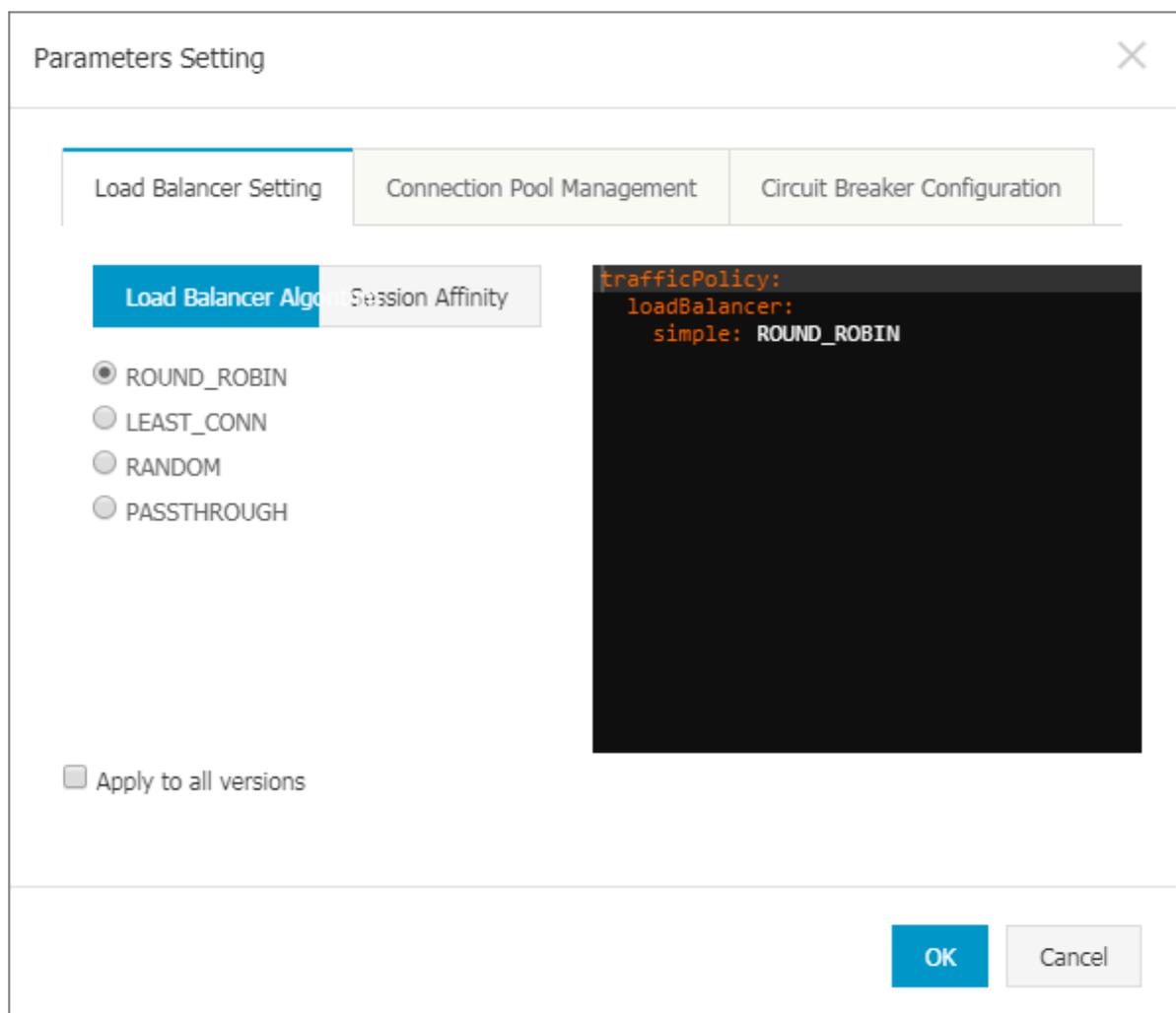
Note:

These two methods are mutually exclusive.

Select a load balancing algorithm according to your needs.

- **ROUND\_ROBIN:** Evenly distributes loads across the endpoints in the load balancing pool. This is the default algorithm used by the Istio proxy.
- **LEAST\_CONN:** Selects two healthy hosts randomly and uses the host with fewer requests to provide service.
- **RANDOM:** Selects one healthy host randomly and evenly distributes loads on the endpoints in the load balancing pool. In the case that you have not set health checks, this is more efficient than ROUND\_ROBIN.
- **PASSTHROUGH:** Forwards requests directly to the IP address specified by the client. For security purposes, we recommend that you exercise caution before implementing this algorithm.

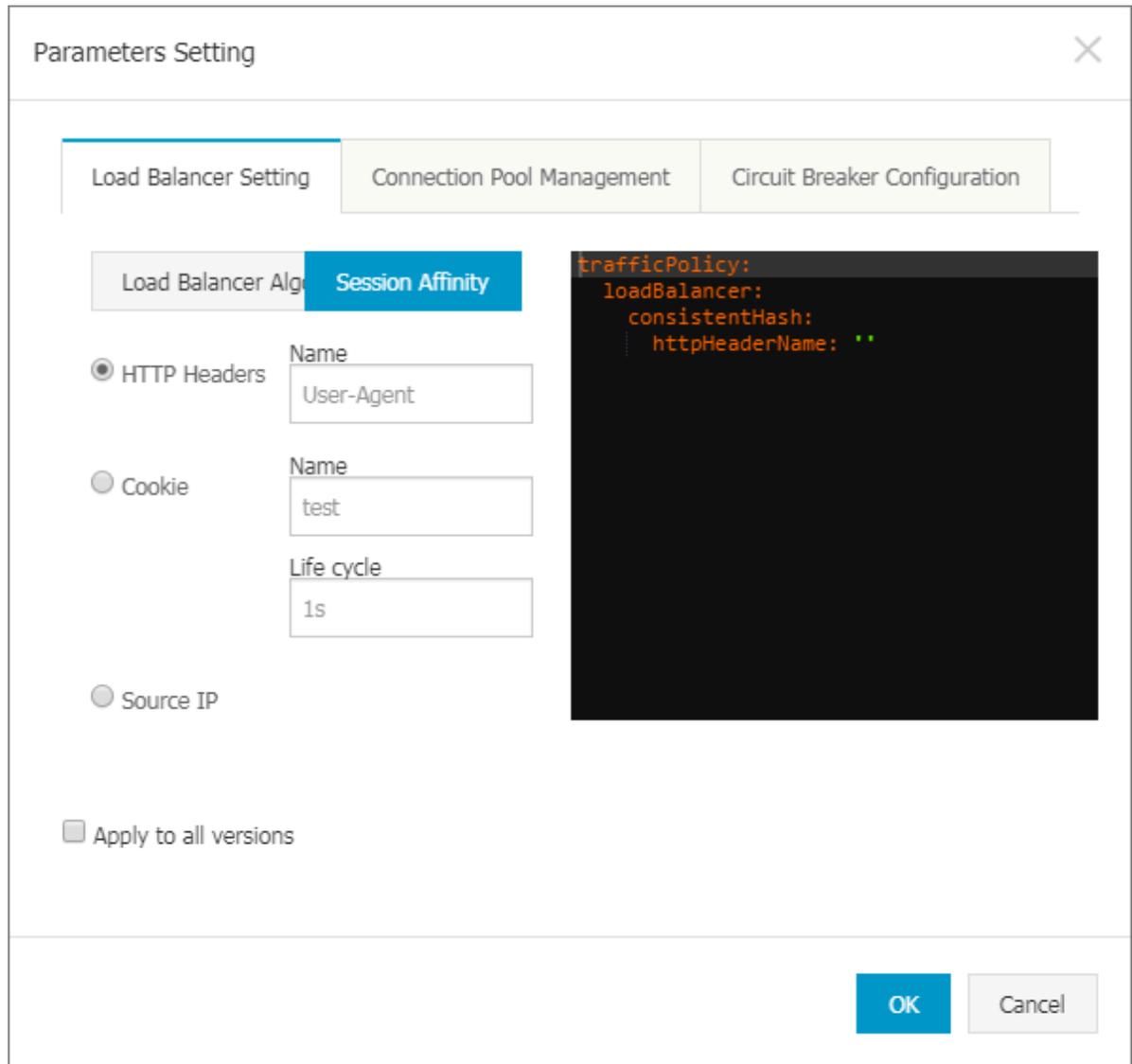
Figure 13-1: Supported load balancing algorithms



Select a type of session affinity according to your needs.

- HTTP Headers: Obtains hashes based on a specific HTTP header.
- Cookie: Obtains hashes based on HTTP cookies.
- Source IP: Obtains hashes based on the source IP addresses.

Figure 13-2: Session affinity options



- **Set a connection pool.**
  - `maxConnections` : Indicates the maximum number of connections that Envoy will create for all the hosts in the upstream clusters. This parameter applies only to the connections that use the TCP or HTTP/1.1 protocol.
  - `connectTimeout` : Indicates the TCP connection timeout. The minimum value of this parameter must be greater than 1 ms. This parameter applies only to the connections that use the TCP or HTTP protocol.
  - `maxRequestsPerConnection` : Indicates the maximum number of requests that are destined for a backend through a connection. Setting this parameter to 1 disables the keep-alive feature. This parameter only applies to the connections that use the HTTP/1.1, HTTP/2, or gRPC protocol.
  - `maxRetries` : Indicates the maximum number of retries of an HTTP request that is sent to a destination host during a specified period of time. The default

value of this parameter is 3. This parameter only applies to the connections that use the HTTP/1.1, HTTP/2, or gRPC protocol.

Parameters Setting
✕

Load Balancer Setting

Connection Pool Management

Circuit Breaker Configuration

Maximum number of HTTP1 /TCP connections		100	<pre> trafficPolicy:   connectionPool:     tcp:       maxConnections: 100       connectTimeout: 100ms     http:       maxRequestsPerConnection: 100       maxRetries: 10   loadBalancer:     simple: ROUND_ROBIN </pre>
Connection Timeout		100ms	
Maximum number of requests per connection		100	
Maximum number of retries		10	

Apply to all versions

OK
Cancel

- Set a circuit breaker.

- `consecutiveErrors` : Indicates the number of consecutive errors that occur to a host in a specified interval. If the value set is exceeded, the host where the consecutive errors occurred is removed from the connection pool. The default value of this parameter is 5.



**Note:**

If the upstream host is accessed through an HTTP connection, a status code of the `5xx` format is identified as an error. If the upstream host is accessed

through a TCP connection, a TCP connection timeout, a connection error, or a connection failure will be identified as an error.

- `maxEjectionPercent` : Indicates the maximum ratio of removable hosts to all the hosts in a load balancing pool of the upstream service. The default value of this parameter is 10%.
- `baseEjectionTime` : Indicates the minimum interval of a time an unhealthy host can be removed from the load balancing pool. The amount of time that an unhealthy host is removed from the load balancing pool is equal to this parameter multiplied by the number of times the host has already been removed. By using this parameter, the amount of time that an unhealthy host is removed from the load balancing pool can be increased automatically.
- `interval` : Indicates the period of time during which the system detects errors. The default value of this parameter is 10s. The minimum value of this parameter is 1 ms.

Parameters Setting
✕

Load Balancer Setting

Connection Pool Management

Circuit Breaker Configuration

Consecutive times with 5XX error code	10
Maximum % of hosts that can be ejected	80
Minimum ejection duration	3m
Time interval between ejection sweep analysis	1s

Apply to all versions

```

trafficPolicy:
  loadBalancer:
    simple: ROUND_ROBIN
  outlierDetection:
    consecutiveErrors: 10
    interval: 1s
    baseEjectionTime: 3m
    maxEjectionPercent: 80
            
```

OK

Cancel

**Note:**

If you want the preceding settings to take effect for all the versions of the target virtual service, you need to select the **Apply to all versions** check box.

**Inject faults to traffic**

On the page that displays the details of the target virtual service, click **Fault Injection Policy**.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a virtual service named 'nginx'. At the top, there is a 'Refresh' button. Below that, the 'Overview' section displays 'Workload Type: Deployment' and 'Time Created: 04/28/2019,17:07:16'. The 'Version Management' section includes buttons for 'Add new canary version', 'Edit the canary deployment policy', and 'Fault Injection Policy' (which is highlighted with a red box). Below this is a table with two rows of version information:

Version	Workload	Number of instances	Canary Deployment	Time Created	Action
v2	nginx	1	Traffic Weight 50%	04/28/2019,17:07:16	<a href="#">Manage Workload</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>   <a href="#">Take over all the traffic</a>   <a href="#">Traffic Control</a>
v3	nginx-v3	1	Traffic Weight 50%	04/29/2019,17:27:15	<a href="#">Manage Workload</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>   <a href="#">Take over all the traffic</a>   <a href="#">Traffic Control</a>

You can inject two types of faults: delay faults and abort faults. The fault injection feature supports the HTTP protocol.

- Create a fault injection to delay traffic flow.

This type of fault injection is used to simulate faults, such as network faults and faults caused by upstream service overload.

```
fault:
  delay:
    percent: 10
    fixedDelay: 10s
```

Create a fault injection rule to delay traffic, set the following parameters.

- `percent` : Set the ratio of the requests to be delayed as all requests that are forwarded to the requested destination. The value range of this parameter is 0 to 100.
- `fixedDelay` : Set the delayed time before the specified ratio of requests are forwarded (in seconds by default). You can also set the delayed time in hours, minutes, or milliseconds. This is the required parameter for injecting a delay fault. The minimum value of this parameter is 1ms.

- Create an fault injection that terminates a request that comes from a downstream service and return a corresponding error to the downstream service.

This type of fault injection is used to simulate a condition where an error code occurs to the upstream service.

The screenshot shows a 'Fault Injection' configuration window. It has two tabs: 'Delay' and 'Abort', with 'Abort' being the active tab. Below the tabs, there are two input fields: 'Percentage' with the value '10' and a '%' symbol, and 'Status Code' with the value '404'. To the right of these fields is a dark preview window showing the following JSON-like configuration: `fault: abort: percent: 10 httpStatus: 404`. At the bottom right of the window are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

To create an fault injection that terminates a request that comes from a downstream service, set these parameters.

- `percent` : Set the ratio of the requests that you want to terminate to all the requests that are forwarded to the requested destination. The value range of this parameter is 0 to 100.
- `httpStatus` : Set the HTTP status code that will be returned to a client service. This is the required parameter for injecting an abort fault.

## 13.3 Istio FAQ

This topic lists common Istio FAQ and their corresponding solutions.

What do I do if the services in the cluster cannot access external URLs?

**Symptom**

The services in the cluster cannot access external URLs.

**Cause**

By default, this is because the pod in the Istio service mesh uses iptables to transparently forward all outbound traffic to the sidecar. The sidecar can only handle the traffic destined for addresses within the cluster.

### Solutions

- Define `ServiceEntry` to call external services.
- Configure Istio to allow access to a specific range of IP addresses.

For more information, see [Control Egress Traffic](#).

What do I do if Tiller is in an earlier version?

### Symptom

The following message is displayed during the installation process:

```
Can't install release with errors: rpc error: code = Unknown desc = Chart incompatible with Tiller v2.7.0
```

### Cause

Your current version of Tiller needs to be upgraded.

### Solution

Run one of the following two commands to upgrade the Tiller version.



**Note:**

You must upgrade Tiller to V2.10.0 or later.

Run the following command to upgrade Tiller to V2.11.0:

```
helm init --tiller-image registry.cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/acs/tiller:v2.11.0 --upgrade
```

Run the following command to upgrade Tiller to V2.10.0:

```
helm init --tiller-image registry.cn-hangzhou.aliyuncs.com/acs/tiller:v2.10.0 --upgrade
```



**Note:**

After you upgrade Tiller to a new version, we recommend that you upgrade the client to the corresponding version. For more information, see [Install a client](#).

## What do I do if Custom Resource Definitions (CRDs) are in an invalid version?

### Symptom

The following message is displayed when you create Istio for the first time or upgrade from Istio 1.0:

```
Can ' t install release with errors : rpc error : code = Unknown desc = apiVersion " networking . istio . io / v1alpha3 " in pack - istio / charts / pilot / templates / gateway . yml is not available
```

### Cause

CRDs do not exist or are of an earlier version.



#### Note:

This problem occurs only in Helm 2.10.0 and earlier versions. For Helm later than V2.10.0, the system automatically upgrades CRDs.

### Solution

1. Download the latest Istio. For more information, see [Download the release](#).
2. Run the following command to install the latest CRDs:

```
$ kubectl apply - f install / kubernetes / helm / istio / templates / crds . yml - n istio - system
```

3. If you have enabled `certmanager`, you must run the following command to install the relevant CRDs:

```
$ kubectl apply - f install / kubernetes / helm / istio / charts / certmanager / templates / crds . yml
```

## What do I do if Istio cannot be installed when I log on as a RAM user?

### Symptom

The following message or a similar one is displayed during the installation process:

```
Error from server ( Forbidden ): error when retrieving current configuration of : Resource : " apiextensions . k8s . io / v1beta1 , Resource = customresourcedefinitions ", GroupVersionKind : " apiextensions . k8s . io / v1beta1 , Kind = CustomResourceDefinition "
```

### Cause

The RAM user does not have permission to install Istio.

## Solutions

- Log on to Alibaba Cloud by using the primary account.
- Grant the RAM user the required permissions. For example, you can grant the RAM user the `cluster-admin` custom role. For more information, see [#unique\\_12](#).

What do I do if CRDs are not removed after Istio is uninstalled?

### Symptom

CRDs are not removed after Istio is uninstalled.

### Cause

The system does not remove CRDs when you uninstall Istio.

### Solution

1. If you use Helm later than V2.9.0, perform step 2 directly. If you use Helm 2.9.0 or earlier, you must first run the following command to delete Job resources:

```
$ kubectl -n istio-system delete job --all
```

2. Run the following command to delete CRDs:

```
$ kubectl delete -f install/kubernetes/helm/istio/templates/crds.yaml -n istio-system
```

What do I do if a custom resource is retained after I delete Istio?

### Symptom

After Istio is deleted from a Kubernetes cluster, a custom resource is retained.

### Cause

You only deleted the CRD.

### Solution

1. Run the `kubectl edit istio-system istio-config` command.
2. Delete `istio-operator-finalizer.alibabacloud.com` in the `finalizers` parameter.

# 14 Knative management

---

## 14.1 Knative overview

This topic describes the concept of Knative, roles involved in a Knative system, Knative components, and thirty-party add-on supported by Knative.

### Background information

Knative is a serverless framework that is based on Kubernetes. The goal of Knative is to provide the cloud-native standard to orchestrate serverless workloads across different platforms. To implement this goal, Knative codifies the best practices around three areas of developing cloud native applications: building container and function, serving and dynamically scaling workloads, and eventing.

### Roles involved in the Knative system

- **Developers** : refers to personnel that directly use native Kubernetes APIs to deploy serverless functions, applications, and containers to an auto-scaling runtime.
- **Contributors** : refers to personnel that develop and contribute code and documents to the Knative community.
- **Operators** : refers to personnel that deploy and manage Knative instances by using Kubernetes APIs and tools. Knative can be integrated into any environments that support Kubernetes, such as systems of any enterprises or cloud providers.
- **Users** : refers to personnel that use an Istio gateway to access the target services, or use the eventing system to trigger the serverless service of Knative.

For more information, see [Personas involved in Knative](#).

### Components

Knative consists of the following three components:

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| <b>Build</b> | This component is used to obtain the source code of an application from a code repository, compile the code into container images, and then push the images to an image repository. All these actions occur in the corresponding Kubernetes pods. |
|--------------|---|

Eventing	<p>This component can be used to manage and deliver events.</p> <p>Specifically, Eventing is designed to provide an event model to drive serverless events, including how to connect to an external event source, register and subscribe events, and filter events. The event model decouples event producers and event consumers. This means that any producer can generate events before a consumer starts to listen to the events, and any event consumer can listen events before producers start to generate the events.</p>
Serving	<p>This component can be used to manage serverless workloads. It provides the request-driven capability to auto scale workloads. If no request is needed to be processed, Serving can help to scale workload instances to zero instance. For advanced scenarios, workload instances can be scaled to any required number without limitation. In addition, this component supports the function of granary deployment.</p>

#### Third-party add-on

Knative supports the GitHub add-on for using the GitHub event source.

## 14.2 Deploy Knative on a Kubernetes cluster

This topic describes how to deploy Knative on a Kubernetes cluster that is created with Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes (ACK).

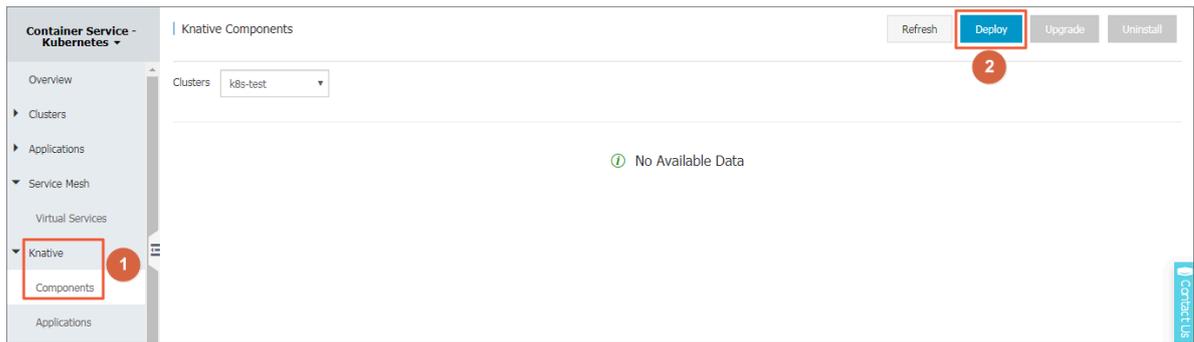
#### Prerequisites

- A Kubernetes cluster supported by at least three Worker nodes is created with ACK. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- Istio is deployed on the Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_164](#).
- The Kubernetes cluster must be a standard dedicated or managed cluster that runs on Kubernetes V1.10 and later.

#### Procedure

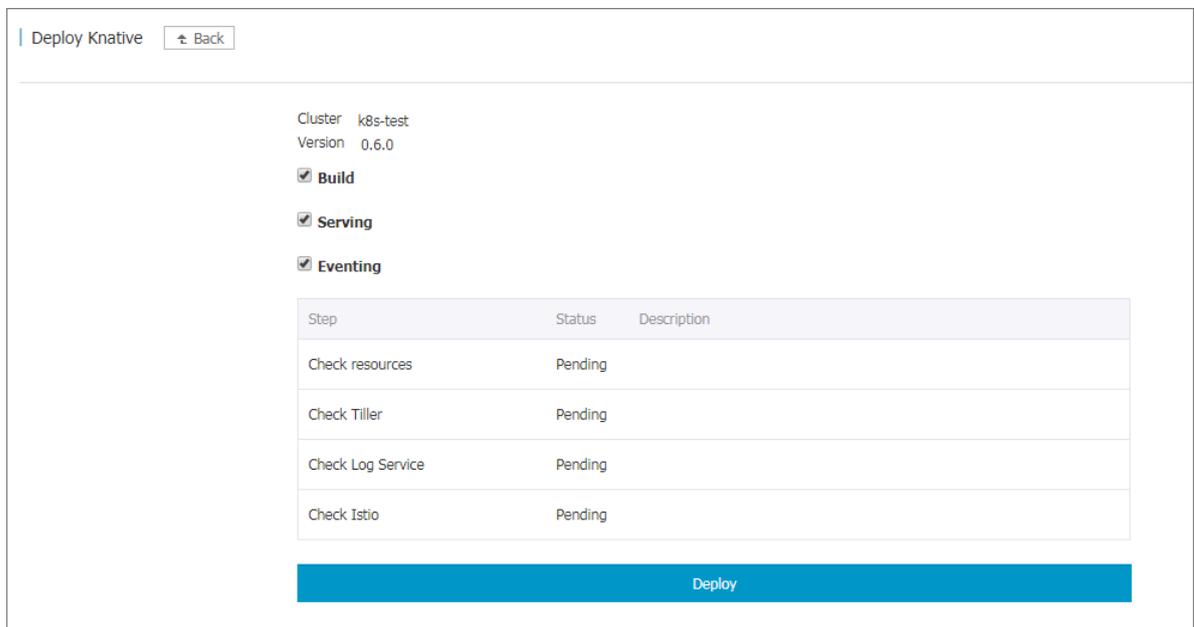
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Knative > Components.

3. In the upper-right corner, click Deploy.



4. Select the required components for Knative as needed, and then click Deploy.

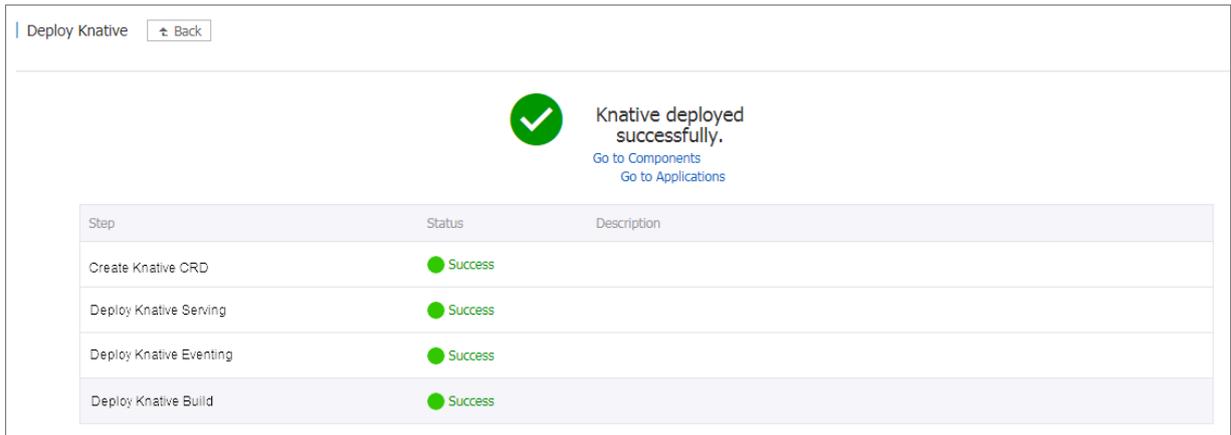
- **Bulid** : This component is used to obtain the source code of an application from a code repository, compile the code into container images, and then push the images to an image repository.
- **Serving**: This component can be used to manage serverless workloads. It can work well with the Eventing component. It provides the request-driven capability to auto scale workloads. If no request is needed to be processed, Serving can help to scale workload instances to zero instance.
- **Eventing** : This component can be used to manage events.



Verify the result

On the Deploy Knative page, verify that Knative is deployed.

- To view component information, click Go to components.
- To view operations related to applications, click Go to applications.



### 14.3 Deploy a Knative component

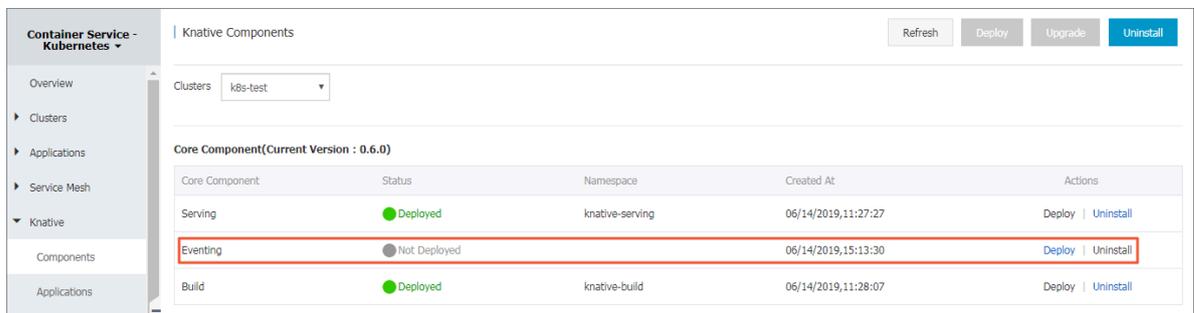
This topic describes how to deploy a Knative component by deploying the component Eventing as an example. If you did not select a target component when you deployed Knative, you can follow the procedure described in this topic.

#### Prerequisites

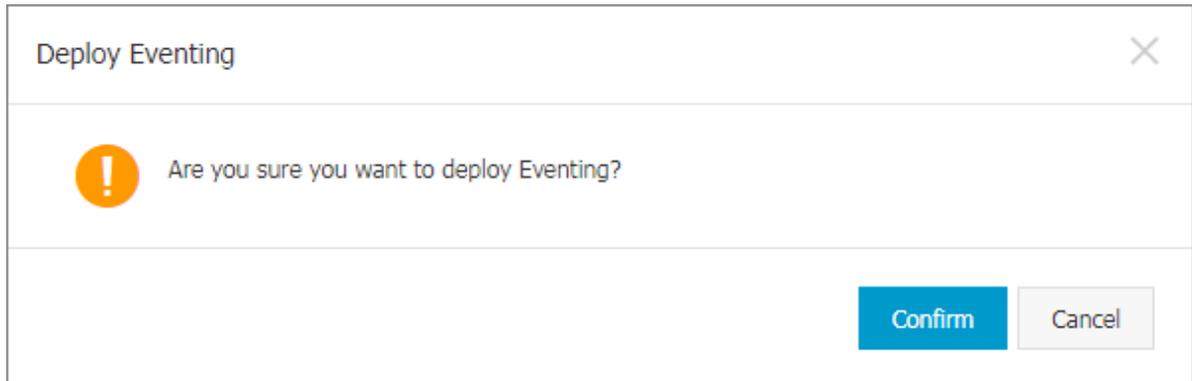
- A Kubernetes cluster is created with ACK. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- Knative is deployed on the Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_171](#).

#### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Knative > Components**.
3. Find the target component. Then, in the Actions column, click **Deploy**.



#### 4. In the displayed dialog box, click Confirm.



#### Verify the result

On the Knative Components page, verify that the status of the target component is Deployed .

Container Service - Kubernetes		Knative Components				Refresh	Deploy	Upgrade	Uninstall																				
Overview		Clusters	k8s-test																										
► Clusters		Core Component (Current Version : 0.6.0)																											
► Applications		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Core Component</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Namespace</th> <th>Created At</th> <th>Actions</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Serving</td> <td>● Deployed</td> <td>knative-serving</td> <td>06/14/2019,11:27:27</td> <td>Deploy   Uninstall</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Eventing</td> <td>● Deployed</td> <td>knative-eventing</td> <td>06/14/2019,15:18:10</td> <td>Deploy   Uninstall</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Build</td> <td>● Deployed</td> <td>knative-build</td> <td>06/14/2019,11:28:07</td> <td>Deploy   Uninstall</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>								Core Component	Status	Namespace	Created At	Actions	Serving	● Deployed	knative-serving	06/14/2019,11:27:27	Deploy   Uninstall	Eventing	● Deployed	knative-eventing	06/14/2019,15:18:10	Deploy   Uninstall	Build	● Deployed	knative-build	06/14/2019,11:28:07	Deploy   Uninstall
Core Component	Status	Namespace	Created At	Actions																									
Serving	● Deployed	knative-serving	06/14/2019,11:27:27	Deploy   Uninstall																									
Eventing	● Deployed	knative-eventing	06/14/2019,15:18:10	Deploy   Uninstall																									
Build	● Deployed	knative-build	06/14/2019,11:28:07	Deploy   Uninstall																									
► Service Mesh																													
▼ Knative																													
Components																													
Applications																													

## 14.4 Use Knative to deploy a Hello World application

This topic describes how to use Knative to deploy an application.

#### Prerequisites

- A Kubernetes cluster is created with ACK. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- Knative is deployed on the Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_171](#).
- The Serving component is deployed on the Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_173](#).

#### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Knative > Services.
3. In the upper-right corner, click Create Service.

#### 4. Set the following parameters:

- **Service Name:** Set the service name. In this example, the service name is set as `helloworld - go`.
- **Image Name:** Select an image by clicking **Select Image**, or in the box, enter a private registry that must be in the format of `domainname / namespace / imagename : tag`.

**Note:**

In this example, the registry `registry . cn - hangzhou . aliyuncs . com / knative - sample / helloworld - go` is used.

- **Image Version:** Select an image by clicking **Select Image Version**, or in the box, enter an image version. By default, if you do not set this parameter, the latest image version is used. In this example, the image version is set as `73fbdd56`.
- **Environment Variables:** Set an environment variable by entering a key-value pair. In this example, the environment variable is set as `TARGET = Knative`.

#### 5. Click Create.

On the Knative Service Manage page, the created service is then displayed.

#### Verify the result

To access the created Knative service through its URL, follow these steps:

1. In the left-side navigation pane under **Container Service-Kubernetes**, choose **Knative > Component** to view the IP address of the gateway of the Knative service.

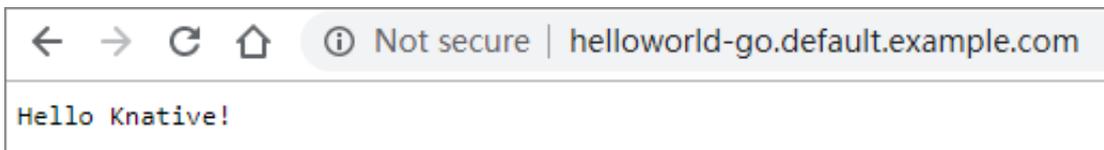
- In the host file of your local host, associate the IP address of the gateway and the domain name of the Knative service with your local host by adding the following information:

```
the IP address of the gateway + the domain name
```

The following is a sample:

```
47 . 95 . XX . XX helloworld - go . default . example . com
```

- In your browser, enter the URL `http://helloworld-go.default.example.com` to access the Knative service.



## 14.5 Uninstall a Knative component

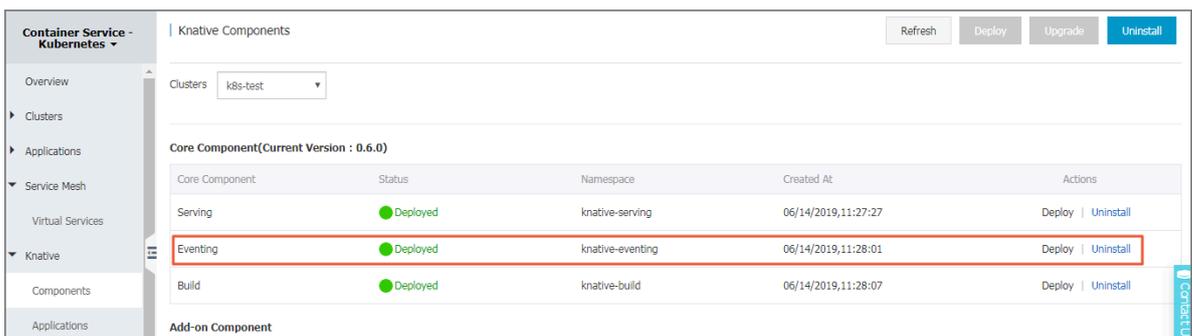
This topic describes how to uninstall a Knative component. In this topic, an example component Eventing is uninstalled.

### Prerequisites

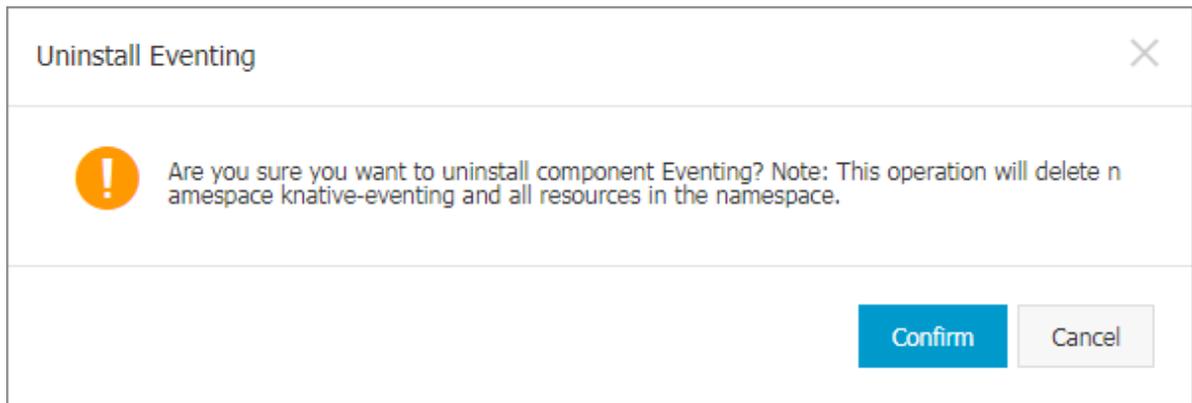
- A Kubernetes cluster is created with ACK. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- Knative is deployed on the Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_171](#).

### Procedure

- Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
- In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Knative > Components.
- Find the target component. Then, in the Actions column, click Uninstall.

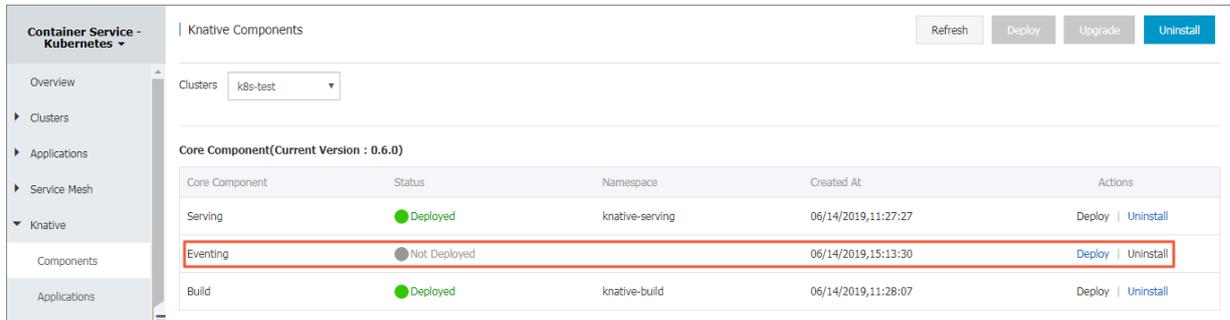


#### 4. In the displayed dialog box, click Confirm.



#### Verify the result

On the Knative Components page, verify that the status of the target component is **Not deployed**.



## 14.6 Uninstall Knative

This topic describes how to uninstall Knative from a Kubernetes cluster that is created with Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes (ACK).

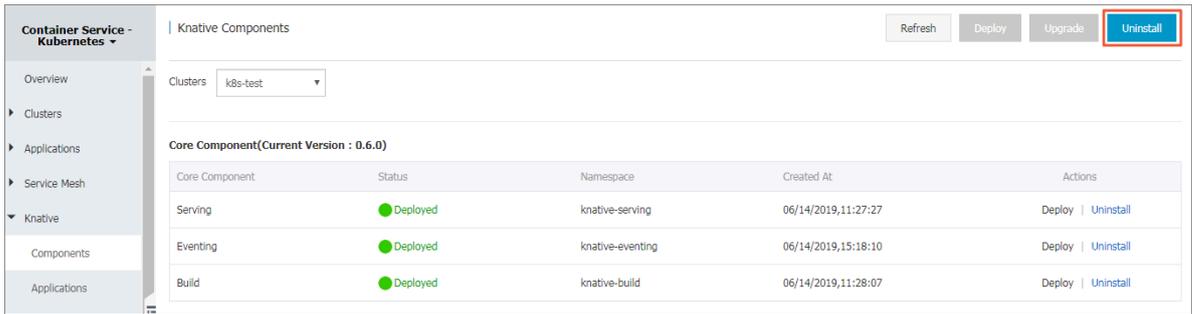
### Prerequisites

Knative is deployed on a Kubernetes cluster that is created with ACK. For more information, see [#unique\\_171](#).

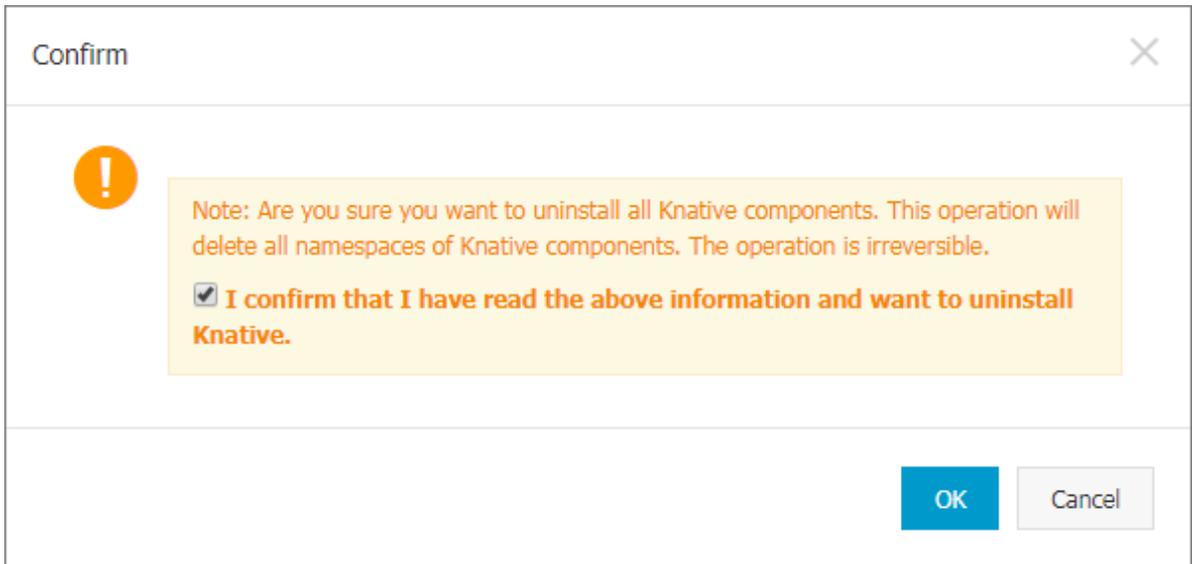
### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Knative > Components**.

3. In the upper-right corner, click Uninstall.

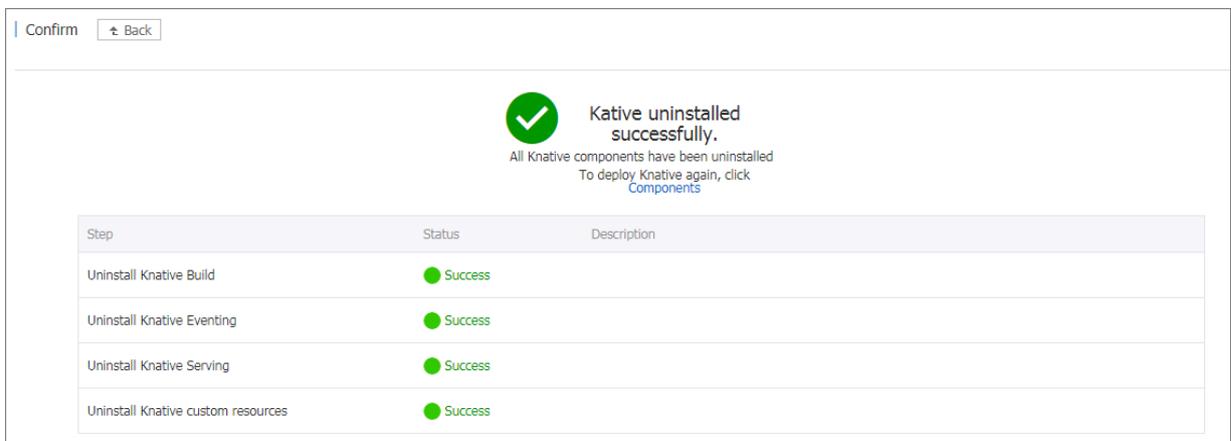


4. In the displayed dialog box, select I confirm that I have read the above information and want to uninstall Knative, and then click OK.



Verify the result

On the displayed Confirm page, verify that Knative is uninstalled.



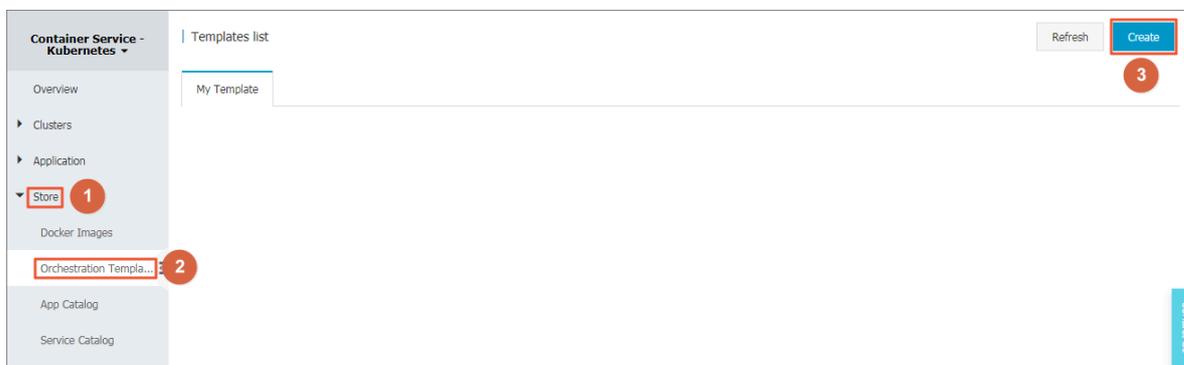
# 15 Template management

## 15.1 Create an orchestration template

You can use multiple methods to create orchestration templates through the Container Service console.

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Store > Orchestration Templates. Then, in the upper-right corner, click Create.



3. In the displayed dialog box, configure the orchestration template, and then click Save. In this example, build a tomcat application template that contains a deployment and a service.

- **Name:** Set the template name.
- **Description:** Enter the description for the template. This parameter is optional.
- **Template:** Configure the template that conforms to Kubernetes yaml syntax rules. The template can contain multiple resource objects that are separated by `---`.

Create

Name:   
The name should be 1-64 characters long, and can contain numbers, English letters, Chinese characters and hyphens.

Description:

Template:

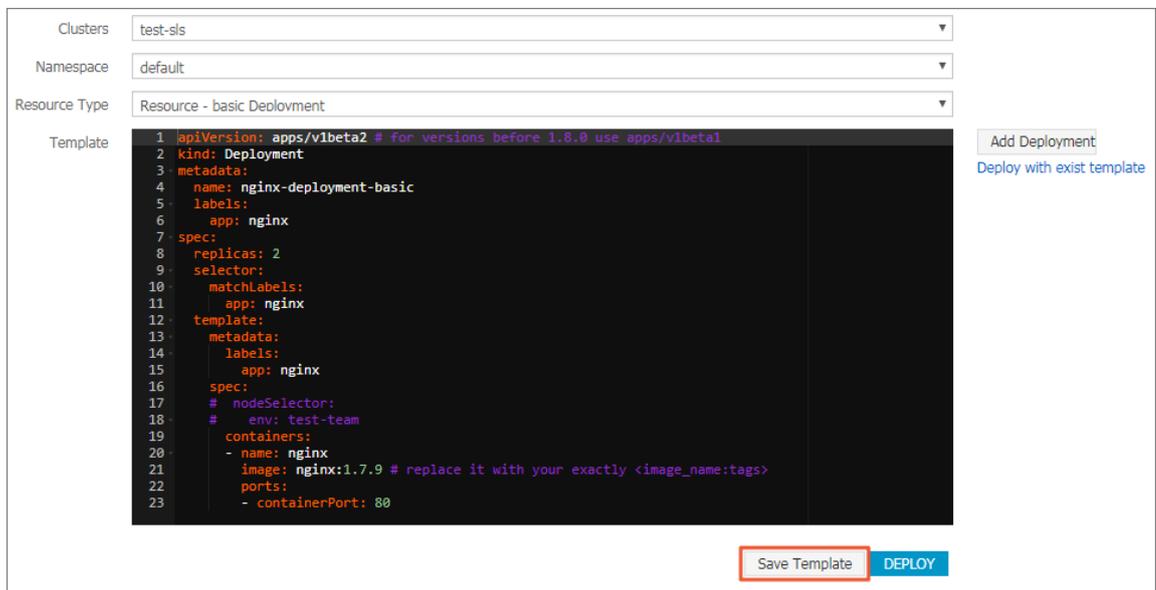
```
1 apiVersion: apps/v1beta2 # for versions before 1.8.0 use
  apps/v1beta1
2 kind: Deployment
3 metadata:
4   name: tomcat-deployment
5   labels:
6     app: tomcat
7 spec:
8   replicas: 1
9   selector:
10    matchLabels:
11     app: tomcat
12   template:
13     metadata:
14       labels:
15         app: tomcat
16     spec:
17       containers:
18         - name: tomcat
19           image: tomcat # replace it with your exactly
20           <image_name:tags>
21           ports:
22             - containerPort: 8080
```

4. After the template is created, the Template List page is displayed. You can see the template under My Template.



5. Optional: In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Applications > Deployments. Then, in the upper-right corner, click Create by Template. Save one of orchestration templates built-in Container Service as your custom template.

- a) Select a built-in template and click Save Template.



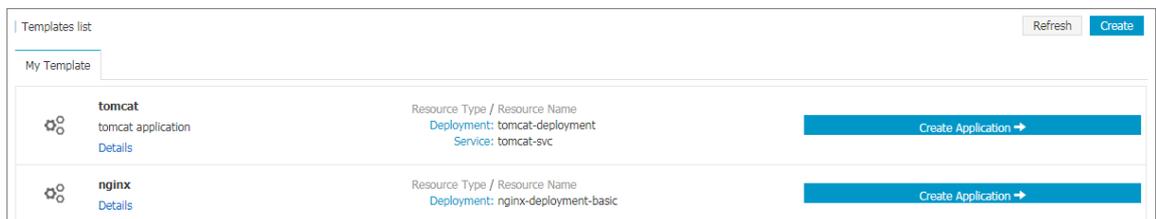
- b) In the displayed dialog box, configure the name, description, and template. After completing the configurations, click Save.



Note:

You can modify the built-in template.

- c) Choose Store > Orchestration Templates, the created template is displayed under My Template.



## What's next

You can quickly create an application by using the orchestration template under My Template.

## 15.2 Edit an orchestration template

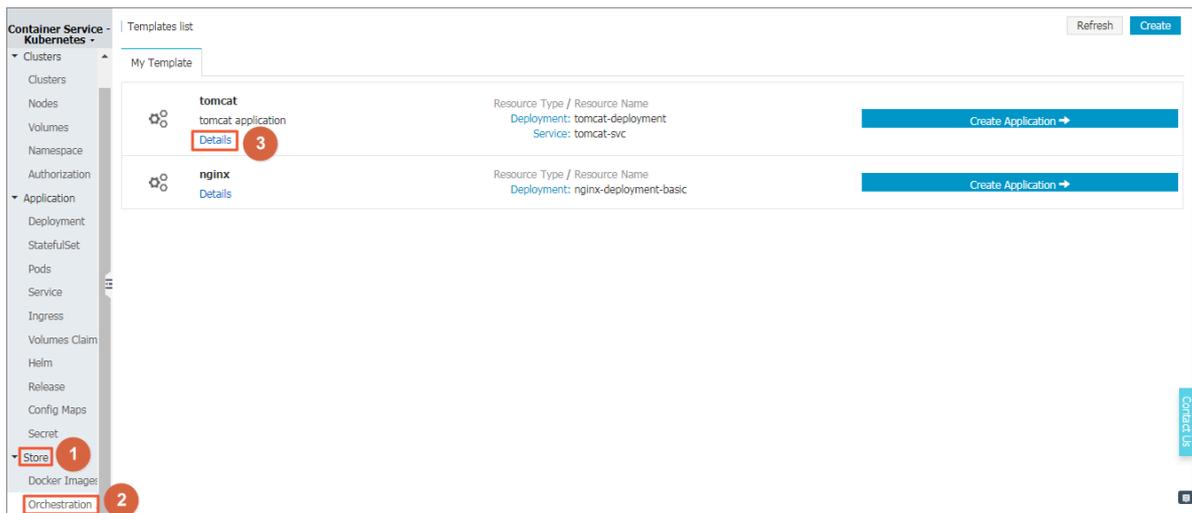
You can edit an orchestration arrangement template.

### Prerequisites

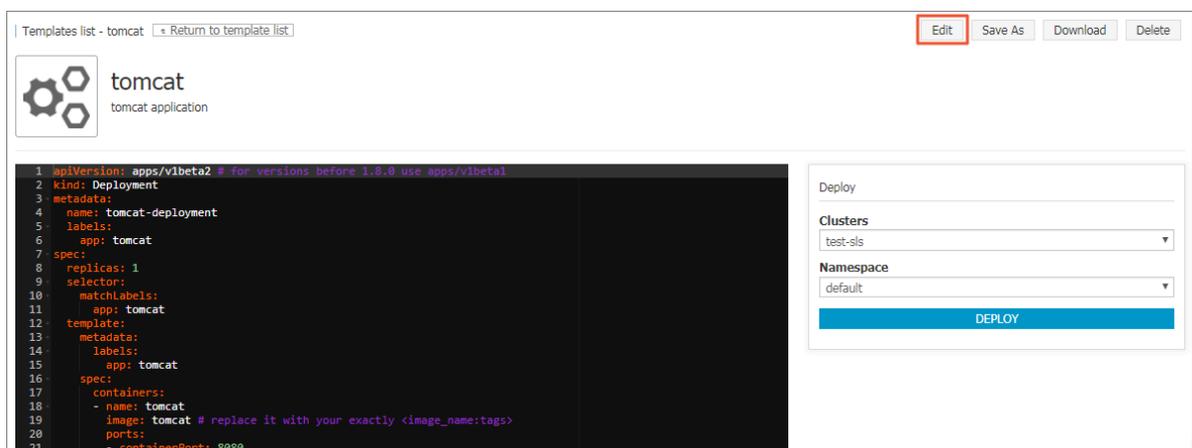
You have created an orchestration template, see [#unique\\_88](#).

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Store > Orchestration Templates. Existing orchestration templates are displayed under My Template.
3. Select a template and click Details.



4. Click Edit in the upper-right corner.



5. In the displayed dialog box, edit the name, description, and template, and click Save.

Modify template ✕

Name:   
The name should be 1-64 characters long, and can contain numbers, English letters, Chinese characters and hyphens.

Description:

Template:

```
1 apiVersion: apps/v1beta2 # for versions
  before 1.8.0 use apps/v1beta1
2 kind: Deployment
3 metadata:
4   name: tomcat-deployment
5   labels:
6     app: tomcat
7 spec:
8   replicas: 1
9   selector:
10    matchLabels:
11     app: tomcat
12  template:
13    metadata:
14     labels:
15      app: tomcat
16    spec:
17     containers:
18     - name: tomcat
19       image: tomcat # replace it with your
  exactly <image_name:tags>
20     ports:
21     - containerPort: 8080
22
```

6. Back to the Template List page, under My Template, you can see the template is changed.



### 15.3 Save an existing orchestration template as a new one

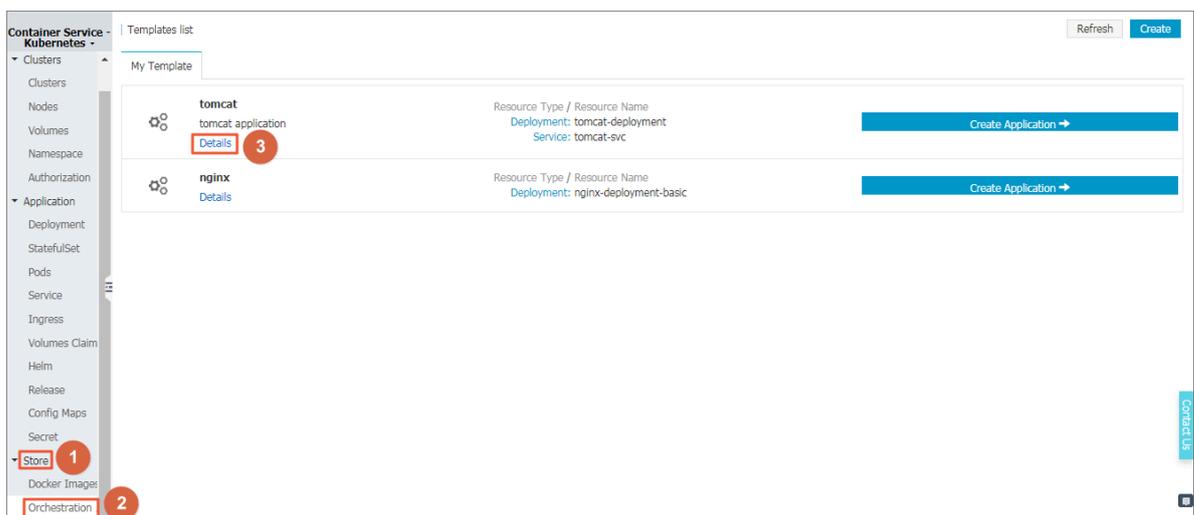
You can save an existing template as a new one.

#### Prerequisites

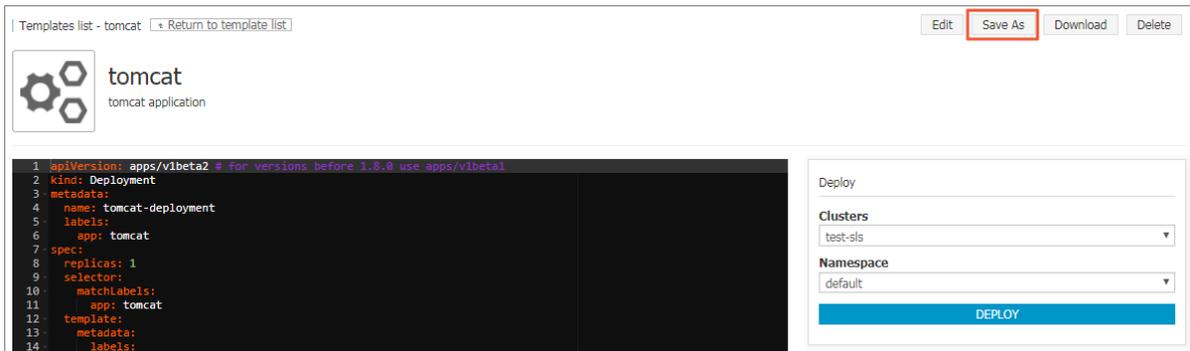
You have created an orchestration template, see [#unique\\_88](#).

#### Procedure

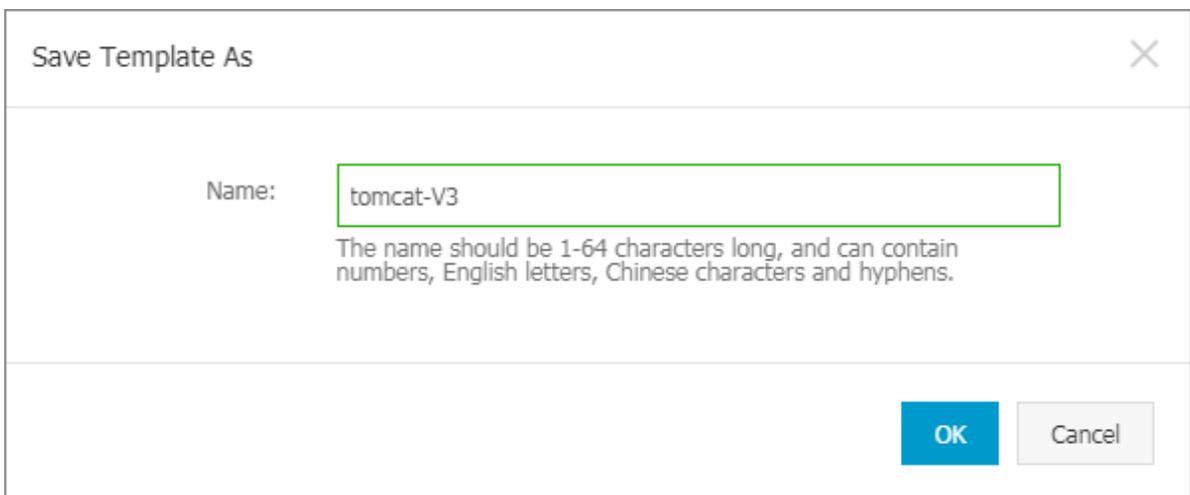
1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Store > Orchestration Templates. Existing orchestration templates are displayed under My Template.
3. Select a template and click Details.



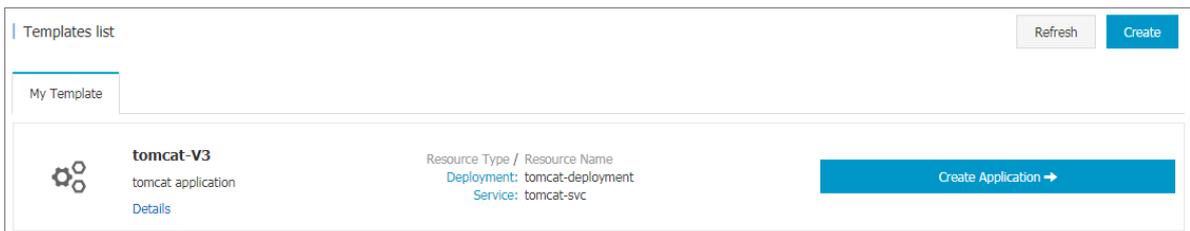
#### 4. You can modify the template and click Save as in the upper-right corner.



#### 5. In the displayed dialog box, configure the template name and click OK.



#### 6. Back to the Template List page, you can see that the saved template is displayed under My Template.



## 15.4 Download an orchestration template

You can download an existing orchestration template.

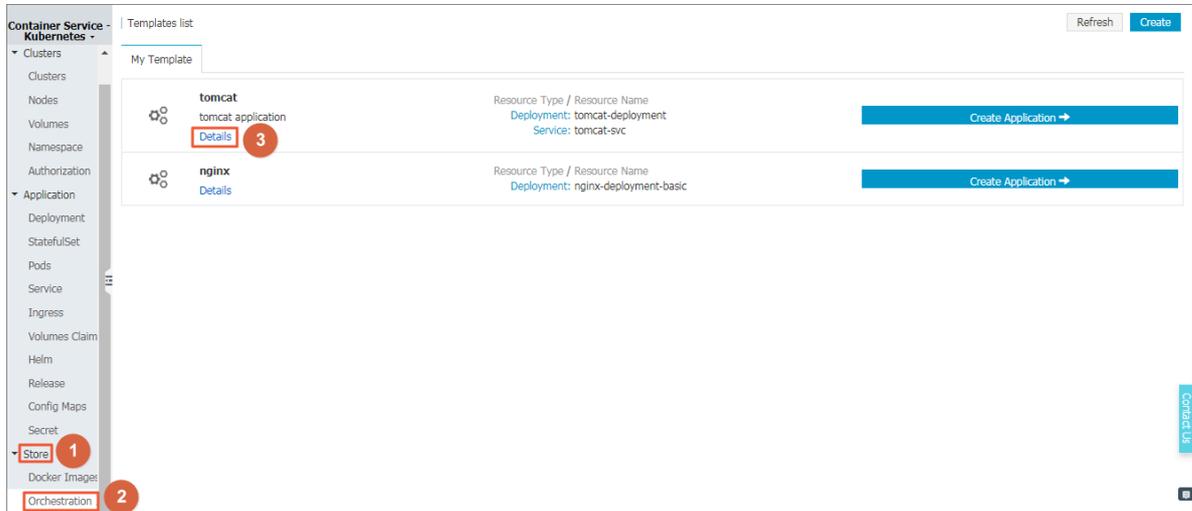
### Prerequisites

You have created an orchestration template, see [#unique\\_88](#).

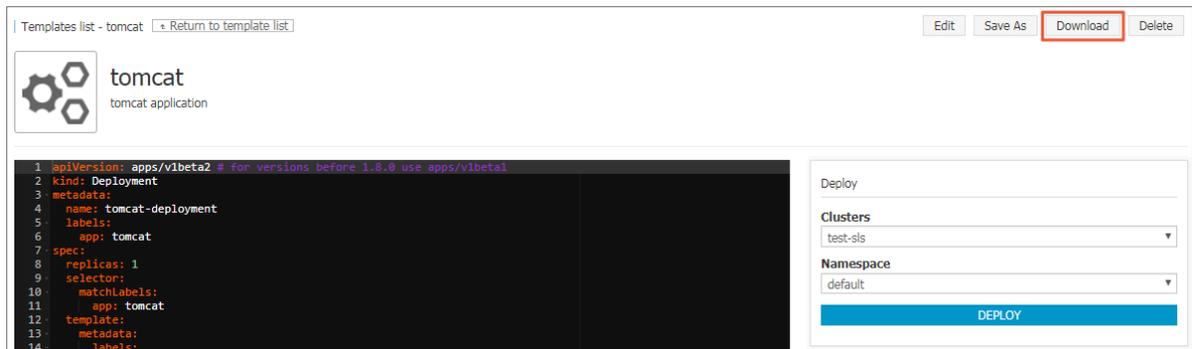
### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).

2. Under Kubernetes, click Store > Orchestration Templates. Existing orchestration templates are displayed under My Template.
3. Select a template and click Details.



4. Click Download in the upper-right corner, a template file with yml suffix is downloaded immediately.



## 15.5 Delete an orchestration template

You can delete an orchestration template that is no longer needed.

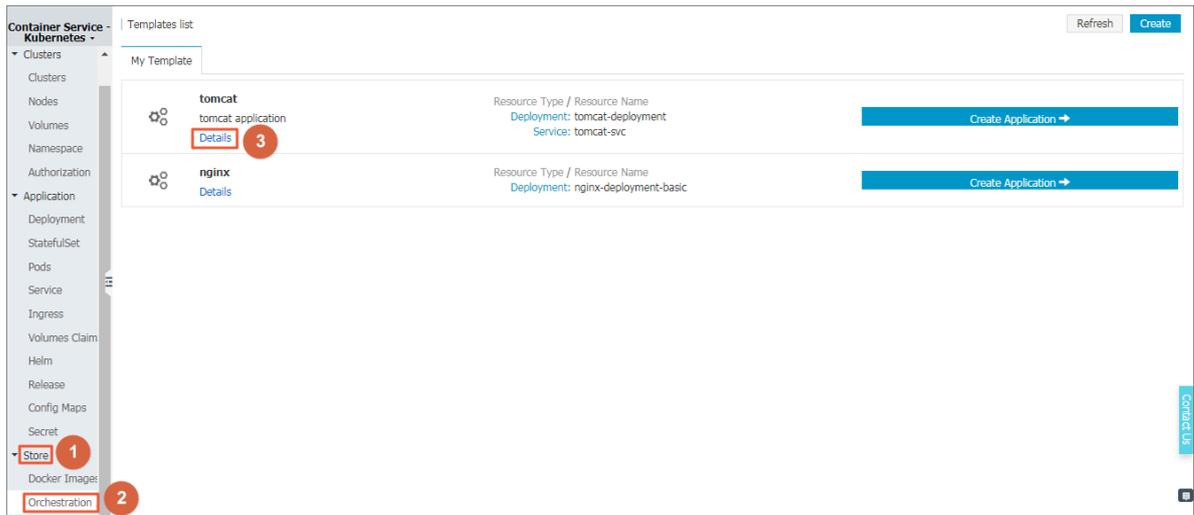
### Prerequisites

You have created an orchestration template, see [#unique\\_88](#).

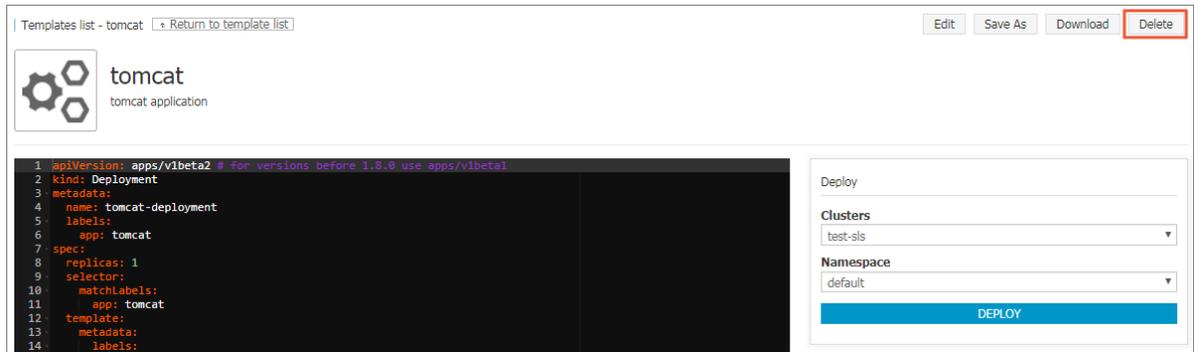
### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Store > Orchestration Template. Existing orchestration templates are displayed under My Template on the Template list page.

### 3. Select a template and click Detail.



### 4. On the detail page of the template, you can click Delete in the upper-right corner.



### 5. Click Confirm in the displayed dialog box.

# 16 App catalog management

---

## 16.1 App catalog overview

Microservice is the theme of container era. The application microservice brings great challenge to the deployment and management. By dividing a large single application into several microservices, the microservice can be independently deployed and extended so as to realize the agile development and fast iteration. Microservice brings great benefits to us. However, developers have to face the management issues of the microservices, such as the resource management, version management, and configuration management. The number of microservices is large because an application is divided into many components that correspond to many microservices.

For the microservice management issues under Kubernetes orchestration, Alibaba Cloud Container Service introduces and integrates with the Helm open-source project to help simplify the deployment and management of Kubernetes applications.

Helm is an open-source subproject in the Kubernetes service orchestration field and a package management tool for Kubernetes applications. Helm supports managing and controlling the published versions in the form of packaging softwares, which simplifies the complexity of deploying and managing Kubernetes applications.

### Alibaba Cloud app catalog feature

Alibaba Cloud Container Service app catalog feature integrates with Helm, provides the Helm-related features, and extends the features, such as providing graphic interface and Alibaba Cloud official repository.

The chart list on the App Catalog page includes the following information:

- **Chart name:** A Helm package corresponding to an application, which contains the image, dependencies, and resource definition required to run an application.
- **Version:** The version of the chart.
- **Repository:** The repository used to publish and store charts, such as the official repository stable and incubator.

The information displayed on the details page of each chart may be different and include the following items:

- Chart introduction
- Chart details
- Prerequisites for installing chart to the cluster, such as pre-configuring the persistent storage volumes (pv)
- Chart installation commands
- Chart uninstallation commands
- Chart parameter configurations

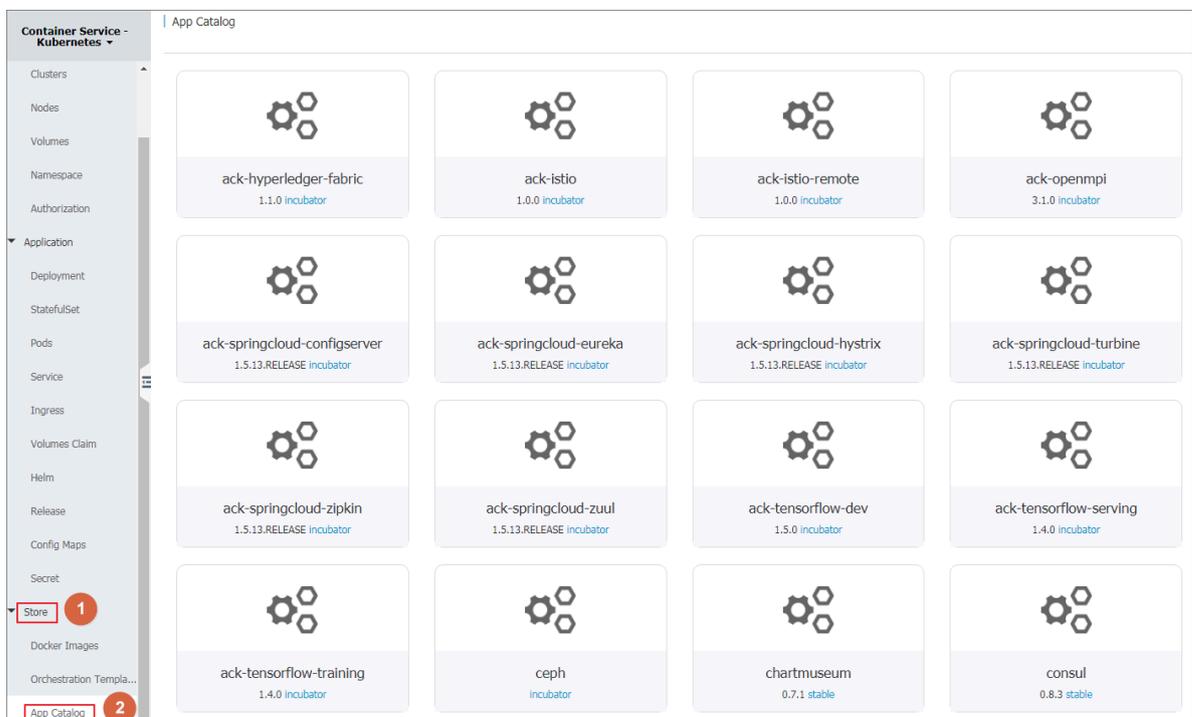
Currently, you can deploy and manage the charts in the app catalog by using the Helm tool. For more information, see [#unique\\_152](#).

## 16.2 View app catalog list

### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Store > App Catalog in the left-side navigation pane.

View the charts on the App Catalog page, each of which corresponds to an application, containing some basic information such as the application name, version, and source repository.



### What's next

You can click to enter a chart and get to know the detailed chart information. Deploy the application according to the corresponding information by using the Helm tool. For more information, see [#unique\\_152](#).

## 17 Service catalog management

---

### 17.1 Overview

Applications running on the cloud platform need some basic services such as databases, application servers, and other generic basic softwares. For example, a WordPress application, as a Web application, needs a database service (such as MariaDB) in the backend. Traditionally, you can create the MariaDB service on which the application depends in the WordPress application orchestration, and integrate the MariaDB service with the Web application. To develop applications on the cloud in this way, developers must spend time and energy deploying and configuring the dependent infrastructure softwares, which increases the costs of hosting and migrating applications.

Alibaba Cloud Container Service supports and integrates with the service catalog function. The service catalog function aims to access and manage the service brokers, which allows applications running in Kubernetes clusters to use the managed services offered by service brokers. A series of infrastructure softwares are supported by the service catalog function, which allows the developers to use these softwares as services and focus on the applications, the core of the development, without concerning about the availability and scalability of the softwares or managing the softwares.

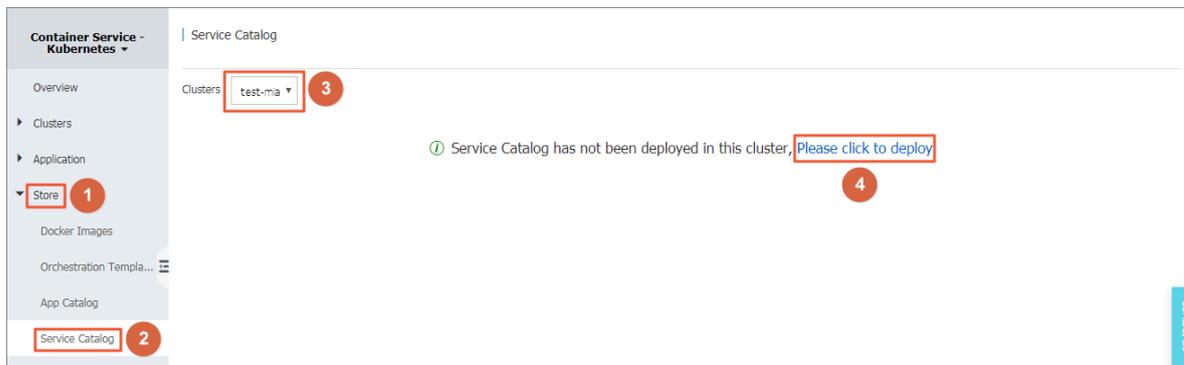
The service catalog uses the Open service broker API of Kubernetes to communicate with service brokers, acting as an intermediary for the Kubernetes API server to negotiate the initial provisioning and obtain the credentials necessary for the applications to use the managed services. For more information about the implementation principle of the service catalog, see [Service catalog](#).

### 17.2 Enable service catalog function

#### Procedure

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. Under Kubernetes, click Store > Service Catalog in the left-side navigation pane. Select the cluster from the Cluster drop-down list in the upper-right corner.

3. If you have not deployed the service catalog, click to install the service catalog as instructed on the page.

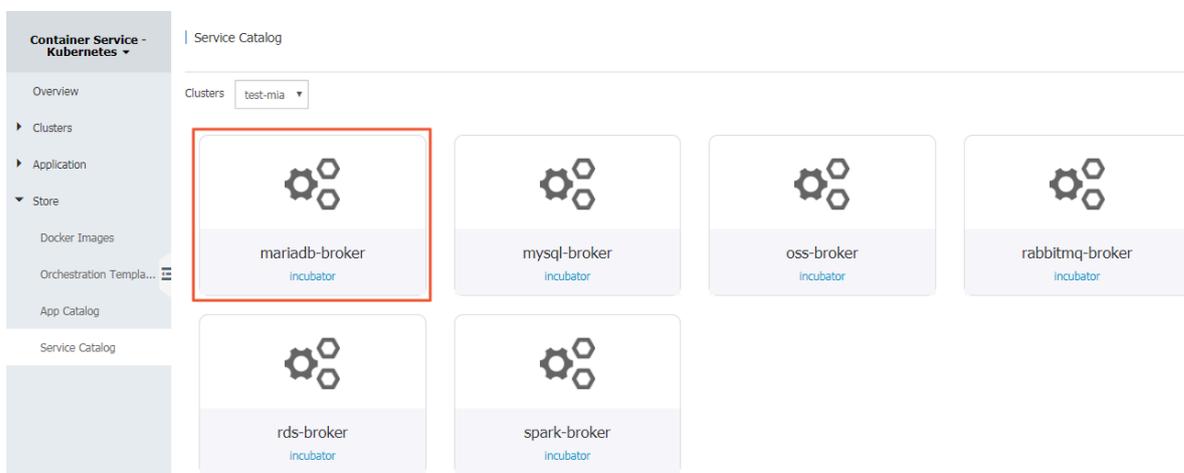


4. After the installation, the service broker, which is installed by default, is displayed on the Service Catalog page. You can click the mariadb-broker to view the details.

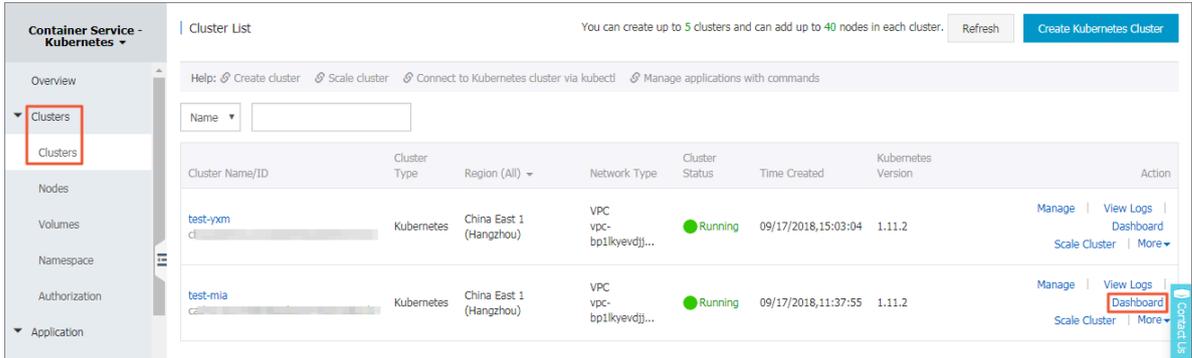


**Note:**

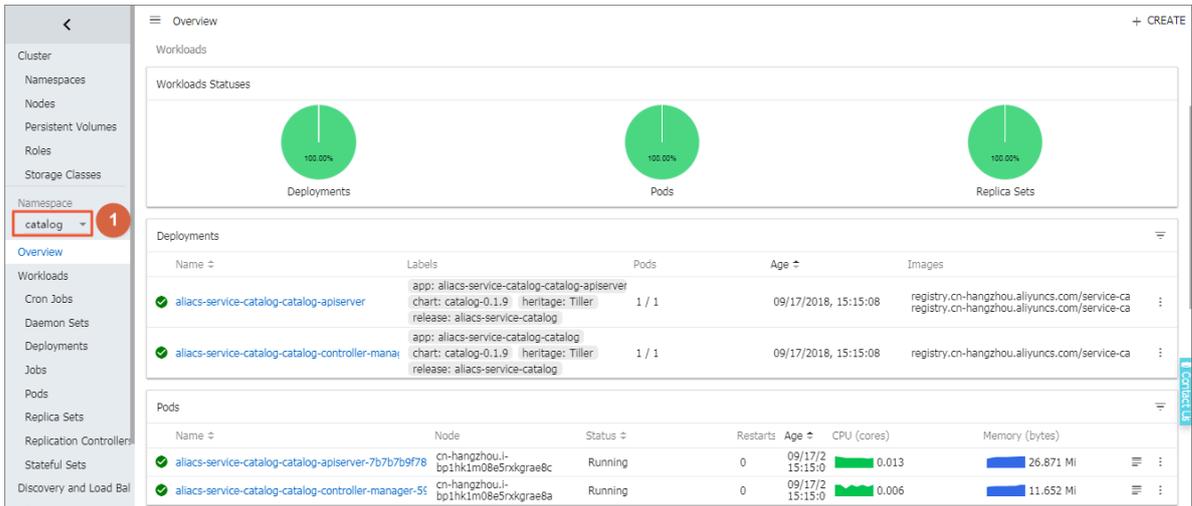
The service catalog is implemented as an extension API server and a controller. After Alibaba Cloud Container Service installs the service catalog function, the namespace catalog is created.



5. Click Clusters in the left-side navigation pane. Click Dashboard at the right of a cluster.



6. In the Kubernetes dashboard, select catalog as the Namespace in the left-side navigation pane. You can see the resource objects related to catalog apiserver and controller are installed under this namespace.



### What's next

Then, you have successfully enabled the service catalog function. You can create a managed service by using the service broker in the service catalog, and apply the managed service to your applications.

# 18 Auto Scaling

## 18.1 Use an HPA auto scaling container

Alibaba Cloud Container Service supports the rapid creation of HPA-enabled applications on the console interface to achieve auto scaling of container resources. You can also configure it by defining the yaml configuration of Horizontal Pod Autoscaling (HPA).

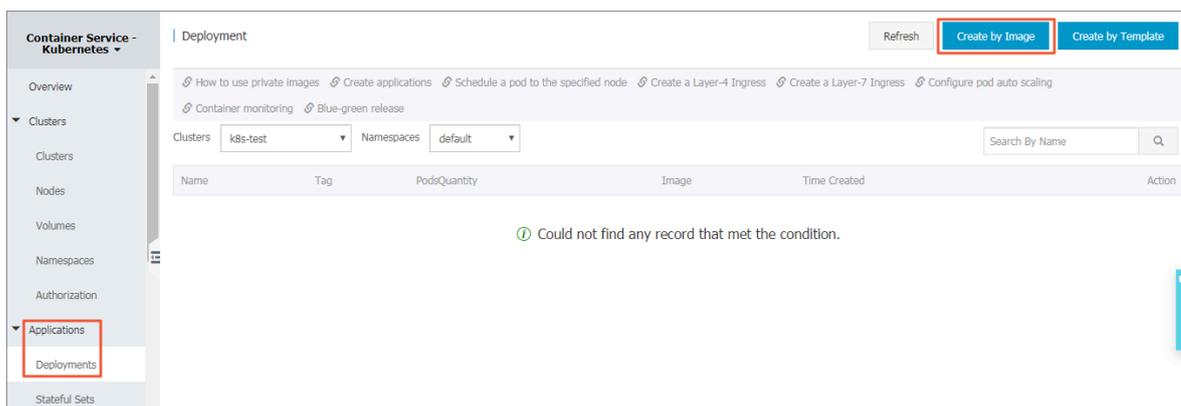
### Prerequisites

- You have created a Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_17](#).
- You have successfully connected to the master node of the Kubernetes cluster.

### Method 1: Create an HPA application in the Container Service console

In Alibaba Cloud Container Service, HPA has been integrated. You can easily create it through the Container Service console.

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Applications > Deployments**. Then, click **Create by Image** in the upper-right corner.



3. Enter the application name, select the cluster and namespace, and click **Next**.

4. Configure the application settings. Set the number of replicas, select the Enable box for Automatic Scaling, and configure the settings for scaling.

- **Metric:** CPU and memory. Configure a resource type as needed.
- **Condition:** The percentage value of resource usage. The container begins to expand when the resource usage exceeds this value.
- **Maximum Replicas:** The maximum number of replicas that the deployment can expand to.
- **Minimum Replicas:** The minimum number of replicas that the deployment can contract to.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration' section of a deployment configuration. It includes the following settings:

- Replicas:** 1
- Auto Scaling:**  Enable
- Metric:** CPU Usage
- Condition:** Usage 50 %
- Maximum Replicas:** 10 (Range : 2-100)
- Minimum Replicas:** 1 (Range : 1-100)

5. Configure the container. Select an image and configure the required resources. Click Next.



**Note:**

You must configure the required resources for the deployment. Otherwise, container auto scaling cannot be achieved.

The screenshot shows the 'container0' configuration panel. It includes the following settings:

- Image Name:** nginx
- Image Version:** latest
- Resource Limit:** CPU eg : 500m, Memory eg : 128Mi
- Resource Request:** CPU 500m, Memory eg : 128Mi
- Init Container:**

6. In the Access Control page, do not configure any settings in this example. Click **Create directly**.

Now a deployment that supports HPA has been created. You can view the auto scaling group information in the details of your deployment.

The screenshot shows the details of a deployment named 'nginx-deployment'. The Overview section lists the following details:

- Name: nginx-deployment
- Namespace: default
- Time Created: 2018-08-23 10:07:23
- Label: app:nginx
- annotation: deployment.kubernetes.io/revision:1
- Selector: app:nginx
- Strategy: RollingUpdate
- Status: Updated:1 , Unavailable:1 , Replica:1

The Trigger section shows a message: "1. You can only have one of each trigger type." and a "Create Trigger" button. Below this, there are two charts: "CPU usage(Cores)" and "Memory usage(GI)".

The Horizontal Pod Autoscaler section is highlighted with a red box. It shows the following configuration:

Name	Target Utilization	Minimum Replicas	Maximum Replicas	Created At	Action
nginx	cpu:70%	1	10	08/23/2018,10:07:23	Edit   Delete

7. In the actual environment, the application scales according to the CPU load. You can also verify auto scaling in the test environment. By performing a CPU pressure test on the pod, you can find that the pod can complete the horizontal expansion in half a minute.

The screenshot shows the details of the Horizontal Pod Autoscaler. The "Horizontal Pod Autoscaler" tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a table with the following information:

Name	Status	Image
k8s-hpa-deployment-f87696b8b-jpr15	Running	nginx:latest

### Method 2: Use kubectl commands to configure container auto scaling

You can also manually create an HPA by using an orchestration template and bind it to the deployment object to be scaled. Use the `kubectl` command to complete the container auto scaling configuration.

The following is an example of an Nginx application. Execute the `kubectl`

`create -f xxx . yml` command to create an orchestration template for the deployment as follows:

```
apiVersion : apps / v1beta2 # for versions before 1 . 8 . 0
  use apps / v1beta1
kind : Deployment
metadata :
  name : nginx
  labels :
    app : nginx
spec :
  replicas : 2
  selector :
    matchLabels :
      app : nginx
  template :
    metadata :
      labels :
        app : nginx
    spec :
      containers :
        - name : nginx
          image : nginx : 1 . 7 . 9 # replace it with your
exactly < image_name : tags >
          ports :
            - containerP ort : 80
          resources :
            requests :
              # This parameter
must be configured . Otherwise , the HPA cannot operate .
              cpu : 500m
```

Create an HPA. Configure an object to which the current HPA is bound by using `scaleTargetRef`. In this example, the object is the deployment named `nginx`.

```
apiVersion : autoscaling / v2beta1
kind : Horizontal PodAutoscaler
metadata :
  name : nginx - hpa
  namespace : default
spec :
  scaleTargetRef :
    # Bind the HPA
to a deployment named nginx
    apiVersion : apps / v1beta2
    kind : Deployment
    name : nginx
  minReplicas : 1
  maxReplicas : 10
  metrics :
    - type : Resource
      resource :
        name : cpu
        targetAverageUtilization : 50
```



**Note:**

The HPA needs to configure the request resource for the pod. The HPA does not operate without the request resource.

Warnings similar to the following are displayed when you execute `kubectl`

```
describe hpa [ name ]:
```

```
Warning   FailedGetResourceMetric 2m ( x6 over 4m )
horizontal - pod - autoscaler missing request for cpu on
container nginx in pod default / nginx - deployment - basic
- 75675f5897 - mqzs7
```

```
Warning   FailedComputeMetricsReplicas 2m ( x6 over
4m ) horizontal - pod - autoscaler failed to get cpu
utilization : missing request for cpu on container
nginx in pod default / nginx - deployment - basic - 75675f5
```

After creating the HPA, execute the `kubectl describe hpa [ name ]` command again. You can see the following message, which indicates that the HPA is running normally.

```
Normal Successful Rescale 39s horizontal - pod - autoscaler
New size : 1 ; reason : All metrics below target
```

When the usage of Nginx pod exceeds 50% set in this example, the container expands horizontally. When the usage of Nginx pod drops below 50%, the container contracts.

## 18.2 Autoscale the nodes of a Kubernetes cluster

This topic describes how to autoscale the nodes of a Kubernetes cluster to meet the requirements of your Kubernetes cluster workload. Alibaba Cloud Container Service for Kubernetes (ACK) provides the capability to autoscale the nodes of a Kubernetes cluster through using the cluster autoscaler program.

### Background information

You can set the the cluster autoscaler to add different ECS instance types to your Kubernetes cluster, such as the general, GPU, and preemptive instance types. You can set multiple zones, instance specifications, and autoscaling modes.

### Cluster autoscaler overview

The cluster autoscaler changes the size of a Kubernetes cluster based on the use of resource in the nodes of a pod in a Kubernetes cluster. Resource usage is calculated based on the pod resource requests.

When a pod requests more resources than what the associated node can provide, the pod enters the pending status. At which time, the autoscaler calculates the change to the size of cluster. It does so by calculating the number of nodes necessary to provide the requested resource with regard to the resource specification and threshold that you set for an autoscaling group.

For example, if you set a low threshold value for the number of nodes in an autoscaling group, the cluster autoscaler deletes a node, which reduces the amount of resources that the pod can request.

#### Notes

- By default, your account can use up to 30 Pay-As-You-Go ECS instances in all your clusters, and the route table of one VPC can contain up to 50 entries. To increase the number of available ECS instances or entries in a route table of one VPC, open a ticket.
- For a single type of ECS instances, the number of ECS instances of one specification that is permitted at one time varies frequently. Therefore, we recommend that you set multiple ECS instance types of one ECS specification.
- When a node for which you set the fast scaling mode is shut down and reclaimed, it is in the `NotReady` status. When the node is reused by the cluster autoscaler, the node enters the `Ready` status.
- When a node for which you set the fast scaling mode is shut down and reclaimed, only the disks attached to the node are charged (except that the node uses local disks, for example, `ecs.d1ne.2xlarge`).

#### Enable cluster autoscaling

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Clusters > Clusters**.

3. Find the target cluster. Then, in the Action column, choose More > Auto Scaling.

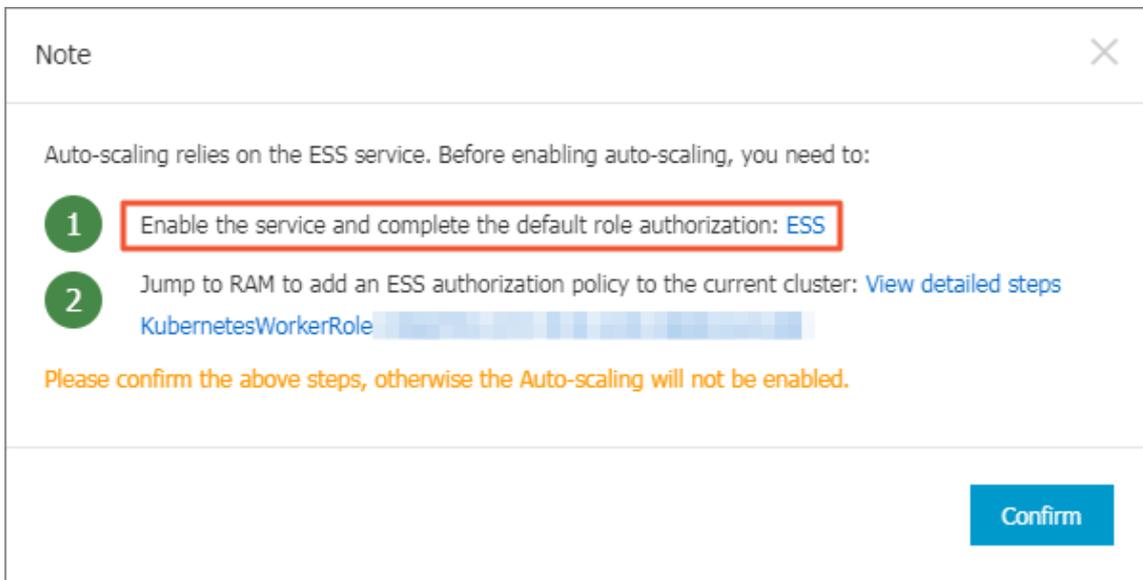
Cluster Name/ID	Cluster Type	Region (All)	Network Type	Cluster Status	Time Created	Kubernetes Version	Action
mymanagedk8s1	ManagedKubernetes	China North 2 (Beijing)	VPC vpc-zzetk0nc8jr...	Running	09/07/2018,16:01:46	1.10.4	Manage   View Logs   Dashboard Scale Cluster   More
myserverlessk8s1	Serverless Kubernetes	China East 1 (Hangzhou)	VPC vpc-bp1bw6xclcy...	Running	09/04/2018,20:13:20	1.9.7	Manage   View Logs   Delete
mytest1	Kubernetes	China North 2 (Beijing)	VPC vpc-zze7c50jcu...	Running	09/03/2018,10:06:49	1.10.4	Manage   View Logs   Dashboard Scale Cluster   More
myk8s1	Kubernetes	China East 1 (Hangzhou)	VPC vpc-bp1faadn5o...	Running	08/26/2018,11:53:17	1.10.4	Manage

- Delete
- Add Existing Instance
- Upgrade Cluster
- Auto-scaling**
- Addon Upgrade
- Upgrade monitoring service
- Deploy Istio

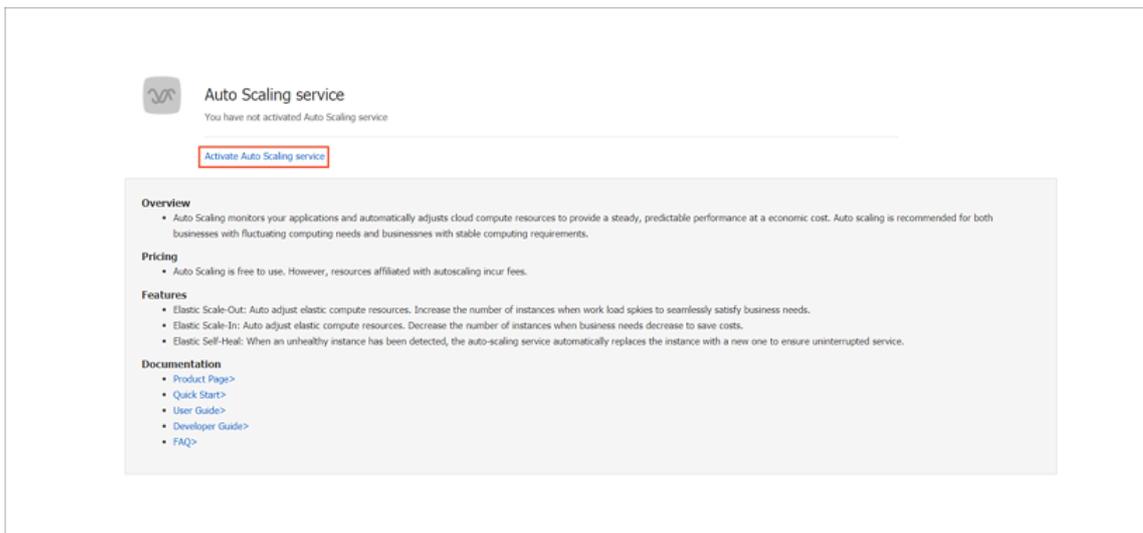
## Grant required permissions for the Auto Scaling service and the cluster

- Activate the Auto Scaling service

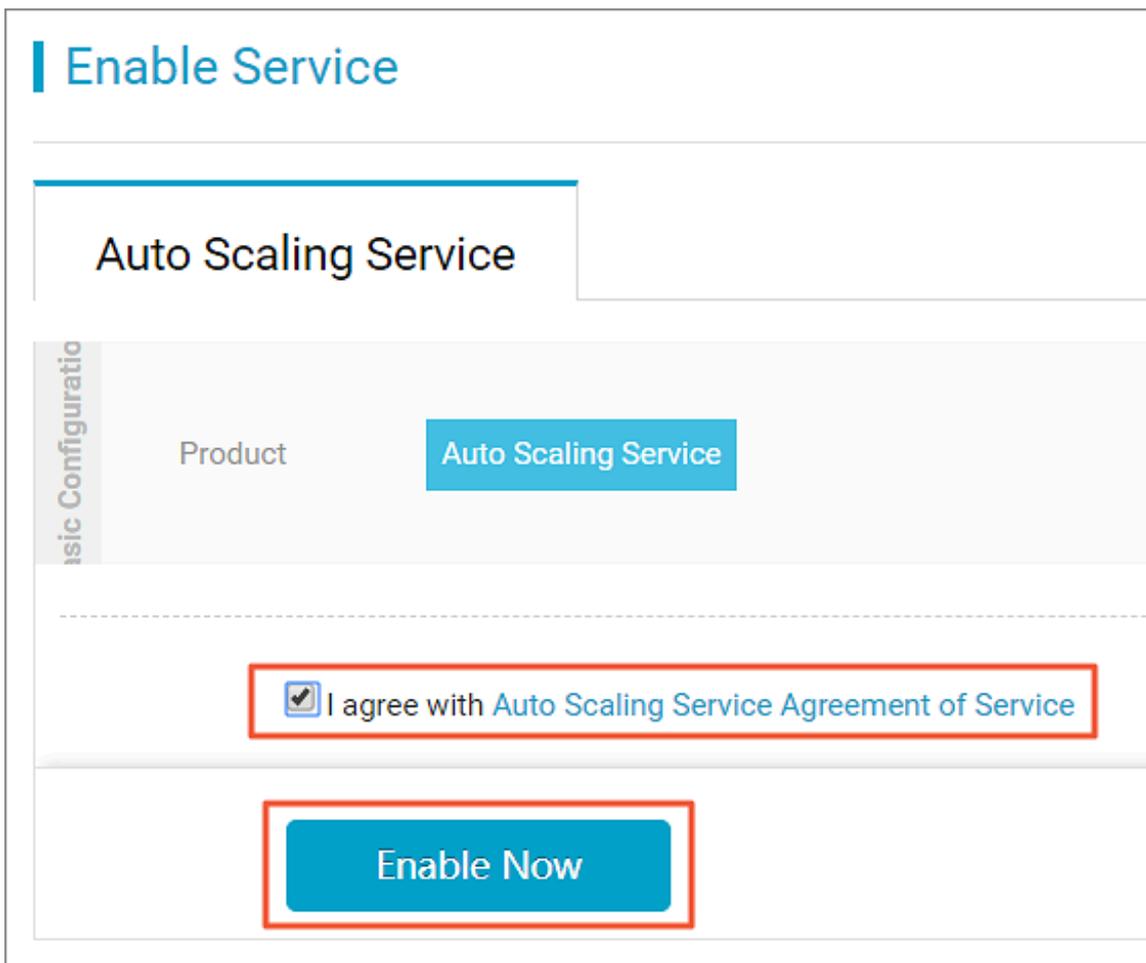
### 1. Click ESS in the displayed dialog box.



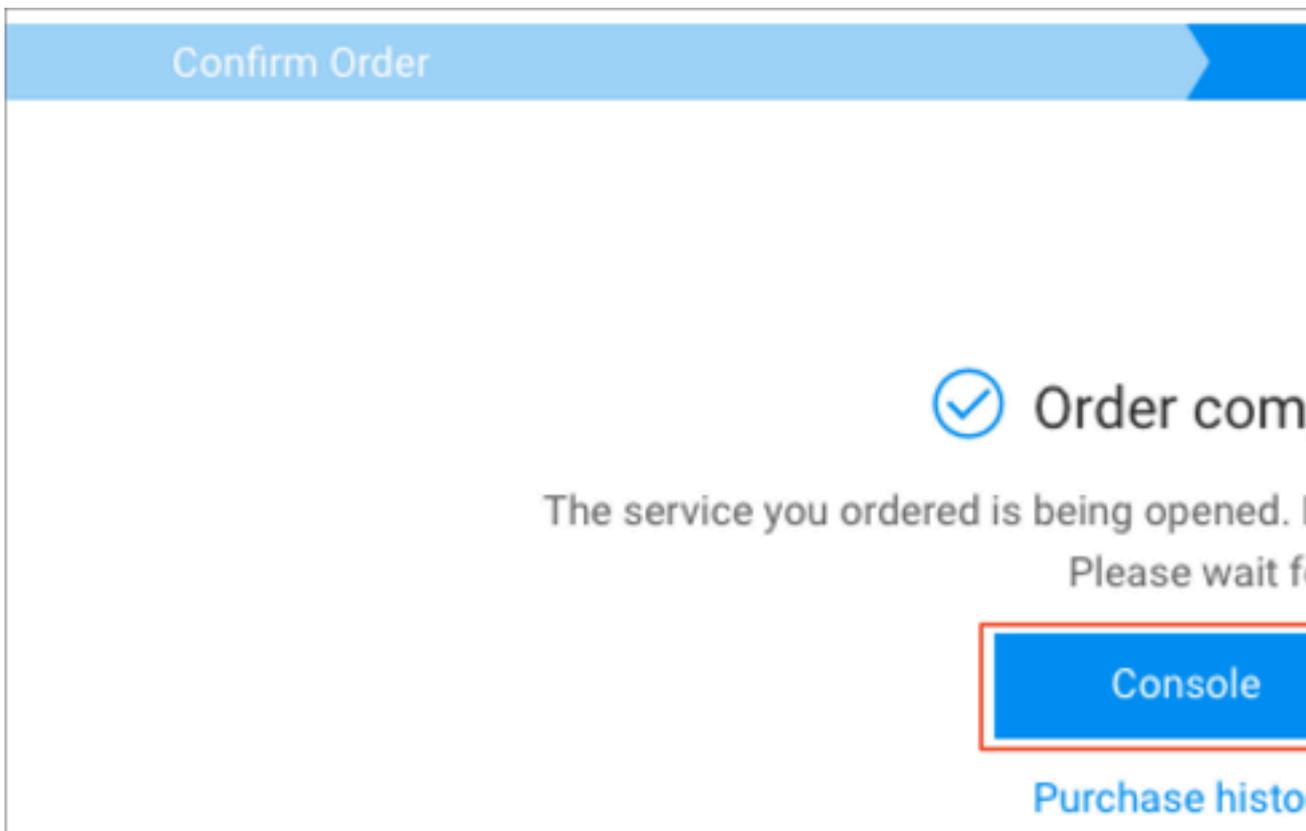
### 2. Click Activate Auto Scaling service.



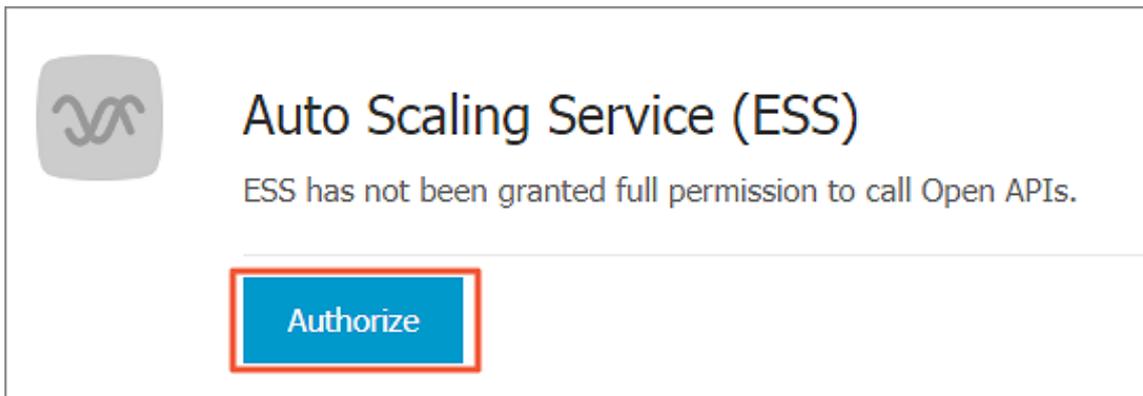
- ### 3. Read and confirm that you agree to the conditions by selecting the I agree with Auto Scaling Service Agreement of Service check box, and then click Enable Now.



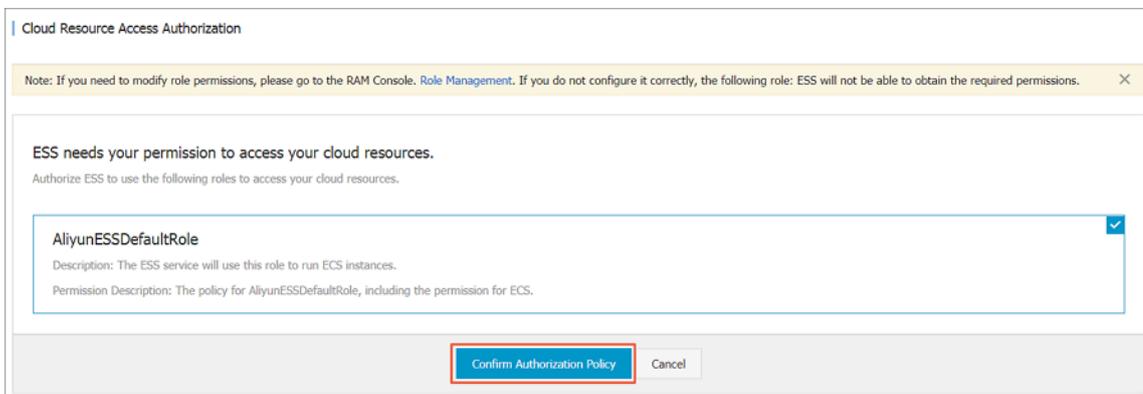
4. Click Console.



5. Click Authorize.



6. Click Confirm Authorization Policy to grant ESS the permission to access your cloud resources.



Verify the result

If the page automatically redirects to the Auto Scaling console, the activation is successful.

- Add ESS authorization policies to the cluster

1. Click the Worker RAM role ( `Kubernetes WorkerRole [ xxx ]` ) in the following dialog box.



You need to use the primary account to log on to the console before perform this operation.

Note ✕

Auto-scaling relies on the ESS service. Before enabling auto-scaling, you need to:

- 1 Enable the service and complete the default role authorization: [ESS](#)
- 2 Jump to RAM to add an ESS authorization policy to the current cluster: [View detailed steps](#)  
KubernetesWorkerRole

Please confirm the above steps, otherwise the Auto-scaling will not be enabled.

Confirm

2. Click View Permissions on the right of the target authorization policy.

3. In the upper-right corner of the page, click Modify Authorization Policy.

4. In the **Action** field of the Policy Document area, add the following policies:

```
" ess : Describe *",
" ess : CreateScalingRule ",
" ess : ModifyScalingGroup ",
```

```
" ess : RemoveInstances ",
" ess : ExecuteScalingRule ",
" ess : ModifyScalingRule ",
" ess : DeleteScalingRule ",
" ecs : DescribeInstanceTypes ",
" ess : DetachInstances "
```

**Note:**

You must add a comma (,) to the end of the last line in the `Action` field before adding these policies.

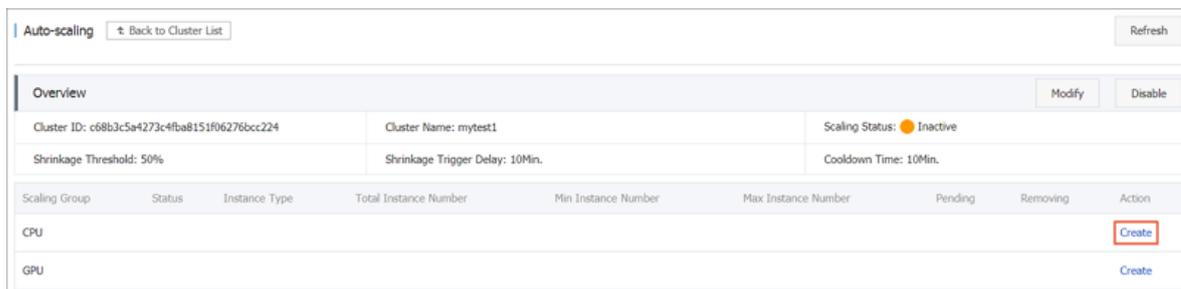
### 5. Click Modify Authorization.

## Set cluster auto scaling parameters

### 1. On the Automatic Scaling page, set the following parameters.

Configuration	Description
Cluster	Target cluster name.
Scale-in Threshold	<p>When the ratio of the amount of requested node resources to the total amount of node resources drops below this threshold, the system automatically scales in the cluster nodes.</p> <div> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> After you enable the autoscaling feature for a Kubernetes cluster, the system automatically determines when to scale out the cluster nodes. Therefore, you only need to set the threshold used by the system to determine when to scale in the nodes of a cluster.</p>
Defer Scale-in For	The number of minutes for which the system must wait to automatically scale in the cluster after the scale-in threshold is reached. The default value is 10 minutes.
Cooldown	The period (in minutes) during which the system does not automatically scale in or scale out a cluster after the number of cluster nodes increases or decreases. The default is 10 minutes.

2. Click **Create** on the right of the target type of resource (which can be CPU or GPU) that you want to autoscale.



On the **Scaling Group Configuration** page, set the following parameters to create a scaling group:

Configuration	Description
Region	The region to which the scaling group is deployed . You must ensure that the scaling group and the cluster where it is located share the same region. This region cannot be modified.
Zone	The zone where the scaling group is created.
VPC	The network where the scaling group is created. You must ensure that the scaling group and the cluster where it is located are in the same region.

Set worker nodes.

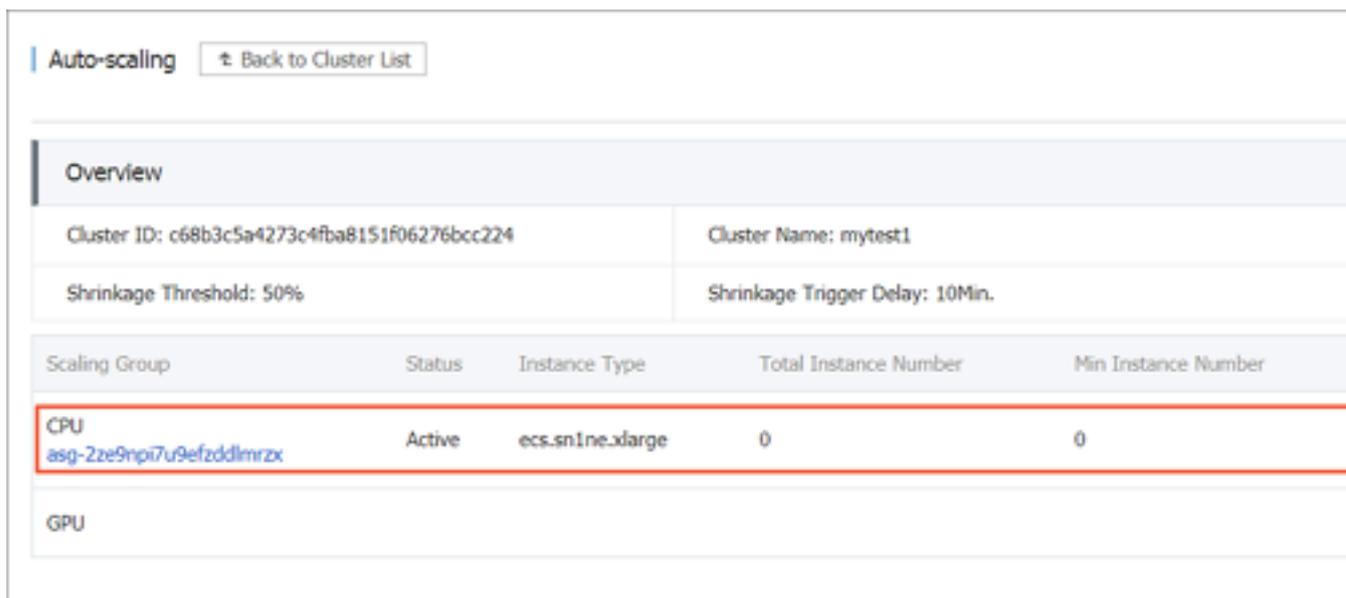
Configuration	Description
Instance Type	Set the specifications of instances in the scaling group .
System Disk	Set the system disks of the scaling group.
Attach Data Disk	Mount a data disk when you create a scaling group. By default, no data disk is mounted.
Instance Quantity	Set the number of instances in the scaling group. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The number does not include the existing instances in the cluster.</li> <li>• By default, this parameter value is 0, and the cluster adds instances to the scaling group and the Kubernetes cluster where the scaling group is located when this parameter exceeds 0.</li> </ul> </div>

Configuration	Description
Key Pair	<p>Set the key pair used to log on to the node added through autoscaling. You can create a new key pair in the Elastic Compute Service (ECS) console.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note:</b> Only key pair logon is supported.                 </div>
RDS Whitelist	Set the Relational Database Service (RDS) instances that can be accessed by the node added through autoscaling.

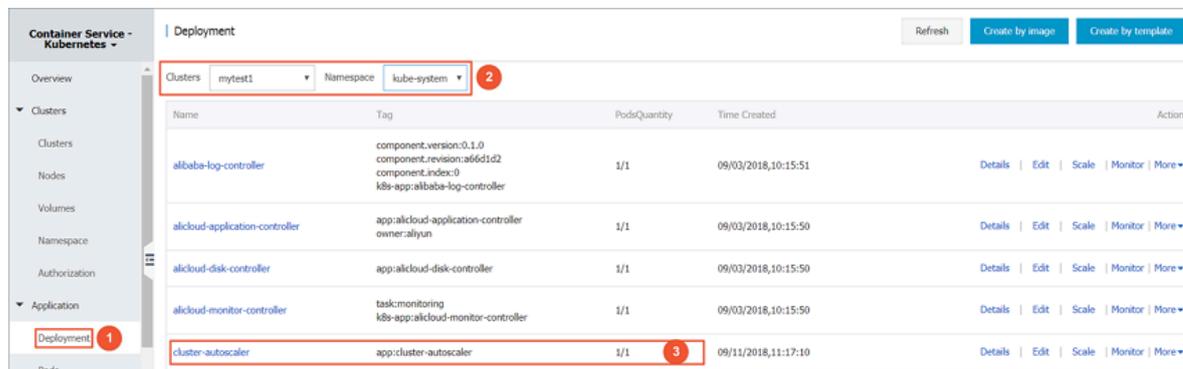
3. Click OK.

Verify the result

- You can directly verify that a scaling group under CPU is displayed on the Auto Scaling page.



- To verify the created autoscaling component, follow these steps:
  1. In the left-side navigation pane, choose Application > Deployment.
  2. Select the target cluster and the kube-system namespace to view the created component named cluster-autoscaler.



## Troubleshooting

- If the cluster autoscaler cannot add nodes to a pod that requested more resources, you can perform the following checks:
  - Make sure that the amount of resources provided by the ECS instances that you set for the autoscaling group is greater than the amount of resources requested by the pod.
  - Make sure that you have granted the required permissions by following the preceding steps. You must grant the required permissions for each target cluster.
  - Make sure that the target Kubernetes clusters are connected to the Internet. The cluster autoscaler calls an API action from Alibaba Cloud, therefore you must ensure that the cluster nodes can be accessed through the Internet.

- If the cluster autoscaler cannot delete nodes from the autoscaling group, you can perform the following checks:
  - Make sure that the resource request threshold of pods on all nodes is not greater than that of used to scale in the cluster.
  - Make sure that no node runs the pods that belong to the `kube-system` namespace.
  - Make sure that no node runs the pod for which any constrained scheduling policies are set. This is because a constrained scheduling policy can limit a pod to a fixed node.
  - Make sure that no pod contains a `PodDisruptionBudget` object that has reached the minimum value allowed. For more information, see [How do Disruption Budgets work](#). For more information, see [How do Disruption Budgets work](#).

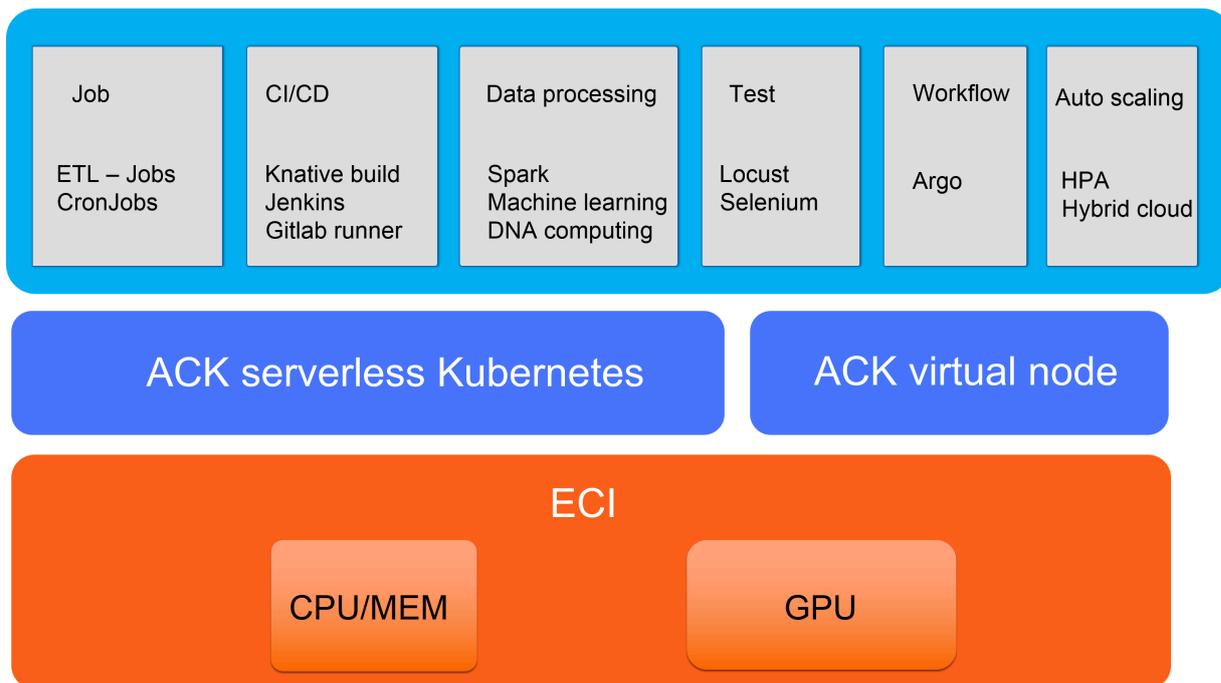
For more information, see [Cluster autoscaler](#).

## 18.3 Deploy a virtual node

This topic describes how to deploy a virtual node for a Kubernetes cluster by using the virtual node addon.

### Background information

Virtual nodes are implemented by using Virtual Kubelet. Virtual nodes connect Kubernetes with Alibaba Cloud Elastic Container Instances (ECI), and provide Kubernetes clusters with a high level of elasticity. For more information about Virtual Kubelet, see [How does Virtual Kubelet work?](#)



Virtual nodes can help to enhance the elasticity of Kubernetes clusters. Specifically, virtual nodes based on Alibaba Cloud ECI can enhance the elasticity of clusters because they support GPU container instances, EIP addresses, and container instances of high specifications. Given the expansion capability provided by virtual nodes, you can easily manage multiple workloads for computing in a Kubernetes cluster.

In a cluster that contains virtual nodes, the pod in a physical node communicates with the ECI pod in the corresponding virtual node.



#### Note:

- The ECI pod in a virtual node is charged according to the specific amount of resources that you use. For information about ECI billing rules, see [Billing overview](#).
- ECS instances of the specifications range of 0.25 vCPU to 64 vCPU are supported. For more information, see [Limits](#).

#### Prerequisites

A managed Kubernetes cluster is created. For more information, see [#unique\\_192](#).

#### Create a virtual node for a cluster Work node

1. Log on to the [Container Service console](#).

2. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Store > App Catalog. Then, click ack-virtual-node.

3. Click the Values tab, and then set these parameters.

- `ECI_VSWITCH_ID` : Set the VSwitch ID.

To obtain the ID of the VSwitch that is associated with a Worker node, follow these steps:

a. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Nodes.

b. Select the target cluster, and then click a Worker node.

In the Configuration Information area, the VSwitch ID is displayed.

- `ECI_SECURITY_GROUP_ID` : Set the security group ID.

To obtain the ID of the security group that is associated with a Worker node, follow these steps:

a. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Nodes.

b. Select the target cluster, and then click a Worker node.

c. In the left-side navigation pane, click Security Groups.

On the Security Groups page, the security group ID is displayed.

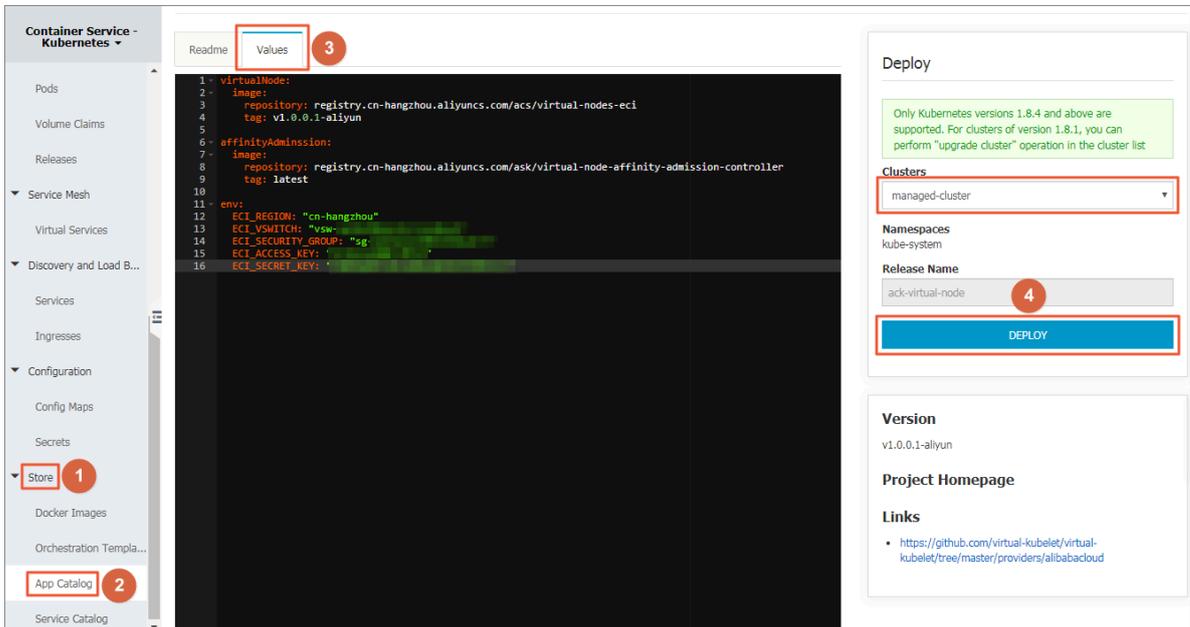
- `ECI_ACCESS_KEY` : Set the AccessKey.
- `ECI_SECRET_KEY` : Set the SecretKey.

4. In the Deploy area on the right of the page, select the target cluster, and then click DEPLOY.

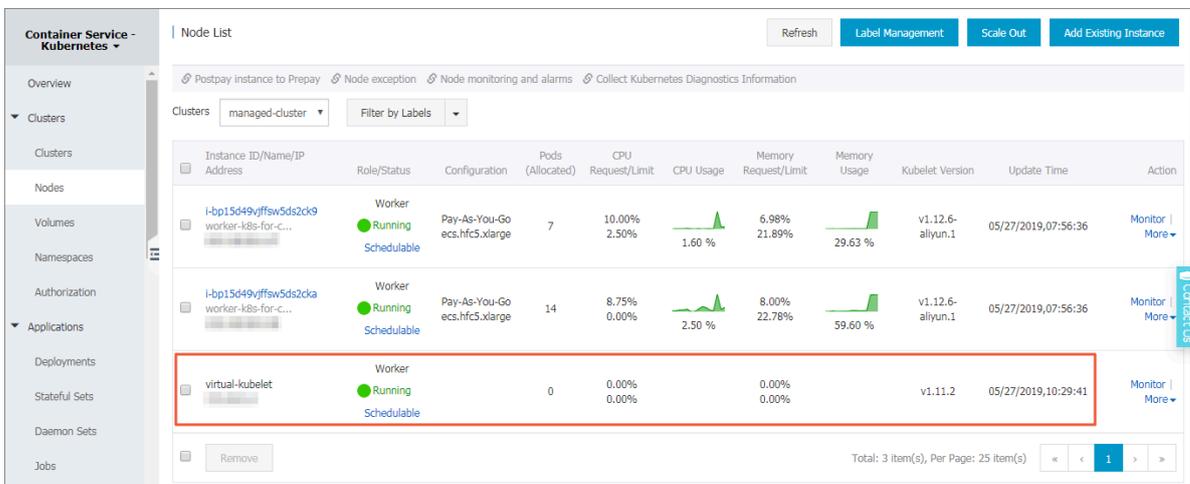


Note:

By default, the namespace is set to `kube-system`, and the release name is set to `ack-virtual-node`.



5. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Clusters > Nodes to verify that a node named virtual-kubelet is displayed.



You can use `kubectl` commands to view cluster nodes, and the status of Helm deployment. You can also use Helm to upgrade and manage the deployed `ack-virtual-node`. For more information, see [#unique\\_120](#).

```

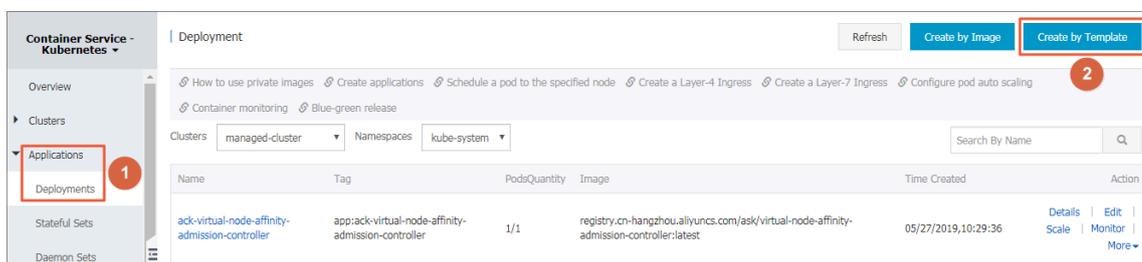
shell@alicloud:~$ kubectl get no
NAME                                STATUS    ROLES    AGE    VERSION
cn-hangzhou_i-bp14gdequm84fgei01f4  Ready    <none>   16d   v1.12.6-aliyun.1
cn-hangzhou_i-bp14gdequm84fgei01f5  Ready    <none>   16d   v1.12.6-aliyun.1
virtual-kubelet                       Ready    agent    72m   v1.11.2
shell@alicloud:~$ helm ls
NAME                REVISION    UPDATED                               STATUS    CHART                APP VERSION N
ack-virtual-node-default 1            Fri Apr 12 08:10:46 2019            DEPLOYED  ack-virtual-node-v1.0.0.1-aliyun  d
    
```

## Create a pod in the virtual node

If a Kubernetes cluster contains a virtual node, you can create a pod in the virtual node. Then, the virtual kubelet will create a corresponding ECI pod. You can use one of the following three methods to create a pod for the virtual node:

- Set `nodeSelector` or `tolerations` to create a pod.

- Log on to the [Container Service console](#).
- In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose **Applications > Deployments**. Then, in the upper-right corner, click **Create by Template**.



- Select the target cluster and namespace, select an example template or customize a template, and then click **DEPLOY**.

You can use the following template to customize a pod:

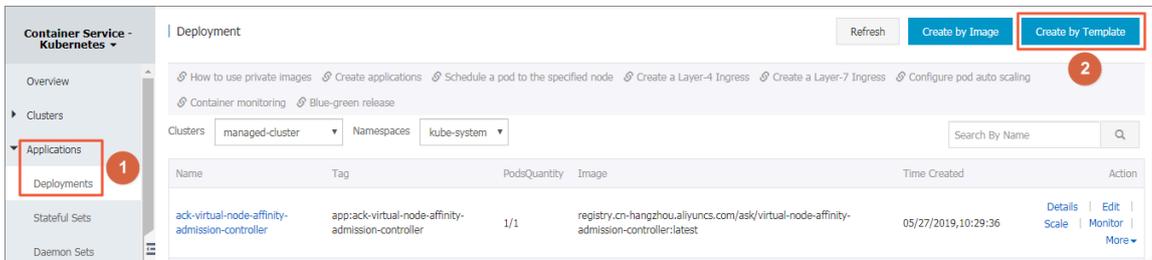
```

apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  name : nginx
spec :
  containers :
  - image : nginx
    imagePullPolicy : Always
    name : nginx
  nodeSelector :
    type : virtual - kubelet
  tolerations :
  - key : virtual - kubelet . io / provider
    
```

operator : Exists

- Set `nodeName` to create a pod.

1. In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Applications > Deployments. Then, in the upper-right corner, click Create by Template.



2. Select the target cluster and namespace, select an example template or customize a template, and then click DEPLOY.

You can use the following template to customize a pod:

```
apiVersion : v1
kind : Pod
metadata :
  name : nginx
spec :
  containers :
  - image : nginx
    imagePullPolicy : Always
    name : nginx
    nodeName : virtual - kubelet
```

- Set a namespace tag to create a pod.

1. Use kubectl on Cloud Shell to connect to the target Kubernetes cluster. For more information, see [#unique\\_120](#).
2. Run the following commands to create a pod:

```
kubectl create ns vk
kubectl label namespace vk virtual-node-affinity-injection=enabled
kubectl -n vk run nginx --image nginx
```

```
shell@alicloud:~$ kubectl create ns vk
namespace/vk created
shell@alicloud:~$ kubectl label namespace vk virtual-node-affinity-injection=enabled
namespace/vk labeled
shell@alicloud:~$ kubectl -n vk run nginx --image nginx
kubectl run --generator=deployment/apps.v1 is DEPRECATED and will be removed in a future version. Use kubectl run --generator=run-pod/v1 or kubectl create instead.
deployment.apps/nginx created
shell@alicloud:~$
```

In the left-side navigation pane under Container Service-Kubernetes, choose Applications > Pods to verify that the pod is created.

Container Service - Kubernetes	
Overview	
Clusters	
<b>Applications</b>	
Deployments	
Stateful Sets	
Daemon Sets	
Jobs	
Cron Jobs	
<b>Pods</b>	
logtail-ds-8bqfc logtail:0.16.19.0-5be7ad3-aliyun	Running 0  0.004  24.645 Mi
logtail-ds-9l77c logtail:0.16.19.0-5be7ad3-aliyun	Running 0  0.004  24.176 Mi
metrics-server-748b5b5b-kdir4j metrics-server:v0.2.1-9dd9511-aliyun	Running 0  0.002  25.563 Mi
nginx nginx	Running 0  virtual-kubelet 05/27/2019,10:37:49 0 0
nginx-ingress-controller-5f65d97854-sn26f aliyun-ingress-controller:v0.22.0.5-552e0db-aliyun	Running 0  0.003  180.445 Mi